
MACHINE LANGUAGE ROUTINES

FOR THE

COMMODORE 64/128

Todd D. Heimarck and Patrick Parrish

A comprehensive collection of more than 200 machine language routines for the Commodore 128 and 64, ready to add to your programs. Includes routines to access printers, disk drives, and Kernal routines; sorting algorithms; and much more. The ideal reference.

A **COMPUTE!** Books Publication

\$18.95

Machine Language Routines

for the
Commodore 64 and 128

Todd D. Heimarck and Patrick Parrish

COMPUTE! Publications, Inc. 

Part of ABC Consumer Magazines, Inc.
One of the ABC Publishing Companies

Greensboro, North Carolina

Copyright 1987, COMPUTE! Publications, Inc. All rights reserved.

Reproduction or translation of any part of this work beyond that permitted by Sections 107 and 108 of the United States Copyright Act without the permission of the copyright owner is unlawful.

Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

ISBN 0-87455-085-8

The authors and publisher have made every effort in the preparation of this book to insure the accuracy of the programs and information. However, the information and programs in this book are sold without warranty, either express or implied. Neither the authors nor COMPUTE! Publications, Inc., will be liable for any damages caused or alleged to be caused directly, indirectly, incidentally, or consequentially by the programs or information in this book.

The opinions expressed in this book are solely those of the authors and are not necessarily those of COMPUTE! Publications, Inc.

COMPUTE! Publications, Inc., Post Office Box 5406, Greensboro, NC 27403, (919) 275-9809, is part of ABC Consumer Magazines, Inc., one of the ABC Publishing Companies, and is not associated with any manufacturer of personal computers. Commodore 64 and 128 are trademarks of Commodore Electronics Limited.

Contents

Preface	v
Introduction	1
Opcodes	9
ROM Kernal Routines	57
The Routines	79
Index by Topic	571
Index by Label	579
Disk Coupon	585

Preface

This book is a rich library of more than 200 machine language routines for programmers to learn from and use in their own programs. The programs in this book cover a wide range:

- Character input and output
- Sprite definition and movement
- High-resolution graphics
- Sorting and searching lists of information
- Reading and writing disk files
- Combining BASIC and ML programs
- Printer routines
- Addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division
- Conversions between character and screen codes
- Random number generation
- Jiffy clock and time-of-day clock routines
- Using interrupts and vectors
- Custom characters (for 40- and 80-column displays)
- Sound effects and music

These are just a few of the routines you'll find in this book. Nearly every subroutine is listed with a sample program that illustrates how it works. You can study the subroutine by itself or see how it's used in the context of a real program.

One of the best ways to learn machine language is to study other people's programs. If you can see how someone else got the computer to do something like moving sprites, printing a score, sorting a list, or whatever, you can trace through the steps and gain a better understanding of the technique.

But most magazines and books publish machine language (ML) as a series of numbers in DATA statements. You don't learn much about machine language from typing in clusters of numbers. You could use an ML monitor to disassemble the program, but when you're faced with a sea of JSRs and BEQs, it's not always obvious what's going on in a program.

The programs include a wealth of comments that take you step by step through the various stages of each routine: setting up the variables, calling the routine, and handling the results.

Most routines are written for the Commodore 64, but will run on the 128 with the changes indicated in comments. A few routines will work only on the 64 or only on the 128, but most will run on both computers.

In addition to the 200-plus routines, we've included a complete list of ML opcodes, with explanations of how they work, and a complete list, with explanations, of the built-in Kernal routines.

Whether you're a machine language beginner or a seasoned expert, we think you'll find many useful programming techniques, routines, and ideas in this book.

Todd D. Heimarck
Patrick Parrish

All the source code in this book is ready to type in and assemble. There is also a disk available from COMPUTE! Books which includes all the source code from the book (no object code is included on the disk). An assembler is required to use the disk. To purchase the disk, use the coupon in the back of the book or call 1-800-346-6767 (in New York 212-887-8525).

Introduction

The paradox of machine language is that it's both simpler and more complex than a high-level language such as BASIC or Pascal.

Machine language (ML) is simpler because a program consists of many very small steps. LDA #10 puts the number 10 in the accumulator. STX \$C115 takes the number in the X register and stores it in memory location \$C115. If you study a single line from a fast and powerful machine language program, you'll usually see that not very much happens. Now consider a BASIC command such as SPRITE on the Commodore 128. With one command, you can turn a sprite on; set its color, priority, and expansion; and put it in multicolor mode. Compared to the Spartan instruction set of ML, BASIC is a richer and more complicated language.

But even though the instructions are small and simple, putting together a working ML program is often more complex than writing a BASIC program. If you make a mistake, chances are good that the program will go into an endless loop (or worse, the computer will crash). There are no convenient error messages to tell you what you did wrong. You're responsible for keeping track of your own variables. And you're expected to understand some of the architecture of the computer—how the various support chips and their registers work.

Some people find ML quite easy. Others struggle to learn it. Either way, we hope you'll discover some useful routines in these pages.

What You'll Find Here

This book is divided into three major parts: the instruction set, the Kernal routines, and the machine language routines.

The instruction set lists each 6502 machine language operation, with an explanation of what it does and which flags are affected. The 6502 family of chips includes the 6510 in the 64; the 8502 in the 128; and the 6502 in the VIC-20, Atari 400/800, and original Apple II. The ML instructions listed are common to all of these computers. (Incidentally, if you pro-

gram on these other 6502-based computers, you may be able to translate some of the routines in this book for the VIC, Atari, or Apple.) The instruction set contains the building blocks of ML programming. If you're a beginner, you may want to look through this section first. Even if you're an old pro, you'll need to refer to this list occasionally.

The next section of this book—"ROM Kernal Routines"—lists the Kernal routines (which are common to all eight-bit Commodore computers, including the VIC, Plus/4, 64, and 128). Note the deliberate misspelling of what other computer manufacturers call *kernel* routines. The Kernal is a block of memory that uses a standard jump table to make it easier to program on different brands of Commodore computers. For example, the routine that prints a character is found at different locations on the 64 and 128, but the standard entry point for the Kernal CHROUT routine is the same (\$FFD2) on both computers. This means the line LDA #65: JSR \$FFD2 will work the same on both computers—it prints the letter A on the screen. Indeed, it also works on the VIC-20, the Plus/4, and the 16. We're indebted to Ottis Cowper for giving us permission to reprint a portion of his *Mapping the Commodore 128* (COMPUTE! Books, 1986) that explains how the Kernal routines work.

The importance of the Kernal routines cannot be over-emphasized. To open a disk file, you call the Kernal routines SETLFS, SETNAM, and OPEN. (See the entries under **OPENFL** or **READFL** for examples.) If these routines weren't available, it would be quite difficult to read from or write to a disk file; you'd have to write your own disk operating system, with routines to spin the disk, move the read/write head to a given sector, read bytes one at a time, and so on.

The third and largest part of the book is the collection of ML routines. Each subroutine is listed alphabetically by label. In some cases, the entire program is the subroutine. However, the routine is usually put in the context of a framing program which illustrates how to set up and call the given subroutine (marked by bold type). When a routine appears elsewhere in the book, its label appears in **boldface** type.

What You Won't Find Here

The book is big, but we couldn't include everything. One thing you won't find is an explanation of how to begin programming in ML. If you're a beginner, you'll find useful

examples and programs here, but you may also want to look into two books for beginners: *Machine Language for Beginners* by Richard Mansfield (COMPUTE! Books) and *Machine Language* by Jim Butterfield (Brady Books). Mansfield's book takes a software approach, relating machine language instructions to their BASIC counterparts. If you know how a FOR-NEXT loop works in BASIC, this book shows you how to do the same thing in ML. Butterfield's book approaches ML more from the hardware viewpoint, explaining what's happening inside the computer while an ML program is running. We highly recommend both books.

When you're writing programs for the 64 and 128, it's necessary to understand something about how memory is organized—which zero-page locations are available; which ROM routines are useful; how the registers of the support chips control video, input/output, and sound. For a general introduction to these topics, Commodore's two programmer's reference guides are excellent. The 64 version is published by Howard Sams; the 128 version comes from Bantam Books. For more detail, *Mapping the Commodore 64* by Sheldon Leemon and *Mapping the Commodore 128* by Ottis Cowper are essential (both published by COMPUTE! Books). In fact, if you buy only one other machine language book, get the mapping book for your computer. We also recommend *Anatomy of the Commodore 64 and 128 BASIC 7.0 Internals* (Abacus Books). Both books feature commented disassemblies of the BASIC ROMs.

The Routines

Each machine language routine has a label up to six letters long. Following the label is a more descriptive name that tells you what the routine does, for example, **SQROOT**: Calculate the integer square root of an integer value.

Below the label and name, you'll see one or two paragraphs that touch on the main points of the routine, with examples of where you might use the routine or a summary of how it works.

Next is the prototype, which is something like a flowchart converted to instructions written in English. It lists the individual steps followed by the subroutine and points out the variables and memory used within the routine. There are usually three steps covered in the prototype: how to set it up, how the routine works, and how the results are handled.

Following the prototype is a more in-depth explanation of what the framing program does. This section discusses alternate ways to use the subroutine, more information about how to modify it for your own purposes, how certain tasks were accomplished, how memory is affected, and so on. Often there's an important note or even a warning. The **FORMAT** routine formats a disk, for example, which warrants a warning that if you run this program, you'll erase everything on your disk.

Finally, the source code for the program is listed. Some routines are a few lines, others cover several pages. We recommend that you use a symbolic multipass assembler to type in these programs (see below). Although you can use a monitor such as Micromon or Supermon, you'll find that an assembler is preferable.

Typing In and Assembling the Programs

We chose the *Personal Assembly Language (PAL)* assembler to write the source code for the routines in this book. The 64 version (*PAL*) and 128 version (*Buddy-128*) are available from many Commodore software dealers, or from the distributor, Pro-Line Software in Mississauga, Ontario. If you use the LADS assembler from *The Second Book of Machine Language* (COMPUTE! Books), you'll find that the source files are mostly compatible, with very minor changes.

If you're using another assembler, such as Commodore's *Macro Assembler Development System (MADS)*, Eastern House Software's *Macro Assembler/Editor (MAE)*, Roger Wagner's *Merlin*, or one of the others available, you may need to make a few modifications to get the source code to run.

First, a note about pseudo-ops. The three letters LDA represent a machine language instruction (or operation). The mnemonic LDA is translated to a number that's POKed into memory or saved in a disk file by the assembler. The operation LDA is always followed by one or two bytes that provide additional information. These bytes are the operand. In the instruction LDA \$C150, LDA is the operation, and \$C150 is the operand. The assembler converts this line to the numbers 173, 80, and 193 (\$AD, \$50, and \$C1). For this instruction and addressing mode, LDA is the mnemonic, and \$AD is the equivalent opcode.

Assemblers usually include additional commands that aren't really part of the ML instruction set, but they're instruc-

tions to the assembler. For example, *PAL* takes `.OPT OO` to mean "Object where Originated," or "assemble this to memory." *Buddy-128* uses `.MEM`. *LADS* uses `.O`. These pseudo-operations tell the assembler to do one thing or another.

At the beginning of most programs, you'll see a series of *equates*, each of which instructs the assembler to assign a label to a memory location. The memory location may be the entry point for a Kernal ROM routine, it may be a location in RAM, or it may be a register in the VIC or CIA or SID chip. One of the most common equates looks like this: `CHROUT = $FFD2`. This informs the assembler that the label `CHROUT`, when encountered later in the program should be replaced by the address `$FFD2`. `JSR CHROUT` means `JSR $FFD2`. Some assemblers use the pseudo-instruction `EQU` in place of the equal sign. If your assembler follows this convention, instead of `CHROUT = $FFD2`, you'd substitute `CHROUT EQU $FFD2`. If you're using a machine language monitor or an assembler that doesn't allow labels, you'll have to make the substitution yourself. The source code may look like this:

```
$C020 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
```

With *Micromon* or *Supermon*, you'd have to look to the left at the `D2 FF` and translate the instruction (in your head) to `JSR $FFD2`. Note that the low byte precedes the high byte in the object code to the left.

Both *PAL* and *LADS* support the `#<` and `#>` pseudo-operations. From a two-byte address, the first (`#<`) extracts the low byte, and the second (`#>`) extracts the high byte. So if a previous equate assigned the memory location `$902F` to the label `NAMES`, the line `LDA #<NAMES` tells the assembler to load the accumulator with the low byte of `NAMES`. Since `NAMES` is `$902F`, this is equivalent to `LDA #2F`. If you saw `LDA #>NAMES`, it would be the same as `LDA #90`. Again, you can look to the left to find the value being referenced.

Some other pseudo-ops include `.BYTE`, `.WORD`, and `.ASC`. If you see a line like `ZEBRA .BYTE 15`, it means that the byte value of 15 is inserted in the program at the given location and that particular memory location is given the label `ZEBRA`. Some assemblers use `DB` (Data Byte) instead of `.BYTE`. The `.WORD` pseudo-op translates a two-byte quantity to its low byte and high byte. The `.ASC` is followed by a quotation

mark and a series of one or more characters, which are stored in memory as Commodore ASCII values.

If you don't understand an instruction that contains a pseudo-op, look to the left for the equivalent object code.

Using the Routines in Your Own Programs

The programs in this book have all been tested. The original source code was assembled and printed to disk (using *PAL's* .OPT P option), and then uploaded directly to the computer used to typeset this book. So as far as we know, there are no typographical errors in the program listings.

But that doesn't mean that each routine is perfect and ready to be inserted as is in your own programs. For one thing, nearly all of the example programs start at \$C000 (decimal 49152). At the very least, you'll probably want to relocate the routines to other parts of memory, especially if you're using a 128. You should also watch for conflicts among routines that use zero-page locations. Many routines depend on indirect-Y addressing and locations 251-252 and 253-254 (\$FB-\$FC and \$FD-\$FE). In some cases, you'll have to substitute other available zero-page addresses.

Many of the routines were written to be general and flexible solutions to a problem. If you have a more specific application in mind, you might want to dispense with the subroutine and insert a modified version of a routine directly in your main program. You may also see ways to shorten a routine or make it run faster. We encourage you to experiment with the programs.

For 128 Users

Since most of the programs call Kernal routines, you'll need to be in bank 15, where addresses \$0000-\$3FFF are RAM in bank 1 and \$4000-\$FFFF appear as ROM. Instead of assembling programs to \$C000, try \$0C00 (decimal 3072) on the 128. To take full advantage of the 128K of memory, you need to understand how the different memory banks are accessed. Both the *128 Programmer's Reference Guide* and *Mapping the Commodore 128* discuss how to switch between banks.

About the Disk

A companion disk that contains all the routines in this book is available for purchase from COMPUTE! Books. The programs

are included as source code, not object code, which means you'll need an assembler like *PAL* or *LADS* to create the runnable program—the object code.

The source files take up much more space than is available on a single-sided 1541 disk, so both sides were used. The disk is a floppy: To use the first half of the programs, use one side; to load the other programs, flip the disk over. The original source files filled more than the 1328 blocks available on a floppy. Rather than omit programs from the disk, we chose to abbreviate the comments in a few programs. Thus, the comments in the source code on disk may not be exactly the same as the comments in the listings in this book. If you list the programs on the disk, you may find that *hi byte* has replaced the phrase *high byte* in the book, for example.

Opcodes

Opcodes

ADC

ADd with Carry: Add a value to the accumulator, with the result in .A.

Addressing Modes

(Zero page),X	ADC (\$FC,X)	61 FC	6 cycles
Zero page	ADC \$FA	65 FA	3 cycles
Immediate	ADC #\$45	69 45	2 cycles
Absolute	ADC \$10	6D 10 00	4 cycles
(Zero page),Y	ADC (\$FB),Y	71 FB	5 cycles (+1 over a page)
Zero page,X	ADC \$03,X	75 03	4 cycles
Absolute,Y	ADC \$A401,Y	79 01 A4	4 cycles (+1 over a page)
Absolute,X	ADC \$C002,X	7D 02 C0	4 cycles (+1 over a page)

Flags

N (Negative)	If the result is \$80-\$FF, the N flag is set.
V (Overflow)	If an overflow occurs, V is set.
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If the result is zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	If the result exceeds \$FF, C is set.

ADC starts with the number in the accumulator and adds to it the given value (which varies according to which addressing mode is used), *plus an additional 0 or 1, depending on the state of the carry flag*. Remember to clear the carry flag (CLC) before addition is started. If you're adding large numbers (two bytes or more), the carry bit will take care of itself. As the addition progresses toward higher bytes in the number, the carry bit spills over into the next most significant byte. When you're adding multiple bytes, add together the least significant first—the low byte—and proceed to add the more significant bytes later.

The carry flag is set when two bytes are being added (say, 250 and 10) and the total is more than can be stored in one

Opcodes

byte (more than 255). If you're in binary-coded decimal mode (D flag set to 1) when addition occurs, the carry flag is set if the sum of two bytes exceeds 99.

The result of addition is found in the accumulator. If you want to save this number, be sure to STA after the addition.

AND

Bitwise AND: Perform a bitwise AND between .A and a value. Result resides in .A.

Addressing Modes

(Zero page),X	AND (\$E6,X)	21 E6	6 cycles
Zero page	AND \$22	25 22	3 cycles
Immediate	AND #\$1B	29 1B	2 cycles
Absolute	AND \$1E5C	2D 5C 1E	4 cycles
(Zero page),Y	AND (\$F9),Y	31 F9	5 cycles
Zero page,X	AND \$50,X	35 50	4 cycles
Absolute,Y	AND \$C493,Y	39 93 C4	4 cycles
Absolute,X	AND \$3BC3,X	3D C3 3B	4 cycles
			(+1 over a page)
			(+1 over a page)

Flags

N (Negative)	If bit 7 is set, N flag is set.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If result is zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	—

AND performs a bitwise AND. Corresponding bits in .A and the value are compared; if either bit is off, the result is zero. Both bits must be on for the resulting bit to be set.

In the example, bits 0, 6, and 7 of the second value (\$3E) are off, so the effect is that those bits are cleared from the original number (\$AB). To turn bits on, use ORA.

```
  $AB 1010 1011
AND $3E 0011 1110
  $2A 0010 1010
```

ASL

Arithmetic Shift Left: Shift a value (accumulator or memory) to the left.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	ASL \$4F	06 4F	5 cycles
Accumulator	ASL	0A	2 cycles
Absolute	ASL \$DF01	0E 01 DF	6 cycles
Zero page,X	ASL \$EF,X	16 EF	6 cycles
Absolute,X	ASL \$AA05,X	1E 05 AA	7 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	Bit 6 shifts into 7 and sets/clears the N flag.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If bits 0–6 are zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	Bit 7 shifts into carry.

ASL causes all eight bits to shift one position to the left. A zero is placed into bit 0, while bit 7 moves into the carry flag. In contrast, an ROL instruction does the same thing *except* that ROL rotates the carry flag into bit 0. With ASL, a zero is always put into bit 0.

ASL is often used to double a number, to test bits with the N or C flag and branch accordingly, or to perform a two-byte shift. When a two-byte shift is being carried out, ASL is used with ROL; you ASL the low byte and ROL the high byte.

BCC

Branch if Carry Clear: Branch forward or backward if the C flag is clear.

Addressing Modes

Relative	BCC \$12B4	90 A5	2 cycles (+1 over a page)
----------	------------	-------	------------------------------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

BCC operates off the carry flag, which is affected most often by addition and subtraction (ADC and SBC) and by compares

(CMP, CPX, CPY). As with the other branch operations, the range is limited to 127 bytes forward or 128 bytes backward.

After ADC, a cleared carry means that there is *no* carry to be concerned about. After SBC, a cleared carry means there is a borrow to handle.

A compare instruction leaves the carry bit in one of two states: If the number in the register is larger than (or equal to) the value being compared, carry is set. If the register is smaller, carry is clear. So LDX #05: CPX \$6793: BCC will cause the branch to happen if the number in .X is smaller than the number at \$6793. If \$6793 holds a number between \$06 and \$FF, the BCC will branch to the given address.

BCS

Branch if Carry Set: Branch forward or backward if the C flag is set.

Addressing Modes

Relative	BCS \$4578	B0 B2	2 cycles (+1 over a page, +1 if branch occurs)
----------	------------	-------	--

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

BCS, like its counterpart BCC, works off the carry flag. It is seen most often after addition or subtraction operations (ADC, SBC) or after compares (CMP, CPX, CPY). As with the other branching instructions, the range of the branch is limited to 127 bytes forward or 128 bytes backward.

After ADC, a set carry indicates that the result of the addition has exceeded the size of a single byte—in other words, the result is greater than 255. After SBC, a set carry means that no borrow has been necessary (the result is between 0 and 255).

Following compares, carry may be set or cleared. If the number in the register is larger than (or equal to) the value being compared, carry is set. Otherwise, carry is cleared (mean-

ing the value in the register is smaller). So, LDA \$FB: CMP #0A: BCS will cause branching to a given address to occur if the number in location \$FB is greater than or equal to 0A (\$0A-\$FF).

BEQ

Branch if EQual to zero. Branches forward or backward if the Z flag is set.

Addressing Modes

Relative	BEQ \$CE9A	F0 10	2 cycles (+1 over a page)
----------	------------	-------	------------------------------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

BEQ can branch up to 127 bytes forward or 128 bytes back. Although most assemblers allow you to specify a target address or label, the address is not assembled. Instead, an offset is calculated (numbers \$00-\$7F are forward branches; \$80-\$FF are backward).

There are two ways in which the Z flag may be set. After a load instruction (LDA, LDX, LDY), Z is set if the value loaded is zero. Other instructions (transfers, addition, and so forth) may also affect the Z flag. In this case, the BEQ takes effect if the result is a zero.

After a compare (CMP, CPX, CPY), the Z flag is set if the register and value compared are equal. Here the BEQ means "branch if the two numbers compared are equal."

BIT

Test memory BITs: AND the accumulator with memory, without storing the result.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	BIT \$04	24 04	3 cycles
Absolute	BIT \$DC01	2C 01 DC	4 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	Bit 7 of memory is copied to N.
V (Overflow)	Bit 6 of memory is copied to V.
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If the result of the AND is zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	—

The BIT instruction performs a bitwise AND between the accumulator and a specified memory byte. (See the entry under AND for an explanation and example of a bitwise AND.) The zero flag is set or cleared as a result of the AND. Unlike the AND instruction, which alters the value in .A, BIT affects only the status register. The accumulator remains intact after BIT.

Within the status register, bits 6 and 7 take on the corresponding bit values of the specified memory byte. When testing these bits, BIT is generally followed by BVC/BVS or BMI/BPL, causing the appropriate branch.

BIT instructions are frequently placed in succession at the beginning of a subroutine. Entering the routine at different points causes the status flags to take on different values. But more significantly, the address following each BIT may actually be used as an opcode. This allows you to load different values into a register (A, X, or Y) or to carry out other operations, depending upon the entry point.

For example, say you have a subroutine where you want the value of .Y to start out as \$00, \$A5, or \$B5. You could begin the routine with LDY #\$00: BIT \$A5A0: BIT \$B5A0. If you jump in at the byte following the first BIT instruction, the Y register will load \$A5 (\$A5A0 is stored low byte first, \$A0 \$A5, which executes as LDY #\$A5). The next BIT instruction will affect only the status register, leaving .Y unchanged. If you jump in at the \$B5A0 instruction, an LDY #\$B5 will execute and fall through into the subroutine.

BMI

Branch if MInus: Execute a branch if the N flag is set.

Addressing Modes

Relative	BMI \$3CA3	30 7B	2 cycles (+1 over a page)
----------	------------	-------	------------------------------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

BMI can branch forward up to 127 bytes or backward, 128. The branch occurs if the N (negative) flag is set. A negative number is one that has bit 7 set and falls in the range \$80-\$FF. A variety of instructions—adds, subtracts, loads, compares—set the N flag.

BNE

Branch if Not Equal: Branch forward or backward if the Z flag is clear.

Addressing Modes

Relative	BNE \$4102	D0 3A	2 cycles (+1 over a page, +1 if branch occurs)
----------	------------	-------	--

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

BNE can branch up to 127 bytes forward or 128 bytes backward. Assemblers generally calculate this offset from a specified target address or label. An offset of \$00-\$7F indicates a forward branch; \$80-\$FF, a backward branch.

A branch with BNE takes place when the Z flag is cleared. The zero flag (Z) may be cleared several ways. It's set if the result of an operation is zero; it's cleared if the result is not equal to zero. After a load instruction (LDA, LDX, LDY), Z is cleared if the value is nonzero. Transfers, addition, and other instructions affect the Z flag similarly. In these cases, BNE causes a branch if the result is not zero.

Opcodes

Following a compare (CMP, CPX, CPY), the Z flag is cleared if the register and value are different. Here the BNE means “branch if the two numbers compared are not equal.”

BNE often follows a decrement instruction (DEX, DEY) at the end of a loop. The loop continues its operation as long as the Z flag is cleared.

BPL

Branch if PLus: Branch forward or backward if the negative flag is clear.

Addressing Modes

Relative	BPL \$959F	10 DE	2 cycles (+1 over a page)
----------	------------	-------	------------------------------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

BPL branches if previous instructions have cleared the negative flag. Although you usually specify an address or target, BPL assembles into the instruction plus an offset—forward 0–127 bytes (\$00–\$7F) or backward 1–128 bytes (\$FF–\$80).

BPL is commonly used in loops where .X or .Y starts out with a positive value (0–127), and then DEY or DEX counts down to zero. Zero is a positive number, so the BPL loop continues until a final decrement wraps around to \$FF, which is negative.

BRK

BRaK: Causes a forced interrupt.

Addressing Modes

Implied	BRK	00	7 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	Set to 1

With unsigned arithmetic (numbers 0–255), the carry flag, C, indicates when an overflow has occurred: numbers larger than 256 or smaller than 0. In signed arithmetic (numbers –128 through 127), an overflow happens when the result is larger than 127 or smaller than –128. The V flag is set when there's an overflow from bit 6 to bit 7. BVC enables you to branch forward or backward based on the current state of V.

BVS

Branch if oVerflow Set: Branch (relative) if the V flag is set.

Addressing Modes

Relative	BVS \$B1DE	70 9F	2 cycles (+1 over a page, +1 if branch occurs)
----------	------------	-------	--

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

BVS acts on a set overflow (V) flag, branching as many as 127 bytes forward or 128 backward.

The V flag is used primarily for work in signed arithmetic (with numbers ranging from –128 through 127). Here, bit 7 holds the sign of the number. Positive values run from \$00 through \$7F (0 through 127); negative numbers from \$80 through \$FF (128 through 255 or –128 through –1).

Prior to the addition or subtraction of two signed numbers, V is usually cleared with CLV. If overflow occurs from bit 6 to 7 as a result of the operation, it means a number larger than 127 or smaller than –128 has been generated. The V flag is set to indicate that a sign change has occurred. A BVS instruction, which generally follows, will then direct the program to branch accordingly.

BVS is also used after BIT when bit 6 of a specified value is being tested.

CLC

CLear Carry: Clear the carry flag.

Addressing Modes

Implied	CLC	18	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	Sets C to zero.

CLC clears the carry flag, which is necessary for the ADC (ADd with Carry) instruction to work properly. It may also be used to force a branch. In the absence of a branch-always instruction, CLC: BCC will suffice. The carry flag also affects rotates (ROL and ROR).

CLD

CLear Decimal mode: Turns off binary-coded decimal (BCD) mode.

Addressing Modes

Implied	CLD	D8	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	Set to zero.
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

CLD is used to restore the computer to its normal binary mode, typically after some BCD operation has been performed.

While decimal mode is in effect (entered with SED), bytes can range in value from 0 through 99, and nybbles from 0 through 9. To carry out a decimal calculation, execute an SED, do the math, and restore binary mode with CLD.

OpCodes

CLI

CLear Interrupt flag: Reenable maskable (IRQ) interrupts.

Addressing Modes

Implied	CLI	58	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	Sets I to zero.
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

Interrupt requests (IRQs) occur 60 times per second (50 times per second on most European 64s and 128s). The interrupt routine is called, and various housekeeping chores such as checking the keyboard and updating the jiffy clock are then performed. There are several other sources of interrupts as well.

In some cases, it's necessary to disable interrupts to forestall the possibility that an IRQ will happen. This is especially important in situations where a wedge is being installed or when character ROM is being read. The SEI instruction sets the interrupt flag to disable IRQs. CLI turns interrupts back on.

Note that the state of the I flag does not affect nonmaskable interrupts (NMIs).

CLV

CLear oVerflow: Clear the overflow flag.

Addressing Modes

Implied	CLV	B8	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	Set to zero.
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

CLV clears the overflow flag (V) to zero, typically before an

operation involving signed arithmetic. Signed arithmetic handles numbers from -128 through 127. The negative numbers are \$80-\$FF (128 through 255 or -128 through -1); the positive numbers are \$00-\$7F (0-127).

When a number changes sign in signed arithmetic, an overflow occurs from bit 6 to bit 7 in the result, setting V. Frequently, at this point—perhaps after a BVS—a CLV is used to clear the flag.

CLV is sometimes used along with BVC to carry out a “branch always” (such as CLV: BVC).

CMP

CoMPare: Compare the number in .A with a value.

Addressing Modes

(Zero page),X	CMP (\$6B),X	C1 6B	6 cycles
Zero page	CMP \$55	C5 55	3 cycles
Immediate	CMP # \$30	C9 30	2 cycles
Absolute	CMP \$1CA8	CD A8 1C	4 cycles
(Zero page),Y	CMP (\$F1),Y	D1 F1	5 cycles (+1 over a page)
Zero page,X	CMP \$10,X	D5 10	4 cycles
Absolute,Y	CMP \$1EFC,Y	D9 FC 1E	4 cycles (+1 over a page)
Absolute,X	CMP \$9500,X	DD 00 95	4 cycles (+1 over a page)

Flags

N (Negative)	—	If .A minus the value is \$80-\$FF (or -128 through -1), N is set.
V (Overflow)	—	—
B (Break)	—	—
D (Decimal)	—	—
I (Interrupt)	—	—
Z (Zero)	—	If .A equals the value, Z is set.
C (Carry)	—	If .A is greater than or equal to the value, C is set.

CMP compares the accumulator value with another number by subtracting the value from .A. The two values are not changed, and the result is thrown away. The operation does set three flags, however.

A very common use of CMP is to look for a specific value—CMP # \$30: BEQ, for example. If .A holds a \$30, the result of subtracting \$30 is zero, and the Z flag will be set. The

OpCodes

BEQ then branches on if equal to zero. If the two numbers are not equal, the branch will not occur.

Another way to use CMP is to look for numbers within a certain range. If the number in .A is greater than or equal to the number being compared, the carry flag will be set. (See SBC for a discussion of how the C flag is used in subtraction.) If .A is less than the value, the C flag will be cleared. You can then use BCS or BCC to branch to the appropriate location.

CPX

ComPare .X: Compare .X with a value.

Addressing Modes

Immediate	CPX #A9	E0 A9	2 cycles
Zero page	CPX \$1F	E4 1F	3 cycles
Absolute	CPX \$3002	EC 02 30	4 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	If .X minus the value is \$80-\$FF, N is set.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If .X equals the value, Z is set.
C (Carry)	If .X is greater than or equal to the value, C is set.

CPX subtracts the value from .X, discarding the result. In the process, three flags are set, based on the result of the subtraction. In most cases, CPX is used along with a branch instruction operating on the N, Z, or C flag.

CPY

ComPare .Y: Compare .Y with a value.

Addressing Modes

Immediate	CPY #16	C0 16	2 cycles
Zero page	CPY \$F0	C4 F0	3 cycles
Absolute	CPY \$C020	CC 20 C0	4 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	If .Y minus the value is \$80-\$FF, N is set.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—

- I (Interrupt) —
- Z (Zero) If .Y equals the value, Z is set.
- C (Carry) If .Y is greater than or equal to the value, C is set.

CPY performs the operation *.Y minus value*, without storing the result anywhere. The N, Z, and C flags are based on the result of the subtraction. CPY is most often used in conjunction with a branch instruction, especially in loops.

DEC

DECrement: Subtract one from a value.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	DEC \$14	C6 14	5 cycles
Absolute	DEC \$4707	CE 07 47	6 cycles
Zero page,X	DEC \$30,X	D6 30	6 cycles
Absolute,X	DEC \$5F02,X	DE 02 5F	7 cycles

Flags

- N (Negative) If the result is negative (\$80-\$FF), N is set.
- V (Overflow) —
- —
- B (Break) —
- D (Decimal) —
- I (Interrupt) —
- Z (Zero) If the value holds a \$01 and it counts to \$00, Z is set.
- C (Carry) —

DEC decrements the contents of the specified byte by one, setting the N and Z flags based on the result. After counting down to zero, the next DEC yields a 255 (a negative number). For this reason, DEC is almost always used in loops which count down to zero (Z is set) or to one past zero (N is set).

DEX

DEcrement .X: Subtract one from the value in the X register.

Addressing Modes

Implied	DEX	CA	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

- N (Negative) If the result is negative (\$80-\$FF), N is set.
- V (Overflow) —
- —
- B (Break) —
- D (Decimal) —

OpCodes

I (Interrupt) —
Z (Zero) If .X holds a \$01 and it counts to \$00, Z is set.
C (Carry) —

DEX is used most often within loops that count from a given value down to zero or one past zero (255). If .X holds a zero, DEX causes it to wrap around to 255.

DEY

DEcrement .Y: Subtract one from the value in the Y register.

Addressing Modes

Implied DEY 88 2 cycles

Flags

N (Negative) If the result is negative (\$80-\$FF), N is set.
V (Overflow) —
— —
B (Break) —
D (Decimal) —
I (Interrupt) —
Z (Zero) If .Y holds a \$01 and it counts to \$00, Z is set.
C (Carry) —

In its application, DEY is similar to DEX. Like DEX, it's frequently found in counting loops that decrement to zero or to one past zero.

EOR

Exclusive OR: Perform a bitwise EOR between the accumulator and a value. The result is stored in the accumulator.

Addressing Modes

(Zero page,X)	EOR (\$EB,X)	41	EB	6 cycles
Zero page	EOR \$E9	45	E9	3 cycles
Immediate	EOR #\$93	49	93	2 cycles
Absolute	EOR \$8DA2	4D	A2 8D	4 cycles
(Zero page),Y	EOR (\$C2),Y	51	C2	5 cycles (+1 over a page)
Zero page,X	EOR \$2B,X	55	2B	4 cycles
Absolute,Y	EOR \$CF88,Y	59	88 CF	4 cycles (+1 over a page)
Absolute,X	EOR \$53E8,X	5D	E8 53	4 cycles (+1 over a page)

Flags

N (Negative)	If the result is \$80-\$FF, N is set.
V (Overflow)	—
-	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If the result is zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	—

EOR is a bitwise operation like AND and OR. It compares the bits in the accumulator with a value from memory and sets the resulting bits according to the logic of exclusive OR, which is *one or the other, but not both*. A one and a zero result in a bit that's set. But if both are zeros or both are ones, the result is a zero:

```
$6E 0110 1110
$16 0001 0110
$78 0111 1000
```

In the example note that where bits are set in \$16 (bits 1, 2, and 4), the corresponding bits in \$6E are flipped. If you EOR a given bit with zero, the result is no change. But if you EOR with one, a zero becomes a one, and a one becomes a zero.

EOR's primary uses are in flipping specific bits of a memory location or register, and in encryption. If you EOR with a specific number and then EOR with the same number, you get back the original value. This property makes EOR valuable for encoding and decoding.

INC

INCrement: Add one to a value.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	INC \$2F	E6 2F	5 cycles
Absolute	INC \$BC0B	EE 0B BC	6 cycles
Zero page,X	INC \$24,X	F6 24	6 cycles
Absolute,X	INC \$BFFF,X	FE FF BF	7 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	If the result is negative (\$80-\$FF), N is set.
V (Overflow)	—
-	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—

Opcodes

Z (Zero) If the value holds an \$FF and it counts to \$00, Z is set.

C (Carry) —

INC adds one to a memory location, almost invariably a counter byte. If the byte holds a 255 (\$FF), it wraps around to zero. This makes it ideal for loops where the X and Y registers are already being used (thus precluding use of INX and INY).

INX

INcReMent .X: Add one to the value in .X.

Addressing Modes

Implied INX E8 2 cycles

Flags

N (Negative) If the result is between \$80 and \$FF, the N flag is set.

V (Overflow) —

— —

B (Break) —

D (Decimal) —

I (Interrupt) —

Z (Zero) If .X counts from \$FF through \$00, the Z flag is set.

C (Carry) —

INX adds one to the value in the X register. If .X currently holds a 255 (\$FF), the value wraps around to zero. INX is usually found inside loops that count forward, where .X may be involved in an indexed load or store.

INY

INcReMent .Y: Add one to the value in .Y.

Addressing Modes

Implied INY C8 2 cycles

Flags

N (Negative) If the result is \$80-\$FF, the N flag is set.

V (Overflow) —

— —

B (Break) —

D (Decimal) —

I (Interrupt) —

Z (Zero) If .Y counts from \$FF to \$00, the Z flag is set.

C (Carry) —

INY adds one to the Y register, causing it to turn over to zero when 255 (\$FF) is reached. As with INX, this makes it ideal for loops branching on the N or Z flag.

JMP

JuMP: Jump to a given address.

Addressing Modes

Absolute	JMP \$6299	4C 99 62	3 cycles
(Absolute)	JMP (\$0E08)	6C 08 0E	5 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

JMP changes the value in the program counter; the next instruction to be executed will come from the address provided. JMP is the ML equivalent of BASIC's GOTO.

An absolute jump just moves to the address indicated. An indirect jump—JMP (\$060C), for example—loads the two-byte address from the given *vector* and jumps there. If \$060C contains a \$D2 and \$060D has an \$FF, the indirect jump will combine the low byte and the high byte and go to \$FFD2.

Because of a bug in the 6502, you should avoid putting indirect jumps directly into a program that assembles to unknown memory locations. If the vector falls on a page boundary (say, \$08FF-\$0900), the low byte will be loaded from \$08FF as expected, but the high byte will come from \$0800, not from \$0900. In a case like this, there's no telling where the indirect jump will go. The best policy is to put vectors at known addresses.

Many 64 and 128 routines use indirect jump vectors in RAM. Most are found in page 3 (\$0300-\$03FF).

JSR

Jump to SubRoutine: Jump to a given address, saving the return address.

Addressing Modes

Absolute	JSR \$6E01	20 01 6E	6 cycles
----------	------------	----------	----------

OpCodes

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

JSR changes the program counter to the address specified. A return address, pointing to the instruction following the JSR, is left on the stack. GOSUB is the BASIC equivalent of JSR.

JSR is used primarily when a section of code is used repeatedly in a program. Rather than the code being replicated each time it's needed, it's set apart from the main program as a subroutine, typically ending with RTS and called with JSR.

To speed up your program a little and save a byte of memory, you may replace any JSR followed directly by an RTS with a JMP instruction. For example, instead of JSR \$FFD2: RTS, you may use JMP \$FFD2—in effect, borrowing the RTS at the end of the \$FFD2 routine.

LDA

Load the Accumulator: Put a value into .A.

Addressing Modes

(Zero page),X	LDA (\$7B),X	A1 7B	6 cycles
Zero page	LDA \$77	A5 77	3 cycles
Immediate	LDA #\$02	A9 02	2 cycles
Absolute	LDA \$DBC2	AD C2 DB	4 cycles
(Zero page),Y	LDA (\$DF),Y	B1 DF	5 cycles (+1 over a page)
Zero page,X	LDA \$6D,X	B5 6D	4 cycles
Absolute,Y	LDA \$0AEF,Y	B9 EF 0A	4 cycles (+1 over a page)
Absolute,X	LDA \$3D77	BD 77 3D	4 cycles (+1 over a page)

Flags

N (Negative)	If the value is negative (\$80-\$FF), N is set.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—

Z (Zero) If the value is a zero, Z is set.
 C (Carry) —

LDA is one of the most widely used instructions. It loads a number from memory into the accumulator. (Immediate mode loads a specified number into .A; in this case, the number is part of the program, following immediately after the \$A9 opcode.)

Usually, the value loaded is soon stored into memory with STA, although it may also be used in a math operation like ADC, AND, EOR, ORA, SBC, or the like.

LDX

Load .X: Load a value into the X register.

Addressing Modes

Immediate	LDX #\$BB	A2 BB	2 cycles
Zero page	LDX \$7A	A6 7A	3 cycles
Absolute	LDX \$A808	AE 08 A8	4 cycles
(Zero page).Y	LDX (\$FD),Y	B6 FD	4 cycles
Absolute,Y	LDX \$3F09,Y	BE 09 3F	4 cycles

(+1 over a page)

Flags

N (Negative) If the value is \$80-\$FF, N is set.
 V (Overflow) —
 — —
 B (Break) —
 D (Decimal) —
 I (Interrupt) —
 Z (Zero) If .X is loaded with a zero, Z is set.
 C (Carry) —

LDX loads a specific value into the X register. Common uses are in transferring data from temporary locations or onto the stack (LDX: TXS), in initializing counter loops, or in setting up an offset for indexed addressing.

LDY

Load .Y: Load a value into the Y register.

Addressing Modes

Immediate	LDY #\$A5	A0 A5	2 cycles
Zero page	LDY \$12	A4 12	3 cycles
Absolute	LDY \$0BF5	AC F5 0B	4 cycles
Zero page,X	LDY \$39,X	B4 39	4 cycles
Absolute,X	LDY \$133B,X	BC 3B 13	4 cycles

(+1 over a page)

OpCodes

Flags

N (Negative)	If the value is \$80-\$FF, N is set.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If .Y is loaded with a zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	—

The LDY instruction puts a given number into the Y register. Most often, you'll see immediate addressing in preparation for a loop indexed by .Y. Either .Y is loaded with zero (for a loop that counts forward with INY) or with a specific number (for a loop that counts down with DEY).

LSR

Logical Shift Right: Shift a value (accumulator or memory) to the right.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	LSR \$A3	46	A3	5	cycles	
Accumulator	LSR	4A		2	cycles	
Absolute	LSR \$CA06	4E	06	CA	6	cycles
Zero page,X	LSR \$DD,X	56	DD		6	cycles
Absolute,X	LSR \$5D02,X	5E	02	5D	7	cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	Set to zero.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If the value is \$01 or \$00, Z is set.
C (Carry)	Bit 0 shifts into carry and sets/clears the C flag.

The LSR instruction shifts all eight bits one position to the right, placing a zero in bit 7 and moving bit 0 into the carry flag.

A frequent application of LSR is to test bit 0 and branch accordingly (LSR: BCS/BCC). But LSR probably finds its greatest use in certain mathematical manipulations: converting negative numbers to positive (LSR: ROL), dividing bytes by 2 with the remainder placed in C, and shifting the high nybble of a byte into the low nybble (LSR: LSR: LSR: LSR).

NOP

No OPeration: Do nothing.

Addressing Modes

Implied	NOP	EA	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

After a NOP, the values in memory, the numbers in the registers, and the status flags remain the same. The program counter advances by one. NOP is sometimes used to remove part of a program. If three bytes hold a JSR instruction, you can POKE NOPs on top of the memory there, and the program will not execute the JSR. NOPs are also found in delay loops where the timing is finely tuned.

ORA

Bitwise OR: Perform a bitwise OR between .A and a value, storing the result in .A.

Addressing Modes

(Zero page),X	ORA (\$1B,X)	01 1B	6 cycles
Zero page	ORA \$68	05 68	3 cycles
Immediate	ORA #\$3F	09 3F	2 cycles
Absolute	ORA \$BA03	0D 03 BA	4 cycles
(Zero page),Y	ORA (\$4C),Y	11 4C	5 cycles
Zero page,X	ORA \$63,X	15 63	4 cycles
Absolute,Y	ORA \$4E0F,Y	19 0F 4E	4 cycles
			(+1 over a page)
Absolute,X	ORA \$2A0B,X	1D 0B 2A	4 cycles
			(+1 over a page)

Flags

N (Negative)	If bit 7 is set, the N flag is set.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—

Opcodes

Z (Zero) If the result is zero, Z is set.

C (Carry) —

ORA performs a bitwise OR on a value. Corresponding bits in .A and the value are compared. If either bit is on, the result is one.

For instance, to turn on bits 0 and 1 in \$BC, you would ORA with \$03:

```
$BC 1011 1100
```

```
$03 0000 0011
```

```
$BF 1011 1111
```

To turn certain bits off, use AND.

PHA

Push .A: Push the current value of the accumulator onto the stack. The accumulator is not changed. The stack pointer decreases by one.

Addressing Modes

Implied	PHA	48	3 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative) —

V (Overflow) —

— —

B (Break) —

D (Decimal) —

I (Interrupt) —

Z (Zero) —

C (Carry) —

PHA pushes .A onto the stack. No flags are affected. A common use for PHA is to temporarily save the number in the accumulator. You push it, do something else, then pull it back. Another, more sophisticated technique is to push two values onto the stack and then execute an RTS. RTS returns from a subroutine to the original program that called the subroutine. It does so by pulling the program counter (minus one) from the stack. If PHA has put a valid address on the stack, RTS will return to the address you have provided. Push the high byte first, then the low byte of the address (minus one) of the routine you wish to call.

PHP

Push Processor status register: Push the value in the processor's status register onto the stack. The stack pointer decreases by one.

Addressing Modes

Implied	PHP	08	3 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

PHP stores the contents of the status register on the stack, affecting no flags. The processor status register (P) contains all the flags (N, V, B, D, I, Z, and C).

PHP is the complementary instruction to PLP, which pulls a stack byte into the status register. When status bits are being tested, PHP and PLP are often found in tandem, especially when intervening instructions are apt to affect these bits.

For instance, suppose you wished to branch, based on the N flag following a particular instruction, but operations that affect the status flag are necessary prior to the branch. To preserve the status register for later testing, you would push it onto the stack with PHP, proceed with the interfering operations, and then restore it with PLP just before the branch.

When using this approach, remember not to use other stack-oriented instructions like JSR, RTS, or RTI before the PLP has executed.

PLA

PuLl .A: Pull a value from the stack into the accumulator.

Addressing Modes

Implied	PLA	68	4 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	If the number is negative, N is set to one.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—

- I (Interrupt) —
Z (Zero) If a zero is pulled, Z is set.
C (Carry) —

PLA pulls values off the stack. It is the opposite of PHA, which pushes numbers there. After the PLA, the stack pointer is increased by one.

PHA and PLA are useful for temporarily storing the current status of the accumulator. You push a value onto the stack, perform some other operation, and then pull it back into A. However, you should be careful that you don't perform other stack-oriented operations such as JSR, RTS, or RTI, in the meantime.

PHA and PLA can also be used to set up and destroy addresses for RTS. You may JSR to a routine only to find that (in special cases) it's not necessary to RTS back to the calling routine. Two PLAs will remove the return address from the stack. (JSR pushes the return address minus one onto the stack, high byte first, and RTS pulls the two bytes.)

PLP

PuLl Processor status register: Pull a value from the stack into the processor's status register.

Addressing Modes

Implied PLP 28 4 cycles

Flags

- N (Negative) If the number is negative, N is set.
V (Overflow) If bit 6 is on, V is set.
— —
B (Break) If bit 4 is on, B is set.
D (Decimal) If bit 3 is on, D is set.
I (Interrupt) If bit 2 is on, I is set.
Z (Zero) If bit 1 is on, Z is set.
C (Carry) If bit 0 is on, C is set.

PLP takes a byte from the stack, placing it in the status register. The stack pointer increments by one.

PLP is the opposite of PHP, which pushes the contents of the status register onto the stack. These two are frequently used together, much like PHA/PLA.

PLP's role in this arrangement is to retrieve the status register after it has been pushed onto the stack with PHP. Typically in this situation a branching instruction will follow.

ROL

ROtate Left: Rotate a value (accumulator or memory) to the left.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	ROL \$3A	26	3A	5 cycles
Accumulator	ROL	2A		2 cycles
Absolute	ROL \$8FA6	2E	A6 8F	6 cycles
Zero page,X	ROL \$46,X	36	46	6 cycles
Absolute,X	ROL \$0EFB,X	3E	FB 0E	7 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	Bit 6 rotates into 7 and sets/clears the N flag.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If carry is clear and bits 0–6 are zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	Bit 7 rotates into carry.

ROL causes all eight bits to rotate one position to the left. The carry flag moves into bit 0, and bit 7 moves into the carry flag. ROL is most commonly used in two-byte shifts: You ASL the low byte and ROL the high byte.

ROR

ROtate Right: Rotate a value (accumulator or memory) to the right.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	ROR \$13	66	13	5 cycles
Accumulator	ROR	6A		2 cycles
Absolute	ROR \$BB67	6E	67 BB	6 cycles
Zero page,X	ROR \$E1,X	76	E1	6 cycles
Absolute,X	ROR \$1110,X	7E	10 11	7 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	Carry rotates into bit 7 and sets/clears the N flag.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If carry is clear and bits 1–7 are zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	Bit 0 rotates into carry.

Opcodes

ROR is the complement instruction to ROL: It shifts all eight bits one position to the right. Bit 0 moves into the carry flag, and carry shifts into bit 7.

ROR is used to carry out two-byte shifts (to halve a number). You first LSR the high byte and then ROR the low byte. Also, ROR often precedes testing of the N, Z, or C flag.

RTI

ReTurn from Interrupt: Restore the processor status and the program counter.

Addressing Modes

Implied RTI 40 6 cycles

Flags

N (Negative) Reset to its status before the interrupt.

V (Overflow) Reset to its status before the interrupt.

—

B (Break) Reset to its status before the interrupt.

D (Decimal) Reset to its status before the interrupt.

I (Interrupt) Reset to its status before the interrupt.

Z (Zero) Reset to its status before the interrupt.

C (Carry) Reset to its status before the interrupt.

When an interrupt occurs, the current program counter (high byte, then low byte) is pushed onto the stack, followed by the processor status (P), where all the flags are located.

RTI causes .P to be pulled from the stack, followed by the program counter. The program then continues at one byte beyond the address pulled from the stack.

RTS

ReTurn from Subroutine: Reset the program counter using the return address on the stack.

Addressing Modes

Implied RTS 60 6 cycles

Flags

N (Negative) —

V (Overflow) —

—

B (Break) —

D (Decimal) —

I (Interrupt) —

Z (Zero) —
 C (Carry) —

RTS removes the last two bytes from the stack (low byte first, then high byte), adds 1 to the resulting address, and places it in the program counter. The stack pointer increments by 2, and program execution continues at the return address in the program counter. Unlike RTI, the RTS instruction affects no flags.

RTS is used almost exclusively to return from a subroutine, whether called from within the ML with JSR or from BASIC with SYS. When an ML subroutine is called from BASIC, the return address for BASIC's main loop is first placed on the stack. So, once the ML routine is complete, a return to the BASIC program successfully occurs.

Another application of RTS involves simulating a JMP instruction. With PHA, you push the high bytes and low bytes of a routine you wish to jump to onto the stack. (Because RTS adds 1 to the address it finds, you *must* subtract 1 from the actual address of the routine you're calling before pushing the address onto the stack.) When the next RTS executes, the program continues, using the address on the stack. Take care that you don't put extra bytes on the stack before the RTS.

SBC

SuBtract with Carry: Subtract a value from the accumulator, with the result in .A.

Addressing Modes

(Zero page),X	SBC (\$8A,X)	E1 8A	6 cycles
Zero page	SBC \$1A	E5 1A	3 cycles
Immediate	SBC #\$B7	E9 B7	2 cycles
Absolute	SBC \$6862	ED 62 68	4 cycles
(Zero page),Y	SBC (\$E1),Y	F1 E1	5 cycles (+1 over a page)
Zero page,X	SBC (\$D6),X	F5 D6	4 cycles
Absolute,Y	SBC \$80EB,Y	F9 EB 80	4 cycles (+1 over a page)
Absolute,X	SBC \$7088	FD 88 70	4 cycles (+1 over a page)

Flags

N (Negative) If the result is \$80-\$FF, the N flag is set.
 V (Overflow) If an overflow occurs, V is set.
 — —
 B (Break) —
 D (Decimal) —

OpCodes

- I (Interrupt) —
Z (Zero) If the result is zero, Z is set.
C (Carry) If .A is greater than or equal to the value subtracted, the result is positive, and C is set.

The rule to remember is always to clear the carry flag (CLC) before addition and always to set the carry flag (SEC) before subtraction. If you're subtracting large numbers (two bytes or more), set carry before subtracting the least significant byte. As larger numbers are subtracted, carry will take care of itself.

Subtracting a large number from a smaller number (5 - 20, for example) will result in a cleared carry. If the second number is smaller than the first, carry will remain set.

The result of the subtraction is found in the accumulator; if you want to save the number, be sure to STA after the subtraction.

SEC

SEt Carry: Set the carry flag.

Addressing Modes

Implied SEC 38 2 cycles

Flags

- N (Negative) —
V (Overflow) —
— —
B (Break) —
D (Decimal) —
I (Interrupt) —
Z (Zero) —
C (Carry) Set to one.

SEC, the complementary instruction to CLC, sets the carry flag. This is necessary in order for SBC to work correctly (for a "borrow"). SEC can also force a branch (SEC: BCS), or it may be used along with the rotate instructions (ROL, ROR). Additionally, some Kernal routines set carry with SEC to indicate that an error has occurred.

SED

SEt Decimal mode: Turns on binary-coded decimal (BCD) mode.

Addressing Modes

Implied SED F8 2 cycles

Flags

- N (Negative) —
- V (Overflow) —
- —
- B (Break) —
- D (Decimal) Set to one.
- I (Interrupt) —
- Z (Zero) —
- C (Carry) —

SED turns on BCD mode, where bytes are allowed to have 100 values (\$00-\$99) instead of 255 (\$00-\$FF). When the decimal flag is turned on, addition and subtraction act only on the numbers 0-9. If you add 1 to \$09 in decimal mode, the result is \$10, not \$0A. Individual nybbles are allowed to hold the numbers \$0-\$9 instead of \$0-\$F.

To turn off the D flag, use CLD.

SEI

SEt Interrupt flag: Disable maskable (IRQ) interrupts.

Addressing Modes

Implied SEI 78 2 cycles

Flags

- N (Negative) —
- V (Overflow) —
- —
- B (Break) —
- D (Decimal) —
- I (Interrupt) Set to one.
- Z (Zero) —
- C (Carry) —

Every 1/60 second (or 1/50 second on most European 64s and 128s), an interrupt request (IRQ) occurs. At this time, a service routine handles various housekeeping chores like updating the jiffy clock and the screen, or checking the keyboard.

SEI prevents the normal IRQ interrupts from being honored by setting the I flag. (Nonmaskable interrupts—NMIs—like BRK are still active.) Frequently, it is necessary to set this flag before certain vectors are changed.

Turn interrupts back on with CLI.

STA

STore Accumulator: Copy the contents of .A to memory.

Addressing Modes

(Zero page),X	STA (\$F6,X)	81	F6	6	cycles
Zero page	STA \$2D	85	2D	3	cycles
Absolute	STA \$B8F6	8D	F6 B8	4	cycles
(Zero page),Y	STA (\$DF),Y	91	DF	6	cycles
Zero page,X	STA \$4E,X	95	4E	4	cycles
Absolute,Y	STA \$3EA5,Y	99	A5 3E	5	cycles
Absolute,X	STA \$7534,X	9D	34 75	5	cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

STA and LDA are probably the two most common instructions in ML. LDA puts a value into the accumulator; STA stores the value from .A into memory. The contents of the accumulator remain unchanged after the store.

STX

STore .X: Store the value in the X register to memory.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	STX \$C6	86	C6	3	cycles
Absolute	STX \$6D0E	8E	0E 6D	4	cycles
Zero page,Y	STX \$FA,Y	96	FA	4	cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

STX puts the value currently in .X into memory. No flags or data registers are affected. STX is similar in its applications to

STA, temporarily storing the contents of the register to memory or initializing memory to a set value. Note that STX has far fewer addressing modes than does STA. Because loading and storing from .A is more flexible, the X register is most often used as a counter or as an index.

STY

STore .Y: Store the value in the Y register to memory.

Addressing Modes

Zero page	STY \$9E	84	9E	3 cycles
Absolute	STY \$6F17	8C	17 6F	4 cycles
Zero page,X	STY \$58,X	94	58	4 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	—
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	—
C (Carry)	—

STY takes the value in .Y and stores it to memory. The Y register is not affected. STY is sometimes helpful when the index value needs to be saved (before a subroutine that changes the registers), but it really isn't used very often.

TAX

Transfer .A to .X: Copy the value in the accumulator to the X register.

Addressing Modes

Implied	TAX	AA	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative)	If .A holds \$80-\$FF, N is set.
V (Overflow)	—
—	—
B (Break)	—
D (Decimal)	—
I (Interrupt)	—
Z (Zero)	If .A holds a zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	—

Opcodes

TAX moves the value in .A to .X. This instruction is handy for temporarily storing the contents of the accumulator or for initializing .X when indexed addressing is used.

TAY

Transfer .A to .Y: Moves the value in the accumulator to .Y.

Addressing Modes

Implied	TAY	A8	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative) If .A is negative (\$80-\$FF), the N flag is set.

V (Overflow) —

— —

B (Break) —

D (Decimal) —

I (Interrupt) —

Z (Zero) If .A is zero, this flag is set.

C (Carry) —

TAY copies the value in .A to .Y. The original value in the accumulator remains unchanged. Some programmers use this technique to temporarily save the value of .A. Another use is to set up an indexed LDA from a table.

TSX

Transfer Stack pointer to .X: Copy the value in the stack pointer to the X register.

Addressing Modes

Implied	TSX	BA	2 cycles
---------	-----	----	----------

Flags

N (Negative) If the stack pointer is \$80-\$FF, the N flag is set.

V (Overflow) —

— —

B (Break) —

D (Decimal) —

I (Interrupt) —

Z (Zero) If the stack pointer is zero, Z is set.

C (Carry) —

TSX moves the stack pointer into .X. The stack pointer itself is a single byte, offset to \$0100.

One application of TSX is to determine the amount of space remaining on the stack. Another is to examine the contents of the stack. (Use TSX: LDA \$0100,X to look at the last

value placed on the stack.) Still a third application involves saving the current stack pointer while using a portion of the stack for certain operations.

TXA

Transfer .X to .A: Moves the value in .X to the accumulator, leaving .X unchanged.

Addressing Modes

Implied TXA 8A 2 cycles

Flags

N (Negative) If the value transferred is \$80-\$FF, N is set.

V (Overflow) —

— —

B (Break) —

D (Decimal) —

I (Interrupt) —

Z (Zero) If .X holds a 00, the Z flag is set.

C (Carry) —

TXA moves the number currently in .X to .A. The value in .X remains the same. This is sometimes done in preparation for an instruction such as ADC, PHA, SBC, or some other operation that cannot be performed directly on the X register.

TXS

Transfer .X to Stack pointer: Copy the value in the X register to the stack pointer.

Addressing Modes

Implied TXS 9A 2 cycles

Flags

N (Negative) —

V (Overflow) —

— —

B (Break) —

D (Decimal) —

I (Interrupt) —

Z (Zero) —

C (Carry) —

TXS moves the contents of the X register into the stack pointer. This instruction is used by the computer as part of its own power-up routine. The stack pointer is set to the top of the stack (which is called *clearing the stack*) when the com-

Opcodes

puter is first turned on or RESET with LDX #\$FF: TXS.

TXS is also helpful in restoring the stack pointer after any processing has been carried out within the stack itself.

TYA

Transfer .Y to .A: Copy the value in the Y register to the accumulator; .Y remains unchanged.

Addressing Modes

Implied TYA 98 2 cycles

Flags

N (Negative)	—	If .Y holds \$80-\$FF, N is set. If .Y is \$00-\$7F, N is clear.
V (Overflow)	—	
—	—	
B (Break)	—	
D (Decimal)	—	
I (Interrupt)	—	
Z (Zero)	—	If .Y holds a zero, Z is set.
C (Carry)	—	

TYA moves the value in .Y to .A. This is sometimes necessary because the accumulator can perform some operations (like addition and subtraction) that aren't available for .Y.

Opcodes Listed Numerically

Opcode	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode
00	BRK	Implied
01 ZX	ORA	(Zero page,X)
02	Undefined	—
03	Undefined	—
04	Undefined	—
05 ZP	ORA	Zero page
06 ZP	ASL	Zero page
07	Undefined	—
08	PHP	Implied
09 IM	ORA	Immediate
0A	ASL	Accumulator
0B	Undefined	—
0C	Undefined	—
0D LO HI	ORA	Absolute
0E LO HI	ASL	Absolute
0F	Undefined	—
10 RE	BPL	Relative
11 ZY	ORA	(Zero page),Y
12	Undefined	—
13	Undefined	—
14	Undefined	—
15 ZP	ORA	Zero page,X
16 ZP	ASL	Zero page,X
17	Undefined	—
18	CLC	Implied
19 LO HI	ORA	Absolute,Y
1A	Undefined	—
1B	Undefined	—
1C	Undefined	—
1D LO HI	ORA	Absolute,X
1E LO HI	ASL	Absolute,X
1F	Undefined	—
20 LO HI	JSR	Absolute
21 ZX	AND	(Zero page,X)
22	Undefined	—
23	Undefined	—
24 ZP	BIT	Zero page
25 ZP	AND	Zero page
26 ZP	ROL	Zero page
27	Undefined	—
28	PLP	Implied
29 IM	AND	Immediate
2A	ROL	Accumulator
2B	Undefined	—

Opcodes

Opcode	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode
2C LO HI	BIT	Absolute
2D LO HI	AND	Absolute
2E LO HI	ROL	Absolute
2F	Undefined	—
30 RE	BMI	Relative
31 ZY	AND	(Zero page),Y
32	Undefined	—
33	Undefined	—
34	Undefined	—
35 ZP	AND	Zero page,X
36 ZP	ROL	Zero page,X
37	Undefined	—
38	SEC	Implied
39 LO HI	AND	Absolute,Y
3A	Undefined	—
3B	Undefined	—
3C	Undefined	—
3D LO HI	AND	Absolute,X
3E LO HI	ROL	Absolute,X
3F	Undefined	—
40	RTI	Implied
41 ZX	EOR	(Zero page,X)
42	Undefined	—
43	Undefined	—
44	Undefined	—
45 ZP	EOR	Zero page
46 ZP	LSR	Zero page
47	Undefined	—
48	PHA	Implied
49 IM	EOR	Immediate
4A	LSR	Accumulator
4B	Undefined	—
4C LO HI	JMP	Absolute
4D LO HI	EOR	Absolute
4E LO HI	LSR	Absolute
4F	Undefined	—
50 RE	BVC	Relative
51 ZY	EOR	(Zero page),Y
52	Undefined	—
53	Undefined	—
54	Undefined	—
55 ZP	EOR	Zero page,X
56 ZP	LSR	Zero page,X
57	Undefined	—
58	CLI	Implied

Opcode	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode
59 LO HI	EOR	Absolute,Y
5A	Undefined	—
5B	Undefined	—
5C	Undefined	—
5D LO HI	EOR	Absolute,X
5E LO HI	LSR	Absolute,X
5F	Undefined	—
60	RTS	Implied
61 ZX	ADC	(Zero page,X)
62	Undefined	—
63	Undefined	—
64	Undefined	—
65 ZP	ADC	Zero page
66 ZP	ROR	Zero page
67	Undefined	—
68	PLA	Implied
69 IM	ADC	Immediate
6A	ROR	Accumulator
6B	Undefined	—
6C LO HI	JMP	(Absolute)
6D LO HI	ADC	Absolute
6E LO HI	ROR	Absolute
6F	Undefined	—
70 RE	BVS	Relative
71 ZY	ADC	(Zero page),Y
72	Undefined	—
73	Undefined	—
74	Undefined	—
75 ZP	ADC	Zero page,X
76 ZP	ROR	Zero page,X
77	Undefined	—
78	SEI	Implied
79 LO HI	ADC	Absolute,Y
7A	Undefined	—
7B	Undefined	—
7C	Undefined	—
7D LO HI	ADC	Absolute,X
7E LO HI	ROR	Absolute,X
7F	Undefined	—
80	Undefined	—
81 ZX	STA	(Zero page,X)
82	Undefined	—
83	Undefined	—
84 ZP	STY	Zero page
85 ZP	STA	Zero page

Opcodes

Opcode	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode
86 ZP	STX	Zero page
87	Undefined	—
88	DEY	Implied
89	Undefined	—
8A	TXA	Implied
8B	Undefined	—
8C LO HI	STY	Absolute
8D LO HI	STA	Absolute
8E LO HI	STX	Absolute
8F	Undefined	—
90 RE	BCC	Relative
91 ZY	STA	(Zero page),Y
92	Undefined	—
93	Undefined	—
94 ZP	STY	Zero page,X
95 ZP	STA	Zero page,X
96 ZP	STX	Zero page,Y
97	Undefined	—
98	TYA	Implied
99 LO HI	STA	Absolute,Y
9A	TXS	Implied
9B	Undefined	—
9C	Undefined	—
9D LO HI	STA	Absolute,X
9E	Undefined	—
9F	Undefined	—
A0 IM	LDY	Immediate
A1 ZX	LDA	(Zero page),X
A2 IM	LDX	Immediate
A3	Undefined	—
A4 ZP	LDY	Zero page
A5 ZP	LDA	Zero page
A6 ZP	LDX	Zero page
A7	Undefined	—
A8	TAY	Implied
A9 IM	LDA	Immediate
AA	TAX	Implied
AB	Undefined	—
AC LO HI	LDY	Absolute
AD LO HI	LDA	Absolute
AE LO HI	LDX	Absolute
AF	Undefined	—
B0 RE	BCS	Relative
B1 ZY	LDA	(Zero page),Y
B2	Undefined	—

Opcode	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode
B3	Undefined	—
B4 ZP	LDY	Zero page,X
B5 ZP	LDA	Zero page,X
B6 ZP	LDX	Zero page,Y
B7	Undefined	—
B8	CLV	Implied
B9 LO HI	LDA	Absolute,Y
BA	TSX	Implied
BB	Undefined	—
BC LO HI	LDY	Absolute,X
BD LO HI	LDA	Absolute,X
BE LO HI	LDX	Absolute,Y
BF	Undefined	—
C0 IM	CPY	Immediate
C1 ZX	CMP	(Zero page,X)
C2	Undefined	—
C3	Undefined	—
C4 ZP	CPY	Zero page
C5 ZP	CMP	Zero page
C6 ZP	DEC	Zero page
C7	Undefined	—
C8	INY	Implied
C9 IM	CMP	Immediate
CA	DEX	Implied
CB	Undefined	—
CC LO HI	CPY	Absolute
CD LO HI	CMP	Absolute
CE LO HI	DEC	Absolute
CF	Undefined	—
D0 RE	BNE	Relative
D1 ZY	CMP	(Zero page),Y
D2	Undefined	—
D3	Undefined	—
D4	Undefined	—
D5 ZP	CMP	Zero page,X
D6 ZP	DEC	Zero page,X
D7	Undefined	—
D8	CLD	Implied
D9 LO HI	CMP	Absolute,Y
DA	Undefined	—
DB	Undefined	—
DC	Undefined	—
DD LO HI	CMP	Absolute,X
DE LO HI	DEC	Absolute,X
DF	Undefined	—

OpCodes

Opcode	Mnemonic	Addressing Mode
E0 IM	CPX	Immediate
E1 ZX	SBC	(Zero page,X)
E2	Undefined	—
E3	Undefined	—
E4 ZP	CPX	Zero page
E5 ZP	SBC	Zero page
E6 ZP	INC	Zero page
E7	Undefined	—
E8	INX	Implied
E9 IM	SBC	Immediate
EA	NOP	Implied
EB	Undefined	—
EC LO HI	CPX	Absolute
ED LO HI	SBC	Absolute
EE LO HI	INC	Absolute
EF	Undefined	—
F0 RE	BEQ	Relative
F1 ZY	SBC	(Zero page),Y
F2	Undefined	—
F3	Undefined	—
F4	Undefined	—
F5 ZP	SBC	Zero page,X
F6 ZP	INC	Zero page,X
F7	Undefined	—
F8	SED	Implied
F9 LO HI	SBC	Absolute,Y
FA	Undefined	—
FB	Undefined	—
FC	Undefined	—
FD LO HI	SBC	Absolute,X
FE LO HI	INC	Absolute,X
FF	Undefined	—

Instructions Arranged Alphabetically

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	Opcode
ADC	Absolute	6D LO HI
ADC	Absolute,X	7D LO HI
ADC	Absolute,Y	79 LO HI
ADC	Immediate	69 IM
ADC	Zero page	65 ZP
ADC	Zero page,X	75 ZP
ADC	(Zero page,X)	61 ZX
ADC	(Zero page),Y	71 ZY
AND	Absolute	2D LO HI
AND	Absolute,X	3D LO HI
AND	Absolute,Y	39 LO HI
AND	Immediate	29 IM
AND	Zero page	25 ZP
AND	Zero page,X	35 ZP
AND	(Zero page,X)	21 ZX
AND	(Zero page),Y	31 ZY
ASL	Absolute	0E LO HI
ASL	Absolute,X	1E LO HI
ASL	Accumulator	0A
ASL	Zero page	06 ZP
ASL	Zero page,X	16 ZP
BCC	Relative	90 RE
BCS	Relative	B0 RE
BEQ	Relative	F0 RE
BIT	Absolute	2C LO HI
BIT	Zero page	24 ZP
BMI	Relative	30 RE
BNE	Relative	D0 RE
BPL	Relative	10 RE
BRK	Implied	00
BVC	Relative	50 RE
BVS	Relative	70 RE
CLC	Implied	18
CLD	Implied	D8
CLI	Implied	58
CLV	Implied	B8
CMP	Absolute	CD LO HI
CMP	Absolute,X	DD LO HI
CMP	Absolute,Y	D9 LO HI
CMP	Immediate	C9 IM
CMP	Zero page	C5 ZP
CMP	Zero page,X	D5 ZP
CMP	(Zero page,X)	C1 ZX
CMP	(Zero page),Y	D1 ZY

OpCodes

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	Opcode
CPX	Absolute	EC LO HI
CPX	Immediate	E0 IM
CPX	Zero page	E4 ZP
CPY	Absolute	CC LO HI
CPY	Immediate	C0 IM
CPY	Zero page	C4 ZP
DEC	Absolute	CE LO HI
DEC	Absolute,X	DE LO HI
DEC	Zero page	C6 ZP
DEC	Zero page,X	D6 ZP
DEX	Implied	CA
DEY	Implied	88
EOR	Absolute	4D LO HI
EOR	Absolute,X	5D LO HI
EOR	Absolute,Y	59 LO HI
EOR	Immediate	49 IM
EOR	Zero page	45 ZP
EOR	Zero page,X	55 ZP
EOR	(Zero page,X)	41 ZX
EOR	(Zero page),Y	51 ZY
INC	Absolute	EE LO HI
INC	Absolute,X	FE LO HI
INC	Zero page	E6 ZP
INC	Zero page,X	F6 ZP
INX	Implied	E8
INY	Implied	C8
JMP	Absolute	4C LO HI
JMP	(Absolute)	6C LO HI
JSR	Absolute	20 LO HI
LDA	Absolute	AD LO HI
LDA	Absolute,X	BD LO HI
LDA	Absolute,Y	B9 LO HI
LDA	Immediate	A9 IM
LDA	Zero page	A5 ZP
LDA	Zero page,X	B5 ZP
LDA	(Zero page,X)	A1 ZX
LDA	(Zero page),Y	B1 ZY
LDX	Absolute	AE LO HI
LDX	Absolute,Y	BE LO HI
LDX	Immediate	A2 IM
LDX	Zero page	A6 ZP
LDX	Zero page,Y	B6 ZP
LDY	Absolute	AC LO HI
LDY	Absolute,X	BC LO HI
LDY	Immediate	A0 IM

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	Opcode
LDY	Zero page	A4 ZP
LDY	Zero page,X	B4 ZP
LSR	Absolute	4E LO HI
LSR	Absolute,X	5E LO HI
LSR	Accumulator	4A
LSR	Zero page	46 ZP
LSR	Zero page,X	56 ZP
NOP	Implied	EA
ORA	Absolute	0D LO HI
ORA	Absolute,X	1D LO HI
ORA	Absolute,Y	19 LO HI
ORA	Immediate	09 IM
ORA	Zero page	05 ZP
ORA	Zero page,X	15 ZP
ORA	(Zero page,X)	11 ZY
ORA	(Zero page),Y	11 ZY
PHA	Implied	48
PHP	Implied	08
PLA	Implied	68
PLP	Implied	28
ROL	Absolute	2E LO HI
ROL	Absolute,X	3E LO HI
ROL	Accumulator	2A
ROL	Zero page	26 ZP
ROL	Zero page,X	36 ZP
ROR	Absolute	6E LO HI
ROR	Absolute,X	7E LO HI
ROR	Accumulator	6A
ROR	Zero page	66 ZP
ROR	Zero page,X	76 ZP
RTI	Implied	40
RTS	Implied	60
SBC	Absolute	ED LO HI
SBC	Absolute,X	FD LO HI
SBC	Absolute,Y	F9 LO HI
SBC	Immediate	E9 IM
SBC	Zero page	E5 ZP
SBC	Zero page,X	F5 ZP
SBC	(Zero page,X)	E1 ZX
SBC	(Zero page),Y	F1 ZY
SEC	Implied	38
SED	Implied	F8
SEI	Implied	78
STA	Absolute	8D LO HI
STA	Absolute,X	9D LO HI

Opcodes

Mnemonic	Addressing Mode	Opcode
STA	Absolute,Y	99 LO HI
STA	Zero page	85 ZP
STA	Zero page,X	95 ZP
STA	(Zero page,X)	81 ZX
STA	(Zero page),Y	91 ZY
STX	Absolute	8E LO HI
STX	Zero page	86 ZP
STX	Zero page,Y	96 ZP
STY	Absolute	8C LO HI
STY	Zero page	84 ZP
STY	Zero page,X	94 ZP
TAX	Implied	AA
TAY	Implied	A8
TSX	Implied	BA
TXA	Implied	8A
TXS	Implied	9A
TYA	Implied	98

ROM Kernal Routines

□
□
□

ROM Kernal Routines

respond), and 6 (file was not opened for input). The RS-232 and serial status-flag locations also reflect the success of operations for those devices. (See READST for details.)

The JMP to the CHKIN execution routine is by way of the ICHKIN indirect vector at 798-799 (\$031E-\$031F). You can modify the actions of CHKIN by changing the vector to point to a routine of your own.

CHKOUT **65481** **\$FFC9**

This routine (some Commodore references call it CKOUT) specifies a logical file as the recipient of output in preparation for using the CHROUT routine. The logical file should be opened before this routine is called. (See the OPEN routine.) The desired logical file number should be in .X when this routine is called. The contents of .Y are unaffected, but the accumulator will be changed.

The routine sets the output channel (location \$9A) to the device number for the specified file. If the device is RS-232 (device number 2), the routine also enables the CIA #2 interrupts for RS-232 transmission. If a serial device (device number 4 or greater) is specified, the device is also made a listener on the serial bus.

If the file is successfully set for output, the status-register carry bit will be clear upon return. If the carry is set, the operation was unsuccessful, and the accumulator will contain a Kernal error-code value indicating which error occurred. Possible error codes include 3 (file was not open), 5 (device did not respond), and 7 (file was not opened for output). The RS-232 and serial status-flag locations also reflect the success of operations for those devices. (See READST for details.)

The JMP to the CHKOUT execution routine is by way of the ICKOUT indirect vector at \$0320-\$0321. You can modify the actions of the routine by changing the vector to point to a routine of your own.

CHRIN **65487** **\$FFCF**

This high-level I/O routine (some Commodore references may call it BASIN) receives a byte from the logical file currently specified for input (to change the default input device, see CHKIN above). Except to use the routine to retrieve input from the keyboard when the system is set for default I/O, you must open a logical file to the desired device and specify the file as the input source before calling this routine. (See the OPEN and CHKIN routines.)

For keyboard input (device 0), the routine accepts keypresses until RETURN is pressed, and then returns characters from the input string one at a time on each subsequent call. The character code for RETURN, 13, is returned when the end of an input string is reached. (The Kernal GETIN routine is better for retrieving individual keypresses.)

For tape (device 1), the routine retrieves the next character from the cassette buffer. If all characters have been read from the buffer, the next data block is read from tape into the buffer.

For RS-232 (device 2), the routine returns the next available character from the RS-232 input buffer. If the buffer is empty, the routine waits until a character is received—unless the RS-232 status flag indicates that the DSR signal from the external device is missing, in which case a RETURN character code, 13, is returned.

CHRIN from the screen (device 3) retrieves characters one at a time from the current screen line, ending with a RETURN character code when the last nonspace character on the logical line is reached. (Note that CHRIN from the screen does not work properly in the original version of the 128 Kernal.) For serial devices (device numbers 4 and higher), the routine returns the next available character from the serial bus, unless the serial status flag contains a nonzero value. In that case, the RETURN character code is returned.

For all input devices, the received byte will be in the accumulator upon return. The contents of .X and .Y are preserved during input from the keyboard, screen, or RS-232. For input from tape, only .X is preserved. For input from serial devices, only .Y is preserved. For input from the screen, keyboard, or serial devices, the status-register carry bit will always be clear upon return. For tape input, the carry bit will be clear unless the operation was aborted by pressing the RUN/STOP key. For tape, serial, or RS-232 input, the success of the operation will be indicated by the value in the status-flag location. (See the entry for READST.) The RS-232 portion of the original 128 version of CHRIN has a bug: The carry bit will be set if a byte was successfully received, and will be clear only if the DSR signal is missing—the opposite of the settings for the 64. It's better to judge the success of an RS-232 operation by the value in the status-flag location rather than by the carry-bit setting. (See the READST routine.)

The JMP to the CHRIN execution routine is by way of the

ROM Kernal Routines

ICHRIN indirect vector at \$0324-\$0325. You can modify the actions of the routine by changing the vector to point to a routine of your own.

CHROUT **65490** **\$FFD2**

This routine (some Commodore references call it BSOUT) sends a byte to the logical file currently specified for output. Except to send output to the screen when the system is set for default I/O, you must open a logical file to the desired device and specify the file as the output target before calling this routine. (See the OPEN and CHKOUT routines.)

For output to tape (device 1), the character is stored at the next available position in the cassette buffer. When the buffer is full, the data block is written to tape.

For output to RS-232 (device 2), the character is stored in the next available position in the RS-232 output buffer. If the buffer is full, the routine waits until a character is sent.

For output to the screen (device 3), the character is printed at the current cursor position. For serial devices (device numbers 4 and higher), the CIOUT routine is called.

Regardless of the output device, the contents of the accumulator, .X, and .Y are preserved during this routine. The status-register carry bit will always be clear upon return, unless output to tape is aborted by pressing the RUN/STOP key. (In that case, the accumulator will also be set to 0, setting the status-register Z bit as well.) For tape, serial, or RS-232 output, the success of the operation will be indicated by the value in the status flag. (See READST for details.)

The JMP to the CHROUT execution routine is by way of the ICHROUT indirect vector at \$0326-\$0327. You can modify the actions of the routine by changing the vector to point to a routine of your own.

CINT **65409** **\$FF81**

This routine initializes all RAM locations used by the screen editor, returning screen memory to its default position and setting default screen and border colors. The routine also clears the screen and homes the cursor. All processor registers are affected.

For the 64 only, this routine initializes all VIC chip registers to their default values (that's done during the Kernal IOINIT routine in the 128). For the 128, CINT clears both displays and redirects printing to the display indicated by the position of the 40/80 DISPLAY key. The 128 routine also sets

SID volume to zero and resets programmable function keys to their default definitions. It does not, however, reinitialize the 80-column character set. (That's also part of IOINIT.)

CIOUT **65448** **\$FFA8**

This low-level I/O routine sends a byte to a serial device. The accumulator should hold the byte to be sent. All register values are preserved. The success of the operation will be indicated by the value in the serial status flag. (See READST for details.)

For the routine to function properly, the target serial device must currently be a listener on the serial bus, which requires a number of setup steps. However, if you have already performed all the preparatory steps necessary for CHROUT to a serial device, then you can freely substitute CIOUT for CHROUT, since, for a serial device, CHROUT simply jumps to the CIOUT routine.

CLALL **65511** **\$FFE7**

This routine resets the number of open files (location \$98) to zero, then falls through into the CLRCH routine to reset default I/O. The contents of .A and .X are changed, but .Y is unaffected.

Despite its name, the routine doesn't actually close any files that may be open to tape, disk, or RS-232 devices. Unclosed files may cause problems, particularly on disks, so this routine is of limited usefulness. The 128 Kernal provides an alternate routine that does properly close all files open to a serial device. (See CLOSE_ALL.)

The JMP to the CLALL execution routine is by way of the ICLALL indirect vector at \$032C-\$032D. You can modify the actions of the routine by changing the vector to point to a routine of your own.

CLOSE **65475** **\$FFC3**

This routine closes a specified logical file. Call the routine with the accumulator holding the number of the logical file to be closed. If no file with the specified logical file number is currently open, no action is taken and no error is indicated. If a file with the specified number is open, its entry in the logical file number, device number, and secondary address tables will be removed. For RS-232 files, the driving CIA #2 interrupts will also be disabled. For tape files, the final block of data will be written to tape (followed by an end-of-tape marker, if one was

ROM Kernal Routines

even number, for example), a relocating load will be performed: The file will be loaded starting at the address specified in .X and .Y. If the bit is %1 (if the value is 1 or any odd number, for example), an absolute load will be performed: The data will be loaded starting at the address specified in the file itself. For tape files, the secondary-address specification can be overridden by the file's internal type specification. Nonrelocatable tape program files always load at their absolute address, regardless of the secondary address.

When calling the LOAD routine, the accumulator should hold the operation type value (0 for a load, or any nonzero value for a verify). If the secondary address specifies a relocating load, the starting address at which data is to be loaded should be stored in .X (low byte) and .Y (high byte). The values of .X and .Y are irrelevant for an absolute load.

The status-register carry bit will be clear upon return if the file was successfully loaded, or set if an error occurred or if the RUN/STOP key was pressed to abort the load. When carry is set upon return, the accumulator will hold a Kernal error-code value indicating the problem. Possible error codes include 4 (file was not found), 5 (device was not present), 8 (no name was specified for a serial load), 9 (an illegal device number was specified).

On the 128 only, the load will be aborted if it extends beyond address \$FEFF. This prevents corruption of the MMU configuration register at \$FF00. In this case, an error code of 16 will be returned. The success of the operation will also be indicated by the value in the tape/serial status flag. (See READST for details.)

MEMBOT	65436	\$FF9C
MEMTOP	65433	\$FF99

These routines read or set the Kernal's bottom-of-memory pointer and top-of-memory pointer, respectively. (The bottom-of-memory pointer is at locations \$0281-\$0282 for the 64 or \$0A05-\$0A06 for the 128; the top-of-memory pointer is at locations \$0283-\$0284 for the 64 or \$0A07-\$0A08 for the 128.) To read the pointer, call the routine with the carry flag set; the pointer value will be returned in .X (low byte) and .Y (high byte). To set the pointer, call the routine with the carry flag clear and with .X and .Y containing the low and high bytes, respectively, of the desired pointer value.

OPEN **65472** **\$FFC0**

This routine opens a logical file to a specified device in preparation for input or output. At least one preparatory step is required before the standard OPEN routine is called: SETLFS must be called to establish the logical file number, device number, and secondary address. For tape (device 1), RS-232 (device 2), or serial (device 4 or higher), SETNAM is also required to specify the length and address of the associated filename. For the 128, SETBNK must be called to establish the bank number where the filename can be found.

It is not necessary to load any registers before calling OPEN, and all processor register values may be changed during the routine. The carry will be clear if the file was successfully opened, or it will be set if it could not be opened. When carry is set upon return, the accumulator will hold an error code indicating the problem. Possible error-code values include 1 (ten files—the maximum allowed—are already open), 2 (a currently open file already uses the specified logical file number), and 5 (specified device did not respond). The RS-232 and tape/serial status flags will also reflect the success of the operation for those devices. (See READST for details.)

On the 128, there is an exception to the carry-bit rule. Because of a bug in the 128's RS-232 OPEN routine, carry will be set if the RS-232 device is present when x-line handshaking is used (if the DSR line is high), or clear if the device is absent—the opposite of the proper setting.

The JMP to the OPEN execution routine is by way of the IOPEN indirect vector \$031A-\$031B. You can modify the actions of the routine by changing the vector to point to a routine of your own.

PLOT **65520** **\$FFF0**

This routine reads or sets the cursor position on the active display. If it is called with the status-register carry bit clear, the value in .X specifies the new cursor row (vertical position), and the value in .Y specifies the column (horizontal position). The carry bit will be set upon return if the specified column or row values are beyond the right or bottom margins of the current output window, or it will be clear if the cursor was successfully positioned.

If the routine is called with the carry bit set, the row number for the current cursor position is returned in .X and the current column number is returned in .Y. For the Commodore

sired flag value (.X and .Y are unaffected.) Valid flag values are 0 (no Kernal messages are displayed), 64 (only error messages are displayed), 128 (only control messages—PRESS PLAY ON TAPE, for example—are displayed), and 192 (both error and control messages are displayed).

SETNAM **65469** **\$FFBD**

This routine assigns the length (location \$B7) and address (locations \$BB-\$BC) of the filename for the current I/O operation. Call the routine with the length of the filename in .A and the address of the first character of the name in .X (low byte) and .Y (high byte). If no name is used for the current operation, load the accumulator with 0; the values in .X and .Y are then irrelevant. All register values are preserved during this routine.

SETTIM **65499** **\$FFDB**

This routine sets the value in the software jiffy clock. The value in the accumulator is transferred to the low byte (location \$A2), the value in .X to the middle byte (location \$A1), and the value in .Y to the high byte (location \$A0). The specified value should be less than \$4F1A01, which corresponds to 24:00:00 hours.

SETTMO **65442** **\$FFA2**

The SETTMO routine stores the contents of the accumulator in the IEEE timeout flag. (.X and .Y are unaffected.) This routine is superfluous, since the flag isn't used by any 64 or 128 ROM routine. It is present merely to maintain consistency with previous versions of the Kernal. For the 64, the flag location is \$0285; for the 128, it's at \$0A0E.

STOP **65505** **\$FFE1**

This routine checks whether the RUN/STOP key is currently pressed. It returns with the status-register Z bit clear if the key is not pressed, or with the bit set if it is pressed. Additionally, if RUN/STOP is pressed the CLRCH routine is called to restore default I/O channels, and the count of keys in the keyboard buffer is reset to zero.

The JMP to the STOP execution routine is by way of the ISTOP indirect vector at \$0328-\$0329. You can modify the actions of the routine by changing the vector to point to a routine of your own.

- BOOT_CALL** **65363** **\$FF53**
This routine attempts to load and execute boot sectors from a specified disk drive. Call the routine with .X holding the device number for the drive (usually 8) and with the accumulator holding the character code corresponding to the drive number—not the actual drive number. The single drive in 1541 and 1571 units is drive 0; in this case, use 48, the character code for zero. If the specified drive is not present or is turned off, or if the disk in the drive does not contain a valid boot sector, the routine will return with the status-register carry bit set. If a boot sector is found, it will be loaded into locations \$0B00–\$0BFF. Additional boot sectors may be loaded into other areas of memory, and the boot code may not return to this routine.
- CLOSE_ALL** **65354** **\$FF4A**
This routine closes all files currently opened to a specified device, providing an improved version of CLALL. Enter the routine with the accumulator holding the number of the device on which files are to be closed. If the specified device is the current input or output device, the input or output channel will be reset to the default device (screen or keyboard). If all files to the device were successfully closed, the status-register carry bit will clear upon return. A set carry bit indicates that a device error occurred.
- C64_MODE** **65357** **\$FF4D**
This is the equivalent of the BASIC command GO 64. It performs an immediate cold start of 64 mode. To get back to 128 mode, it is necessary to reset the computer, or to turn it off and back on.
- DLCHR** **65378** **\$FF62**
This routine copies character shape data for both standard ROM character sets into the VDC video chip's private block of RAM, providing character definitions for the 80-column display. (The VDC has no character ROM.) This routine is also called as part of IOINIT for the 128.
- DMA_CALL** **65360** **\$FF50**
This routine passes a command to a DMA (Direct Memory Access) device. The DMA device will then take control of the system to execute the command. The routine is written to support the REC (RAM Expansion Controller) chip in the 1700

ROM Kernal Routines

SPIN_SPOUT **65351** **\$FF47**

This low-level serial I/O routine sets up the serial bus for fast (burst mode) communications. Unless you're writing a custom data-transfer routine, it's not necessary to call this routine explicitly. All higher-level serial I/O routines already include this setup step. The routine should be called with the status-register carry bit clear to establish fast serial input or with the bit set to establish fast serial output.

SWAPPER **65375** **\$FF5F**

This routine switches active screen displays. The active display is the one which has a live cursor, and to which screen CHROUT output is directed. The routine exchanges the active and inactive screen-editor variable tables, tab-stop bitmaps, and line-link bitmaps; and it toggles the active screen flag (location \$D7). The routine doesn't physically turn either video chip on or off—both chips always remain enabled.

The Routines

Name

Add two bytes and store the result

Description

Adding is one of the essential arithmetic functions in machine language (or in any computer language). This routine simply adds two numbers and stores the result in memory.

Prototype

1. Load the first number from memory.
2. Clear the carry flag with a CLC instruction.
3. Add the second number with ADC.
4. Save the result in memory.

Explanation

The framing routine waits for a keypress, then stores the ASCII value in memory. It gets a second ASCII value, then prints the two numbers. After the **ADDBYT** routine is called, the answer is printed.

If you want a proper result, you should always clear carry before using the ADC instruction. ADC really adds three numbers: two that are in the range 0–255 and one (the carry flag) that's either 0 or 1. Adding 10 + 10 with carry set (10 + 10 + 1) will give you a result of 21.

Note: If the result of the addition is greater than 255, the additional bit which represents a value of 256 will be in the carry flag (carry will be set). If you're adding signed bytes and the answer is greater than 127, the overflow (V) flag will be set.

Routine

```

C000      GETIN      =    $FFE4
C000      LINPRT    =    $BDCD      ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128
C000      CHROUT   =    $FFD2
;
C000 20 37 C0      JSR      GETKEY      ; get a key (ASCII value)
C003 8D 3D C0      STA      NUMBER1    ; store it
C006 20 37 C0      JSR      GETKEY      ; get a second key
C009 8D 3E C0      STA      NUMBER2    ; store it, too
C00C AE 3D C0      LDX      NUMBER1    ; now print it
C00F A9 00          LDA      #0
C011 20 CD BD      JSR      LINPRT
C014 A9 0D          LDA      #13
C016 20 D2 FF      JSR      CHROUT      ; print <RETURN>
C019 AE 3E C0      LDX      NUMBER2    ; second number
C01C A9 00          LDA      #0
C01E 20 CD BD      JSR      LINPRT      ; print it
C021 A9 0D          LDA      #13
C023 20 D2 FF      JSR      CHROUT      ; <RETURN> again
;
C026 AD 3D C0      ADDBYT  LDA      NUMBER1    ; the first number
C029 18            CLC          ; clear the carry flag
    
```

ADDBYT

```
C02A 6D 3E C0      ADC  NUMBER2  ; add the second
C02D 8D 3F C0      STA  TOTAL    ; store it
;
C030 AA           TAX          ; put it in X
C031 A9 00       LDA  #0
C033 20 CD BD    JSR  LINPRT   ; and print it
C036 60          RTS
;
C037 20 E4 FF GETKEY JSR  GETIN
C03A F0 FB       BEQ  GETKEY
C03C 60          RTS
;
C03D 00          NUMBER1 .BYTE 0
C03E 00          NUMBER2 .BYTE 0
C03F 00          TOTAL   .BYTE 0
```

See also ADDFP, ADDINT, INC2.

Name

Add two floating-point numbers using the ROM routine

Description

Enter this routine with the two numbers to be added in the floating-point accumulators FAC1 and FAC2. The ROM routine FADDT then adds them together and returns the answer in FAC1.

Prototype

1. Store one number in FAC1.
2. Store the other in FAC2.
3. Call FADDT.

Explanation

Like most of the other floating-point routines in this book, **ADDFP** depends on built-in ROM routines. The framing program starts by converting the integer 15 to floating-point format, via GIVAYF. Next, MOVEF moves the number from FAC1 to FAC2. GIVAYF converts another integer—1325—to floating-point.

The numbers are added in **ADDFP** which simply calls FADDT. Back in the main routine, FOUT converts FAC1 to a printable ASCII format, and the result is printed to the screen.

Routine

C000		ZP	=	\$FB	
C000		CHROUT	=	\$FFD2	
C000		FADDT	=	\$B86A	; FADDT = \$8848 on the 128—adds FAC1
					; to FAC2; result in FAC1
C000		MOVEF	=	\$BC0F	; MOVEF = \$8C3B on the 128—moves
					; FAC1 to FAC2
C000		GIVAYF	=	\$B391	; GIVAYF = \$AF03 on the 128—converts
					; integer to floating point
C000		FOUT	=	\$BDDDD	; FOUT = \$8E42 on the 128—converts FAC1
					; to ASCII string
					;
					; Convert the numbers 15 and 1325 to
					; floating point and add them.
C000	A9	00	LDA	#>15	; high byte of 15
C002	A0	0F	LDY	#<15	; low byte
C004	20	91	B3	JSR	GIVAYF
					; convert it, now it's in FAC1
C007	20	0F	BC	JSR	MOVEF
					; move FAC1 to FAC2
C00A	A9	05	LDA	#>1325	; high byte of 1325
C00C	A0	2D	LDY	#<1325	; low byte
C00E	20	91	B3	JSR	GIVAYF
					; convert it
					; FAC1 now holds 1325, and FAC2 holds 15.
					; add them
C011	20	29	C0	JSR	ADDFP
					; add them
C014	20	DD	BD	JSR	FOUT
					; convert to ASCII
C017	85	FB	STA	ZP	; pointer

ADDFP

```
C019 84 FC          STY  ZP+1      ; to the string
C01B A0 00          LDY  #0
C01D B1 FB          PRTLOP LDA  (ZP),Y
C01F D0 01          BNE  PRNIT
C021 60             RTS
C022 20 D2 FF PRNIT JSR  CHROUT
C025 C8             INY
C026 D0 F5          BNE  PRTLOP
C028 60             RTS

C029 20 6A B8 ADDFP JSR  FADDT      ; add FAC1 and FAC2
C02C 60             RTS              ; the result is in FAC1
```

See also ADDBYT, ADDINT, INC2.

Name

Add two 2-byte integer values and store the result in memory

Description

Adding two integers is a matter of clearing the carry flag and then using the ADC (ADD with Carry) instruction, first on the low byte and then on the high byte.

Prototype

1. Clear the carry flag.
2. Load the low byte of the first number into .A.
3. Add the low byte of the second number and store the result.
4. Repeat by adding the high bytes of the two numbers.

Explanation

Adding multiple-byte numbers is reasonably easy. The important thing is to start with the low byte and work your way up to the higher bytes. Remember the convention that low bytes are stored in memory before the high bytes. The number 1000 is hex \$03E8, which would be stored as an \$E8 followed by an \$03.

For each byte, addition is a three-step process: Load the first number (LDA), add the second (ADC), and store the result somewhere (STA). Also, carry should be cleared before the first byte is added. After that, carry handles itself.

The following program starts with the number 1000 and loops 30 times, repeatedly adding 350 to the total in NUM1. After each step, the current value is printed to the screen.

Routine

```

C000          LINPRT = $BDCD      ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128
C000          CHROUT = $FFD2
;
; Start at 1000 and add 350, repeating 30
; times.
C000 A9 E8          LDA #<1000    ; set up NUM1
C002 8D 47 C0       STA NUM1      ; with the low byte
C005 A9 03          LDA #>1000    ; and high byte
C007 8D 48 C0       STA NUM1+1
C00A A9 5E          LDA #<350     ; NUM2 needs
C00C 8D 49 C0       STA NUM2      ; a low byte
C00F A9 01          LDA #>350     ; and
C011 8D 4A C0       STA NUM2+1    ; a high byte
;
; the counter
C014 A9 1E          LDA #30
C016 8D 4B C0       STA RPT       ; is stored in RPT (number of repetitions)
C019 20 2A C0 LOOP JSR PRNNUM     ; print the number
C01C A9 20          LDA #32       ; space character
C01E 20 D2 FF       JSR CHROUT    ; print it

```


ADDINT

```

C021 20 33 C0      JSR  ADDINT      ; add NUM2 to NUM1
C024 CE 4B C0      DEC  RPT         ; RPT counts down
C027 D0 F0         BNE  LOOP        ; and loop back for more
C029 60             RTS          ; finished
;
C02A AE 47 C0 PRNNUM LDX  NUM1          ; low byte of NUM1
C02D AD 48 C0      LDA  NUM1+1        ; high byte
C030 4C CD BD      JMP  LINPRT        ; print it (RTS is implied)
;
C033 18           ADDINT CLC          ; always clear carry before adding
C034 AD 49 C0      LDA  NUM2          ; low byte of NUM2
C037 6D 47 C0      ADC  NUM1          ; add to low byte of NUM1
C03A 8D 47 C0      STA  NUM1          ; store it
; Now carry is indeterminate, but it's
; handled by the ADC below.
; Note that you don't CLC before adding
; the high byte.
C03D AD 4A C0      LDA  NUM2+1        ; high byte
C040 6D 48 C0      ADC  NUM1+1        ; add it
C043 8D 48 C0      STA  NUM1+1        ; store it
C046 60             RTS          ; done
;
C047 00 00        NUM1  .BYTE 0,0
C049 00 00        NUM2  .BYTE 0,0
C04B 00           RPT    .BYTE 0

```

See also ADDBYT, ADDEF, INC2.

Name

Set up a time-of-day (TOD) alarm

Description

Both CIA time-of-day clocks are equipped with a built-in alarm function. To use the alarm, you must set both the clock and the alarm time, just as you would on any alarm clock. Rather than actually sounding a tone when the clock time matches the alarm time, the TOD clock triggers an interrupt. Your program must then take appropriate action, depending upon the intended use of the alarm.

A TOD alarm can be used in any number of ways. In an arcade-style game, it can signal the end of one player's turn, the completion of a particular skill level, or the end of the game itself. In an educational program, the alarm can signal when the user has taken too much time to respond.

The alarm mechanisms on the two TOD clocks are practically identical. The only difference is that, because of the way the CIA chips are wired into the system, TOD clock 1 causes an IRQ interrupt while TOD clock 2 triggers an NMI interrupt. In **ALARM2**, we produce a tone when the second TOD clock alarm causes such an interrupt.

Prototype

In **ALARM2**:

1. Store the current time in binary-coded decimal (BCD) format as **TIMSET** at the end of the program.
2. Define the alarm time in BCD format as **ALARTM1**.
3. Redirect the NMI interrupt vector at 792 to **MAIN**.
4. Set bit 7 of control register B at 56591 (**CI2CRB**) and set the alarm time for TOD clock 2 using **ARMTIM**.
5. Then clear this bit and set the current time for TOD clock 2, again using **ARMTIM**.
6. Set bit 2, the alarm interrupt bit, in the interrupt control register (**CI2ICR**) at 56589 and **RTS**. Bit 7 must be set in order to set bit 2.

In **MAIN**:

1. Determine whether the alarm caused the NMI interrupt by testing bit 7 of the interrupt control register (**CI2ICR**).
2. If this bit is clear, exit the routine through the normal NMI interrupt handler (in step 7).
3. Otherwise, clear the alarm bit (bit 2) in **CI2ICR**. Bit 7 must be set to zero in order to clear this bit.

ALARM2

4. Set the parameters of the SID chip to produce an alarm sound and start the attack/decay/sustain cycle of the chip.
5. Wait for a keypress with `SCNKEY`, a Kernal routine.
6. When a keypress occurs, stop the alarm sound by clearing the SID chip, restore the normal NMI vector address, and clear the keyboard buffer.
7. Exit the routine by executing the normal NMI interrupt handler.

Explanation

When **ALARM2** (\$C000-\$C009) is set up, the NMI interrupt vector is changed so that it points to our own routine at `MAIN`. Next, with the subroutine `ARMTIM`, we set the TOD clock time to 4:05:10.0 p.m. and the alarm time to three seconds later, or 4:05:13.0 p.m.

`ARMTIM` is similar to `TOD2ST`, which sets the second TOD clock. In `TOD2ST`, `.Y` is always initialized to 0, whereas in `ARMTIM`, `.Y` is initially 0 or 4. This allows you to set either the TOD time or the alarm time with the same routine. If `.Y` is 0, the alarm time, defined as `ALARTM`, is set. If `.Y` is 4, the TOD clock time, or `TIMSET`, is set.

`ALARTM` and `TIMSET` can be set to any times you like. Both are expressed in binary-coded decimal (BCD) format.

Before the setup routine is exited, the TOD alarm interrupt is enabled by setting bit 2 of the interrupt control register (`CI2ICR`). Notice that bit 7 of this register must be set in order to set bits 0–6. To clear one of these bits, store a zero in bit 7 while storing a one in the bit you wish to clear.

Having now pointed the NMI vector to our own routine, the first thing the computer does when an NMI interrupt occurs in `MAIN` is to check to see whether our alarm caused this interrupt. If the NMI interrupt has been caused by another source, the normal NMI interrupt handler is accessed. Otherwise, the alarm interrupt is disabled, and the current alarm action is carried out—in this case, sounding a tone until a key is pressed.

Once the SID chip starts the tone, we rely on the Kernal routine `SCNKEY` rather than `GETIN` to check for a keypress. `SCNKEY`, unlike `GETIN`, works during interrupts.

When you finally press a key, the SID chip is turned off with `SIDCLR`, and the normal NMI vector is restored with `RSTVEC`.

Note: **ALARM2** demonstrates how to use TOD clock 2, on CIA (Complex Interface Adapter) chip 2, to signal an alarm. But if you're already using the second TOD clock elsewhere in your program, the first TOD clock will work equally well in this capacity.

To set up the alarm on TOD clock 1, use the equivalent TOD registers (TODTN1) and interrupt control registers (CIAICR, CIACRB) found in CIA 1 (each of these is lower in memory by 256 bytes). Since the interrupt generated by TOD clock 1 is an IRQ interrupt, redirect the IRQ interrupt vector at 788, rather than the NMI vector, to your custom routine

Routine

```

C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; time-of-day clock 2—tenths-of-seconds
                                ; register
C000          RESTOR  =    65418      ; routine to restore Kernal vectors
C000          NMIVEC  =     792       ; vector to NMI interrupt routine
C000          NMINOR  =    65095      ; NMINOR = 64064 on the 128—normal
                                ; NMI interrupt service routine
C000          CI2CRB  =    56591      ; CIA 2 control register B
C000          CI2ICR  =    56589      ; CIA 2 interrupt control register
C000          SIGVOL  =    54296      ; SID chip volume register
C000          ATDCY1  =    54277      ; voice 1 attack/decay register
C000          SUREL1  =    54278      ; voice 1 sustain/release register
C000          FREHI1  =    54273      ; voice 1 frequency control (high byte)
C000          FRELO1  =    54272      ; voice 1 frequency control (low byte)
C000          VCREG1  =    54276      ; voice 1 control register
C000          SCNKEY  =    65439      ; Kernal routine to get a keypress
C000          NDX     =     198       ; NDX = 208 on the 128—number of
                                ; characters in keyboard buffer
                                ;
                                ; Set up an alarm clock signal using TOD
                                ; clock 2.
C000  A9 2A      ALARM2 LDA  #<MAIN      ; store the low byte of NMI interrupt
                                ; wedge
C002  8D 18 03      STA  NMIVEC
C005  A9 C0          LDA  #>MAIN          ; and the high byte
C007  8D 19 03      STA  NMIVEC+1
C00A  AD 0F DD      LDA  CI2CRB          ; get current register value
C00D  09 80          ORA  #%10000000    ; turn on bit 7 to set alarm time
C00F  8D 0F DD      STA  CI2CRB
C012  A0 00          LDY  #0            ; to index alarm time setting
C014  20 66 C0      JSR  ARMTIM         ; set TOD clock 2 alarm time
C017  AD 0F DD      LDA  CI2CRB         ; now, clear bit 7 of the control register to
                                ; set TOD time
C01A  29 7F          AND  #%01111111    ; turn off bit 7
C01C  8D 0F DD      STA  CI2CRB
C01F  A0 04          LDY  #4            ; to index the time setting
C021  20 66 C0      JSR  ARMTIM         ; set the TOD 2 time
C024  A9 84          LDA  #%10000100    ; set bits 2 and 7 to enable TOD alarm
                                ; interrupt
C026  8D 0D DD      STA  CI2ICR
C029  60            RTS                ; exit setup routine
                                ;
C02A  AD 0D DD MAIN  LDA  CI2ICR         ; did the alarm cause the interrupt (is bit 2
                                ; set)?
C02D  29 04          AND  #%00000100
C02F  F0 32          BEQ  EXIT          ; bit 2 is clear, so execute normal interrupts

```

ALARM2

C031	A9	04		LDA	##00000100	; the alarm triggered the interrupt, so clear ; the alarm bit
C033	8D	0D	DD	STA	C12ICR	; And signal with an alarm sound.
C036	20	73	C0	JSR	SIDCLR	; clear the SID chip
C039	A9	0D		LDA	#13	; set the volume
C03B	8D	18	D4	STA	SIGVOL	
C03E	A9	00		LDA	##0	; set attack/decay
C040	8D	05	D4	STA	ATDCY1	
C043	A9	F0		LDA	##F0	; set sustain/release
C045	8D	06	D4	STA	SUREL1	
C048	A9	04		LDA	#4	; set voice 1 high frequency
C04A	8D	01	D4	STA	FREH11	
C04D	A9	21		LDA	##00100001	; select sawtooth waveform and gate the ; sound
C04F	8D	04	D4	STA	VCREG1	
C052	20	9F	FF	JSR	SCNKEY	; wait for a keypress
C055	A5	C6		LDA	NDX	; check keyboard buffer
C057	F0	F9		BEQ	WAIT	; if no key is pressed, wait
C059	20	73	C0	JSR	SIDCLR	; stop the alarm sound
C05C	20	7E	C0	JSR	RSTVEC	; restore NMI vector
C05F	A9	00		LDA	#0	; clear keyboard buffer
C061	85	C6		STA	NDX	
C063	4C	47	FE	JMP	NMINOR	; exit through normal NMI interrupt ; handler
						; Set alarm and time. Come in with .Y = 0 ; to set alarm and .Y = 4 to set time. ; as an index for hrs., mins., secs., tenths ; read in alarm time or clock time to set ; store to clock—hrs. first ; for next data position (in ALARMT or ; TIMSET)
C066	A2	03		LDX	#3	
C068	B9	84	C0	LDA	ALARTM,Y	
C06B	9D	08	DD	STA	TODTN2,X	
C06E	C8			INY		
C06F	CA			DEX		; for next clock position (min., sec., tenths)
C070	10	F6		BPL	RDLOOP	; read four bytes
C072	60			RTS		
						; Clear the SID chip. ; fill with zeros ; as the offset from FRELO1 ; store zero in each SID chip address ; for next lower address ; fill 25 bytes ; we're done
C073	A9	00		LDA	#0	
C075	A0	18		LDY	#24	
C077	99	00	D4	STA	FRELO1,Y	
C07A	88			DEY		
C07B	10	FA		BPL	SIDLOP	
C07D	60			RTS		
						; Restore Kernal vectors to default values. ; disable IRQ interrupts while resetting IRQ ; vector
C07E	78			SEI		
C07F	20	8A	FF	JSR	RESTOR	; reset page 3 RAM vectors to ROM table ; values
C082	58			CLI		; reenable IRQ interrupts
C083	60			RTS		
						; hr., min., sec., tenths for alarm time ; Alarm is set for 04.05.13.0 p.m.
C084	84	05	13	ALARTM	.BYTE \$84,\$05,\$13,\$0	
C088	84	05	10	TIMSET	.BYTE \$84,\$05,\$10,\$0	; hr., min., sec., tenths for time ; Time is set for 04.05.10.0 p.m. ; For a.m., subtract \$80 from hrs. place.

See also INTCLK, TOD1DL, TOD1RD, TOD2PR, TOD2ST.

Name

Alphabetize by swapping pointers

Description

The main alphabetizing routine does two things. First, it sets up a series of pointers to strings in memory. Then it goes through the pointers and performs a Shell sort, leaving the strings where they are, but swapping the pointers as necessary. A Shell sort is generally faster than the bubble sort used in the **ALSWAP** routine, but it's easier to write either if the fields to be sorted are the same size (which they are not in the example) or if pointers are used instead of an actual swap of strings. (Incidentally, Shell is capitalized because it's named after its inventor, Donald Shell.)

Prototype

First, create the table of pointers:

1. Look, character by character, through the zero-terminated strings.
2. When a zero is found, store the address (plus one) of the location.
3. Check the next character. If it's not zero, increment the TOTL variable and continue the loop.

Next, alphabetize the strings:

4. Set a gap variable (TOTL) initially to the number of words.
5. Clear the FLIP variable.
6. Cut the gap in half. If there are 120 words, the gap starts at 60.
7. Set a pointer (ZP) to the beginning of the list of pointers.
8. Set a second (ZQ) to the beginning of the list plus the gap.
9. Load the string pointer from ZP and store it in AP.
10. Load the second string pointer from ZQ and store in AQ.
11. Using .Y as an offset, compare the strings in AP and AQ.
12. If they're in order, skip step 13.
13. If they're not in order, swap the pointers in memory and set FLIP to a nonzero value.
14. Increment both ZP and ZQ until ZQ points beyond the end of the list.
15. If a swap has occurred, FLIP is not zero, so loop back to step 7.
16. If it has not, go back to step 6 while the gap is larger than zero.

Explanation

This is a long routine, but a good chunk of it is devoted to the part that reads a file into memory from disk. The main routine consists of three JSRs. The first calls the section that reads a text file into memory, searching for spaces—or CHR\$(13)s—and replacing them with zeros as the file is copied to memory. The second calls the alphabetizing routine. The third prints out the word list.

ALPNTR itself has two primary subroutines: **MAKETL** and **ALPHAB**. The first sets up the table of pointers at \$5000–\$5FFF, 4096 bytes. Since each pointer needs 2 bytes, this is enough memory to handle 2048 strings or words. Note that **BUFFER** holds the actual words, while **POINTR** holds a series of pointers to the words in **BUFFER**.

Based on the assumption that there's at least one word in the list, the first entry in the table is set to point to the start of the buffer. Next, **MAKETL** searches forward for zeros. When one is found, the next address in the buffer is saved in **POINTR**. Each word ends with a zero byte, and the buffer itself ends with an additional zero. When the final zero is found, the loop ends.

ALPHAB is the main alphabetizing routine, and it requires several passes. Remember, the words stay where they are; it's just the pointers that are being shuffled around.

The idea of the gap is the key to the Shell sort. The gap starts out at half the number of total items in the list. If there are 56 things to put in order, the gap is 28. Entry 1 is compared with entry 29, 2 is compared with 30, and so on. If any two items are out of order, they're switched.

After the first pass, the **FLIP** variable is checked. If any two items have been changed, the gap's value remains the same, and the loop is repeated. If no swaps have occurred, the gap is cut in half (from 28 to 14, for example). When the gap drops to a value less than 1, the sort is finished.

The great advantage to using a gap is that it moves items quickly over a long distance. Imagine that *zookeeper* is the first word on a list of, say, 500 words, and that its rightful place in the alphabetized list is last. On the first pass (gap of 250), it is moved 250 places, from 1 to 251. On the next pass (gap of 125), it jumps another 125. After just two comparisons, it has traveled from location 1 to location 376. In an ordinary bubble sort, it would take 375 comparisons—375 passes through the

loop—to move that far. A Shell sort of a medium-sized list will almost always beat a bubble sort.

The following program is written in reasonably short modules and should be easy to follow. One technique worth noting occurs at \$C069, where DBLINC calls the routine INCZPZQ directly below it. The INCZPZQ routine adds 1 to the pointers at ZP and ZQ. Because the DBLINC (double increment) routine is placed above the routine that increments once, the routine is called twice. The end RTS first returns to just past DBLINC, where the routine executes a second time, after which the RTS returns to the place that called it.

Routine

```

C000          ZP      =    $FB
C000          ZQ      =    $FD
C000          AP      =    $F7          ; for the 128, use other available zero-page
                                       ; locations here
C000          AQ      =    $F9          ; and here
C000          STATUS =    144
C000          CHROUT =    $FFD2
C000          BUFFER =    $6000       ; storage area where the words will be loaded
                                       ; into memory
C000          POINTR  =    $5000       ; table of two-byte pointers to the words
                                       ; (maximum 2048 from $5000 through $5FFF)
                                       ; LDA #0; set for bank 15 (128 only)
                                       ; STA $FF00; (128 only)
C000 20 17 C1 MAIN  JSR  READFILE     ; read a file from disk
                                       ; LDA #63; set for bank 0 (128 only)
                                       ; STA $FF00; (128 only)
C003 20 0A C0      JSR  ALPNTR        ; alphabetize the word list
                                       ; LDA #0; set for bank 15 (128 only)
                                       ; STA $FF00; (128 only)
C006 20 92 C1      JSR  PRINTM        ; print it out
C009 60           RTS
C00A           ALPNTR =    *          ; alphabetize by pointers
C00A 20 11 C0      JSR  MAKETL        ; make a table of pointers
C00D 20 8F C0      JSR  ALPHAB       ; alphabetize it
C010 60           RTS
C011           MAKETL =    *          ; create the table
                                       ; Set things up.
C011 A9 93         LDA  #147         ; clear screen character
C013 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT       ; print it
C016 20 58 C0      JSR  SETZPAP      ; point ZP to POINTR and AP to BUFFER
C019 A0 00         LDY  #0
C01B 8C 12 C1     STY  TOTL          ; zero the counter
C01E 8C 13 C1     STY  TOTL+1
C021 A5 F7         BIGLOP LDA  AP          ; low byte of pointer to BUFFER
C023 91 FB         STA  (ZP),Y       ; store it in the table
C025 20 6C C0     JSR  INCZPZQ       ; increment ZP and ZQ
C028 A5 F8         LDA  AP+1        ; high byte
C02A 91 FB         STA  (ZP),Y       ; store it
C02C 20 6C C0     JSR  INCZPZQ       ; and ZP/ZQ go up
C02F 20 86 C0     JSR  PLUSTL        ; increment the counter
C032 B1 F7         LDA  (AP),Y       ; check the first byte

```


ALPNTR

```

C034 D0 10          BNE  MORE          ; if not a zero, there are more words
C036 A9 0D          LDA  #13           ; print a RETURN
C038 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT
C03B A5 F7          LDA  AP           ; save the last pointer
C03D 8D 15 C1       STA  BUFEND        ; into BUFEND
C040 A5 F8          LDA  AP+1         ; high byte
C042 8D 16 C1       STA  BUFEND+1
C045 60
C046 A9 2A          MORE LDA  #42           ; main RTS of MAKETL routine
C048 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT        ; take an asterisk
C04B 20 79 C0 SMALLP JSR  INCAPAQ       ; print it
C04E B1 F7          LDA  (AP),Y       ; increment AP and AQ
C050 D0 F9          BNE  SMALLP        ; check the next one
C052 20 79 C0       JSR  INCAPAQ       ; go back if not zero
C055 4C 21 C0       JMP  BIGLOP        ; INC the pointer (to the start of next word)
; and go back
;
C058 A9 00          SETZPAP LDA #<BUFFER      ; put the address of buffer
C05A 85 F7          STA  AP           ; into AP
C05C A9 60          LDA  #>BUFFER
C05E 85 F8          STA  AP+1
C060 A9 00          LDA  #<POINTR      ; and the address of POINTR
C062 85 FB          STA  ZP           ; into ZP
C064 A9 50          LDA  #>POINTR
C066 85 FC          STA  ZP+1
C068 60
;
C069 20 6C C0 DBLINC JSR  INCZPZQ       ; call it once and then fall through for
; double INC
; ZP points higher
C06C E6 FB          INCZPZQ INC  ZP
C06E D0 02          BNE  IPQ1
C070 E6 FC          INC  ZP+1         ; handle the high byte
C072 E6 FD          IPQ1  INC  ZQ           ; ZQ, too
C074 D0 02          BNE  IPQ2
C076 E6 FE          INC  ZQ+1         ; high byte
C078 60            IPQ2  RTS          ; that's all, folks
;
C079 E6 F7          INCAPAQ INC  AP           ; AP points higher
C07B D0 02          BNE  IAQ1
C07D E6 F8          INC  AP+1         ; if AP = 0, INC the high byte
C07F E6 F9          IAQ1  INC  AQ           ; AQ goes up by 1
C081 D0 02          BNE  IAQ2
C083 E6 FA          INC  AQ+1         ; and maybe the high byte
C085 60            IAQ2  RTS          ; all done
;
C086 EE 12 C1 PLUSTL INC  TOTL        ; add 1 to the total
C089 D0 03          BNE  PLT1
C08B EE 13 C1      INC  TOTL+1       ; high byte, too
C08E 60            PLT1  RTS
;
; The main alphabetizing routine.
;
C08F              ALPHAB = *
C08F 20 A0 C0 ALPLOP JSR  INITPQ       ; set up the initial pointers in ZP and ZQ
C092 20 BA C0      JSR  SHUFFLE      ; move them around and put them in order
C095 AD 14 C1      LDA  FLIP        ; if the flag is set,
C098 D0 F5          BNE  ALPLOP      ; go back and do it again
C09A 20 FD C0      JSR  HFTOTL       ; cut TOTL in half
C09D B0 F0          BCS  ALPLOP      ; if carry set, do more
C09F 60            RTS          ; otherwise, we're done
;
;
C0A0 A0 00          INITPQ LDY  #0           ;
C0A2 8C 14 C1      STY  FLIP        ; reset the FLIP flag
C0A5 20 58 C0      JSR  SETZPAP      ; set ZP to POINTR address
C0A8 AD 12 C1      LDA  TOTL
;

```

```

C0AB 29 FE          AND  %11111110    ; round down to nearest even number
C0AD 18            CLC
C0AE 65 FB          ADC  ZP          ; add in low byte
C0B0 85 FD          STA  ZQ          ; higher pointer in ZQ
C0B2 AD 13 C1      LDA  TOTL+1    ; add the high byte
C0B5 65 FC          ADC  ZP+1      ; to ZP+1
C0B7 85 FE          STA  ZQ+1      ; and put it in ZQ
C0B9 60            RTS           ; end of INITPQ
;
C0BA              SHUFFLE = *
C0BA A0 00          LDY  #0
C0BC B1 FB          LDA  (ZP),Y    ; get the first pointer
C0BE 85 F7          STA  AP        ; and set up a pointer
C0C0 B1 FD          LDA  (ZQ),Y    ; and the second
C0C2 85 F9          STA  AQ        ; as well
C0C4 C8            INY           ; now the high bytes
C0C5 B1 FB          LDA  (ZP),Y
C0C7 85 F8          STA  AP+1
C0C9 B1 FD          LDA  (ZQ),Y
C0CB 85 FA          STA  AQ+1
;
C0CD 88            DEY           ; back to zero
C0CE B1 F9          LDA  (AQ),Y    ; look for the zero at the end of the table
C0D0 D0 01          BNE  KEEPON    ; if the first character of (AQ) isn't zero, we
; have more
; else, finish this routine
C0D2 60            RTS
C0D3 B1 F7          LDA  (AP),Y
C0D5 F0 20          BEQ  NOSWIT    ; found a zero at the end of the (shorter)
; string from AP
; not a zero, so compare to the AQ string
C0D7 D1 F9          CMP  (AQ),Y    ; if AP < AQ, no switch
C0D9 90 1C          BCC  NOSWIT    ; if AP < AQ, no switch
C0DB D0 04          BNE  SWITCH    ; if not equal, AQ < AP
C0DD C8            INY           ; else they're equal and we check some
; more
C0DE 4C D3 C0      JMP  KEEPON
;
C0E1 8D 14 C1      STA  SWITCH    ; store a nonzero value in FLIP
C0E4 A0 00          LDY  #0
C0E6 A5 F7          LDA  AP        ; get the pointer from AP
C0E8 91 FD          STA  (ZQ),Y    ; and put it in the table
C0EA A5 F9          LDA  AQ        ; same for AQ
C0EC 91 FB          STA  (ZP),Y    ; low byte
C0EE C8            INY           ; now the high bytes
C0EF A5 F8          LDA  AP+1
C0F1 91 FD          STA  (ZQ),Y
C0F3 A5 FA          LDA  AQ+1
C0F5 91 FB          STA  (ZP),Y
; and fall through
;
C0F7 20 69 C0      JSR  NOSWIT    ; double increment of ZP and ZQ
C0FA 4C BA C0      JMP  SHUFFLE
; end of SHUFFLE
;
C0FD 4E 13 C1      LSR  TOTL+1    ; shift right (cut in half) the high byte of
; TOTL
; and the low byte
C100 6E 12 C1      ROR  TOTL      ; set carry means more
C103 38            SEC
C104 AD 13 C1      LDA  TOTL+1    ; is there a high byte?
C107 D0 08          BNE  ENDFH    ; yes, there's more
C109 AD 12 C1      LDA  TOTL      ; no, check the low byte
C10C C9 02          CMP  #2        ; if it's 2 or more
C10E B0 01          BCS  ENDFH    ; we're OK
C110 18            CLC           ; else clear carry (all done)

```

ALPNTR

```

C111 60          ENDFH   RTS          ; as we leave, CLC means done, SEC means
; keep going
;
C112 00 00      TOTL    .BYTE 0,0
C114 00        FLIP    .BYTE 0
C115 00 00      BUFEND  .BYTE 0,0
;
C117          READFILE =      *
C117          SETLFS   =      65466
C117          SETNAM   =      65469
C117          OPEN     =      65472
C117          CHKIN    =      65478
C117          CHRIN    =      65487
C117          CLOSE    =      65475
C117          CLRCHN   =      65484
;
C117 A9 01      LDA     #1          ; logical file number
C119 A2 08      LDX     #8          ; device number for disk drive
C11B A0 02      LDY     #2          ; secondary address (2-14 are OK)
C11D 20 BA FF   JSR     SETLFS
C120 A9 0D      LDA     #FNLEN      ; length of filename
C122 A2 85      LDX     #<FNAME     ; address of filename
C124 A0 C1      LDY     #>FNAME
C126 20 BD FF   JSR     SETNAM
C129 20 C0 FF   JSR     OPEN
C12C A2 01      LDX     #1          ; logical file number
C12E 20 06 FF   JSR     CHKIN      ; set for input
;
C131 A9 00      LDA     #<BUFFER    ; set up a pointer
C133 85 FB      STA     ZP
C135 A9 60      LDA     #>BUFFER    ; high byte
C137 85 FC      STA     ZP+1
;
C139 A0 00      LDY     #0
C13B 20 CF FF   JSR     CHRIN      ; get a character
C13E C9 0D      CMP     #13        ; check for RETURN
C140 F0 26      BEQ     DELIMIT
C142 C9 20      CMP     #32        ; look for a space
C144 90 09      BCC     CHKEND     ; eliminate characters 0-31
C146 F0 20      BEQ     DELIMIT    ; spaces are delimiters
C148 91 FB      STA     (ZP),Y
C14A C8         INY
C14B D0 02      BNE     CHKEND     ; check for the end
C14D E6 FC      INC     ZP+1      ; increment the pointer
C14F A6 90      CHKEND  LDX     STATUS
C151 F0 E8      BEQ     GETCHR     ; if equal, get more characters
C153 A9 00      LDA     #0
C155 91 FB      STA     (ZP),Y      ; close it up with three zeros
C157 20 76 C1   JSR     ADDYZP     ; store it
C15A 91 FB      STA     (ZP),Y      ; reset ZP
C15C C8         INY
C15D 91 FB      STA     (ZP),Y
C15F A9 01      LDA     #1
C161 20 C3 FF   JSR     CLOSE      ; close the file
C164 20 CC FF   JSR     CLRCHN     ; clear channels
C167 60        RTS          ; the end of the routine
;
C168 C0 00      DELIMIT CPY     #0          ; is this the first character?
C16A F0 E3      BEQ     CHKEND     ; yes, go back
;
; Enter this routine if a space or RETURN is
; found after a word.
C16C A9 00      LDA     #0          ; zero marks the division
C16E 91 FB      STA     (ZP),Y     ; put a zero in memory

```

```

C170 20 76 C1      JSR  ADDYZP      ; add Y to ZP (plus 1)
C173 4C 4F C1      JMP  CHKEND      ; and check for end of file
;
C176 38           ADDYZP SEC          ; add 1 to .Y
C177 98           TYA          ; put it in .A
C178 65 FB        ADC  ZP      ; add to ZP
C17A 85 FB        STA  ZP      ; fix ZP
C17C A9 00        LDA  #0      ; handle the high byte
C17E A8           TAY          ; put zero back into .Y
C17F 65 FC        ADC  ZP+1    ; add
C181 85 FC        STA  ZP+1    ; and store
C183 98           TYA          ; exit with zero in .A
C184 60           RTS

C185 41 53 43 FNAME .ASC  "0:ASCIIFILE,S,R" ; name of file to read
;
C192           FNLEN  =      * - FNAME
;
C192 20 58 C0 PRINTM JSR  SETZPAP ; set ZP to point to POINTR table
C195 A0 01 PMLOOP LDY  #1
C197 B1 FB        LDA  (ZP),Y   ; get the POINTR high byte
C199 85 F8        STA  AP+1    ; set up AP
C19B 88           DEY
C19C B1 FB        LDA  (ZP),Y   ; now the low byte
C19E 85 F7        STA  AP      ; (and .Y holds a zero)
C1A0 B1 F7        LDA  (AP),Y   ; is the first character a zero?
C1A2 F0 15        BEQ  QUITIT   ; if so, we're all done
C1A4 20 D2 FF PINLOP JSR  CHROUT ; no, print it
C1A7 20 79 C0 JSR  INCAPAQ ; AP increases by 1
C1AA B1 F7        LDA  (AP),Y   ; get the next character
C1AC D0 F6        BNE  PINLOP   ; until there's a zero
C1AE A9 0D        LDA  #13     ; print RETURN
C1B0 20 D2 FF JSR  CHROUT
C1B3 20 69 C0 JSR  DBLINC ; move ZP up two notches
C1B6 4C 95 C1 JMP  PMLOOP ; and set up the next address
;
C1B9 60           QUITIT RTS

```

See also ALSWAP, SRCBIN.

Name

Alphabetize a list by swapping strings that are out of order

Description

Although the example program is longer than most others in this book, it's short for an alphabetizing routine. (See **ALPNTR** for a longer, but much faster routine.) For reasons explained below, **ALSWAP** uses a relatively slow bubble-sort algorithm, which at machine language speeds is fast enough if the list to be sorted has either fixed-length records or a small-to-medium number of variable-length records.

Prototype

1. Count the number of records. Each word is a record in the example program.
2. Start by setting two zero-page pointers: one pointer (ZP) to the first record and another (ZQ) to the second.
3. Decrement the counter for number of records. If it's zero, exit.
4. Otherwise, copy the counter to a second variable (INCOUNT).
5. Compare the two records.
6. If they're out of place, swap them.
7. Continue the inner loop by decrementing INCOUNT and incrementing the pointers to the two records. Branch back to step 5.
8. When the inner loop counter INCOUNT reaches zero, branch to step 3.

Explanation

The strings in the example program were selected randomly from a book of folktales. Each is terminated by a zero byte. The three primary subroutines in the framing routine are **COUNTEM**, **ALSWAP**, and **PRINTEM**.

COUNTEM cruises through memory, finding the zero terminators and generally counting the number of words in the list. When the number of words is known, **ALSWAP** alphabetizes them.

Two zero-page pointers hold the addresses of two neighboring strings. Start by comparing the first to the second. Then compare the second to the third, and so on.

The **COMPAR** subroutine (**\$C08F-\$C0AA**) makes a decision about the two strings' positions. If they're in the right order, the carry flag is cleared and the subroutine ends. If not, carry is set. Back in the main alphabetizing routine, a **BCC**

skips ahead if the words are in their proper places. Otherwise, the strings switch positions.

The SWITCH routine handles the trading of two strings. If the two strings are next to each other, it's relatively easy to make them trade places; "THERE@HI@" takes up the same amount of memory as "HI@THERE@" (the @s represent the zero terminators). If the two strings "THERE" and "HI" occupy different parts of the list, a variety of time-wasting memory moves are necessary just to get the words in the right places.

After the comparison (COMPAR) and the trade (SWITCH), we check the next two strings, until the inner loop has finished. The outer loop counts backward to 1 (from one less than the number of items on the list).

The alphabetizing routine ends, and the PRINTEM routine takes over, listing the words in order.

Routine

C000		ZP	=	\$FB	
C000		ZQ	=	\$FD	
C000		CHROUT	=	\$FFD2	
C000	20	0A	C0	JSR	COUNTEM ; count the number of words
C003	20	32	C0	JSR	ALSWAP ; alphabetize by swapping
C006	20	EB	C0	JSR	PRINTEM ; print them in order
C009	60			RTS	; end of this routine
					;
C00A	A0	00		LDY	#0 ; first zero out the counter
C00C	8C	1B	C1	STY	COUNTER ; low byte
C00F	8C	1C	C1	STY	COUNTER+1 ; high byte
C012	20	0E	C1	JSR	BUFZP ; copy the address of buffer to ZP
C015	B1	FB		LDA	(ZP),Y ; get a first character
C017	D0	01		BNE	CNMORE ; if it's not zero, continue
C019	60			RTS	; done
C01A	EE	1B	C1	CNMORE	INC COUNTER ; counter up one
C01D	D0	03		BNE	FIND0
C01F	EE	1C	C1		INC COUNTER+1 ; high-byte increments
C022	C8			FIND0	INY ; increase the .Y counter
C023	D0	02		BNE	LOOKMORE ; if Y <> 0, continue
C025	E6	FC		INC	ZP+1 ; else, add 256 to ZP
C027	B1	FB		LOOKMORE	LDA (ZP),Y ; get the next character
C029	D0	F7		BNE	FIND0 ; if not zero, keep going
					;
C02B	C8			INY	; keep the index going
C02C	D0	E7		BNE	CNLOOP ; go back for more
C02E	E6	FC		INC	ZP+1 ; handle ZP if Y = 0
C030	D0	E3		BNE	CNLOOP ; branch always
					;
					; ALSWAP—the main routine for
					; alphabetizing.
					;
C032				ALSWAP	= *
C032	20	0E	C1	ALUTLP	JSR BUFZP ; set up ZP and ZQ pointers
C035	20	58	C0		JSR CNDOWN ; counter down by one
C038	20	77	C0	ALINLP	JSR ZPZQ ; copy ZP to ZQ
C03B	20	80	C0		JSR FINWORD ; find the next word for ZQ
C03E	20	8F	C0		JSR COMPAR ; compare the two words
C041	90	03		BCC	SKIP ; if CC, leave them alone

```

C043 20 AB C0      JSR  SWITCH      ; else, switch them
C046 CE 1D C1     SKIP  DEC  INCOUNT   ; are we done?
C049 D0 ED        BNE  ALINLP    ; no, continue the inner loop
C04B CE 1E C1     DEC  INCOUNT+1 ; else, INCOUNT = 0, so check the high
; byte
C04E AD 1E C1     LDA  INCOUNT+1
C051 C9 FF        CMP  #255      ; 255 means we're done
C053 D0 E3        BNE  ALINLP    ; if not 255, continue
C055 4C 32 C0     JMP  ALUTLP     ; go back for outer loop
;
C058 CE 1B C1     CNDOWN DEC  COUNTER    ; counter down by one
C05B D0 0D        BNE  COPYUI    ; if not zero, we're OK
C05D CE 1C C1     DEC  COUNTER+1 ; DEC the high byte
C060 AD 1C C1     LDA  COUNTER+1 ; check it
C063 C9 FF        CMP  #255      ; if 255, we're all done
C065 D0 03        BNE  COPYUI    ; if not, continue
C067 68          PLA          ;
C068 68          PLA          ; trash the return address
C069 60          RTS         ; return to the previous routine
C06A AD 1B C1     COPYUI LDA  COUNTER    ;
C06D 8D 1D C1     STA  INCOUNT
C070 AD 1C C1     LDA  COUNTER+1
C073 8D 1E C1     STA  INCOUNT+1 ; copy COUNTER to INCOUNT
C076 60          RTS         ;
;
C077 A5 FB        ZPZQ  LDA  ZP          ; copy ZP
C079 85 FD        STA  ZQ          ; to ZQ
C07B A5 FC        LDA  ZP+1        ; and the high byte
C07D 85 FE        STA  ZQ+1        ; as well
C07F 60          RTS         ;
;
C080          FINWORD = *          ; finds the next word
C080 A0 00        LDY  #0          ; index for ZQ
C082 B1 FD        FINLP  LDA  (ZQ),Y   ; get a character
C084 E6 ED        INC  ZQ          ; the counter must go forward
C086 D0 02        BNE  CHECKQ
C088 E6 FE        INC  ZQ+1        ; handle the high byte
C08A C9 00        CHECKQ CMP  #0          ; check the character we get
C08C D0 F4        BNE  FINLP      ; if it isn't zero, go back
C08E 60          RTS         ; but if it is, we're done
;
C08F A0 00        COMPAR LDY  #0          ;
C091 B1 FB        COMPL  LDA  (ZP),Y   ; get a character from the first word
C093 F0 0A        BEQ  RIGHT      ; the first is shorter, so quit
C095 D1 FD        CMP  (ZQ),Y     ; compare it
C097 90 06        BCC  RIGHT      ; if ZP < ZQ, they're right
C099 D0 0E        BNE  WRONG      ; if not equal, they're in the wrong order
C09B C8          INY          ; else try for more
C09C 4C 91 C0     JMP  COMPL
;
C09F A5 FD        RIGHT  LDA  ZQ          ; set up ZP for the next word
C0A1 85 FB        STA  ZP          ; copy low byte
C0A3 A5 FE        LDA  ZQ+1        ; and also
C0A5 85 FC        STA  ZP+1        ; the high
C0A7 18          CLC          ; a flag that means it's OK
C0A8 60          RTS         ; and we're done here
;
C0A9 38          WRONG  SEC          ; carry set = a problem
C0AA 60          RTS         ; now SWITCH will be called
;
C0AB A0 00        SWITCH LDY  #0          ;
C0AD 38          SEC          ; carry should be set, but we'll make sure
C0AE B1 FB        SWILP  LDA  (ZP),Y   ;
C0B0 D0 01        BNE  AHEAD      ; if it's not zero

```

C0B2	18			CLC		; if we get a zero, clear carry to mark the
C0B3	99	7D	C1	AHEAD	STA	TEMBUF,Y ; end of the first word
C0B6	B1	FD			LDA	(ZQ),Y ; save the word from ZP
C0B8	91	FB			STA	(ZP),Y ; copy ZQ
C0BA	F0	03			BEQ	SWI2 ; to ZP
C0BC	C8				INY	; the end of ZQ is a zero
C0BD	D0	EF			BNE	SWILP ; otherwise, keep going
C0BF	90	11		SWI2	BCC	COPY2 ; branch back (always)
C0C1	8C	1F	C1		STY	TEMPY ; if carry clear, the first word was shorter
C0C4	C8				INY	; stash Y
C0C5	B1	FB		LOOP2	LDA	(ZP),Y ; get more characters
C0C7	99	7D	C1		STA	TEMBUF,Y
C0CA	F0	03			BEQ	LOTY
C0CC	C8				INY	
C0CD	D0	F6			BNE	LOOP2 ; if not, keep going
C0CF	AC	1F	C1	LOTY	LDY	TEMPY ; get Y back
C0D2	C8			COPY2	INY	; INC .Y to point one past the current (zero)
						; byte
C0D3	98				TYA	; put it in .A
C0D4	18				CLC	
C0D5	65	FB			ADC	ZP ; add it to ZP
C0D7	85	FB			STA	ZP ; and store it
C0D9	A9	00			LDA	#0 ; do the high byte, too
C0DB	A8				TAY	; set up Y for the next loop
C0DC	65	FC			ADC	ZP+1 ; add zero plus carry
C0DE	85	FC			STA	ZP+1 ; store it
						; Now ZP points to a new location.
C0E0	B9	7D	C1	LASTLP	LDA	TEMBUF,Y
C0E3	91	FB			STA	(ZP),Y
C0E5	D0	01			BNE	INNNY ; if not zero, continue
C0E7	60				RTS	; we're done
C0E8	C8			INNNY	INY	; or we're not
C0E9	D0	F5			BNE	LASTLP ; and loop back
						:
C0EB	20	0E	C1	PRINTEM	JSR	BUF2ZP
C0EE	A0	00			LDY	#0
C0F0	B1	FB		FIRST	LDA	(ZP),Y ; get the first character
C0F2	D0	01			BNE	NOTDONE
C0F4	60				RTS	; if it's a zero, finish this routine
C0F5	20	D2	FF	NOTDONE	JSR	CHROUT
C0F8	C8				INY	
C0F9	D0	02			BNE	NOTEQ
C0FB	E6	FC			INC	ZP+1 ; take care of the high byte
C0FD	B1	FB		NOTEQ	LDA	(ZP),Y ; get more characters
C0FF	D0	F4			BNE	NOTDONE
C101	A9	0D			LDA	#13 ; print a return
C103	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHROUT
C106	C8				INY	
C107	D0	02			BNE	ZIZL
C109	E6	FC			INC	ZP+1
C10B	4C	F0	C0	ZIZL	JMP	FIRST
						:
C10E	A9	20		BUF2ZP	LDA	#<BUFFER ; set up a pointer to BUFFER
C110	85	FB			STA	ZP ; low byte of BUFFER to ZP
C112	85	FD			STA	ZQ ; also in ZQ
C114	A9	C1			LDA	#>BUFFER
C116	85	FC			STA	ZP+1 ; high byte to ZP
C118	85	FE			STA	ZQ+1 ; ZQ, too
C11A	60				RTS	
						:
C11B	00	00		COUNTER	.BYTE	0,0
C11D	00	00		INCOUNT	.BYTE	0,0
C11F	00			TEMPY	.BYTE	0

ALSWAP

```
C120 41 4E 44 BUFFER .ASC "AND"
C123 00 .BYTE 0
C124 43 4C 45 .ASC "CLEAR"
C129 00 .BYTE 0
C12A 53 54 55 .ASC "STUMPS"
C130 00 .BYTE 0
C131 57 45 .ASC "WE"
C133 00 .BYTE 0
C134 46 4F 4C .ASC "FOLKS"
C139 00 .BYTE 0
C13A 54 48 45 .ASC "THEY"
C13E 00 .BYTE 0
C13F 54 48 45 .ASC "THEN"
C143 00 .BYTE 0
C144 52 45 4D .ASC "REMEMBER"
C14C 00 .BYTE 0
C14D 59 4F 55 .ASC "YOU"
C150 00 .BYTE 0
C151 53 45 45 .ASC "SEEN"
C155 00 .BYTE 0
C156 54 4F .ASC "TO"
C158 00 .BYTE 0
C159 54 57 45 .ASC "TWENTY"
C15F 00 .BYTE 0
C160 47 45 4E .ASC "GENERALLY"
C169 00 .BYTE 0
C16A 44 4F 47 .ASC "DOG"
C16D 00 .BYTE 0
C16E 41 42 4F .ASC "ABOUT"
C173 00 .BYTE 0
C174 53 54 52 .ASC "STRIPE"
C17A 00 .BYTE 0
C17B 00 00 .BYTE 0,0
C17D TEMBUF = * ; temporary buffer (allow 256 bytes)
```

See also ALPNTR, SRCBIN.

Name

Animation: alternating character sets

Description

This is one of the easier ways to animate characters on the 40-column screen of the 64 or 128. If you press SHIFT and the Commodore key at the same time, the character set will switch between uppercase/graphics mode and lowercase/uppercase mode. By alternately printing CHR\$(14) and CHR\$(142), you can cause any or all of the characters on the screen to change.

Prototype

1. Check a timer (the jiffy clock, in this example).
2. If enough time has passed, start at step 3 below. Otherwise, exit the routine.
3. Add a constant to the timer and store it for the next time.
4. Load .A with the FLIP value, which is either 14 or 142. Print it and then, using EOR, change it to the other value.
5. Move characters that should be in motion.

Explanation

Although the example provides a lively screen, there's really no movement of characters at all. The alternating M's and W's are the effect we're looking for—animation via character set flipping. The character that flips between C and a dash is another by-product of this technique. It seems to move from left to right, but it's not actually being placed and erased. The line where it moves contains a series of 40 C characters, but at any given point, 39 of them are black, which is the background color. The apparent motion comes from a different value being stored into color memory.

There aren't a lot of interesting dual characters in the two built-in character sets, but if you define your own custom characters, you can achieve some very interesting effects.

Routine

```

C000          JIF          =    $A2          ; LSB of the jiffy clock
C000          COLMEM      =    55296         ; color memory
C000          SCRMEM      =    1024         ; screen memory
C000          LINCOL      =    COLMEM+80
C000          LINSR      =    SCRMEM+80
C000          BKGRND      =    53281         ; background register
C000          CHROUT      =    $FFD2        ; Kernal routines
C000          GETIN       =    $FFE4
C000 A9 00          LDA     #0
C002 8D 21 D0       STA     BKGRND         ; background color = black
C005 A9 05          LDA     #5
C007 20 D2 FF       JSR     CHROUT         ; print it
C00A A9 93          LDA     #147          ; ASCII for clear screen

```


Name

Convert a signed byte value to a signed integer value

Description

This very short routine changes an 8-bit signed number into a 16-bit signed number.

Prototype

1. Copy the original byte to the low byte of the integer.
2. If the sign bit (bit 7) is set, store an \$FF to the high byte.
3. If bit 7 is clear, store a \$00 to the high byte.

Explanation

A memory location can hold only 256 possible numbers. In unsigned arithmetic, the numbers are 0–255. Signed arithmetic also allows 256 numbers, but they range from -128 to $+127$. If that sounds confusing, think of a clock with the numbers 1–12. Add one hour to 3:00, and the clock shows 4:00. But if you add ten hours to 3:00, the result is 1:00, because there are no hours beyond 12:00. In a sense, adding 10 to 3:00 is the same as subtracting 2 from 3:00, so $10 = -2$ when you're using a clock. In signed arithmetic, a 255 is the same as -1 , a 254 is -2 , and so on. If a memory location holds a zero and you use the DEcReMent instruction, it will now hold an \$FF, which can be called a 255 (unsigned) or a -1 (signed).

Bit 7 indicates whether a number is positive (0) or negative (1). The numbers 0–127 (%00000000–%01111111) all have a 0 in the high bit. Likewise, the numbers from -128 through -1 (%10000000–%11111111) contain a 1 in the sign bit.

Two-byte signed integer values follow the same rules, but the numbers fall between -32768 and 32767 and bit 15 is the sign bit. The number -1 is \$FFFF instead of \$FF, and the number $+1$ is \$0001 instead of \$01. Thus, to make a positive byte into a positive two-byte integer, we have to add a \$00 as the high byte. For negative bytes, an \$FF becomes the high byte.

The example routine copies the original value to the low byte of the integer. It then checks the sign bit and puts the appropriate value (\$00 or \$FF) into the high byte of the integer.

Routine

C000	AD 15	C0	B2SNIN	LDA	NUMBER	; the byte we're copying
C003	8D 16	C0		STA	INTGER	; into the low byte of INTGER
C006	2A			ROL		; check the sign bit
C007	B0 06			BCS	NEGATV	; branch ahead if negative
C009	A9 00			LDA	##%00000000	; it's positive
C00B	8D 17	C0		STA	INTGER+1	; so clear the high byte

B2SNIN

```
C00E 60          RTS          ; and we're done
C00F A9 FF      NEGATV LDA    #%11111111 ; the number is negative
C011 8D 17 C0   STA    INTGER+1 ; so fill the high byte with ones
C014 60          RTS          ; and we're done
C015 09          NUMBER .BYTE 09
C016 00 00      INTGER .BYTE 00,00
```

See also B2UNIN, BCD2BY, CB2BCD, CFP2I, CI2FP, CNVBFP.

Name

Convert a byte value (8 bits) to an unsigned integer value (16 bits)

Description

This is a very simple routine that adds a high byte of \$00 to a byte value to make it an unsigned integer value.

Prototype

1. Copy the original byte to the low byte of the integer.
2. Put a zero in the high byte of the integer.

Explanation

Bytes, by their very nature, can contain only the numbers 0–255 (\$00–\$FF). By combining two bytes to represent a single number, you can extend the range to 0–65535 (\$0000–\$FFFF). On the 64 and 128, the convention is to put the low byte in front of the high byte. The number \$A012, for example, would be stored in memory as 18 (\$12) followed by 160 (\$A0).

This routine merely copies the byte to the first position of the integer and then tacks on a zero for the high byte.

Routine

```

C000 AD 0C C0 B2UNIN   LDA  NUMBER   ; the byte we're copying
C003 8D 0D C0         STA  INTGER   ; into the low byte of integer
C006 A9 00           LDA  #0       ; if it's unsigned, always a zero
C008 8D 0E C0         STA  INTGER+1 ; the high byte
C00B 60              RTS

;
; data bytes
C00C 09              NUMBER .BYTE 09
C00D 00 00          INTGER  .BYTE 00,00

```

See also B2SNIN, BCD2BY, CB2BCD, CFP2I, CI2FP, CNVBFP.

Name

Convert a binary-coded decimal value to ASCII characters

Description

Although the processor has a decimal flag and can perform math in binary-coded decimal (BCD), this mode is rarely used on Commodore computers. The CIA chips' time-of-day clocks keep time in BCD format, but that's about it.

If you decide there's some merit in using BCD math, however, this routine will convert a single BCD byte into two ASCII numbers. Its construction closely resembles the conversion routine that handles hexadecimal.

Prototype

1. Enter with the number to be converted in the accumulator.
2. Save it temporarily.
3. AND with the number \$0F and add 48 for the low nybble.
4. Transfer to .X.
5. Restore the previous value.
6. Repeat the above steps, but rotate right four times with the carry flag set (or cleared) as needed to add 48.
7. Exit with the high nybble in .A, the low in .X.

Explanation

The high and low nybbles of a byte are the top four bits and the bottom four, respectively. A nybble is half a byte. Normally, a nybble can have 16 possible settings, from %0000 through %1111. Given two nybbles, a byte can hold 256 possible values (16×16). Not so in decimal mode. If you set the decimal flag (with the SED operation), nybbles are suddenly limited to 10 values, from \$0 through \$9. That means bytes can hold only 100 different numbers (10×10), from \$00 through \$99.

Such mathematical operations as addition (ADC) and subtraction (SBC) are also affected by the decimal flag. Suddenly, \$35 plus \$49 is \$84 (in decimal mode) instead of \$7E (in nondecimal mode). The number \$2001 in hex means 8193. But in decimal mode, \$2001 means, well, 2001. For those of us who count with ten fingers, decimal mode is quite convenient.

If you need to print out a BCD number, this routine will do the trick. It basically isolates the nybbles and adds 48 to convert one byte into two ASCII characters, which can then be printed.

Routine

```

C000                                CHROUT = $FFD2
C000 A9 93                          LDA  #$93 ; convert $93
C002 20 0D C0                        JSR  BCD2AX ; to the characters 9 and 3
C005 20 D2 FF                        JSR  CHROUT ; print 9
C008 8A                              TXA
C009 20 D2 FF                        JSR  CHROUT ; print 3
C00C 60                              RTS

;
C00D D8                                BCD2AX CLD ; make sure decimal mode is off
C00E 48                                PHA ; save the value
C00F 29 0F                            AND  #%00001111 ; low nybble first
C011 09 30                            ORA  #48 ; add 48 for ASCII
C013 AA                              TAX ; result in .X (or you can store it in
; memory)
C014 68                                PLA ; get back the original value
C015 29 F0                            AND  #%11110000 ; high nybble
C017 38                                SEC ; what will become bit 5 (16)?
C018 6A                                ROR ; move it right one
C019 38                                SEC ; bit 6 (32)
C01A 6A                                ROR ; right again
C01B 4A                                LSR
C01C 4A                                LSR ; and shift right with zeros
C01D 60                              RTS ; done (high nybble in .A, low in .X)

```

See also CAS2IN, CB2ASC, CB2HEX, CI2HEX.

BCD2BY

Name

Convert binary-coded decimal (BCD) to a byte value

Description

If you need to convert a binary-coded decimal (BCD) number to a standard byte value, this routine will do it.

Prototype

1. Store the value temporarily in memory.
2. Get the high nybble by masking off the low nybble.
3. Shift the high nybble right once (the nybble value times eight). Store it in the RESULT byte.
4. Shift it right twice more (nybble times two). Add the number to RESULT.
5. Reload the original value.
6. Mask off the high nybble.
7. Add the low nybble to RESULT.

Explanation

The SED (SEt Decimal) operation puts the 64 and 128 into decimal mode, where the accumulator can hold only 100 values instead of 256. Each nybble counts from \$0 through \$9 instead of \$0 through \$F. Thus, if you add \$03 to \$19, the result is \$22 instead of \$1C (because 3 plus 19 is 22 in decimal arithmetic).

Converting a BCD number to a normal byte value means changing a number like \$71 to \$47, because 71 in decimal is \$47 in hexadecimal. The ten's place of \$71 is the high nybble, \$7. If the low byte is masked off, the number becomes \$70 (decimal 112). Shift it right once and it becomes \$38 (decimal 56), which is 8×7 . That number gets stored in memory. Shift it right two more times, and \$38 is changed to \$0E (decimal 14), which is 2×7 . Add that to the first number, and the result is decimal 70, because $(8 \times 7) + (2 \times 7)$ is the same as 10×7 . This operation changes \$70 (112) to 70 (\$46). The next step is to add in the low nybble, the one's place in both decimal and hexadecimal.

Routine

```
C000          CHROUT =   $FFD2
C000          LINPRT =   $BDCD      ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128
                                     ;
C000 A0 00     FRAME   LDY   #0
C002 8C 1F C0 LOOP    STY   TEMPY
C005 B9 20 C0         LDA   LIST,Y      ; get a BCD value
C008 20 25 C0         JSR   BCD2BY     ; convert it
C00B AA                TAX
```

```

C00C A9 00          LDA #0
C00E 20 CD BD      JSR LINPRT ; print it
C011 A9 0D          LDA #13
C013 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT ; and a RETURN
C016 AC 1F C0      LDY TEMPY ; get .Y back
C019 C8             INY ; INC it
C01A C0 05          CPY #5 ; is it 5 yet?
C01C D0 E4          BNE LOOP ; no, go back
C01E 60             RTS ; else, end
;

C01F 00            TEMPY .BYTE 0
C020 10 01 99 LIST .BYTE $10,$01,$99,$50,$55
;

C025 D8            BCD2BY CLD ; just to be sure that decimal mode isn't on
C026 8D 45 C0      STA TEMPA ; save the number
C029 29 F0          AND #%11110000 ; get the high nybble
C02B 4A            LSR ; shift right (nybble × 16)/2 is nybble × 8
C02C 8D 46 C0      STA RESULT ; start preparing the result
C02F 4A            LSR ; nybble × 4
C030 4A            LSR ; nybble × 2
C031 18            CLC ; now add nybble × 8 and nybble × 2
C032 6D 46 C0      ADC RESULT ; which is nybble × (8 + 2)
C035 8D 46 C0      STA RESULT ; and we're almost done
C038 AD 45 C0      LDA TEMPA ; now the low nybble
C03B 29 0F          AND #%00001111 ; get the four bits
C03D 18            CLC
C03E 6D 46 C0      ADC RESULT ; add it
C041 8D 46 C0      STA RESULT ; store it, for whatever reason
C044 60            RTS ; all done
;

C045 00            TEMPA .BYTE 0
C046 00            RESULT .BYTE 0

```

See also B2SNIN, B2UNIN, CB2BCD, CFP2I, CI2FP, CNVBFP.

BCKCOL

Name

Set the text screen background color

Description

This routine sets the background color of the text screen. Pick a color value, assign it as COLVAL, and access the routine.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the selected background color in .A.
2. Store .A in the background color register at 53281 (BGCOL0).

Explanation

The example program shows how to set the background color of the screen to red. Here, COLVAL is given a value of 2, representing the color red. To choose another color, use the table of color values found under COLFIL.

Routine

```
C000          BGCOL0 = 53281          ; background color register 0
;
; Set background to red.
C000 AD 0B C0          LDA COLVAL      ; .A contains screen background color
C003 20 07 C0          JSR BCKCOL     ; set it
C006 60              RTS
;
; Set background color. Color value in .A
C007 8D 21 D0 BCKCOL STA BGCOL0      ; set background
C00A 60              RTS
;
C00B 02          COLVAL .BYTE 2      ; color red
```

See also BORCOL, COLFIL, TXTCCH, TXTCOL.

Name

Emit a beep sound

Description

BEEPER produces a beep. Call it whenever you want to get the user's attention without startling him or her. You could use it, for example, to prompt for a question or to signal a correct (or incorrect) response.

Prototype

1. Clear the SID chip with **SIDCLR**.
2. Set up the necessary SID chip parameters for voice 1. Set volume to 15, attack/decay to 0, sustain/release to \$F0, low frequency to 132, and high frequency to 125.
3. Select a triangle waveform for voice 1 and start the attack/decay/sustain cycle (set the gate bit).
4. Allow a delay of two jiffies and then start the release cycle (clear the gate bit).

Explanation

Depending upon the application, the beeping sound that **BEEPER** generates may or may not be quite what you're looking for. If it's not what you want, experiment with the SID chip parameters in the routine until you get the effect you want.

When the SID chip is called upon to make a particular sound, it often echoes the last frequency at a level that is barely audible even after the release cycle is complete. In fact, this occurs to some degree with **BEEPER**. If you find this effect annoying, you can stop it before exiting from the routine. Either store zeros in the frequency registers (**FRELO1**, **FREHI1**), or simply turn the chip off altogether by JSR'ing to **SIDCLR**.

Routine

```

C000      SIGVOL    =    54296      ; SID chip volume register
C000      ATDCY1   =    54277      ; voice 1 attack/decay register
C000      SURELI   =    54278      ; voice 1 sustain/release register
C000      FRELO1   =    54272      ; voice 1 frequency control (low byte)
C000      FREHI1   =    54273      ; voice 1 frequency control (high byte)
C000      VCREG1   =    54276      ; voice 1 control register
C000      JIEFLO   =    162        ; low byte of jiffy clock
;
C000 20 2F C0 BEEPER JSR  SIDCLR    ; clear the SID chip
C003 A9 0F          LDA  #15      ; set the volume
C005 8D 18 D4      STA  SIGVOL
C008 A9 00          LDA  #0       ; set attack/decay
C00A 8D 05 D4      STA  ATDCY1
C00D A9 F0          LDA  #$F0     ; set sustain/release

```

BEEPER

```
C00F 8D 06 D4      STA  SUREL1
C012 A9 84        LDA  #132          ; set voice 1 frequency (low byte)
C014 8D 00 D4      STA  FRELO1
C017 A9 7D        LDA  #125          ; set voice 1 frequency (high byte)
C019 8D 01 D4      STA  FREH11
C01C A9 11        LDA  #%00010001   ; select triangle waveform and gate sound
C01E 8D 04 D4      STA  VCREG1
C021 A9 02        LDA  #2           ; cause a delay of two jiffies
C023 65 A2        ADC  JIFFLO        ; add current jiffy reading
C025 C5 A2        DELAY  CMP  JIFFLO        ; and wait for two jiffies to elapse
C027 D0 FC        BNE  DELAY
C029 A9 10        LDA  #%00010000   ; ungate sound
C02B 8D 04 D4      STA  VCREG1
C02E 60           RTS

;
; Clear the SID chip.
C02F A9 00        SIDCLR LDA  #0
C031 A0 18        LDY  #24          ; fill with zeros
C033 99 00 D4 SIDLOP STA  FRELO1,Y        ; index to FRELO1
C036 88          DEY          ; store zero in SID chip address
C037 10 FA        BPL  SIDLOP        ; for next lower byte
C039 60           RTS          ; fill 25 bytes
```

See also BELLRG, EXPLOD, INTMUS, MELODY, NOTETB, SIDCLR, SIDVOL, SIRENS.

Name

Emit a bell sound

Description

BELLRG produces a bell tone. You might find it useful in your programs as a signal to the user that some ongoing task—like copying a memory buffer to disk—has finished.

Prototype

1. Clear the SID chip with **SIDCLR**.
2. Set up the necessary SID chip parameters. Set volume to 7, attack/decay and sustain/release of voice 1 to \$0A, and the high frequency of both voices 1 and 3 to 67.
3. Select a triangle waveform for voice 1. At the same time, set bit 2 for ring modulation and start the attack/decay/sustain cycle (set the gate bit).
4. Start the release cycle of voice 1 (clear the gate bit).

Explanation

This routine relies on *ring modulation* to simulate a bell sound. Ring modulation produces a waveform that is a combination of the sum and difference of two waveforms of different frequencies.

You can use any or all of the SID chip's three voices for ring modulation. In **BELLRG**, the frequency of voice 1 is ring modulated by the selection of a triangle waveform for this voice and by storage of a second frequency value in voice 3. Since voice 3 is not actually heard, no SID chip parameters other than the frequency value are necessary for this voice. Here, identical frequencies are used for both voices.

Storing different frequencies in voice 3 will produce widely varying sound effects. For instance, a 10 in FREHI3 will cause a gonglike sound rather than a bell. To set this up, insert an LDA #10 instruction just before the STA FREHI3 at \$C015.

The SID chip often tends to run on in the background even after the release cycle is complete. **BELLRG** is not immune from this effect. To stop this from happening, store zeros in the frequency registers (FREHI1, FREHI3), or turn off the chip altogether by JSRing to **SIDCLR** once the bell has sounded.

BELLRG

Routine

```
C000          SIGVOL    =    54296      ; SID chip volume register
C000          ATDCY1    =    54277      ; voice 1 attack/decay register
C000          SUREL1    =    54278      ; voice 1 sustain/release register
C000          FRELO1    =    54272      ; voice 1 frequency control (low byte)
C000          FREHI1    =    54273      ; voice 1 frequency control (high byte)
C000          FREHI3    =    54287      ; voice 3 frequency (high byte)
C000          VCREG1    =    54276      ; voice 1 control register
;
C000 20 23 C0 BELLRG   JSR  SIDCLR      ; clear the SID chip
C003 A9 07          LDA  #7             ; set the volume
C005 8D 18 D4      STA  SIGVOL
C008 A9 0A          LDA  #$0A          ; set attack/decay
C00A 8D 05 D4      STA  ATDCY1
C00D 8D 06 D4      STA  SUREL1        ; set sustain/release
C010 A9 43          LDA  #67          ; set voice 1 high frequency
C012 8D 01 D4      STA  FREHI1
C015 8D 0F D4      STA  FREHI3        ; for ring modulation
C018 A9 15          LDA  #%00010101   ; select triangle waveform/ring
; modulation/gate the sound
C01A 8D 04 D4      STA  VCREG1
C01D A9 14          LDA  #%00010100   ; ungate the sound
C01F 8D 04 D4      STA  VCREG1
C022 60            RTS
;
; Clear the SID chip.
C023 A9 00          LDA  #0           ; fill with zeros
C025 A0 18          LDY  #24          ; index to FRELO1
C027 99 00 D4      SIDLOP  STA  FRELO1,Y   ; store zero in each SID chip address
C02A 88            DEY                ; for next lower byte
C02B 10 FA          BPL  SIDLOP       ; fill 25 bytes
C02D 60            RTS
```

See also BEEPER, EXPLOD, INTMUS, MELODY, NOTETB, SIDCLR, SIDVOL, SIRENS.

Name

Display in a virtual window portions of a much larger map

Description

The normal 40-column screen, with 25 rows, is somewhat limited when it comes to games or applications that need a larger workspace. This routine allows you to use the 40-column screen as a window on a larger screen.

Prototype

1. Set aside a section of memory for use as the big screen.
2. Place values for the upper left corner in CORNRX and CORNRY.
3. Establish a zero-page pointer for the real screen.
4. Working 40 characters at a time, store a character and a color into screen and color memory.
5. At the end of each line, add 40 to the zero-page pointer.
6. Add the width of the large screen to that pointer.
7. While the number of rows is less than maximum, continue to loop back to step 4.

Explanation

Although this routine is great for war games and adventure games (both of which benefit when they have a large map area), it could also be used in a serious application like a spreadsheet.

The example map is 100 columns by 50 rows. You can adjust this by changing the variables WIDTH and HEIGHT at \$C120-\$C121. The variables LINES and COLS indicate the size of the normal text screen.

Note that 100 columns and 50 rows give you 5000 cells on the large map. This means the program uses 5000 bytes of memory. The larger you make the map, the more memory it needs. If you create your own map, you could load it into memory directly from disk. The example uses a table to build the map. The label CRUNCH5 at \$C149 contains four numbers: 80, 1, 20, and 2. This means line 5 of the large screen contains 80 ones and 20 twos. There are only five characters allowed on this particular map (a maximum of 256 can be placed, if you expand the table MCHAR and MCOLR just before the CRUNCH table).

BIGMAP

The five characters are:

0	White	102	crosshatch
1	Green	88	spade
2	Blue	160	RVS space
3	Black	81	ball
4	Gray2	87	circle

The numbers in MCHAR (\$C129) are screen codes. In MCOLR (\$C12E), the numbers are color codes. In the 5000 bytes of the map, you'll find the numbers 0-4. When a portion of the map is displayed, the number is used as an index into MCHAR and MCOLR, and the corresponding numbers are POKEd to screen or color memory.

The framing routine looks for the cursor keys (up, down, left, and right) and moves the values of CORNRX and CORNRY according to the direction of movement. You won't have to scroll one character at a time, however. Just store new values to CORNRX and CORNRY and call **BIGMAP**. To exit this routine, press RETURN.

Note: Since location \$4000 is in bank 0 on the 128, you may want to put the map at \$2000 instead. If you use a 128, you should substitute MAPTAB = \$2000 in the list of equates at the beginning of the program.

Routine

```
C000      ZP      =    $F9
C000      ZS      =    $FB
C000      ZC      =    $FD
C000      GETIN   =    $FFE4
C000      SCREEN  =    $0400      ; screen memory
C000      COLOR   =    $D800      ; color memory
C000      MAPTAB  =    $4000      ; lookup table for map
;
C000 20 DF C0      JSR    MAKMAP      ; uncrunch the map
C003 20 62 C0      JSR    BIGMAP      ; print the map (starting at 0,0)
C006 20 E4 FF GLP  JSR    GETIN      ; get a key
C009 F0 FB          BEQ    GLP
C00B C9 0D          CMP    #13      ; is it RETURN?
C00D D0 01          BNE    MORE
C00F 60            RTS
;
; yes, so quit
;
C010 C9 11      MORE  CMP    #17      ; if cursor down
C012 F0 1B      BEQ    MOVEDN      ; move the map down
C014 C9 91      CMP    #145     ; if cursor up
C016 F0 29      BEQ    MOVEUP      ; move the map up
C018 C9 1D      CMP    #29      ; cursor right
C01A F0 34      BEQ    MOVERT
C01C C9 9D      CMP    #157     ; check cursor left
C01E D0 E6      BNE    GLP      ; if not left, go back
C020 AE 24 C1 MOVELF LDX    CORNRX      ; get the x corner
C023 F0 E1      BEQ    GLP      ; if zero, it can't decrement
C025 CA          DEX
; else, count down
```

```

C026 8E 24 C1      STX  CORNRX
C029 20 62 C0      JSR  BIGMAP
C02C 4C 06 C0      JMP  GLP
C02F AC 25 C1      MOVEDN LDY  CORNRY      ; change the y corner
C032 CC 27 C1      CPY  MAXY        ; is it at the top value?
C035 F0 CF          BEQ  GLP         ; yes, skip it
C037 C8            INY                    ; else, add one
C038 8C 25 C1      STY  CORNRY
C03B 20 62 C0      JSR  BIGMAP
C03E 4C 06 C0      JMP  GLP

;
C041 AC 25 C1      MOVEUP LDY  CORNRY      ; check the y location
C044 F0 C0          BEQ  GLP         ; if zero, skip it
C046 88            DEY                    ; count back one
C047 8C 25 C1      STY  CORNRY
C04A 20 62 C0      JSR  BIGMAP
C04D 4C 06 C0      JMP  GLP

;
C050 AE 24 C1      MOVERT LDX  CORNRX      ; increment the x corner
C053 EC 26 C1      CPX  MAXX        ; is it the maximum?
C056 F0 AE          BEQ  GLP         ; if so, go back
C058 E8            INX
C059 8E 24 C1      STX  CORNRX
C05C 20 62 C0      JSR  BIGMAP
C05F 4C 06 C0      JMP  GLP

;
C062 A9 00          BIGMAP LDA  #<MAPTAB    ; set up ZP to point to the map table
C064 85 F9          STA  ZP
C066 A9 40          LDA  #>MAPTAB
C068 85 FA          STA  ZP+1
C06A AC 25 C1      FIXROW LDY  CORNRY      ; row number
C06D F0 0F          BEQ  FIXCOL      ; if row 0, skip ahead
C06F 18            LPROW  CLC        ; else, add the number of columns
C070 A5 F9          LDA  ZP          ; to the pointer
C072 6D 20 C1      ADC  WIDTH
C075 85 F9          STA  ZP
C077 90 02          BCC  INROW      ; if the carry flag is set
C079 E6 FA          INC  ZP+1        ; then increment the high byte
C07B 88            INROW  DEY        ; count down
C07C D0 F1          BNE  LPROW      ; and loop back

;
C07E AD 24 C1      FIXCOL LDA  CORNRX      ; now add the x offset
C081 18            CLC
C082 65 F9          ADC  ZP          ; add to ZP
C084 85 F9          STA  ZP          ; store it
C086 A9 00          LDA  #0          ; fix the high byte
C088 65 FA          ADC  ZP+1        ; add zero or one
C08A 85 FA          STA  ZP+1        ; depending on whether carry is set or not

;
; Now the pointer ZP is set up.
; Set up a second pointer to the screen and
; color memory.

C08C A9 00          LDA  #<SCREEN
C08E 85 FB          STA  Z5
C090 A9 04          LDA  #>SCREEN
C092 85 FC          STA  Z5+1
C094 A9 00          LDA  #<COLOR
C096 85 FD          STA  ZC
C098 A9 D8          LDA  #>COLOR
C09A 85 FE          STA  ZC+1

;
; Start storing the characters and colors.
; number of lines
; COUNTR will count down

C09C AD 22 C1      LDA  LINES
C09F 8D 28 C1      STA  COUNTR

```

BIGMAP

```

COA2 AC 23 C1  STORLP  LDY  COLS      ; number of columns
COA5 B1 F9      INLOOP  LDA  (ZP),Y    ; get the character number
COA7 AA        TAX      ; which is an offset
COA8 BD 29 C1  LDA  MCHAR,X  ; to the character
COAB 91 FB      STA  (ZS),Y    ; store it to the screen
COAD BD 2E C1  LDA  MCOLR,X  ; also, a color
COB0 91 FD      STA  (ZC),Y    ; which goes in color memory
COB2 88        DEY      ; .Y counts down
COB3 10 F0      BPL  INLOOP   ; 40 times (in this example)
                                ; After each time through the loop,
                                ; fix the zero-page pointers.

COB5 18        CLC
COB6 A5 F9      LDA  ZP      ; to ZP
COB8 6D 20 C1  ADC  WIDTH    ; add the width of the big map
COBB 85 F9      STA  ZP
COBD A9 00      LDA  #0
COBF 65 FA      ADC  ZP+1    ; add zero or one
COC1 85 FA      STA  ZP+1    ; to ZP+1
COC3 18        CLC
COC4 A5 FB      LDA  ZS      ; to ZS
COC6 69 28      ADC  #40     ; add 40
COC8 85 FB      STA  ZS      ; and store it
COCA 90 02      BCC  FC
C0CC E6 FC      INC  ZS+1
C0CE 18        CLC
C0CF A5 FD      LDA  ZC      ; to ZC
C0D1 69 28      ADC  #40     ; add 40
C0D3 85 FD      STA  ZC
C0D5 90 02      BCC  FD
C0D7 E6 FE      INC  ZC+1
C0D9 CE 28 C1  FD  DEC  COUNTR  ; now see if it's time to leave
C0DC 10 C4      BPL  STORLP   ; no, do another row
CODE 60        RTS

C0DF A9 00      MAKMAP  LDA  #<MAPTAB  ; set up ZP to point to the table
COE1 85 F9      STA  ZP
COE3 A9 40      LDA  #>MAPTAB
COE5 85 FA      STA  ZP+1
COE7 A9 33      LDA  #<CRUNCH0 ; and ZS points to the crunch table
COE9 85 FB      STA  ZS
COEB A9 C1      LDA  #>CRUNCH0
COED 85 FC      STA  ZS+1

C0EF A0 00      MAKLP   LDY  #0
COF1 B1 FB      LDA  (ZS),Y  ; number of times to loop
COF3 F0 2A      BEQ  MKQUIT ; quit if zero
COF5 AA        TAX      ; put it in .X
COF6 8D 28 C1  STA  COUNTR  ; save in COUNTR, too
COF9 C8        INY
COFA B1 FB      LDA  (ZS),Y  ; the fill character is in .A
COFC 88        DEY      ; .Y is back to zero
COFD 91 F9      MKSTOR  STA  (ZP),Y    ; store it in MAPTAB memory
COFF C8        INY      ; .Y counts forward
C100 CA        DEX      ; .X counts down
C101 D0 FA      BNE  MKSTOR ; loop
                                ;
                                ; Now fix ZP and ZS.

C103 A5 FB      LDA  ZS
C105 18        CLC
C106 69 02      ADC  #2      ; add 2
C108 85 FB      STA  ZS
C10A 90 02      BCC  AHD
C10C E6 FC      INC  ZS+1
C10E A5 F9      AHD     LDA  ZP

```

```

C110 18          CLC
C111 6D 28 C1    ADC  COUNTR
C114 85 F9      STA  ZP
C116 A9 00      LDA  #0
C118 65 FA      ADC  ZP+1
C11A 85 FA      STA  ZP+1
C11C 4C EF C0   JMP  MAKLP
C11F 60          MKQUIT RTS

C120 64          WIDTH .BYTE 100 ; width of the big map
C121 32          HEIGHT .BYTE 50 ; height of the big screen
C122 18          LINES .BYTE 24 ; number of screen lines (0-24 is 25 lines)
C123 27          COLS .BYTE 39 ; number of screen columns (0-39 is total
; of 40)

C124 00          CORNRX .BYTE 0 ; x-position of upper left corner
C125 00          CORNRY .BYTE 0 ; y-position of corner
C126 3C          MAXX .BYTE 60
C127 19          MAXY .BYTE 25
C128 00          COUNTR .BYTE 0

C129 66 58 A0 MCHAR .BYTE 102,88,160,81,87
C12E 01 05 06 MCOLR .BYTE 1, 5, 6, 0,12
C133 64 00      CRUNCH0 .BYTE 100,0
C135 31 00 01 CRUNCH1 .BYTE 49,0,1,1,50,0
C13B 0A 00 50 CRUNCH2 .BYTE 10,0,80,1,10,0
C141 64 01      CRUNCH3 .BYTE 100,1
C143 0E 01 02 CRUNCH4 .BYTE 14,1,2,3,84,1
C149 50 01 14 CRUNCH5 .BYTE 80,1,20,2
C14D 52 01 12 CRUNCH6 .BYTE 82,1,18,2
C151 53 01 01 CRUNCH7 .BYTE 83,1,1,4,16,2
C157 0F 00 45 CRUNCH8 .BYTE 15,0,69,1,16,2
C15D 1E 00 37 CRUNCH9 .BYTE 30,0,55,1,15,2
C163 32 00 26 CRUNCH10 .BYTE 50,0,38,1,12,2
C169 34 00 24 CRUNCH11 .BYTE 52,0,36,1,12,2
C16F 58 00 01 CRUNCH12 .BYTE 88,0,1,3,11,2
C175 5A 00 0A CRUNCH13 .BYTE 90,0,10,2
C179 57 00 0D CRUNCH14 .BYTE 87,0,13,2
C17D 52 00 12 CRUNCH15 .BYTE 82,0,18,2
C181 05 00 01 CRUNCH16 .BYTE 5,0,1,4,5,0,1,4,63,0,25,2
C18D 02 01 49 CRUNCH17 .BYTE 2,1,73,0,25,2
C193 06 01 4A CRUNCH18 .BYTE 6,1,74,0,20,2
C199 0A 01 4B CRUNCH19 .BYTE 10,1,75,0,15,2
C19F 0E 01 47 CRUNCH20 .BYTE 14,1,71,0,15,2
C1A5 12 01 01 CRUNCH21 .BYTE 18,1,1,4,67,0,14,2
C1AD 17 01 14 CRUNCH22 .BYTE 23,1,20,0,1,3,47,0,9,2
C1B7 1F 01 45 CRUNCH23 .BYTE 31,1,69,0
C1BB 23 01 41 CRUNCH24 .BYTE 35,1,65,0
C1BF 24 01 01 CRUNCH25 .BYTE 36,1,1,4,63,0
C1C5 20 01 44 CRUNCH26 .BYTE 32,1,68,0
C1C9 18 01 4C CRUNCH27 .BYTE 24,1,76,0
C1CD 0A 01 5A CRUNCH28 .BYTE 10,1,90,0
C1D1 64 00      CRUNCH29 .BYTE 100,0
C1D3 64 00      CRUNCH30 .BYTE 100,0
C1D5 50 00 14 CRUNCH31 .BYTE 80,0,20,1
C1D9 45 00 02 CRUNCH32 .BYTE 69,0,2,3,29,1
C1DF 33 00 01 CRUNCH33 .BYTE 51,0,1,3,48,1
C1E5 33 00 31 CRUNCH34 .BYTE 51,0,49,1
C1E9 2D 00 37 CRUNCH35 .BYTE 45,0,55,1
C1ED 27 00 05 CRUNCH36 .BYTE 39,0,5,1,1,4,55,1
C1F5 20 00 44 CRUNCH37 .BYTE 32,0,68,1
C1F9 14 00 50 CRUNCH38 .BYTE 20,0,80,1
C1FD 12 00 1E CRUNCH39 .BYTE 18,0,30,1,1,3,51,1
C205 0F 00 55 CRUNCH40 .BYTE 15,0,85,1

```

BIGMAP

C209	0D	00	57	CRUNCH41	.BYTE	13,0,87,1	
C20D	0B	00	59	CRUNCH42	.BYTE	11,0,89,1	
C211	64	01		CRUNCH43	.BYTE	100,1	
C213	5A	01	0A	CRUNCH44	.BYTE	90,1,10,2	
C217	50	01	14	CRUNCH45	.BYTE	80,1,20,2	
C21B	3C	01	28	CRUNCH46	.BYTE	60,1,40,2	
C21F	32	01	01	CRUNCH47	.BYTE	50,1,1,3,49,2	
C225	29	01	3B	CRUNCH48	.BYTE	41,1,59,2	
C229	14	01	50	CRUNCH49	.BYTE	20,1,80,2	
C22D	00	00		.BYTE	0,0		; end of the table is a zero

See also WINDOW.

Name

Enable/disable the hi-res screen (bitmap mode)

Description

This routine turns on the hi-res screen if it's off and turns it off if it's currently on.

Prototype

EOR the contents of SCROLY (or GRAPHM on the 128) with %00100000 and store the result back in the appropriate register.

Explanation

On the 64, setting bit 5 of the vertical fine-scrolling/control register at 53265 (labeled SCROLY) enables high-resolution graphics, or bitmap mode. On the 128, GRAPHM (location 216) serves as a shadow register for SCROLY. During each IRQ interrupt of the 128, the contents of GRAPHM are copied to SCROLY. So, to enable bitmap mode on the 128, set bit 5 of location 216.

To disable bitmap mode and return to the normal text-screen arrangement, clear bit 5 of either SCROLY on the 64 or GRAPHM on the 128.

Both operations, enabling and disabling bitmap mode, can be carried out by exclusive-ORing this bit.

Routine

```

C000          SCROLY = 53265          ; scroll/control register; use GRAPHM = 216
                                           ; on the 128
                                           ;
                                           ; Enable/disable bitmap mode.
C000 AD 11 D0 BITMAP LDA SCROLY      ; substitute GRAPHM for SCROLY on the 128
C003 49 20          EOR #%00100000 ; flip bit 5
C005 8D 11 D0          STA SCROLY    ; reset register (again use GRAPHM instead of
                                           ; SCROLY on the 128)
C008 60          RTS
    
```

See also SCRDN1, SCRDN2, SCRDN3; CLRHRF or CLRHRS for example programs using BITMAP.

BORCOL

Name

Set the text screen border color

Description

BORCOL uses the color value in the accumulator to set the border color of the text screen. A table of color values and their corresponding colors is given under **COLFIL**.

Prototype

1. Come into this routine with the designated border color value in *.A*.
2. Store *.A* in the border color register at 53280 (EXTCOL).

Explanation

In the example program, the border color of the screen continually cycles through the 16 available colors. Pressing any key exits the routine.

A series of horizontal, or *raster*, lines make up the screen display. These raster lines are updated and redrawn every 1/60 second. Only 200 (lines 50–249) of the 262 raster lines (312 on European machines) are actually part of the visible display. The rest constitute the screen border.

Here, we determine the current raster line being drawn with **RASTER**, changing the border color only when this raster line is off the top of the visible screen area (when it has a value of 25 or less). This prevents the “moving lines” effect where the raster line is updated before it’s completely drawn.

Routine

```
C000          EXTCOL = 53280      ; border color register
C000          RASTER = 53266     ; current raster scan line
C000          GETIN  = 65508
C000          ZP     = 251
;
; Cycle border color while raster line is off
; bottom of screen.
C000 AD 12 D0 GETRAS LDA RASTER  ; check current raster line
C003 C9 19          CMP #25      ; is it off the top of the screen?
C005 90 F9          BCS GETRAS   ; no, so wait
C007 E6 FB          INC ZP       ; yes, so cycle color
C009 A5 FB          LDA ZP       ; .A contains border color
C00B 20 14 C0      JSR BORCOL    ; change it
C00E 20 E4 FF WAIT JSR GETIN    ; get a keypress
C011 F0 ED          BEQ GETRAS   ; no key, so continue to cycle
C013 60           RTS
;
; Set border color. .A holds color value.
C014 8D 20 D0 BORCOL STA EXTCOL ; set register
C017 60           RTS
```

See also BCKCOL, COLFIL, TXTCCH, TXTCOL.

Name

Clear the keyboard buffer

Description

There are often situations where you want to accept only the last input from the user and ignore any previous input. For instance, suppose your program has a series of yes/no questions requiring a Y or N response. If the user's finger lingers on a key, several such responses can unintentionally be entered into the keyboard buffer. And subsequent questions will be answered, for better or for worse, in a flash.

Or suppose you have written a game that requires keyboard control. At the end of the game, you might have a "Play again (Y/N)?" question. If the keyboard buffer contains a number of moves, the question can be answered before the player realizes what has happened.

In both cases, you need to clear the keyboard buffer just before a response is accepted. To clear the keyboard buffer, simply store a zero in NDX, the location containing the number of characters currently in the buffer.

Prototype

Store a zero in the keyboard buffer character counter, NDX.

Explanation

The example routine illustrates how to clear the keyboard buffer before input is accepted.

The keyboard buffer, which begins at location 631 on the 64 and location 842 on the 128, can hold up to ten characters before overflow occurs. When the buffer fills, additional characters are ignored. Note that GETIN returns the first character placed in the buffer.

Routine

```

C000          NDX      =    198          ; NDX = 208 on the 128—number of characters
                                         ; in keyboard buffer
C000          GETIN    =    65508
C000          CHROUT   =    65490
                                         ;
                                         ; Clear keyboard buffer and fetch a keypress.
C000 20 0C C0          JSR    BUFCLR      ; clear the keyboard buffer
C003 20 E4 FF WAIT     JSR    GETIN      ; fetch the next character
C006 F0 FB            BEQ    WAIT        ; no keypress, so WAIT
C008 20 D2 FF         JSR    CHROUT     ; print it
C00B 60              RTS
                                         ;
                                         ; Clear the keyboard buffer.
C00C A9 00          BUFCLR LDA    #0
C00E 85 C6          STA    NDX          ; set number of keys to 0
C010 60              RTS
    
```

See also CHRGR, CHRGT, CHRKR, MATGET.

BYT1DL

Name

Cause a one-byte delay

Description

Access the **BYT1DL** routine whenever you need to produce a very brief delay in your program. By using this routine, you can generate delays of a millisecond or less.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the delay byte in *.X*.
2. Decrement *.X* to zero and then RTS.

Explanation

The requirements of the routine are simple: Just load the *X* register with a delay value—some number from 0–255—and JSR to the routine.

Within the routine itself, a branching loop repeats until *.X* decrements to zero. Because *.X* is decremented before the branch, the maximum delay occurs when *.X* is initially equal to zero. In this case, 256 branches take place.

By knowing the number of machine cycles required by each instruction (see the opcode table which appears elsewhere in this book), you can determine the actual delay time for **BYT1DL** based on the incoming *.X* value. Within the routine, each DEX requires two cycles while the BNE, assuming no page boundaries are crossed, takes three. If no branch actually occurs, which is the case on the last pass through the loop, the BNE instruction requires only two cycles.

In addition to instructions within the loop, you must consider the JSR and the RTS. Both of these require six cycles.

Overall, then, the number of machine cycles (MC), based on the incoming *.X* value, can be calculated by using the formula $MC = B * X - 1 + 12$. *B* is either 5 or 6 here, depending on whether or not the branch crosses a page boundary; *X* is the number of times the loop repeats. In all cases but one—the exception being when *.X* is initially zero—*X* in the formula is the same as the contents of the *X* register.

On the 64 or 128, the duration of each machine cycle is based on the clock speed for the microprocessor. For North American (NTSC) systems, the microprocessor runs at 1,022,730 Hz (cycles per second). European systems (PAL) have a clock speed of 985,250 Hz. At either rate, each machine cycle takes approximately 1 microsecond (1E–6 sec-

ond)—0.978 microseconds for NTSC systems and 1.015 microseconds for PAL systems.

And so, if *.X* were zero coming into **BYT1DL**, the delay loop would have a maximum number of repetitions—256. In this case, a delay of $5 * 256 - 1 + 12$, or 1291, machine cycles would result. Assuming a 64 or 128 using the North American convention, the actual time that elapses would be $1291 * 0.978$ microseconds, or 1.263 milliseconds (1.263E-3 second).

On the other hand, if *.X* holds 1 upon entry into the loop—so no repetitions take place—a delay of 16 cycles, or 15.6 microseconds, would result.

All in all, then, **BYT1DL** offers a wide range of delays, although they're consistently brief. If you need to, you can adjust the range of these delays upward by inserting additional instructions between the **DEX** and the **BNE** instruction in the loop. Just make sure any instructions you add don't affect the execution of the routine.

A typical practice is to insert one or more **NOPs**, which take two cycles each, in the code. Of course, you could also use instructions other than the **NOP** here, as long as they have no effect on the zero flag. For instance, inserting an **STX**, which stores into an unused absolute address, would add four cycles each time through the loop.

Routine

```

C000          BGCOLOR = 53281      ; screen background color
C000          DELAY   = 255        ; one-byte delay value
;
; Set the screen background color to light
; gray, cause a one-byte delay
; (based on .X), and then change the
; background color to black.
; for light gray background
C000 A9 0F      MAIN      LDA #15
C002 8D 21 D0   BCKCOL    STA BGCOLOR
C005 A2 FF      LDY #0      LDY #DELAY      ; enter BYT1DL with the delay value in .X
C007 20 0E C0   JSR      JSR BYT1DL      ; cause a delay
C00A EE 21 D0   INC      INC BGCOLOR    ; to produce a black background (only low
; nybble is significant)
C00D 60                RTS
;
; Enter BYT1DL with the delay value in .X
; decrement the one-byte delay value
; if .X is greater than zero, continue
; we're finished
C00E CA          BYT1DL   DEX
C00F D0 FD      BNE      BNE BYT1DL
C011 60                RTS

```

See also **BYT2DL**, **INTDEL**, **JIFDEL**, **KEYDEL**, **TOD1DL**.

BYT2DL

Name

Cause a two-byte delay

Description

Like **BYT1DL**, this routine also produces short program delays. But with **BYT2DL**, the delays are slightly longer—from a few milliseconds (1/1000 second) to roughly 1/3 second. Delays on this order are frequently needed in writing game programs, especially when you move sprites about the screen.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the delay byte in *.X*.
2. Initialize *.Y* to zero. Then in **YLOOP**, decrement *.Y* until it reaches zero (256 times).
3. When *.Y* reaches zero, decrement *.X*, repeating **YLOOP** each time until *.X* reaches zero. Then **RTS** to the main program.

Explanation

To use **BYT2DL**, load the *X* register with a delay byte and **JSR** to the routine. Notice that because of the **BNE** instruction in **\$C014**, a maximum delay actually occurs when the incoming value of *.X* is zero. In this case, the loop from **\$C00E** to **\$C015** repeats 265 times.

As with **BYT1DL**, the actual amount of time that elapses during a delay, based on the initial value of *.X*, can be calculated from the number of machine cycles in the routine. (See that entry for an explanation of the calculation method used.) If we assume no page boundaries are crossed, each time **YLOOP** executes, it requires $5 * 256 - 1$, or 1279, cycles. Each cycle takes approximately a millionth of a second.

The remaining instructions are the **LDY** at **\$C00E** (2 cycles), the **DEX** at **\$C013** (2 cycles), the **BNE** at **\$C014** (3 cycles), the **RTS** at **\$C016** (6 cycles), and a **JSR** to the routine (6 cycles). Again, assuming no page boundaries are crossed, the number of machine cycles (**MC**) for the entire routine can be determined using the equation $MC = (1279 + 2 + 2 + 3) * X - 1 + 12$.

The *X* here represents the number of times the loop repeats. In all cases but one, *X* in the formula is the same as the *X* register. If *.X* is initially zero, use 256 for *X* in the formula.

Based on the clock speed for the 64 or 128, and with *X* varying from 0 to 256 in the formula, each delay can take from $1286 * 1 - 1 + 12 = 1297$ cycles to $1286 * 256 - 1 + 12 = 329,227$ cycles, or from 1.262 milliseconds to 0.322

seconds for North American (NTSC) systems.

Again, as with **BYT1DL**, additional instructions, such as NOPS, can be inserted into the code to adjust the delay times upward. In fact, using this approach, delays of a second or more can be achieved.

Routine

```

C000          BGCOL0 = 53281 ; screen background color
C000          DELAY = 255 ; two-byte delay value.
;
; Set the screen background color to light
; gray, cause a two-byte delay
; based on .X, and then change the
; background color to black.
; for light gray background

C000 A9 0F      MAIN LDA #15
C002 8D 21 D0 BCKCOL STA BGCOL0
C005 A2 FF      LDX #DELAY ; enter BYT2DL with the delay value in .X
C007 20 0E C0 JSR BYT2DL ; cause a delay
C00A EE 21 D0 INC BGCOL0 ; to produce a black background (only low
; nibble is significant)

C00D 60          RTS
;
; Enter BYT2DL with the delay value in .X.
; initialize .Y

C00E A0 00      BYT2DL LDY #0
C010 88          YLOOP DEY
C011 D0 FD      BNE YLOOP ; .Y decrements 256 times
C013 CA          DEX ; now decrement the delay value in .X
C014 D0 F8      BNE BYT2DL ; continue if .X is greater than 0
C016 60          RTS ; we're finished

```

See also BYT1DL, INTDEL, JIFDEL, KEYDEL, TOD1DL.

BYTASC

Name

Print a one-byte integer

Description

At some point, programs that handle numbers—such as games, financial programs, and scientific and mathematical programs—are bound to require a routine that prints a one-byte integer. Not only is a routine like **BYTASC** ideal in programs of this type, but it can also be handy in overall program debugging.

For instance, suppose you have a problem in a lengthy section of coding. Knowing that **BYTASC** prints the one-byte value in the accumulator, you may be able to isolate your problem by transferring certain intermediate values to **.A** and JSR'ing to **BYTASC**.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the one-byte integer you wish to print in **.A**.
2. Initialize a place-holder table by storing three ASCII zeros—**CHR\$(48)**—to it.
3. Set up a table of subtrahends for each digit's place—100, 10, 1.
4. Count the number of times (beginning with 48) the subtrahend representing the largest digit's place (100) can be subtracted from the value in the accumulator before a number less than zero results.
5. Store this number to the proper position in the place-holder table.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 for the next two digit places—10 and 1.
7. Finally, print out the ASCII place-holder table.

Explanation

In the example program, we fetch a one-byte value from the jiffy clock and print it with **BYTASC**.

The integer occupying any single-byte location is necessarily confined to a range from 0–255. This number can have as many as three digits when it's printed as a decimal number.

With this in mind, we set up a counter table (**DIGITS**—see below) containing three ASCII zeros, or **CHR\$(48)s**. A common subtraction technique is then employed to convert the single-byte value in the accumulator into an equivalent string.

In this method, begin with the highest digit for the number, or the 100's place. We repeatedly subtract 100—the first entry in the table of one-byte subtrahends, or TB1SUB—from the number until a negative result occurs. After each subtraction yielding a positive value (≥ 0), increment the first entry in the DIGITS table representing the 100's place. When subtraction finally gives a negative value, the number is restored to the value it had before this last subtraction, and the whole process is repeated for the next two digits (the 10's place, then the 1's place).

When all three places in the number have been accounted for, DIGITS contains a three-byte string for the number. This is printed out beginning at DONE.

By maintaining a flag (ZEROFL) within the printing routine, we're able to print the number without printing any leading zeros. The flag tells us whether a nonzero digit has been printed. It has a value of zero as long as the preceding digits are all zeros. Whenever the first nonzero digit is encountered by the routine, ZEROFL takes on this value. In other words, it's no longer zero.

The printing routine must also consider the special case where the byte has a value of zero (all three digits are zero). This is taken care of within OUT. If ZEROFL is still zero after all three digits have been assessed, we print a zero.

Routine

C000			CHROUT	=	65490	
C000			GETIN	=	65508	
C000			JIFFY	=	162	
C000			ZP	=	251	
C000	A5	A2	LOOP	LDA	JIFFY	; get a jiffy
C002	20	15	C0	JSR	BYTASC	; convert value to ASCII and print it
C005	A9	20		LDA	#32	; print a SPACE
C007	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	
C00A	A9	0D		LDA	#13	; print a RETURN
C00C	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	
C00F	20	E4	FF	JSR	GETIN	; check for keypress
C012	F0	EC		BEQ	LOOP	; if no key, continue
C014	60			RTS		
; BYTASC converts the one-byte number in .A						
; to ASCII and prints it.						
C015	A2	30	BYTASC	LDX	#48	; initialize place-holder table (DIGITS) with
; ASCII 0						
C017	8E	63	C0	STX	DIGITS	
C01A	8E	64	C0	STX	DIGITS+1	
C01D	8E	65	C0	STX	DIGITS+2	
C020	A0	00		LDY	#0	; as an index
C022	8C	6A	C0	STY	ZEROFL	; initialize ZEROFL
C025	BE	63	C0	NMLOOP	LDX	DIGITS,Y
; load with ASCII counter for a particular						
; digit's place						

BYTASC

```

C028 F0 14          BEQ  DONE      ; if we've reached the last digit's place, go
                                ; print the number
C02A 38            SEC
C02B F9 67 C0 SUBLOP SBC  TB1SUB,Y ; subtract corresponding table value from .A
C02E E8            INX            ; increment ASCII counter for a particular
                                ; digit's place
C02F B0 FA        BCS  SUBLOP      ; if .A is still zero or above
C031 79 67 C0     ADC  TB1SUB,Y    ; we subtracted one time too many, so add
                                ; subtrahend back to .A
                                ; since one time too many
C034 CA          DEX
C035 48          PHA
C036 8A          TXA
C037 99 63 C0     STA  DIGITS,Y    ; store respective digit to place-holder table
C03A 68          PLA              ; restore .A
C03B C8          INY              ; for next digit's place
C03C D0 E7        BNE  NMLOOP      ; branch always
C03E A0 FF        LDY  #255        ; as index in the number
C040 C8          INY              ; start with first digit
C041 B9 63 C0     LDA  DIGITS,Y
C044 F0 12        BEQ  OUT         ; if we're at the end of the table, leave routine
C046 AE 6A C0     LDX  ZEROFL      ; check ZEROFL to see if a nonzero digit has
                                ; been printed
                                ; if so, go print the digit
C049 D0 07        BNE  PRINT      ; if so, go print the digit
C04B C9 30        CMP  #48        ; check for leading zeros
C04D F0 F1        BEQ  PRTLOP     ; if leading zero occurs, get the next digit
C04F 8D 6A C0     STA  ZEROFL     ; store nonzero digit
C052 20 D2 FF PRINT JSR  CHR0UT   ; print each digit
C055 4C 40 C0     JMP  PRTLOP     ; and go to next place
C058 AD 6A C0 OUT  LDA  ZEROFL    ; determine if the number is 000
C05B D0 05        BNE  EXIT       ; if not, then return
C05D A9 30        LDA  #48        ; print a zero
C05F 20 D2 FF     JSR  CHR0UT
C062 60          EXIT  RTS        ; we're finished
                                ;
C063 00 00 00 DIGITS .BYTE 0,0,0 ; for storing ASCII counter values for each
                                ; digit's place
C066 00          .BYTE 0         ; digit's terminator byte
C067 64 0A 01 TB1SUB .BYTE 100,10,1 ; table of one-byte subtrahends for each digit's
                                ; place
C06A 00          ZEROFL .BYTE 0  ; ZEROFL is nonzero if a nonzero digit has
                                ; printed

```

See also CNUMOT, FACPRD, FACPRT, NUMOUT.

Name

Convert an ASCII number to a binary integer value

Description

The four characters in the string *1025* translate to the hex value \$0401. If you have a program in which you expect users to type in individual numbers such as *1, 0, 2, and 5*, and if you'd like to change the characters to a workable integer, this routine will handle the conversion.

Prototype

1. Zero the bytes that hold the result.
2. Get the first (or next) character and subtract 48 to strip off the ASCII trappings.
3. Multiply the result by 10 and add the new value.
4. Jump back to step 2 and get the next character; repeat until all have been taken care of.

Explanation

This example routine can take nine or ten ASCII characters and translate them into binary values. The limit is the four bytes of the **RESULT** variable; four bytes can count up to approximately 4.3 billion (4,294,967,206). It should be relatively easy to add a fifth byte (or even more) to extend the range to the size of the U.S. budget.

The **CAS2IN** routine has no error checking. It's up to you to make sure the characters are within the range 48–57 (ASCII 0–9). The ASCII string should be terminated with a zero byte, or with any byte that's less than 48, for that matter.

An example of conversion is the short string *9801*, which contains four characters. Start at the leftmost character, *9*. Multiply the result (0) by 10 (still 0) and add 9. Now the result holds a 9. The next character is *8*. Multiply the result (9) by 10 (90) and add 8 (98). The next character is *0*. Multiply result (98) by 10 (980) and add 0 (980). The final character is *1*. So, 980 becomes 9800, then 9801. The ASCII string of characters *9801* (the four characters \$39, \$38, \$30, and \$31) has been transformed into the numeric value \$2649.

One of the key routines is **TIMES10**. If you shift a binary number to the left, you multiply it by 2. Likewise, if you shift a decimal number to the left, you multiply by 10. For example, 120 shifted left in base 10 is 1200 (120×10). In binary, %1101 (decimal 13) shifted left becomes %11010 (decimal 26). To multiply a binary number by 10, shift it left once (times 2)

and save it. Then shift left two more times (times 2 times 2, for a grand total of times 8). Add the two results (x times 2 plus x times 8) and the number has been multiplied by 10.

Warning: Don't succumb to the temptation to replace the multiple ADC or ROL instructions with an indexed loop. The X and Y registers would have to count from zero to three, because the low byte comes before medium and high bytes, and you have to add or rotate the low byte first. To test for the end of the loop, you'd have to CPX or CPY. But the act of comparing sets or clears the carry flag, and the whole point of the addition or rotation is to move the carry flags as they overflow from one byte to the next. If you compare, you change the carry flag, with potentially weird results.

Routine

```

C000                CAS2IN    =    *
C000 A9 00          LDA      #0          ; first, zero out the total
C002 A2 03          LDX      #BYTES     ; number of bytes in the result
C004 9D 78 C0 ZLOOP STA      RESULT,X
C007 CA            DEX              ; count down
C008 10 FA          BPL      ZLOOP     ; and loop
C00A AA            TAX              ; .A holds a zero
C00B BD 71 C0 MAINLP LDA     ASCNUM,X  ; get a number
C00E 38            SEC              ; strip off the ASCII part to get a number
                                   ; 0-9
C00F E9 30          SBC      #48       ; by subtracting 48
C011 90 1E          BCC      FINIS     ; if the number is less than 48, carry is
                                   ; clear
C013 48            PHA              ; save this number temporarily
C014 20 32 C0      JSR      TIMES10    ; multiply RESULT by 10
C017 68            PLA              ; get the value again
C018 18            CLC
C019 6D 78 C0      ADC      RESULT     ; and add it to RESULT
C01C 8D 78 C0      STA      RESULT     ; store it back
C01F 90 0D          BCC      DOX
C021 EE 79 C0      INC      RESULT+1   ; do the high bytes
C024 D0 08          BNE      DOX
C026 EE 7A C0      INC      RESULT+2
C029 D0 03          BNE      DOX
C02B EE 7B C0      INC      RESULT+3
C02E E8            DOX              ; count forward
C02F D0 DA          BNE      MAINLP    ; and go back for more/branch always
                                   ;
C031 60            FINIS          RTS      ; end of the routine
                                   ;
C032 20 42 C0 TIMES10 JSR     TIMES2   ; multiply RESULT by 2
C035 20 4F C0      JSR     COPYIT     ; copy RESULT to TEMP
C038 20 3F C0      JSR     TIMES4     ; multiply RESULT by 4 more (total of 8)
C03B 20 5B C0      JSR     ADDEM      ; add TEMP and RESULT (times 10 total)
C03E 60            RTS              ; done
                                   ;
C03F 20 42 C0 TIMES4 JSR     TIMES2   ; call TIMES2 and fall through
C042 0E 78 C0 TIMES2 ASL     RESULT   ; times 2 via shifts to the left
C045 2E 79 C0      ROL     RESULT+1
C048 2E 7A C0      ROL     RESULT+2
C04B 2E 7B C0      ROL     RESULT+3

```

```

C04E 60                                RTS                ; end of times routines
;
C04F A0 03 COPYIT LDY #BYTES          ; copy
C051 B9 78 C0 CPLOOP LDA RESULT,Y    ; from RESULT
C054 99 7C C0 STA TEMP,Y            ; to TEMP
C057 88                                DEY
C058 10 F7 BPL CPLOOP                ; branch back
C05A 60                                RTS
;
C05B A0 00 ADDEM LDY #0
C05D 18 CLC
C05E 08 PHP                          ; preparation
C05F 28 ADLOOP PLP                   ; get .P back
C060 B9 7C C0 LDA TEMP,Y            ; get TEMP
C063 79 78 C0 ADC RESULT,Y          ; add it to RESULT
C066 99 78 C0 STA RESULT,Y         ; and store it
C069 08 PHP                          ; save carry temporarily
C06A C8 INY
C06B C0 04 CPY #MAX
C06D D0 F0 BNE ADLOOP
C06F 28 PLP                          ; remove .P from the stack
C070 60                                RTS
;
C071 31 39 36 ASCNUM .ASC "196863"
C077 00 .BYTE 0                      ; always zero terminated
C078 00 00 00 RESULT .BYTE 0,0,0,0  ; enough to handle roughly 4,000,000,000
; but you can add more zeros for larger
; numbers
;
C07C MAX = * - RESULT
C07C BYTES = MAX - 1
C07C 00 00 00 TEMP .BYTE 0,0,0,0

```

See also BCD2AX, CB2ASC, CB2HEX, CI2HEX.

Name

Convert Commodore ASCII characters into screen codes

Description

Both the 64 and 128 represent their character sets in different ways, depending on the application. **CASSCR** converts characters from one of these coding systems to another—namely, from Commodore ASCII into screen codes. This routine is helpful anytime you need to store Commodore ASCII characters or strings of characters directly into screen memory. Two popular word processors (*WordPro* and *SpeedScript*) store their files as screen codes, so this routine is useful in performing conversions of ASCII files to be used with these word processors.

The routine itself is set up to receive Commodore ASCII character values in the accumulator. An equivalent screen code, if it exists, is then returned in the accumulator. In the process, the carry flag is cleared. However, if no screen code is defined for the character, the accumulator is left unchanged, and carry is set to indicate the conversion error.

Prototype

1. Check for the pi character (255). If the character is pi, set .A to 126, clear carry, and return.
2. Otherwise, determine whether the character lacks an equivalent screen code value (character code is in the range 0–31 or 128–159). If so, set the carry flag and return, leaving .A as is.
3. If the character's value exceeds 127, go to step 5.
4. If it's in the range 96–127, AND it with 95, clear carry, and return.
5. Replace bit 6 of .A with bit 7, place a zero in bit 7, and RTS, leaving carry clear.

Explanation

The example program converts a string of Commodore ASCII characters (in *STRING*) into screen codes and stores them at the beginning of screen memory. Any characters that lack screen codes won't appear (BCS SKIP).

Except for the special case of character 255, which is set to 126, **CASSCR** performs conversions based on the range in which the character lies. As it turns out, each range can be characterized by a different bit pattern. The table shows the bit patterns of characters within each range before and after conversion.

Character Bit Patterns

Range	Before: Bit Pattern	Range	After: Bit Pattern
0-31	%000x xxxx	Nonexistent	
128-159	%100x xxxx	Nonexistent	
96-127	%011x xxxx	64-95	%010x xxxx
32-63	%001x xxxx	32-63	%001x xxxx (same)
64-95	%010x xxxx	0-31	%000x xxxx
160-191	%101x xxxx	96-127	%011x xxxx
192-223	%110x xxxx	64-95	%010x xxxx
224-254	%111x xxxx	96-127	%011x xxxx

Within each bit pattern, a zero designates bits that are always off; a one designates bits that are always on. An *x* represents bits that may be on or off.

We've intentionally grouped together character ranges that can be converted with the same bit manipulations. The first group is handled as in step 2 of the prototype above, the second as in step 4, and the third as in step 5.

If you look closely at the bit patterns, you'll see how the routine will work. First, if the result of the number AND 127 (%01111111) is 31 or less, the ASCII value can't be converted. If the number is in the range 96-127, AND it with 95 (%01011111), and you're finished. The final and largest group has three characteristics: Bit 7 is always %0 in the result. Bit 6 of the screen code is always the same as bit 7 of the ASCII code. And bit 5 remains unchanged.

The overall effect is that ASCII characters without screen codes (in the range 0-31 or 128-159) are left alone, but the carry flag is set. For all others, the carry flag is cleared.

Note: CASSCR has no effect on either .X or .Y. For this reason, you can use the routine in a loop indexed by either register without first having to save the register contents.

Routine

C000	CHROUT	=	65490	
C000	ZP	=	251	
C000	SCREEN	=	1024	; start of text screen
C000	COLRAM	=	55296	; start of color RAM
C000	BGCOL0	=	53281	; screen background color
C000	BLACK	=	0	
C000	MDGRAY	=	12	

```

;
; Convert a string from Commodore ASCII to
; screen codes and POKE it.
; clear the screen
C000 A9 93 CLRCHR LDA #147
C002 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C005 A9 0C LDA #MDGRAY ; set screen background color to medium gray
C007 8D 21 D0 STA BGCOLOR
C00A A0 00 LDY #0 ; as an index
C00C B9 5A C0 LOOP LDA STRING,Y ; get a character from string
C00F F0 10 BEQ FINISH ; is it a zero byte?
C011 20 22 C0 JSR CASSCR ; convert it to a screen code
C014 B0 08 BCS SKIP ; if carry is set, no screen code exists
C016 99 00 04 STA SCREEN,Y ; POKE message to screen using modified
; POKSCR
C019 A9 00 LDA #BLACK ; set foreground color of character to black (for
; early 64s)
C01B 99 00 D8 STA COLRAM,Y
C01E C8 SKIP INY ; next character
C01F D0 EB BNE LOOP ; continue printing
C021 60 FINISH RTS
;
; Convert Commodore ASCII in .A to screen
; code in .A.
; If no corresponding screen code exists, carry
; is set to indicate the error and
; .A is unchanged.
; is it pi?
; if not, check for nonequivalent codes
; 255 becomes 126
C022 C9 FF CASSCR CMP #255
C024 D0 04 BNE NEQUITV
C026 A9 7E LDA #126
C028 18 CLC
C029 60 RTS ; and we exit
C02A 8D 80 C0 NEQUITV STA TEMPA ; preserve Commodore ASCII value for later
; checks
C02D 29 60 AND #%01100000 ; check for nonequivalent codes (0-31 and
; 128-159)
C02F D0 05 BNE UPFLOW ; if no, go check for upper/lower half of
; character set
C031 AD 80 C0 ERROR LDA TEMPA ; otherwise, no equivalent code so restore .A
C034 38 SEC ; and indicate error
C035 60 RTS
C036 AD 80 C0 UPFLOW LDA TEMPA ; restore .A
C039 30 06 BMI REMAIN
C03B 29 60 AND #%01100000 ; in lower half; first check whether in range
; 96-127
C03D C9 60 CMP #%01100000 ; bit 5 and 6 are set if in 96-127
C03F F0 12 BEQ TOPFLOW ; if so, go convert
;
; Otherwise, handle remainder (32-63, 64-95,
; 160-191, 192-223, 224-254).
; Shift bit 7 to 6 of TEMPA (containing the
; character) and set bit 7 to 0.
; bit 7 of TEMPA into carry
; carry into bit 0 of .A
; bit 6 of original TEMPA goes into carry
; bit 0 of .A back into carry
; carry into bit 7
; move 7 to 6 while setting 7 to 0
; restore .A
; and return (the LSR cleared the carry)
; convert range 96-127
C041 0E 80 C0 REMAIN ASL TEMPA
C044 2A ROL
C045 2E 80 C0 ROL TEMPA
C048 6A ROR
C049 6E 80 C0 ROR TEMPA
C04C 4E 80 C0 LSR TEMPA
C04F AD 80 C0 LDA TEMPA
C052 60 RTS
C053 AD 80 C0 TOPFLOW LDA TEMPA
C056 29 5F AND #%01011111 ; and return with an equivalent code
C058 18 CLC
C059 60 RTS

```

```
C05A 54 C8 C9 STRING .ASC ;  
C07F 00 .BYTE0 ; "This message was POKEd to the screen."  
C080 TEMPA .BYTE0 ; for temporary .A storage
```

See also CASTAS, CNVERT, SCRCAS, TASCAS.

Name

Convert Commodore ASCII characters to true ASCII

Description

Commodore computers, including the 64 and 128, use their own special character codes known as Commodore ASCII. Many other microcomputers use a more standard character set known as true ASCII. On a 64 or 128, for example, the ASCII character 65 is a lowercase *a*. But true ASCII defines 65 as an uppercase *A*. This is the primary difference between the two ASCIIs: The upper and lowercase letters are switched. In order to send transmissions via a modem to other computers, or to use certain printers that expect to receive true ASCII, you need to convert Commodore's ASCII to true ASCII.

CASTAS converts Commodore characters in the accumulator to true ASCII and leaves the result in *.A*. All true ASCII characters are in the range 0–127. Ordinarily, no characters above 127, most of which are graphics characters, will be converted. However, the 64 and 128 have a second set of uppercase characters, 193–218, which are used when printing to the screen. In addition, shifted-space—CHR\$(160)—is sometimes typed in as if it were a normal space (when SHIFT LOCK is engaged, for example). So these two instances are exceptions to the rule.

Also, there are characters on the 64 and 128 for which there are no true ASCII equivalents. If **CASTAS** receives one of these, it returns a zero in the accumulator and sets the carry flag.

Prototype

1. Change the shifted-space character (160), if it occurs, to space (32).
2. Check the character value to see whether it lies within one of three ranges of Commodore ASCII alphabetic characters (193–218, 97–122, or 65–90).
3. If it doesn't, go to step 7.
4. If the character in *.A* is within one of the three ranges, ASL it.
5. If carry is clear (so the character is either in the range 97–122 or 65–90), flip bit 6. Otherwise, go to step 6 (the character is 193–218).
6. Perform an LSR.
7. Determine whether the character value is 128 or greater. If it's not, then RTS.
8. Otherwise, set *.A* to zero and leave carry set.

Explanation

You can test this routine in the example program by typing in all sorts of Commodore ASCII characters. As each character is typed in, its Commodore ASCII value is displayed, conversion is done with **CASTAS**, and the equivalent true ASCII value is also shown. This process continues until you press RETURN.

Conversion from Commodore ASCII to true ASCII is fairly straightforward because of the similarities between the two character sets. Basically, all we need to do is switch uppercase (97–122 or 193–218) to lowercase (65–90) letters, or lowercase to uppercase (97–122). This is all handled by the routine **SWITCH**, explained elsewhere in this book. As mentioned, the shifted-space is a special case. So, before entering **SWITCH**, we convert this character to a normal space (32).

Note: **CASTAS** corrupts the Y register. If your program uses .Y, be sure to save it to a temporary location before entering the routine. And, of course, restore it when you return from **CASTAS**.

Routine

```

C000          CHROUT  =    65490
C000          GETIN   =    65508
C000          LINPRT  =    48589      ; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
C000          ZP      =    251
C000          DSFTCM  =     8        ; DSFTCM = 11 on the 128
C000          ESFTCM  =     9        ; ESFTCM = 12 on the 128
;
; Get a character; print its Commodore ASCII
; value and true ASCII value.
; Quit on RETURN.
; switch to lowercase/uppercase mode

C000 A9 0E          LDA #14
C002 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C005 A9 08          LDA #DSFTCM
; disable SHIFT/Commodore key case
; switching

C007 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C00A 20 E4 FF      JSR  GETIN
C00D F0 FB          BEQ  WAIT
; get a character
; if null string, then get another key
C00F 20 30 C0      JSR  NUMPRT
; print the Commodore ASCII value
C012 A9 20          LDA #32
; print space
C014 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C017 A5 FB          LDA  ZP
; restore .A
C019 20 38 C0      JSR  CASTAS
; convert value in .A from Commodore to
; true ASCII
; print the true ASCII value
C01C 20 30 C0      JSR  NUMPRT
; print RETURN
C01F A9 0D          LDA #13
; print RETURN

C021 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C024 A5 FB          LDA  ZP
; restore .A
C026 C9 0D          CMP  #13
; is it RETURN?
C028 D0 E0          BNE  WAIT
; no, so get another character
C02A A9 09          LDA  #ESFTCM
; enable SHIFT/Commodore key case
; switching

C02C 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C02F 60             RTS
; and return
;

```


CASTAS

```

C030 85 FB      NUMPRT STA ZP      ; save .A
C032 AA        TAX      ; low byte of ASCII value
C033 A9 00      LDA #0      ; high byte
C035 4C CD BD  NUMOUT JMP LINPRT ; print the ASCII value (see NUMOUT) and
; return
;
; Convert Commodore ASCII in .A to true
; ASCII in .A.
; .A is zero and carry flag is set if there is no
; equivalent true ASCII value
; (except characters 193-218, which are
; converted as if they were 97-122).
; Also character 160 is handled as if it were a
; 32.
C038 C9 A0      CASTAS CMP #160 ; take care of shift-space
C03A D0 02      BNE SWITCH ; if not shift-space, use SWITCH to convert
; others
C03C A9 20      LDA #32 ; shift-space becomes space
C03E A0 03      LDY #3 ; index to table
C040 88          DEY
C041 30 10      BMI EXIT ; exit if no more ranges to check
C043 D9 5A C0   CMP RANGE1,Y
C046 90 0B      BCC EXIT ; character falls below RANGE1, so exit
C048 D9 5D C0   CMP RANGE2,Y
C04B B0 F3      BCS LOOP ; character is above RANGE2 so check next
; range
C04D 0A          ASL ; character is in a range; shift bit 7 to carry
C04E B0 02      BCS FIXIT ; character is >=128
C050 49 40      EOR #64 ; flip bit 6
C052 4A          LSR ; restore character (bit 7 becomes zero)
C053 C9 80      EXIT CMP #128 ; carry is set for all characters above 128
; (except 193-218 and 160)
C055 90 02      BCC OUT
C057 A9 00      LDA #0 ; return a zero in .A if above 128 (and not
; exceptions)
C059 60          OUT RTS
;
C05A C1 61 41  RANGE1 .BYTE 193,97,65 ; lower delimiter of each range
C05D DB 7B 5B  RANGE2 .BYTE 219,123,91 ; upper delimiter+1 of each range

```

See also CASSCR, CNVERT, SRCAS, TASCAS.

Name

Convert a byte value to an ASCII number by using subtraction

Description

A byte value such as 102 is stored in memory as a series of binary bits. If you want to print it out, not as a CHR\$(102), but as the three characters 1, 0, and 2, you can use this routine to convert the byte to three ASCII values.

Prototype

1. Enter **CB2ASC** with the value to be translated in the accumulator.
2. Load **.Y** with a zero.
3. Repeatedly subtract 100 until the value becomes negative.
4. After each successful subtraction, increment **.Y**.
5. When the value becomes less than zero, add back 100 and store **.Y**.
6. Repeat steps 2-5, subtracting the values 10 and 1.

Explanation

The procedure is straightforward. Subtract hundreds, then tens, then ones. At each step, save the result in memory. These numbers can then be ORed with 48 to create printable ASCII numbers.

Routine

```

C000          TIMER    =    $A2          ; the jiffy clock
C000          RESULT  =    828          ; store ASCII digits in the cassette buffer
                                           ; (RESULT = 2816 on the 128)
C000          CHROUT  =    $FFD2
                                           ;
C000 A5 A2          LDA    TIMER          ; get a changing number
C002 20 15 C0      JSR    CB2ASC         ; convert it
C005 A0 00          LDY    #0            ; loop counter
C007 B9 3C 03 LOOP LDA    RESULT,Y      ; get the ASCII numbers one by one
C00A 09 30          ORA    #%00110000   ; make it ASCII
C00C 20 D2 FF      JSR    CHROUT        ; print it
C00F C8            INY                    ; counter increases
C010 C0 03          CPY    #3            ; quit after 0-2
C012 D0 F3          BNE    LOOP          ; or go back
C014 60            RTS                    ; end of the framing routine
                                           ;
C015          CB2ASC  =    *
C015 A0 00          LDY    #0            ; .Y is the counter
C017 38            SEC                    ; get ready to subtract
C018 E9 64          HLOOP SBC    #100    ; keep subtracting
C01A 90 03          BCC    TENS          ; until we've gone past zero
C01C C8            INY                    ; count up by one
C01D D0 F9          BNE    HLOOP        ; and loop back
                                           ;
C01F 8C 3C 03 TENS STY    RESULT        ; .Y holds the hundred's place
C022 A0 00          LDY    #0            ; zero it again

```

```

C024 69 64          ADC #100          ; set .A back to normal
C026 38            SEC
C027 E9 0A        TLOOP  SBC #10          ; this time, minus 10
C029 90 03        BCC ONES          ; carry clear means underflow
C02B C8           INY                ; else, inc the counter
C02C D0 F9        BNE TLOOP         ; and go back to subtract
;
C02E 8C 3D 03    ONES  STY RESULT+1    ; .Y is the ten's place
C031 69 0A        ADC #10          ; add 10 to .A
C033 8D 3E 03    STA RESULT+2    ; and store it
C036 60           RTS              ; end of routine

```

See also BCD2AX, CAS2IN, CB2HEX, CI2HEX.

Name

Convert a byte value (0–99) to a BCD number

Description

Bytes range in value from 0 to 255 (\$00 to \$FF). BCD numbers, on the other hand, can only have 100 values (\$00–\$99). This routine converts a byte in the range 0–99 decimal to a BCD value.

Prototype

1. Isolate the high nybble.
2. Compare to 10. If the high nybble is more than 10, subtract 10.
3. Rotate the carry flag into ANSWER.
4. Loop back to step 2 five times.
5. Shift ANSWER to the left and OR the remainder in .A with ANSWER.

Explanation

The framing routine takes a value from one location (\$FB), calls the conversion routine, and stores the result in a second location (\$FC). Note that at the beginning of **CB2BCD**, numbers greater than 99 are trapped by subtracting 100 until the value is in the proper range. This means that if you enter with a value of 132, the result will be \$32.

Routine

```

C000 A5 FB MAIN LDA $FB ; get a byte from memory
C002 20 08 C0 JSR CB2BCD ; convert it
C005 85 FC STA $FC
C007 60 RTS ; end of routine
;
C008 CB2BCD = *
C008 C9 64 PRELIM CMP #100 ; first check the range
C00A 90 04 BCC BEGIN ; ready to start if it's 0-99
C00C E9 64 SBC #100 ; subtract 100
; Put an INC here if you want.
C00E B0 F8 BCS PRELIM ; branch always
;
C010 8D 45 C0 BEGIN STA TEMPA ; store it
C013 A9 00 LDA #0 ; ready to ROL
C015 8D 46 C0 STA ANSWER ; the answer will be here
C018 A0 04 LDY #4 ; four times
C01A 0E 45 C0 RLOOP ASL TEMPA ; move the high bit into carry
C01D 2A ROL ; and rotate it into .A
C01E 88 DEY ; count down
C01F D0 F9 BNE RLOOP ; four times
;
C021 A0 05 LDY #5 ; this loop happens five times
C023 C9 0A CLOOP CMP #10 ; is .A bigger than 10?
C025 08 PHP ; save the status
C026 2E 46 C0 ROL ANSWER ; and put carry into answer
C029 28 PLS ; get .P back

```

CB2BCD

```
C02A 90 02          BCC  AHEAD          ; if clear, leave .A alone
C02C E9 0A          SBC  #10           ; else subtract 10
C02E 0E 45 C0 AHEAD ASL  TEMPA          ; shift left
C031 2A             ROL                ; into .A
C032 88             DEY                ; loop
C033 D0 EE          BNE  CLOOP          ; back to the compare
                                   ; .A contains the remainder.
C035 4A             LSR                ; .A needs to be corrected
C036 A0 04          LDY  #4            ; four shifts
C038 0E 46 C0 AALoop ASL  ANSWER
C03B 88             DEY
C03C D0 FA          BNE  AALoop
C03E 0D 46 C0      ORA  ANSWER          ; add the low nybble
C041 8D 46 C0      STA  ANSWER
C044 60             RTS

C045 00             TEMPA .BYTE 0
C046 00             ANSWER .BYTE 0
```

See also B2SNIN, B2UNIN, BCD2BY, CFP2I, CI2FP, CNVBFP.

Name

Convert a byte to two hexadecimal digits (ASCII)

Description

When you're looking at the contents of memory, hexadecimal (base 16) is sometimes preferable to decimal or binary.

CB2HEX takes a single number (in the range 0–255) as input and returns the two ASCII characters that make up the hexadecimal equivalent.

Prototype

1. Enter the routine with the value in .A.
2. Temporarily save it.
3. AND with the mask value %00001111 to extract the lower nybble and OR with 48 (\$30) to convert to ASCII. If the result is greater than 57 (ASCII 9), add 7 to put it in the range A–F. This result goes into .X.
4. Retrieve the original value and shift it right four times.
5. Repeat step 3 to convert the high nybble to an ASCII value.

Explanation

The example routine gets a keypress, checks for the letter Q (quit) and then prints four things: the letter pressed, the decimal ASCII value of the character for the key, the hexadecimal equivalent of the decimal number, and a RETURN. It then loops back to get another key.

The subroutine is fairly simple. It first extracts the low nybble and high nybble (a *byte* contains eight bits, while a *nybble* is half a byte—four bits). The nybbles are then converted to ASCII. Because the characters 0–9 correspond to the ASCII codes 48–57, and the characters A–F are ASCII 65–70, it's sometimes necessary to add 7 to bridge the gap between the character codes for 9 and A.

A few techniques bear mentioning. First, the RTS that ends the framing routine occurs very early in the program (\$C009). Most of the time, the program branches over this instruction. There's no rule that says a routine must have an RTS as the last instruction. Second, within the **CB2HEX** routine itself, the ASCSUB subroutine is used twice. The first time, \$C034 performs a JSR ASCSUB. The subroutine executes once and returns back to \$C037. The second time, the program falls through to ASCSUB. This time, the RTS ends the **CB2HEX** routine. The first time, the RTS ends a subroutine within the **CB2HEX** subroutine; the second time, it ends

CB2HEX itself. Finally, the ADC #6 at \$C041 doesn't add 6; it adds 7. The instruction above is a BCC (Branch if Carry Clear) around the ADC instruction, which means *Add with Carry*. If the carry flag is set, adding 6 plus a carry of 1 is the same as adding 7.

Note: The value of .A is temporarily stored in .Y at \$C031. If you're using the Y register as a counter or index, you may wish to substitute PHA/PLA (or STA/LDA) for the TAY/TYA combination.

Routine

```

C000          CHROUT = $FFD2
C000          GETIN  = $FFE4
C000          LINPRT = $BDCC ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128
C000 20 E4 FF MAIN JSR GETIN ; get a key
C003 F0 FB MAIN BEQ MAIN ; loop back if no key
C005 C9 51 MAIN CMP #'Q ; if Q then quit
C007 D0 01 MAIN BNE CONTIN ; else continue
C009 60 MAIN RTS
C00A 20 D2 FF CONTIN JSR CHROUT ; print the character
C00D 48 MAIN PHA ; push it on stack
C00E AA MAIN TAX ; low byte in .X
C00F A9 20 MAIN LDA #32 ; character code for space
C011 20 D2 FF MAIN JSR CHROUT ; print it
C014 A9 00 MAIN LDA #0 ; high byte for LINPRT
C016 20 CD BD MAIN JSR LINPRT ; print the decimal value
C019 A9 3D MAIN LDA #'='
C01B 20 D2 FF MAIN JSR CHROUT ; print an equal sign
C01E 68 MAIN PLA ; get the original number
C01F 20 31 C0 MAIN JSR CB2HEX ; convert it to hex
C022 20 D2 FF MAIN JSR CHROUT ; print high nybble
C025 8A MAIN TXA ; X into .A
C026 20 D2 FF MAIN JSR CHROUT ; print that, too
C029 A9 0D END LDA #13 ; carriage return
C02B 20 D2 FF MAIN JSR CHROUT
C02E 4C 00 C0 MAIN JMP MAIN ; go back for more

C031          CB2HEX = *
C031 A8 MAIN TAY ; save contents of .A in .Y
C032 29 0F MAIN AND #%00001111 ; extract low nybble
C034 20 3D C0 MAIN JSR ASCSUB ; the conversion subroutine
C037 AA MAIN TAX ; put the low nybble in .X
C038 98 MAIN TYA ; retrieve the original number
C039 4A MAIN LSR
C03A 4A MAIN LSR
C03B 4A MAIN LSR
C03C 4A MAIN LSR ; shift right four times
; Now fall through to the ASCSUB routine.
C03D C9 0A ASCSUB CMP #10 ; is it 0-9?
C03F 90 02 ASCSUB BCC ADD48 ; yes, branch forward and add 48
; (for ASCII)
C041 69 06 ASCSUB ADC #6 ; this really adds 7 because carry is set
C043 69 30 ASCSUB ADD48 ADC #48 ; add 48 to make 0-9 into 48-57 or 10-15
; into A-F
C045 60 ASCSUB RTS ; and that's that

```

See also BCD2AX, CAS2IN, CB2ASC, CI2HEX.

Name

Print semilarge (4×4) characters

Description

This routine looks up the character shape in ROM and prints it out (to screen or printer) as a large character that's four times the normal size.

Prototype

1. Set up a zero-page pointer to the character shape.
2. Read the eight bytes from character ROM; store them in memory.
3. Loop four times, once through each pair of bytes.
4. Rotate each byte to the left twice to get a number 0–15.
5. Look up the appropriate graphics character and print it.
6. The resulting printout has four graphics characters on four lines.

Explanation

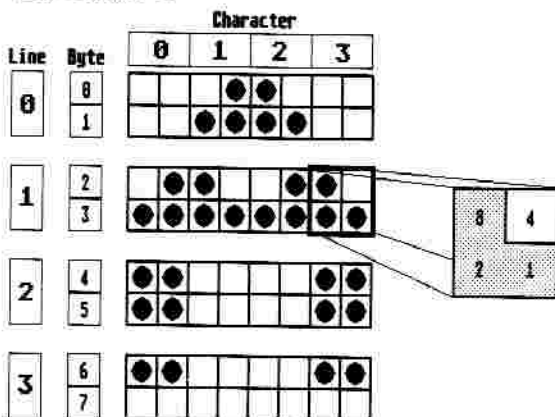
At the beginning of the routine, the screen code of the character to be printed is in the accumulator, and the choice of uppercase/graphics or lowercase/uppercase is determined by the carry flag. The first thing we have to do is find the character shape in ROM, so `.A` is stored in a free zero-page location, and a `$0D` is stored in the corresponding high byte of the pointer. A single ROL transfers the contents of the carry flag into `FREEZP+1`. Now we have either a `$1A` or `$1B` there. The next task is to multiply this two-byte pointer by 8, via three `ASL/ROL` pairs.

The pointer at `$FB` now points to the character shape, so we can look up the eight bytes that form the letter. The routine from `$C014` through `$C02B` does this. The interrupts must first be turned off with `SEI`. Then bit 2 of location 1 is turned off so we can read character ROM. The shape is stored into `CHCOPY` (at the end of the program).

As an example, imagine that we're printing a large capital `A`. The figure shows how the bits are arranged in the character.

Start with a 0 in the accumulator. Rotate byte 0 to the left twice; then rotate byte 1 twice. The result is a number between 0 and 15 in the accumulator. This number is used as an offset to find out first whether we should print `{RVS ON}` or `{RVS OFF}`, and then which character to print. This procedure repeats four times, and we go down to the next row (bytes 2 and 3), and so on.

The Letter A



If you look at character 3 on line 1, you'll see that the graphics character to be printed should be a Commodore-C (in reverse mode).

Note: On the 64, it's necessary to turn off bit 2 of location 1 to get to the character set in ROM. On the 128, you can access the character by switching to bank 14. Thus, it's necessary to remove the instructions from SEI to STA \$01 (\$C014-\$C01A) and the instructions from LDA \$01 to CLI (\$C025-\$C02B). Also, the instruction LDA (FREEZP),Y at \$C01D should be replaced with a call to the INDFET (indirect fetch) Kernal routine, as follows:

```

LOOP LDA #FREEZP ; the zero page pointer
    LDX #14      ; the bank to access
    JSR 65396   ; the INDFET Kernal routine
    
```

Routine

```

C000          FREEZP = $FB
C000          CHROUT = $FFD2
; Enter with the screen code in .A.
; Carry clear for uppercase/graphics; carry set
; for lowercase/uppercase.
;
C000 85 FB    CHARX4 STA FREEZP ; screen code (low byte to multiply by 8)
C002 A9 0D    LDA  #%00001101 ; $0D, which will be shifted four times to
; become $D0 or $D8
C004 85 FC    STA  FREEZP+1 ; almost ready to rotate
C006 26 FC    ROL  FREEZP+1 ; got carry now
; Now multiply it by 8.
;
C008 06 FB    ASL  FREEZP
C00A 26 FC    ROL  FREEZP+1
C00C 06 FB    ASL  FREEZP
C00E 26 FC    ROL  FREEZP+1
C010 06 FB    ASL  FREEZP
    
```

```

C012 26 FC          ROL  FREEZP+1          ; FREEZP now points to the first byte of
                                ; character ROM.
                                ;
C014 78            SEI                    ; turn off interrupts while we read
                                ; character ROM
C015 A5 01        LDA  $01                ; bit 2 of location 1 controls character ROM
C017 29 FB        AND  #%11111011        ; mask it out to get to the characters
C019 85 01        STA  $01
C01B A0 07        LDY  #7                  ; need the eight bytes (0-7)
C01D B1 FB        LDA  (FREEZP),Y        ; get the shape
C01F 99 8B C0     STA  CHCOPY,Y          ; and put it in memory
C022 88           DEY                    ; count down
C023 10 F8        BPL  LOOP              ; we want 0, so count down to $FF
C025 A5 01        LDA  $01                ; check location 1
C027 09 04        ORA  #%00000100        ; and turn the bit back on
C029 85 01        STA  $01
C02B 58           CLI                    ; interrupts are OK now
                                ;
                                ; Print the shape on the screen.
C02C A9 04        LDA  #4
C02E 8D 93 C0     STA  COUNTR              ; do it four times
C031 A2 00        LDX  #0                  ; start at CHCOPY+0
C033 A9 04        LDA  #4                  ; four ROLs
C035 8D 94 C0     STA  COUNT2             ; need a separate counter
C038 A9 00        LDA  #0
C03A 1E 8B C0     ASL  CHCOPY,X           ; get carry
C03D 2A           ROL                     ; put in .A
C03E 1E 8B C0     ASL  CHCOPY,X           ; again
C041 2A           ROL                     ; push it over
C042 E8           INX                     ; go up to next byte
C043 1E 8B C0     ASL  CHCOPY,X
C046 2A           ROL                     ; more into .A
C047 1E 8B C0     ASL  CHCOPY,X
C04A 2A           ROL                     ; now we have a number 0-15
                                ;
C04B A8           TAY                     ; put it in .Y for lookup
C04C B9 6B C0     LDA  OFFON,Y
C04F 20 D2 FF     JSR  CHROUT              ; print RVS ON or RVS OFF
C052 B9 7B C0     LDA  QSCHAR,Y
C055 20 D2 FF     JSR  CHROUT              ; print the character
C058 CA           DEX                     ; back to normal
C059 CE 94 C0     DEC  COUNT2
C05C D0 DA        BNE  INLOOP              ; continue for four characters
C05E A9 0D        LDA  #13
C060 20 D2 FF     JSR  CHROUT              ; return
C063 E8           INX                     ; new line
C064 E8           INX                     ; increment .X by 2
C065 CE 93 C0     DEC  COUNTR              ; decrement outer loop
C068 D0 C9        BNE  OUTLOP             ; and go back again
C06A 60           RTS

;
C06B 92 92 92    OFFON  .BYTE 146,146,146,146,146,18,18,18
C073 92 92 92    .BYTE 146,146,146,18,18,18,18,18
C07B 20 AC BB    QSCHAR .BYTE 32,172,187,162,188,161,191,190
C083 BE BF A1    .BYTE 190,191,161,188,162,187,172,32
C088            CHCOPY  =
C093            * =     * + 8
C093            COUNTR  =
C094            * =     * + 1
C094            COUNT2  =
C095            * =     * + 1

```

See also CHARX8.

CHARX8

Name

Print large (8×8) characters

Description

CHARX8 prints a gigantic character, eight times larger than normal. It's not especially useful as a screen routine (except perhaps for a children's alphabet program), but if you send output to a printer, you can use it to print large banners.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the screen code in `.A` and the carry flag clear to print a character from the uppercase/graphics character set, or with the carry flag set for a character from the uppercase/lowercase character set.
2. Store the screen code in zero page.
3. Manipulate a zero-page pointer to point to the character shape in ROM.
4. Switch in character ROM and copy the eight bytes to normal memory.
5. Loop through the eight bits of each of the eight bytes.
6. Print a reversed space for bits that are on, and a space for off bits.

Explanation

Patterns for the uppercase/graphics character set are stored in character ROM at `$D000-$D7FE`, while patterns for the uppercase/lowercase character set are found at `$D800-$DFFF`. Each of the 256 printable character patterns takes up eight bytes of memory, so a screen code value must be multiplied by 8 and then added to either `$D000` or `$D800` to calculate the starting address of the corresponding character pattern data. Once you have the memory address of the character shape, you can convert it into a big character.

`FREEZP` at location `$FB` is a pointer to the character shape we want to print. The accumulator holds the screen code, so first we have to store it in the low byte of `FREEZP`—to be multiplied by 8 in a moment. Next, the high byte of the pointer is set up. At `$C002`, the number `$0D` is loaded and stored into `FREEZP+1`. Next, the contents of the carry flag are rotated into the same location. At this point, both `FREEZP` and `FREEZP+1` are three left-shifts away from pointing to the right place. A left-shift is the same as multiplying by 2, so three shifts are the same as "times 2 times 2 times 2," or "times 8."

ASLing the low byte followed by ROLing the high byte multiplies a number by 2, so we do that three times. The result is a two-byte pointer that tells us where to find the character.

At \$C014-\$C02B, we read the character shape. Memory at \$D000-\$DFFF is very busy: Character ROM is there, I/O locations are there, and RAM is there, too. Location 1 controls what's going on, and we have to turn off bit 2 to get to the character shapes. But, first, SEI turns off interrupts, so there's no need to worry about crashes. A loop copies the characters from ROM down to a section of memory we've set aside. CLI turns on the interrupts again.

Now we have the shape at CHCOPY within the program. There are eight bytes there, each of which contains eight bits. All that's left is to ROL the appropriate byte. The current high bit moves into the carry flag, and BCS branches to the print routine that prints a reversed space (if that's what is needed). Otherwise, the bit is cleared, and we need to print a normal space. After eight rotates, a CHR\$(13) puts the cursor on the next line, and the outer loop continues until the last bit is converted into a space or reversed space.

Note: On the 64, it's necessary to turn off bit 2 of location 1 to get to the character set in ROM. On the 128, you can access the character by switching to bank 14. Thus, it's necessary to remove the instructions from SEI to STA \$01 (\$C014-\$C01A) and the instructions from LDA \$01 to CLI (\$C025-\$C02B). Also, the instruction LDA (FREEZP),Y at \$C01D should be replaced with a call to the INDFET (indirect fetch) Kernal routine, as follows:

```

LOOP LDA #FREEZP ; the zero page pointer
      LDX #14 ; the bank to access
      JSR 65396 ; the INDFET Kernal routine
  
```

Routine

```

C000      FREEZP = $FB
C000      CHROUT = $FFD2
; Enter with screen code in .A.
; Carry clear for uppercase/graphics, carry set
; for uppercase/lowercase.
;
C000 85 FB   CHARX8 STA FREEZP ; the screen code (low-byte, to multiply by 8)
C002 A9 0D   LDA #%00001101 ; $0D, which will be shifted four times, to
; become $D0 or $D8
C004 85 FC   STA FREEZP+1 ; almost ready to rotate
C006 26 FC   ROL FREEZP+1 ; got carry now
; Now multiply it by 8.
;
  
```

CHARX8

```

C008 06 FB          ASL  FREEZP
C00A 26 FC          ROL  FREEZP+1
C00C 06 FB          ASL  FREEZP
C00E 26 FC          ROL  FREEZP+1
C010 06 FB          ASL  FREEZP
C012 26 FC          ROL  FREEZP+1
                                ; FREEZP now points to the first byte of
                                ; character pattern in ROM.
                                ;
C014 78            SEI                                ; turn off interrupts while we read character
                                ; ROM
C015 A5 01          LDA  $01                          ; location 1, bit 2 controls character ROM
C017 29 FB          AND  %%11111011                    ; mask it out to make the characters visible
C019 85 01          STA  $01
C01B A0 07          LDY  #7                          ; need eight bytes (0-7)
C01D B1 FB          LOOP LDA (FREEZP),Y                ; get the shape
C01F 99 65 C0       STA  CHCOPY,Y                      ; and put it in memory
C022 88            DEY                                ; count down
C023 10 F8          BPL  LOOP                          ; we want #0, so count down to $FF
C025 A5 01          LDA  $01                          ; check location 1
C027 09 04          ORA  %%00000100                    ; and turn the bit back on
C029 85 01          STA  $01
C02B 58            CLI                                ; interrupts are OK now
                                ;
C02C A9 0D          LDA  #13                          ; Now print the shape on the screen.
C02E 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT                        ; carriage return
C031 A2 FF          LDX  #255                          ; so we start on a new line
                                ; .X must be the counter, because ROL doesn't
                                ; accept Y-index
C033 E8            OUTLOOP INX                        ; increment up to zero the first time
C034 E0 08          CPX  #8                          ; after 0-7, we're done
C036 D0 01          BNE  START                        ; not 8, so do a row
C038 60            RTS                                ; else we're done
C039 A0 09          START LDY #9                      ; counter (eight loops)
C03B 88            INLOOP DEY                        ; counting down to zero
C03C D0 08          BNE  DOLINE
C03E A9 0D          LDA  #13                          ; print RETURN
C040 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT
C043 4C 33 C0       JMP  OUTLOOP
C046 3E 65 C0       DOLINE ROL CHCOPY,X              ; move the top bit into carry
C049 B0 0D          BCS  REVERS                       ; if it's a 1, carry is set
C04B A9 92          LDA  #146                         ; reverse off
C04D 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT                       ; print it
C050 A9 20          LDA  #32                          ; character code for space
C052 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT                       ; print it, too
C055 4C 3B C0       JMP  INLOOP
C058 A9 12          REVERS LDA #18                    ; reverse on
C05A 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT                       ; print it
C05D A9 20          LDA  #32                          ; character code for space
C05F 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT                       ; print it
C062 4C 3B C0       JMP  INLOOP
C065                CHCOPY = *
C06D                *= *+8                          ; reserve eight bytes for a copy of the character

```

See also CHARX4.

Name

Check peripheral status via location 144

Description

The ML equivalent of BASIC's ST (status) variable is location 144 (\$90). In general, if the value in location 144 isn't zero, something has gone wrong (usually, *end of file or device not present*).

Prototype

1. Load the accumulator from location 144.
2. Branch if equal to zero (BEQ) to continue the routine.
3. If not equal to zero, something has gone wrong.

Explanation

The following program attempts to open a file that doesn't exist. The BEQ should not occur. The letter *A* is printed, which means something has gone wrong.

Routine

```

C000          STAT      =    144          ; location 144 holds the status byte
C000          SETLFS   =    $FFBA
C000          SETNAM   =    $FFBD
C000          OPEN     =    $FFC0
C000          CHROUT   =    $FFD2
C000          CHKOUT   =    $FFC9
C000          CLRCHN   =    $FFCC
C000          CLOSE    =    $FFC3

;
C000 A9 02          LDA    #2
C002 A2 08          LDX    #8
C004 A0 02          LDY    #2
C006 20 BA FF      JSR    SETLFS      ; set logical file 2,8,2
C009 A9 00          LDA    #0
C00B 20 BD FF      JSR    SETNAM      ; no name
C00E 20 C0 FF      JSR    OPEN        ; open it
C011 A2 02          LDX    #2
C013 20 C9 FF      JSR    CHKOUT      ; get ready to print
C016 A5 90          LDA    STAT        ; check the status
C018 F0 08          BEQ    FINIS      ; if equal to zero, OK
C01A 20 CC FF      JSR    CLRCHN      ; clear channels before printing
C01D A9 41          LDA    #65
C01F 20 D2 FF      JSR    CHROUT      ; print a letter A
C022 20 CC FF      JSR    CLRCHN      ; clear all channels
C025 A9 02          LDA    #2
C027 20 C3 FF      JSR    CLOSE      ; and close file 2
C02A 60          RTS

```

See also DERRCK, RDSTAT.

CHOUTP

Name

Change the target screen memory address for CHROUT

Description

If you've relocated your text screen, any characters you print with CHROUT will be placed in the normal screen memory area unless you update the text screen pointer HIBASE.

CHOUTP changes the pointer so that CHROUT (or PRINT in BASIC) print characters on the relocated screen.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with .A containing the 1K text-screen offset (2 for 2K offset, and so forth).
2. Multiply .A by 4 to put HIBASE on an even 1K boundary.
3. Store the result in HIBASE.

Explanation

In the example, the text-screen pointer is changed to 8192. Using CHROUT, 500 bytes beginning at this location are filled with zeros. Printing CHR\$(64)—the @ symbol—causes zeros to be POKEd into these locations (the screen code for @ is 0).

In the routine, SCRPTTR represents the actual location (times 1K) of the text screen (that is, SCRPTTR.BYTE 8 signifies that the screen begins at 8K, or location 8192).

On the 128, we home the cursor twice within the main program. This closes any text windows that may be opened and places the cursor at the top of the screen.

Routine

```
C000          HIBASE    =    648          ; HIBASE = 2619 on the 128—starting page
; of screen memory
C000          CHROUT   =    65490        ; Kernal character output routine
;
; Using CHROUT, fill 500 bytes beginning at
; 8192 with zeros.
C000 AD 27 C0          LDA    SCRPTTR    ; .A contains 1K times SCRPTTR offset
C003 20 21 C0          JSR    CHOUTP   ; change the PRINT location
C006 A9 13            LDA    #19      ; HOME the cursor
C008 20 D2 FF          JSR    CHROUT

; JSR CHROUT; (128 only—to close any
; windows)
; Fill 500 bytes at the start of the new screen
; with zeros.
C00B AD 28 C0          LDA    CHAR
C00E A2 02            LDY    #2
C010 A0 FA            LDY    #250
C012 20 D2 FF INLOOP JSR    CHROUT
C015 88              DEY
C016 D0 FA            BNE    INLOOP    ; fill 250 bytes
C018 CA              DEX
C019 D0 F5            BNE    OUTLOOP   ; do OUTLOOP twice—2 times 250
C01B A9 01            LDA    #1        ; return to default screen at 1K
```

```

C01D 20 21 C0      JSR  CHOUTP
C020 60            RTS

;
; Change screen base address for PRINT.
; .A holds 1K offset.
; multiply .A by 4 so HIBASE times 256
; puts us on a 1K boundary
C021 0A          CHOUTP ASL
C022 0A          ASL
C023 8D 88 02    STA  HIBASE
C026 60          RTS
; now change the PRINT location
;
C027 08          SCRPTR .BYTE 8
C028 40          CHAR  .BYTE 64
; to print on a screen at 8K (8192)
; character to print—here @

```

See also VIDBNK, VICADR.

CHRDEF

Name

Character redefinition

Description

CHRDEF moves either one or both ROM character sets into RAM and redefines a series of characters within one of these sets.

Prototype

1. Before assembling this routine, list the screen codes of the characters you wish to redefine as SCCODE and provide the number of these characters as NUMDEF. Store the 1K offset for your RAM character set in CHROFF. Then list character data at the end of the routine beginning at CHRDAT. Define PAGCTR as 16 if you want to copy both ROM character sets. In this case, add the commented line, ADC #8, just after ADC ZT at \$C066 if the characters you're redefining are in the second character set. On the 128, define VMCSB as 2604 rather than 53272.
2. Temporarily store the high byte of the offset address for the RAM character set in zero page (ZT).
3. Save the high byte of the ROM character set address in ZP+1.
4. Multiply the current video bank (0-3) by 64 to get the high byte of its starting address and add the high byte in ZT to this.
5. Store the result representing the high byte for the starting location of the RAM character set in ZP+3 and also in ZT for use in character redefinition.
6. Store a zero in the low byte, zero-page pointers to the ROM and RAM character sets.
7. Copy the ROM set from the address in ZP to the address in ZP+2. On the 64, set interrupts and switch in character ROM at 53248 before doing this. On the 128, copy the ROM set from memory bank 14 with INDFET.
8. When the copying process is complete, on the 64, switch back in the I/O at 53248 and clear interrupts. On both computers, point the VIC chip memory control register (or its shadow, on the 128) to the RAM character set.
9. To locate the characters being redefined in the RAM character set, multiply the screen code for each by 8 and add the result to the starting location for the set (in ZT).
10. Load eight bytes of data representing each redefined

character, and store this data beginning at the address determined in Step 9.

11. Repeat Steps 9 and 10 for all characters being redefined, and then RTS.

Explanation

In the program below, **CHRDEF** copies the uppercase/graphics character set—2K of character data—from ROM beginning at 53248 to RAM beginning at 14336 (assuming the current video bank is 0), and then redefines the left arrow (←) character to 1/8 and the ampersand (&) to 1/4. To copy the lowercase/uppercase set instead, replace LDA #>UPPGRP at \$C006 with LDA #<LOWUPP.

To move both character sets from ROM, you need to allow room in the current 16K video bank for 4K of character data. To do this in the example program below, before assembling the program, change CHROFF in the equates to 12; this offsets the RAM character sets by 12288 in the current video bank. Also change PAGCTR to 16 to move 12*256, or 4096, bytes and, if the characters you're redefining belong in the second set, insert the commented instruction, ADC #8, near the end of the program. This instruction adds an additional 8K to the offset for the RAM character set and causes data for the redefined characters to be stored into the second set.

As it's currently set up, the program redefines just two characters—the left arrow (character 31) and the ampersand (character 38)—in the primary character set. But with **CHRDEF**, you can redefine up to 256 characters within *one* character set. Just define NUMDEF to the number of characters you want to redefine and list their screen codes at SCCODE. Then provide the eight bytes of pixel data for each character at CHRDEF.

By listing the character definition data in binary form, you can see how the new characters will appear on the screen. For instance, look at the data in \$C08C-\$C093, and you'll see the image of 1/8 used to redefine the left arrow.

Routine

C000	VMCSB	=	53272	; VMCSB = 2604 on the 128—VIC-II chip
				; memory control register
C000	CIACRA	=	56334	; interrupt control register A
C000	CI2PRA	=	56576	; CIA #2 data port register A
C000	ZT	=	163	; temporary zero-page storage (normally for
				; tape and serial I/O)
C000	ZP	=	251	

CHRDEF

```

C000          UPPGRP  =    53248      ; address of uppercase/graphics ROM
C000          LOWUPP  =    55296      ; character set
C000          CHROFF  =    %00001110  ; address of lowercase/uppercase ROM
C000          INDFET  =    65396      ; character set
; 1K RAM character set offset in current video
; bank
C000          ; Kernal routine to fetch bytes indirectly from
; another bank (128 only)
;
; Put character set in RAM at 14K, redefine
; the - and & characters.
; First move character set to RAM.
C000 A9 0E      CHRDEF LDA #CHROFF    ; load character set offset
C002 0A          ASL          ; multiply by 4 to get high byte of
; character set offset
C003 0A          ASL          ; store temporarily
C004 85 A3      STA ZT          ; change UPPGRP to LOWUPP to move
C006 A9 D0      LDA #>UPPGRP    ; lowercase/uppercase ROM set
C008 85 FC      STA ZP+1        ; save high byte address of ROM character
; set
C00A AD 00 DD   LDA C12FRA      ; get current 16K video bank
C00D 29 03      AND #%00000011  ; bank number is in bits 0-1
C00F 49 03      EOR #%00000011  ; to get actual bank number, 0-3
C011 0A          ASL          ; multiply bank number by 64 to get the
; high byte of bank address
C012 0A          ASL
C013 0A          ASL
C014 0A          ASL
C015 0A          ASL
C016 0A          ASL
C017 05 A3      ORA ZT          ; now, add the high byte of RAM character
; set offset to this
C019 85 FE      STA ZP+3        ; store the result (high byte address of
; RAM character set)
C01B 85 A3      STA ZT          ; save it for redefining characters below
C01D A9 00      LDA #0          ; ROM and RAM set addresses are on
; even-page boundaries
C01F 85 FB      STA ZP          ; store 0 into low-byte address of ROM set
C021 85 FD      STA ZP+2        ; also into low-byte address of RAM set
; Now copy character set from ROM to
; RAM.
C023 78          SEI          ; disable IRQ interrupts (64 only)
C024 A5 01      LDA 1          ; select character ROM using configuration
; register (64 only)
C026 29 FB      AND #%11111011  ; clear bit 2 (64 only)
C028 85 01      STA 1          ; reset configuration register (64 only)
; Now move character set(s) from ROM to
; RAM.
C02A A0 00      LDY #0          ; initialize .Y as index
C02C B1 FB      CMLOOP LDA (ZP),Y ; from ROM location (64 only)
; Substitute next three lines for previous
; line on the 128.
; CMLOOP LDA #ZP
; LDX #14; bank number
; JSR INDFET; fetch character data from
; bank 14
;
; to RAM location
C02E 91 FD      STA (ZP+2),Y    ; next byte
C030 C8          INY          ; move another 256 bytes
C031 D0 F9      BNE CMLOOP     ; next 256-byte block
C033 E6 FC      INC ZP+1
C035 E6 FE      INC ZP+3
C037 CE 87 C0   DEC PAGCTR    ; next page

```

C03A	D0	F0		BNE	CMLOOP		; move all 256-byte blocks
C03C	A5	01		LDA	1		; (64 only)
C03E	09	04		ORA	##%00000100		; set configuration register to enable I/O
							; (64 only)
C040	85	01		STA	1		; reset register (64 only)
C042	58			CLI			; reenale interrupts (64 only)
C043	AD	18	D0	LDA	VMCSB		; now, point VIC chip to RAM character set
C046	29	F0		AND	##%11110000		; retain current 4-7 bits of VMCSB (text
							; offset)
C048	09	0E		ORA	#CHROFF		; or in bits 0-3 representing RAM character
							; set offset
C04A	8D	18	D0	STA	VMCSB		; and store result in control register
							;
							; Now redefine RAM characters.
							; First calculate location of each character
							; in RAM set.
C04D	A2	00		LDX	#0		; let X count number of characters that
							; have been redefined
C04F	BD	8A	C0	RDFLOP	LDA	SCCODE,X	
C052	85	FB			STA	ZP	
C054	A9	00			LDA	#0	; clear high byte for ROL
C056	85	FC			STA	ZP+1	
C058	06	FB			ASL	ZP	
							; multiply SCCODE by 8 since eight bytes
							; per character
C05A	26	FC			ROL	ZP+1	
C05C	06	FB			ASL	ZP	
C05E	26	FC			ROL	ZP+1	
C060	06	FB			ASL	ZP	
C062	26	FC			ROL	ZP+1	
C064	A5	FC			LDA	ZP+1	
							; now add start of RAM character set (carry
							; cleared by last ROL)
C066	65	A3			ADC	ZT	
							; only add high byte since character set is
							; on a page boundary
							; ADC #8; add 2K if you transfer both sets
							; and characters are in second set
							; specific character's address is now at ZP
							; store X on stack temporarily
C068	85	FC			STA	ZP+1	
C06A	8A				TXA		
C06B	48				PHA		
C06C	A0	00			LDY	#0	; index rows of pixels in one character
C06E	AE	88	C0	CHLOOP	LDX	ROWCTR	; X now contains pixel row
C071	BD	8C	C0		LDA	CHRDAT,X	; get next row of character data
C074	91	FB			STA	(ZP),Y	; store into RAM set
C076	EE	88	C0		INC	ROWCTR	; next row of data
C079	C8				INY		; next row for this character
C07A	C0	08			CPY	#8	; do eight rows of this character
C07C	90	F0			BCC	CHLOOP	; all done
C07E	68				PLA		; restore X to contain number of characters
							; that have been redefined
C07F	AA				TAX		
C080	E8				INX		; next character
C081	EC	89	C0		CPX	NUMDEF	; have all characters been done?
C084	D0	C9			BNE	RDFLOP	; if not, do another one
C086	60				RTS		; we're finished
							;
C087	08		PAGCTR		.BYTE	8	; move 8*256=2048 bytes (1 set); use 16 to
							; move both sets
C088	00		ROWCTR		.BYTE	0	; counter for row of pixel data
C089	02		NUMDEF		.BYTE	2	; number of characters to redefine
C08A	1F	26	SCCODE		.BYTE	31,38	; screen codes of character to redefine
C08C			CHRDAT		=	*	; pixel data for * (1/8)
C08C	40				.BYTE	%01000000	
C08D	44				.BYTE	%01000100	
C08E	48				.BYTE	%01001000	

CHRDEF

C08F	12	.BYTE	%00010010	
C090	25	.BYTE	%00100101	
C091	42	.BYTE	%01000010	
C092	05	.BYTE	%00000101	
C093	02	.BYTE	%00000010	
C094	40	.BYTE	%01000000	; pixel data for & (1/4)
C095	44	.BYTE	%01000100	
C096	48	.BYTE	%01001000	
C097	12	.BYTE	%00010010	
C098	26	.BYTE	%00100110	
C099	4A	.BYTE	%01001010	
C09A	1F	.BYTE	%00011111	
C09B	02	.BYTE	%00000010	

See also ANIMAT, CUST80.

Name

Get a character within a range

Description

CHRGTR will come in handy anytime you wish to limit the user's response to a specified range of characters. For instance, suppose you ask the user a question that requires a numeric response. Or suppose you want only alphabetic input.

In either case, this routine is ideal. You simply set the upper and lower limits of acceptable ASCII characters beforehand and JSR to **CHRGTR**.

Prototype

1. Set up the lower and upper (plus one) values of the ASCII character range (RANGE1 and RANGE2, respectively).
2. Get a keypress.
3. Compare its ASCII value to the lower delimiter (RANGE1).
4. If it's less, branch to step 2.
5. Compare its ASCII value to the upper delimiter (RANGE2).
6. If it's greater, branch to step 2.
7. Otherwise, return the acceptable ASCII character in .A.

Explanation

The example program is set up so that only letters between A and Z are accepted. To limit the input to number keys, change RANGE1 to 48 (ASCII 0) and RANGE2 to 58 (ASCII 9, plus 1).

Routine

```

C000          GETIN    =    65508
C000          CHROUT  =    65490
                                     ; Accept only keys in the range A-Z and
                                     ; print the keypress.
C000 20 07 C0          JSR    CHRGTR
C003 20 D2 FF          JSR    CHROUT
C006 60                RTS
                                     ;
                                     ; Get a character from within
                                     ; RANGE1-RANGE2
                                     ; return it in .A.
C007 20 E4 FF CHRGTR JSR    GETIN
C00A CD 15 C0          CMP    RANGE1
C00D 90 F8             BCC    CHRGTR
C00F CD 16 C0          CMP    RANGE2
C012 B0 F3             BCS    CHRGTR
C014 60                RTS
                                     ;
C015 41                RANGE1 .BYTE 65
C016 5B                RANGE2 .BYTE 91
                                     ; ASCII A
                                     ; ASCII Z plus 1
    
```

See also BUFCLR, CHRGT5, CHRKER, MATGET.

CHRGTS

Name

Get a specific character

Description

There will be many occasions when you will want to screen the user's input selectively. Probably the most common example of this is when you ask the user a yes/no question. Usually, all you're really looking for is a Y or N response.

By using **CHRGTS**, you can set up this situation with ease. Before you access the routine, just place these two characters in the table of acceptable responses at the end of the program.

CHRGTS checks the incoming character to insure that it is among those in your table of allowed characters. The program continues only if and when it receives a suitable response.

Prototype

1. Get a keypress.
2. Compare its ASCII value with a list of acceptable responses (here, KEYS).
3. If the incoming keypress is among those in the table, return its ASCII value in .A.
4. Otherwise, branch to step 1.

Explanation

With the aid of **CHRGTS**, the following program checks for a Y (yes) or N (no) keypress. If either is pressed, it is printed. Otherwise, the program fetches another keypress until a Y or N is received.

Note: The table of acceptable responses can have as many ASCII characters in it as you like. By placing the responses that you're more likely to receive at the beginning of the table, you can speed up the execution of this routine.

Routine

```
C000          GETIN    =    65508
C000          CHROUT  =    65490
;
; Accept either Y or N only.
; get specific characters
C000 20 07 C0          JSR    CHRGTS
C003 20 D2 FF          JSR    CHROUT
C006 60                RTS    ; print it
;
; Get only characters designated in KEYS
; table. Return character in .A.
```

```

C007 20 E4 FF CHRGTS JSR GETIN ; get ASCII key
C00A A2 00 LDX #0
C00C DD 19 C0 CHKLOP CMP KEYS,X ; check each character in table
C00F F0 07 BEQ EXIT ; if found
C011 E8 INX
C012 E0 02 CFX #NUMKEY ; check key number
C014 D0 F6 BNE CHKLOP ; if more in table, check next character
C016 F0 EF BEQ CHRGTS ; if no match, get another keypress
C018 60 EXIT RTS

C019 59 4E KEYS ,ASC "YN" ; list of acceptable keystrokes
C01B NUMKEY = * - KEYS ; number of acceptable keys

```

See also BUFCLR, CHRGR, CHRKER, MATGET.

CHRKER

Name

Get a character

Description

You'll find a need for this routine in just about any program you write that requires user input. **CHRKER** uses the Kernal routine **GETIN** to get a character from the current input device.

Prototype

1. JSR to GETIN to fetch a keypress.
2. If the Z flag is set—if GETIN has received a null string, or CHR\$(0)—BEQ to step 1.
3. Otherwise, return in .A the ASCII character received by GETIN.

Explanation

The example program gets a character from the keyboard (by default, the current input device) and prints it.

Note: GETIN relies on the normal IRQ interrupt routine to get its characters. During each IRQ interrupt, the keyboard is checked, and ASCII values for keypresses are placed in the keyboard buffer. So, altering the normal IRQ routines may cause the keyboard buffer not to be updated. In such instances, GETIN won't work, and you should use the Kernal **SCNKEY** routine instead.

A **CMP #0** instruction following **JSR GETIN** may be necessary when you're getting characters from a device other than the keyboard (for example, from a disk or modem).

Routine

```
C000          GETIN  =    65508      ; Kernal get-key routine
C000          CHROUT =    65490
;
; Accept keypresses until RETURN.
C000 20 0B C0 LOOP   JSR   CHRKER    ; get a key in .A
C003 20 D2 FF       JSR   CHRROUT    ; print it
C006 C9 0D         CMP   #13        ; is it RETURN?
C008 D0 F6         BNE   LOOP        ; if not, get another keypress
C00A 60           RTS
;
; Return a keypress in .A.
C00B 20 E4 FF CHRKER JSR   GETIN     ; get an ASCII keystroke
C00E F0 FB         BEQ   CHRKER    ; if no keypress, then loop
C010 60           RTS
```

See also BUFCLR, CHRGTR, CHRGT5, MATGET.

Name

Convert signed integers to floating point and vice versa

Description

A signed integer value consists of 16 bits (two bytes). The highest bit indicates the sign (%0 is positive, %1 is negative); the remaining 15 bits contain the value. Floating-point numbers may contain fractional components and are contained within five bytes. This routine converts between the two formats.

Prototype

1. JMP indirectly through \$0005 (64) or \$117C (128) to convert integers to floating point. Enter with the integer value in .A (low byte) and .Y (high byte). The resulting floating-point value will be left in FAC1 (floating point accumulator #1), locations \$61-\$65 (64) or \$63-\$67 (128).
2. Or JMP indirectly through \$0003 (64) or \$117A (128) to change floating-point numbers to integers. Enter with the floating-point value in FAC1 (floating point accumulator #1), locations \$61-\$65 (64) or \$63-\$67 (128). The integer value will be returned in .A (low byte) and .Y (high byte).

Explanation

The example program takes the two-byte value in the start of BASIC pointer, converts it to a floating-point number, calls the square-root routine, and prints the result. There's no good reason why you'd want to find the square root of the start of BASIC, of course, but it serves as a good example of using built-in ROM routines.

The RAM vectors to the built-in conversion routines in BASIC ROM are initialized when the computer is turned on or reset. The example also uses the ROM routine for the SQR function, which calculates the square root of the floating-point value in FAC1, and the ROM routine that prints a signed integer number.

A note to machine language programmers who want to use fractions and floating-point routines in their programs: There are a variety of ways to avoid fractions or to simulate them without going to floating point. If you're convinced that you need fractions, you may take one of two routes. The first is to use the various ROM routines; the second is to write your own floating-point package. If you depend on the BASIC routines, your programs will perform calculations at about the

CI2FP, CFP2I

same speed as a BASIC program, which is a good argument for using BASIC in the first place. Writing your own floating-point package is feasible, but it's a lot of work, and the end result may be a set of routines that aren't much faster than BASIC.

Note: 128 programmers should substitute the following addresses: SQR = \$8FB7, LINPRT = \$8E32, CI2FP = JMP (\$117C), CFP2I = JMP (\$117A).

Routine

```
C000          TXTTAB  =   43          ; TXTTAB = 45 on the 128—pointer to start
; of BASIC
C000          SQR     =   $8FB7       ; ROM square-root routine (SQR = $8FB7 on
; the 128)
C000          LINPRT =   $8E32       ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128—prints
; signed integer in .A and .X
;
C000 A4 2B      MAIN   LDY  TXTTAB    ; low byte of the pointer
C002 A5 2C      LDA  TXTTAB+1      ; high byte
C004 20 15 C0   JSR  CI2FP         ; convert it
C007 20 71 BF   JSR  SQR          ; find the square root (ROM routine)
C00A 20 18 C0   JSR  CFP2I        ; back to an integer
C00D 48         PHA                ; save .A
C00E 98         TYA                ; Y to .A
C00F AA        TAX                ; to .X
C010 68         PLA                ; get .A back
C011 20 CD BD   JSR  LINPRT       ; print it
C014 60         RTS
;
C015 6C 05 00  CI2FP  JMP  ($0005)  ; JMP ($117C) on the 128
;
C018 6C 03 00  CFP2I  JMP  ($0003)  ; JMP ($117A) on the 128
```

See also B2SNIN, B2UNIN, BCD2BY, CB2BCD, CI2FP, CNVBFP.

Name

Convert a two-byte integer to four hexadecimal (ASCII) digits

Description

This routine is just an extended two-byte version of **CB2HEX**, which converts a single byte into two hex characters. You enter **CI2HEX** with the high byte in **.A**, the low byte in **.X**. The result is stored in a buffer, terminated by a zero.

Prototype

1. With the high byte in **.A** and low byte in **.X**, call the byte-to-hex (**BYTHEX**) subroutine.
2. Copy the resulting characters (stored in zero page) to a buffer.
3. Transfer **.X** to **.A** and call **BYTHEX** again.
4. Copy the ASCII hex characters to the buffer again.

Explanation

The example routine displays a section of memory starting at \$0800, where BASIC programs are stored on the 64. On the 128, programs are stored at \$1C00 or \$4000, depending on whether a graphics area has been allocated. To adapt the program to the 128, change the \$08 at \$C004 to \$1C or \$40.

The **CI2HEX** routine is called to set up the memory addresses (\$0800, \$0808, \$0810, and so on) to be printed at the beginning of each line. Then eight single-byte values are printed, separated by spaces. The **BYTHEX** subroutine at \$C07C is essentially the same as the **CB2HEX** routine found elsewhere in this book, but because the **X** and **Y** registers are used in the calling routines, **BYTHEX** is careful not to disturb any values in the registers.

The two ASCII characters are stored in \$FD and \$FE temporarily. The **BUFFIT** routine copies these characters to the buffer, indexed by **.Y**. Later, the **PRBUFF** routine prints out the characters in **BUFFER**.

Routine

```

C000          ZP      =   $FB
C000          F1      =   $FD
C000          F2      =   $FE
C000          CHROUT  =   $FFD2
C000 A9 00      MAIN  LDA   #0
C002 85 FB      STA   ZP
C004 A9 08      LDA   #8
C006 85 FC      STA   ZP+1      ; set up a pointer to $0800 in ZP
                                   ;
C008 A9 0A      LDA   #10      ; ten lines
C00A 8D 9D C0   STA   COUNTER  ; stash it in a memory variable
    
```

CI2HEX

```

C00D A6 FB      UTLOOP  LDX  ZP          ; low byte of pointer
C00F A5 FC      LDA  ZP+1      ; high byte
C011 20 4B C0   JSR  CI2HEX     ; convert it
C014 20 6E C0   JSR  PRBUFF    ; print the buffer
C017 20 69 C0   JSR  PRSPC     ; print a space
C01A A0 00      LDY  #0
C01C B1 FB      INLOOP  LDA  (ZP),Y
C01E 20 7C C0   JSR  BYTHEX
C021 A5 FD      LDA  F1
C023 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C026 A5 FE      LDA  F2
C028 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C02B 20 69 C0   JSR  PRSPC
C02E C8        INY
C02F C0 08      CPY  #8
C031 D0 E9      BNE  INLOOP
C033 A9 0D      LDA  #13      ; print RETURN
C035 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C038 A9 08      LDA  #8          ; add 8 to the ZP pointer
C03A 18        CLC          ; always CLC before adding
C03B 65 FB      ADC  ZP          ; add
C03D 85 FB      STA  ZP          ; store it back
C03F A9 00      LDA  #0
C041 65 FC      ADC  ZP+1      ; adding 0 takes care of carry
C043 85 FC      STA  ZP+1      ; store that, too
C045 CE 9D C0   DEC  COUNTER     ; count down
C048 D0 C3      BNE  UTLOOP     ; and branch back
C04A 60        RTS          ; end of the main routine
;

C04B           CI2HEX  =      *
C04B A0 00      LDY  #0
C04D 20 7C C0   JSR  BYTHEX     ; convert .A to hex in F1, F2
C050 20 57 C0   JSR  BUFFIT
C053 8A        TXA
C054 20 7C C0   JSR  BYTHEX
C057 A5 FD      LDA  F1
C059 99 9E C0   STA  BUFFER,Y
C05C C8        INY
C05D A5 FE      LDA  F2
C05F 99 9E C0   STA  BUFFER,Y
C062 C8        INY
C063 A9 00      LDA  #0
C065 99 9E C0   STA  BUFFER,Y
C068 60        RTS
;

C069 A9 20      PRSPC  LDA  #32
C06B 4C D2 FF   JMP  CHROUT     ; print a space
;

C06E A0 00      PRBUFF  LDY  #0
C070 B9 9E C0   PBLOOP  LDA  BUFFER,Y
C073 F0 06      BEQ  OUT
C075 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C078 C8        INY
C079 D0 F5      BNE  PBLOOP
C07B 60        OUT
C07C           BYTHEX  =      *
C07C 08        PHP          ; save the processor status
C07D 48        PHA          ; save .A
C07E 4A        LSR
C07F 4A        LSR
C080 4A        LSR
C081 4A        LSR          ; four shift rights, for the high nybble
C082 20 93 C0   JSR  ADD48     ; add 48 (plus 7, maybe)
C085 85 FD      STA  F1          ; store it

```

```

C087 68          PLA          ; pull .A for the low nybble
C088 48          PHA          ; push one more time
C089 29 0F      AND  #%00001111 ; mask it
C08B 20 93 C0   JSR  ADD48     ; and add 48
C08E 85 FE      STA  F2       ; store it in F2
C090 68          PLA          ; get .A back
C091 28          PLP          ; and .P, too
C092 60          RTS          ;
;
C093 18          ADD48      CLC          ;
C094 69 30      ADC  #48      ; add 48
C096 C9 3A      CMP  #58      ; is it 0-9?
C098 90 02      BCC  NOMORE    ; yes, move ahead
C09A 69 06      ADC  #6       ; else, add 7 (with carry set)
C09C 60          NOMORE     RTS          ;
;
C09D 00          COUNTER .BYTE 0
C09E          BUFFER  = *
C19D          * = *+255      ; a big buffer

```

See also BCD2AX, CAS2IN, CB2ASC, CB2HEX.

CLOSFL

Name

Close a file and restore default devices

Description

This routine closes the logical file whose number is in the accumulator. It also restores the keyboard and screen as the current input and output devices.

CLOSFL can close any external channel (such as disk drive, printer, or modem) as long as the channel number is in **.A**.

Prototype

1. Load **.A** with the logical file number of the external device.
2. JSR to **CLOSE**.
3. JMP to **CLRCHN**.

Explanation

See **PRTOUT** or **PRTSTR** for programs where **CLOSFL** is used to close a printer channel. In the **WRITBF** and **READBF** routines, **CLOSFL** closes a channel to the disk after file writing or reading. No error will occur if you try to close a file which hasn't been opened.

Routine

C000				CLOSE	=	65475
C000				CLRCHN	=	65484

C000	20	C3	FF	CLOSFL	JSR	CLOSE
C003	4C	CC	FF		JMP	CLRCHN

```
;
; CLOSFL closes the logical file in .A and
; restores default devices.
; close file in .A
; clear all channels, restore default devices,
; and RTS
```

See also **OPENPR**, **PRTOUT**, **PRTSTR**, **WRITBF**, **WRITFL**.

Name

Clear the screen with CHR\$(147)

Description

One of three routines in this book that clears the text screen, this one accomplishes the task by printing CHR\$(147), the Commodore ASCII code for clearing the screen.

Prototype

Load .A with 147 and JMP to CHROUT.

Explanation

This simple program clears the text screen and prints a Y in the current cursor color.

Note: This routine is much faster than CLRFIL, but just slightly slower than CLRROM. Unlike CLRROM, though, it has the advantage of relying on a Kernal ROM routine, specifically CHROUT. And like other ROM routines accessed from the Kernal jump table, CHROUT will be called from the same address on all Commodore machines.

Routine

```

C000          CHROUT = 65490
; Clear screen and print Y.
C000 20 09 C0      JSR CLRCHR ; clear the screen
C003 A9 59         LDA #89    ; print Y
C005 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C008 60           RTS

; Clear the screen with CHR$(147).
C009 A9 93 CLRCHR LDA #147   ; print CLEAR SCREEN
C00B 4C D2 FF      JMP CHROUT ; and RTS

```

See also CLRFIL, CLRROM.

CLRFIL

Name

Clear the screen with a fill routine

Description

Yet another routine to clear the text screen, this one works by storing a 32 (the screen code for the space character) into each screen memory location.

Prototype

Using a loop, store spaces in all 1000 text-screen locations.

Explanation

This short program clears the text screen by filling it with spaces, then prints an X.

Note: This routine leaves color memory unchanged. If you wish to fill color memory at the same time the screen is cleared, insert a JSR COLFIL in the code following the fill loop and add COLFIL to the end of the program.

You may notice that the BNE occurs after the STAs in the primary loop, instead of in its more natural position just after a DEY. The STA instruction does not affect any flags; the BNE refers back to the DEY just after the LDY. The four store instructions must store in offsets of 0-249. By performing the STAs before the BNE, we're able to store in the offset of zero.

Routine

```
C000          SCREEN = 1024          ; normal text-screen position
C000          CHROUT = 65490
;
; Clear screen with fill and print X.
C000 20 09 C0          JSR  CLRFIL    ; clear the screen
C003 A9 58            LDA  #88        ; print X
C005 20 D2 EF          JSR  CHROUT
C008 60                RTS
;
; screen code for space
C009 A9 20          CLRFIL LDA  #32
C00B A0 FA          LDY  #250
C00D 88            LOOP  DEY
C00E 99 00 04          STA  SCREEN,Y    ; 1st quarter
C011 99 FA 04          STA  SCREEN+250,Y ; 2nd quarter
C014 99 F4 05          STA  SCREEN+500,Y ; 3rd quarter
C017 99 EE 06          STA  SCREEN+750,Y ; 4th quarter
C01A D0 F1          BNE  LOOP        ; fill all 250 bytes
; Insert JSR COLFIL to fill color RAM as
; well.
C01C 60                RTS
```

See also CLRCHR, CLRROM.

Name

Clear the hi-res screen using a fill method

Description

Anytime you display the high-resolution screen without first clearing it, you're likely to see whatever garbage resides in the underlying memory. To avoid this, clear screen memory with the **CLRHRF** routine, or with **CLRHRS**, before you view it.

The routine shown here relies on a conventional zero-page addressing technique to fill 8192 bytes representing screen memory with zeros. **CLRHRS** achieves the same result, but in slightly less time and with less memory, by using self-modifying code.

With either method, high-resolution color memory remains intact. If you want to fill color memory at the same time, insert a **JSR HRCOLF** into your code where indicated.

Prototype

1. Store the address of the high-resolution screen in a zero-page pointer.
2. Set **.X** to 32 as a counter for the number of pages to fill ($32 * 256 = 8192$).
3. Using indirect indexed addressing, fill each byte within a page with zero (in **.A**).
4. After filling a page, increment the page pointer in zero page.
5. Decrement **.X**. If it's not equal to zero, go to step 3.
6. When **.X = 0**, **RTS** to the main program. (If you want to clear color memory as well, **JSR** to **HRCOLF** just before the **RTS**.)

Explanation

In the example program, we set up a high-resolution screen at location 8192 and clear it by using **CLRHRF**. A keypress returns you to the normal text screen.

On the 64, before locating the bitmap within the current video bank (by default, bank 0), you must save the contents of the VIC-II chip memory control register at 53272 (**VMCSB**). This register contains the present offset address within the current video bank for the character set (low nybble) and the text screen (high nybble).

On the 128, during each **IRQ** interrupt, **VMCSB** takes its value from either **VM1** at 2604 (if you're in text mode) or from **VM2** at 2605 (if you're in bitmap mode). Since **VM1** is never

CLRHRF

altered by the program, you don't need to save it (or VMCSB) here.

Next, bit 3 of VMCSB (VM2 on the 128) is turned on to offset the high-resolution screen by 8K within the current video bank. To place your screen in the first half of the video bank (the offset will be 0), turn off bit 3 by ANDing the contents of the control register with 247.

Once you've located the high-resolution screen, the sub-routine **BITMAP** puts the screen in bitmap mode. The screen is then cleared with **CLRHRF**.

On the 64, returning to the normal text screen is actually a two-step procedure. After bitmap mode has been disabled (again with **BITMAP**), the contents of the VIC-II memory control register are restored so that they point to the character set and text screen that were previously in use. On the 128, because VMCSB takes its value from VM1 in text mode, you need only to disable bitmap mode.

Routine

```
C000          ZP          =    251
C000          GETIN       =    65508
C000          VMCSB      =    53272      ; VIC-II chip memory control register
C000          SCROLY     =    53265      ; scroll/control register—use GRAPHM =
                                       ; 216 on the 128
C000          VM2        =    2605      ; VIC-II chip memory control shadow register
                                       ; (128 only)
                                       ;
C000 AD 18 D0          LDA   VMCSB      ; Locate a hi-res screen at 8192 and clear it.
C003 8D 45 C0          STA   TEMP      ; temporarily save VMCSB (64 only)
                                       ; (64 only)
C006 09 08            ORA   #%00001000 ; Now, offset bitmap by 8K in video bank.
                                       ; replace with AND #%11110111 if hi-res
C008 8D 18 D0          STA   VMCSB      ; screen is in first half of video bank
                                       ; reset register (replace VMCSB with VM2 on
                                       ; the 128)
C00B 20 3A C0          JSR   BITMAP     ; enter bitmap mode
C00E 20 20 C0          JSR   CLRHRF    ; clear the hi-res screen
C011 20 E4 FF WAIT    JSR   GETIN     ; get a keypress
C014 F0 FB            BEQ   WAIT      ; if no keypress, wait
C016 20 3A C0          JSR   BITMAP     ; turn off bitmap mode
                                       ;
                                       ; Reset pointer to character set.
C019 AD 45 C0          LDA   TEMP      ; (64 only)
C01C 8D 18 D0          STA   VMCSB      ; (64 only)
C01F 60              RTS
                                       ;
C020 AD 43 C0 CLRHRF  LDA   HRSCRN    ; Clear the hi-res screen with a fill method.
                                       ; set up zero-page pointers to the hi-res
C023 85 FB            STA   ZP        ; screen
C025 AD 44 C0          LDA   HRSCRN+1
C028 85 FC            STA   ZP+1
                                       ; Fill 32 pages (8K) with zeros.
C02A A9 00            LDA   #0
C02C A8              TAY
```

```

C02D A2 20          LDX #32          ; 32 pages
C02F 91 FB        LOOP STA (ZP),Y      ; fill a block of 256 bytes with zero
C031 C8           INY
C032 D0 FB        BNE LOOP
C034 E6 FC        INC ZP+1      ; page filled, so increase page pointer
C036 CA           DEX
C037 D0 F6        BNE LOOP      ; to fill all pages
;
; JSR HRCOLF; Insert here to clear color
; memory as well.
;
C039 60           RTS
;
; Enable/disable bitmap mode.
C03A AD 11 D0    BITMAP LDA SCROLLY      ; substitute GRAPHM for SCROLLY for the
; 128
C03D 49 20          EOR #%00100000    ; flip bit 5
C03F 8D 11 D0    STA SCROLLY      ; reset register (again, use GRAPHM instead
; of SCROLLY for the 128)
C042 60           RTS
;
; locate hi-res screen
C043 00 20        HRSCRN .WORD 8192
C045 00          TEMP  .BYTE 0      ; temporary storage for VMCSB configuration

```

See also BITMAP, CLRHRF, HRCOLF, HRPOLR, HRSETP, PAINT.

CLRHR

Name

Clear a hi-res screen using self-modifying code

Description

This is probably the quickest way to clear the 8000 bytes of a hi-res screen.

Prototype

1. Store the address of the high-resolution screen in the dummy address (initially \$FFFF) at \$C012.
2. Set .X to 32, for the number of pages to fill (32 * 256 = 8192).
3. Fill each byte within a page with zero (in .A) using absolute addressing offset by .Y.
4. After filling a page, increment the high-byte page pointer in the absolute address.
5. Decrement .X. If it's not equal to zero, go to step 3.
6. When .X = 0, RTS to the main program. (If you also want to clear color memory, JSR to HRCOLF just prior to returning.)

Explanation

It might look confusing when you first read through the program, but the idea is reasonably simple. The line at \$C011 is the key. It says STA \$FFFF,Y, but that instruction never really happens. The first part of the program takes the address of the hi-res screen (8192, in this example) and stores it low byte first, just after the STA instruction.

The routine works by modifying itself, changing the address after the STA a total of 32 times.

Routine

```
C000 AD 1F C0 CLRHR LDA HRSCRN+1 ; store hi-res screen location in dummy
; location—$FFFF
C003 8D 13 C0 STA LOOP+2
C006 AD 1E C0 LDA HRSCRN
C009 8D 12 C0 STA LOOP+1
; Fill 32 pages (8K) with zeros.
C00C A9 00 LDA #0
C00E A8 TAY
C00F A2 20 LDX #32 ; 32 pages
C011 99 FF FF LOOP STA $FFFF,Y ; fill a block of 256 bytes with zeros
C014 C8 INY
C015 D0 FA BNE LOOP
```

```
C017 EE 13 C0      INC LOOP+2      ; page filled, so increase high byte of
                   ; pointer
C01A CA            DEX
C01B D0 F4        BNE LOOP      ; to fill all pages
                   ; Insert JSR HRCOLF here to clear color
                   ; memory as well.
C01D 60            RTS
C01E 00 20        HRSCRN      .WORD 8192      ; hi-res screen
```

See also CLRFIL, CLRROM.

CLRROM

Name

Clear the screen with a ROM routine

Description

This is one of three routines in this book that is used for clearing the text screen. Each has advantages. This particular routine uses a Kernal ROM routine (labeled CLRHOM) located on the 64 at 58692. An equivalent routine is at 49474 on the 128.

Prototype

JMP to CLRHOM.

Explanation

This short program clears the text screen and prints a Z. The letter will print in the current cursor color.

Note: **CLRROM** is much faster than **CLRFIL** and slightly faster than **CLRCHR**. But, again, it relies on a ROM routine that may change locations on a later version of the 64 or 128.

Routine

```
C000          CLRHOM  =   58692          ; CLRHOM = 49474 on the 128
C000          CHROUT  =   65490
;
; Clear the screen and print Z.
C000 20 09 C0          JSR   CLRROM      ; clear the screen
C003 A9 5A             LDA   #90        ; print Z
C005 20 D2 FF          JSR   CHROUT
C008 60               RTS
;
; Clear the screen with a Kernal ROM
; routine.
C009 4C 44 E5 CLRROM  JMP   CLRHOM      ; and RTS
```

See also CLRCHR, CLRFIL.

Name

Print the value of a two-byte integer

Description

BASIC offers a built-in ROM routine for printing the value of a two-byte integer—LIMPRT. We've shown how to use this routine in the discussion of **NUMOUT**, elsewhere in this book.

There will be times, however, when you'll find yourself working in a programming environment where it's inconvenient to access LIMPRT—as when you're in RAM under BASIC ROM on the 64, or in a bank that doesn't contain BASIC on the 128. At other times, you may simply want to write a generic program that runs on both the 128 and the 64.

In either case, a custom routine like **CNUMOT** will give you this option.

Prototype

1. Prior to entering the routine, set up a table of two-byte subtrahends for each digit's place—1, 10, 100, 1000, and 10,000.
2. Enter this routine with the two-byte number to print in *.X* (low byte) and *.A* (high byte).
3. Save the low and high bytes of the integer in zero page locations.
4. Count the number of times the subtrahend representing the largest digit's place (10,000) can be subtracted from the value (in *.X* and *.A*) before a number less than zero results.
5. Print this number to the screen.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 for the remaining digit places—1000, 100, 10, and 1.

Explanation

With **CNUMOT**, we print the two-byte starting address of BASIC text.

Here, **CNUMOT** works much like our conversion routine for a one-byte integer (see **BYTASC**). Again, a subtraction method is used, only this time it handles a second byte as well. And instead of passing a single byte to the routine in *.A* as before, the low byte of the two-byte integer is sent to the routine in *.X* and the high byte in *.A*.

Although it takes some time to set up the routine, the basic idea is simple. First, subtract 10,000. Subtract it again and again until a negative number results. Now you know how many 10,000s fit into the number. Next, subtract 1000 as

many times as necessary. The third step is to subtract 100, then 10, then 1. At each stage, the program keeps track of how many times a given value has been subtracted and prints out the total.

In this case, the integer occupying a two-byte address must lie in a range from 0 through 65535. The number can have as many as five digits.

Begin with the highest digit for the number—here, the 10,000's place. We repeatedly subtract 10,000—the first entry in the table of two-byte subtrahends, or TB2SUB—from the two-byte number until a negative result occurs. For each subtraction that yields a positive value (≥ 0), increment the place-holder counter—kept here in the Y register.

When subtraction finally produces a negative value, the two-byte number itself is restored to the value it had before this last subtraction, and the ASCII equivalent of the digit in .Y printed within DONE.

This entire process is repeated for the next four digits (the 1000's place, the 100's place, the 10's place, and the 1's place).

A flag (ZEROFL) within the printing routine prevents leading zeros from being displayed. Only when this flag contains a nonzero value will the digit zero be printed. If ZEROFL is still zero after all five digits have been evaluated, we simply print a zero.

Note: There is one important difference between this routine and **BYTASC** when it comes to understanding the two. Here, each digit is printed after it has been converted, whereas with **BYTASC**, we wait to print the entire number after all digits have been converted.

Routine

```

C000      CHROUT = 65490
C000      TXTTAB = 43          ; TXTTAB = 45 on the 128—start-of-BASIC
                                ; pointer
C000      ZP      = 251
                                ;
                                ; Print the start of BASIC.
C000 A9 93      CLRCHR LDA #147          ; clear the screen
C002 20 D2 FF    JSR  CHROUT
                                ;
                                ; Print the message.
C005 A0 00      LDY #0                ; print "BASIC STARTS AT "
C007 B9 71 C0   LOC  LDA STRING,Y
C00A F0 07      BEQ POINT              ; if zero byte, then don't print it
C00C 20 D2 FF    JSR  CHROUT
C00F C8         INY                    ; next character
C010 4C 07 C0   JMP  LOOP              ; and continue
C013 A6 2B      POINT LDX TXTTAB       ; load low- and high-byte start-of-BASIC
                                ; pointers
C015 A5 2C      LDA  TXTTAB+1
    
```

C017	4C	1A	C0		JMP	CNUMOT		; convert two-byte integer to ASCII, print it, ; and RTS ; ;
C01A	86	FB		CNUMOT	STX	ZP		; CNUMOT converts two-byte integer in ; X (low) and .A (high byte) to ASCII and ; prints it. ; save low and high byte of integer to zero ; page
C01C	85	FC			STA	ZP+1		
C01E	A9	00			LDA	#0		; initialize ZEROFL
C020	8D	82	C0		STA	ZEROFL		
C023	A2	08			LDX	#8		; index to TB2SUB table, initially points to ; low byte of 10000
C025	A0	FF		INITCT	LDY	#255		; initialize counter for each digit's place
C027	C8			SUBTLP	INY			; begin subtraction loop, counter starts with ; zero
C028	A5	FB			LDA	ZP		
C02A	48				PHA			; save the low byte of number
C02B	38				SEC			
C02C	FD	67	C0		SBC	TB2SUB,X		; subtract low byte of subtrahend from low ; byte of number
C02F	85	FB			STA	ZP		; store result in zero page
C031	A5	FC			LDA	ZP+1		; now do the same with high byte
C033	48				PHA			; save the high byte of the number
C034	FD	68	C0		SBC	TB2SUB+1,X		; subtract high byte of subtrahend from ; high byte of number
C037	85	FC			STA	ZP+1		; and store the result
C039	90	05			BCC	DONE		; subtraction gave number less than zero, ; so we're done
C03B	68				PLA			; restore the stack
C03C	68				PLA			
C03D	4C	27	C0		JMP	SUBTLP		; and continue subtraction ; Restore high and low bytes to values ; before we dropped below zero.
C040	68			DONE	PLA			; pull high byte
C041	85	FC			STA	ZP+1		; and store it
C043	68				PLA			; pull low byte of number
C044	85	FB			STA	ZP		; and store it also
C046	98				TYA			; put digit's place counter into .A
C047	AC	82	C0		LDY	ZEROFL		; determine whether a nonzero digit has ; occurred
C04A	D0	07			BNE	CNVERT		; branch if a nonzero digit has been printed
C04C	C9	00			CMP	#0		; check for zero
C04E	F0	08			BEQ	ZEROHI		; don't print a zero if no nonzero digits ; have been printed
C050	8D	82	C0		STA	ZEROFL		; change the flag to a nonzero value
C053	09	30		CNVERT	ORA	#48		; convert digit's place counter to ASCII
C055	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHRROUT		; and print it
C058	CA			ZEROHI	DEX			; decrement twice for each word in ; subtrahend table
C059	CA				DEX			
C05A	10	C9			BPL	INITCT		; for the next place
C05C	AD	82	C0		LDA	ZEROFL		; determine if the number is 0000
C05F	D0	05			BNE	EXIT		; if not, then return
C061	A9	30			LDA	#48		; print a zero
C063	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHRROUT		
C066	60			EXIT	RTS			; we're finished ;
C067	01	00	0A	TB2SUB	.WORD	1,10,100,1000,10000		; two-byte table of subtrahends
C071	42	41	53	STRING	.ASC	"BASIC STARTS AT "		
C081	00				.BYTE	0		
C082	00			ZEROFL	.BYTE	0		; flag for first nonzero digit

See also BYTASC, FACPRD, FACPRT, NUMOUT.

CNVBFP

Name

Convert a two-byte value to a floating-point number, using a ROM routine

Description

If you find occasion to use the built-in floating-point routines for trigonometric and other functions, this ROM routine is helpful. It converts a two-byte integer to its floating-point equivalent.

Prototype

1. JSR to GIVAYF with the low byte in .Y and the high byte in .A.
2. The result is returned in the floating-point accumulator.

Explanation

The GIVAYF routine is located at \$8391 on the 64; \$AF03 on the 128. (Be sure your program is operating with bank 15 in place before you call this routine on the 128.) The floating-point accumulator comprises locations \$61-\$66 on the 64; \$63-\$68 on the 128.

Routine

```
C000          GIVAYF  =    $B391          ; GIVAYF = $AF03 on the 128—ROM
                                           ; routine that converts into FP
                                           ;
C000 A9 32      MAIN   LDA    #50          ; the number 50 will be converted
C002 20 06 C0    JSR    CNVBFP          ; convert it
C005 60
                                           ;
C006 A8          CNVBFP TAY           ; the low byte goes into .Y
C007 A9 00      LDA    #0              ; the high byte into .A
C009 20 91 B3    JSR    GIVAYF        ; the result is stored into FP accumulator at
                                           ; $61-$66 ($63-$68 on the 128)
C00C 60          RTS
```

See also B2SNIN, B2UNIN, BCD2BY, CB2BCD, CFP2I, CI2FP.

Name

Character conversion using a lookup table

Description

Most of the routines in this book that convert one character code to another (for instance, from Commodore ASCII to screen codes) rely on the fact that ranges of characters frequently possess similar bit patterns. In these routines, you determine what range the character is in, usually by comparison with the low and high limits of the range. Based on the result, certain bitwise manipulations are carried out to complete the conversion.

This method works on most occasions. However, if you're faced with a situation in which you have to completely rearrange the order of the characters, and no ostensible bit patterns exist, you'll have to take another approach.

The **CNVERT** routine addresses that problem. At the same time, it offers a method of character conversion that is much faster than the others. And speed may be a requirement of your conversion routine, especially if the routine is incorporated into a terminal program where timing can be critical.

CNVERT itself is a very simple routine. It accepts an input character from the accumulator and, based on its number, returns the equivalent code from a lookup table at the end of your program. A one-to-one correspondence exists between the incoming and outgoing values. If the accumulator contains a 78 coming into the **CNVERT** routine, the seventy-eighth character value in the table is returned in **.A**.

The lookup table must be created beforehand. It can be built by the program using a conversion routine (as is done below) if the table follows a discernible pattern. Otherwise, it can be set up as a list of **.BYTE** statements.

Prototype

1. Transfer the incoming character value in **.A** to **.Y**.
2. Load the corresponding character value from the table as indexed by **.Y** and return.

Explanation

The example program first prepares a table of equivalent screen codes for all incoming Commodore ASCII characters in the routine **TABPRE**. This table (simply called **TABLE** here) is prepared by putting each Commodore ASCII value sequen-

CONVERT

tially through the conversion routine **CASSCR** and storing the value returned into the table. Since 256 characters are to be converted, the table itself is 256 bytes long. It's conveniently placed outside the working code at the end of the program.

After the lookup table has been created, the program accepts character values entered from the keyboard. Each character you type in is printed at the beginning of the screen, converted with **CONVERT** to the equivalent screen code, and **POKE**d to the screen, working back from the end of screen line 3. This continues until you type **RETURN**.

Routine

C000		CHROUT	=	65490	
C000		GETIN	=	65508	
C000		ZP	=	251	
C000		SCREEN	=	1024	; start of text screen
C000		COLRAM	=	55296	; start of color RAM
C000		BGCOLD	=	53281	; screen background color
C000		COLOR	=	646	; COLOR = 241 on the 128
C000		BLACK	=	0	
C000		MDGRAY	=	12	
C000		PURPLE	=	4	
					; Input Commodore ASCII characters.
					; Convert to screen codes using a table
					; and POKE resulting codes to the screen.
					; Quit on RETURN.
C000		MAIN	=	*	
C000	A9 93	CLRCHR	LDA	#147	; clear the screen
C002	20 D2 FF		JSR	CHROUT	
C005	A9 0C	BCKCOL	LDA	#MDGRAY	; set screen background color to medium gray
C007	8D 21 D0		STA	BGCOLD	
C00A	A9 04	TXTCOL	LDA	#PURPLE	; set text color to purple
C00C	8D 86 02		STA	COLOR	
C00F	20 36 C0		JSR	TABPRE	; prepare conversion table
C012	A2 78		LDX	#120	; as an offset for POKEing screen codes
C014	CA	PRTLOP			; position screen pointer for next character
C015	8E 8B C0		STX	TEMPX	; save .X since GETIN corrupts it
C018	20 E4 FF	WAIT	JSR	GETIN	; get a character to convert
C01B	F0 FB		BEQ	WAIT	; if no character, wait
C01D	20 D2 FF		JSR	CHROUT	; print Commodore ASCII character at start of screen
					; is it RETURN?
C020	C9 0D		CMF	#13	
C022	F0 11		BEQ	FINISH	; yes, so leave
C024	20 4D C0		JSR	CONVERT	; use table to determine corresponding screen code
					; restore .X
C027	AE 8B C0		LDX	TEMPX	
C02A	9D 00 04		STA	SCREEN,X	; store screen code at end of screen line 3 and work back
					; set foreground color of character to black (for early 64s)
C02D	A9 00		LDA	#BLACK	
C02F	9D 00 D8		STA	COLRAM,X	
C032	4C 14 C0		JMP	PRTLOP	; always continue printing
C035	60	FINISH	RTS		
					; TABPRE converts entire character set from Commodore ASCII to screen codes
					; as an index
C036	A0 00	TABPRE	LDY	#0	

```

C038 8C 8C C0          STY  TEMPY      ; in case the conversion routine corrupts .Y.
C03B AD 8C C0 TABLOP  LDA  TEMPY      ; counter for character number
C03E 20 52 C0          JSR  CASSCR     ; convert it to a screen code
C041 AC 8C C0          LDY  TEMPY      ; restore .Y
C044 99 8D C0          STA  TABLE,Y   ; store converted character to a screen code
                                ; table
C047 EE 8C C0          INC  TEMPY      ; to convert next Commodore ASCII character
C04A D0 EF             BNE  TABLOP     ; if we haven't done the entire set
C04C 60                RTS                    ; return to MAIN
                                ;
                                ; Convert a Commodore ASCII value using
                                ; the created lookup table.
                                ; character initially is in .A
C04D A8                CNVERT TAY              ; look up corresponding screen code
C04E B9 8D C0          LDA  TABLE,Y         ; return to MAIN
C051 60                RTS                    ;
                                ;
                                ; Convert Commodore ASCII in .A to screen
                                ; code in .A.
                                ; Upon returning, carry is clear.
                                ; If no corresponding screen code exists, carry
                                ; is set to indicate error and .A is the same.
                                ; is it pi?
C052 C9 FF            CASSCR CMP  #255      ; if not, check for nonequivalent codes
C054 D0 04            BNE  NEQUIV           ; 255 becomes 126
C056 A9 7E            LDA  #126
C058 18                CLC
C059 60                RTS                    ; and we exit
C05A 8D 8A C0 NEQUIV STA  TEMPA           ; preserve Commodore ASCII value for later
                                ; checks
C05D 29 60            AND  #%01100000     ; check for nonequivalent codes (0-31 and
                                ; 128-159)
C05F D0 05            BNE  UPPLOW          ; if no, check for upper/lower half of
                                ; character set
C061 AD 8A C0 ERROR  LDA  TEMPA           ; otherwise, no equivalent code
                                ; Restore .A
                                ; and indicate error.
C064 38                SEC
C065 60                RTS
C066 AD 8A C0 UPPLOW LDA  TEMPA           ; restore .A
C069 30 06            BMI  REMAIN
C06B 29 60            AND  #%01100000     ; in lower half
                                ; First check whether in range 96-127.
                                ; bit 5 and 6 are set if in 96-127
C06D C9 60            CMP  #%01100000
C06F F0 12            BEQ  TOPLOW          ; if so, convert
                                ;
                                ; Otherwise, handle remainder (32-63, 64-95,
                                ; 160-191, 192-223, 224-254).
                                ; Shift bit 7 to 6 of TEMPA (containing the
                                ; character) and set bit 7 to 0.
C071 0E 8A C0 REMAIN ASL  TEMPA           ; bit 7 of TEMPA into carry
C074 2A                ROL                ; carry into bit 0 of .A
C075 2E 8A C0          ROL  TEMPA           ; bit 6 of original TEMPA goes into carry
C078 6A                ROR                ; bit 0 of .A back into carry
C079 6E 8A C0          ROR  TEMPA           ; carry into bit 7
C07C 4E 8A C0          LSR  TEMPA           ; move 7 to 6 while setting 7 to 0

```

CNVERT

```
C07F AD 8A C0          LDA  TEMPA          ; restore .A
C082 60              RTS              ; and return (the LSR cleared the carry flag)
C083 AD 8A C0 TOPLOW LDA  TEMPA          ; convert range 96-127
C086 29 5F          AND  #%01011111
C088 18              CLC              ; and return with an equivalent code
C089 60              RTS
C08A 00              TEMPA .BYTE0        ; for temporary .A storage
C08B 00              TEMPX .BYTE0        ; for temporary .X storage
C08C 00              TEMPY .BYTE0        ; for temporary .Y storage
C08D              TABLE = *          ; screen code table
C18D              * = *+256
```

See also CASSCR, CASTAS, SRCAS, TASCAS, MIXLOW, MIXUPP, SWITCH.

Name

Cold start

Description

When you cold start the 64 or 128, the power-on reset routine causes the computer to go through certain initialization processes, just as when you first turn it on. On the 128, the MMU configuration registers are restored to their default settings, placing you in bank 15.

On both machines, the system ROMs are enabled (thus, you're returned to the regular character set if redefined characters are being used). If an autostart cartridge is in place on the 64, the cartridge cold-start vector at 32768 is executed. Otherwise, a RAM test is performed on both computers, and the 16 page-3 RAM vectors are restored. These include the interrupt vectors as well as a number of important Kernal I/O vectors. The computer also initializes the VIC-II chip (thereby restoring the default screen) and exits into the main BASIC loop, clearing the screen and printing the power-on message about BASIC and the number of bytes available.

In the process, the pointers to the BASIC program text are set to their default values. In effect, a BASIC NEW has been performed.

As you can see, then, performing a cold start has a dramatic effect on the computer. But, it's also ideal if you want to return the computer to its default condition when you exit your ML program.

Prototype

Jump to the power-on reset routine.

Explanation

The example program causes a cold start when the left-arrow key (in the upper left corner of the keyboard) is pressed.

COLDST itself is simple. It jumps to the cold-start routine in your computer. On the 64, this routine starts at 64738; on the 128, it's located at 65341.

COLDST

Routine

```
C000          GETIN      =    65508
C000          RESET     =    64738          ; RESET = 65341 on the 128
;
; Perform a machine cold start with
; left-arrow
; key.
C000 20 E4 FF LOOP      JSR   GETIN
C003 F0 FB              BEQ   LOOP
C005 C9 5F              CMP   #95
C007 D0 F7              BNE   LOOP
C009 4C 0C C0          JMP   COLDST
;
C00C 4C E2 FC COLDST  JMP   RESET
; COLDST resets the computer.
; cold start the computer
```

See also WARMST.

Name

Fill text screen color memory

Description

If you print characters to the screen, they will appear in the current cursor color. But if you store them to screen memory, characters will appear in the color currently in the corresponding color RAM position. With COLFIL, you can unify the overall text screen color by filling color RAM with one of the 16 colors.

The table gives the color values available on the 64 and 128 (40-column screen) and the colors they represent.

Color Values			
Color Number	Color	Color Number	Color
0	Black	8	Orange
1	White	9	Brown
2	Red	10	Light red
3	Cyan	11	Dark gray
4	Purple	12	Medium gray
5	Green	13	Light green
6	Blue	14	Light blue
7	Yellow	15	Light gray

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the designated color value in .A.
2. Within a loop, fill all 1000 bytes of color RAM.

Explanation

The example program fills text screen color memory with purple, assigned as COLVAL.

Note: Another method of filling color memory, which requires less code, may be useful to you, depending on the version of ROM in your 64. Clearing the screen with CHR\$(147) (see CLRCHR and CLRROM) affects screen color memory differently on different 64s. The earliest version of ROM (version 1) always fills color memory with white when the screen is cleared. With version 2, color memory is filled with the background color of the screen prior to the clear. So, to fill color memory with a particular color, you would simply store

your color value in the background color register at 53281 and clear the screen by printing CHR\$(147). Then you would change the background to the color you prefer.

The most recent version of 64 ROM (version 3), and also 128 ROM, causes color memory to fill with the current cursor color when the screen is cleared. In this case, to fill color memory with a particular color, you would store the appropriate color value in the foreground text color register at 646 (241 on the 128) and clear the screen as before.

Routine

```

C000          COLRAM = 55296          ; text screen color RAM location
;
; Fill color RAM with purple.
C000 AD 18 C0          LDA COLVAL      ; get a color
C003 4C 06 C0          JMP COLFIL     ; fill color RAM and RTS
;
; Fill text screen color RAM with color value
; in .A.
C006 A0 FA          COLFIL LDY #250
C008 88          LOOP DEY
C009 99 00 D8          STA COLRAM,Y ; 1st quarter
C00C 99 FA D8          STA COLRAM+250,Y ; 2nd quarter
C00F 99 F4 D9          STA COLRAM+500,Y ; 3rd quarter
C012 99 EE DA          STA COLRAM+750,Y ; 4th quarter
C015 D0 F1          BNE LOOP ; all 250 bytes?
C017 60          RTS
;
C018 04          COLVAL .BYTE 4 ; color purple

```

See also BCKCOL, BORCOL, TXTCCH, TXTCOL.

Name

Concatenate two files

Description

At times you may want to append the contents of one file to the end of a second file. That's what this routine does. Both of the original files remain unchanged; the new (third) file will contain a combination of the two original files.

Prototype

1. Open the disk command channel (Kernal SETLFS, SETNAM, OPEN).
2. Send the copy command as part of the SETNAM routine.
3. Close the command channel.

Explanation

This routine is basically the same as the COPYFL routine; however, instead of copying one file to another, you copy two files into a new file.

The filenames in the example are ABC and DEF, which are contained in the string that starts at \$C01E. Note that they're separated by commas. What happens is that ABC is copied to a new file, followed by DEF. The result is a new, concatenated file called NEWFILE on disk.

Note: CONCAT will combine two sequential (SEQ) files just fine. If you try to concatenate two program (PRG) files, and then load the resulting program, only the first program will list. At the end of a program in memory are three zeros. When the LIST command finds the zeros, it stops. The second program is there, but it's just beyond the zeros and can't be accessed unless you go in and remove the final two zeros (and move the second part of the program down by two bytes).

Routine

```

C000          SETLFS  =   $FFBA
C000          SETNAM =   $FFBD
C000          OPEN   =   $FFC0
C000          CLOSE  =   $FFC3
C000          CLRCHN =   $FFC4

C000 A9 01      CONCAT LDA #1          ; logical file (1)
C002 A2 08          LDY #8            ; disk drive is device 8
C004 A0 0F          LDY #15           ; command channel 15
C006 20 BA FF      JSR SETLFS         ; prepare to open it
C009 A9 17          LDA #BUFLEN       ; length of buffer
C00B A2 1E          LDY #<BUFFER     ; X and Y hold the

```

CONCAT

```
C00D A0 C0          LDY #>BUFFER      ; address of the buffer
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR SETNAM        ; set name
C012 20 C0 FF      JSR OPEN          ; open it
C015 A9 01         LDA #1              ; and immediately
C017 20 C3 FF      JSR CLOSE         ; close the command channel
C01A 20 CC FF      JSR CLRCHN        ; clear the channels
C01D 60            RTS              ; all done
;
; Data area
C01E 43 30 3A BUFFER .ASC "C0:NEWFILE=0:ABC,0:DEF"
; substitute your own filenames
C034 0D            .BYTE 13
C035              BUFLN = * - BUFFER ; RETURN character
```

See also COPYFL, FORMAT, INITLZ, RENAME, SCRTCH, VALIDT.

Name

Copy a file to the same disk

Description

The DOS Copy command is really intended for making backups with a dual drive, but Commodore hasn't manufactured a dual drive for several years. Thus, the copy command is useful only for copying a file (under a different name) to the disk it already occupies.

Prototype

1. Open channel 15 (Kernal routines SETLFS, SETNAM, OPEN).
2. As part of the name, include the copy command.
3. Close the command channel.

Explanation

The key to this routine is the string at the end of the program, "C0:NEWFILE=0:OLDFILE", which tells the disk drive to copy the program OLDFILE on drive 0 to the file named NEWFILE on the same drive.

The SETLFS routine sets up logical file 1, drive 8, channel 15. Then SETNAM sets the length and address of the command and we OPEN. Then, the job finished, we close the channel.

In actual practice, you may want to set up a separate buffer for the copy command and write different parameters to the data area. After all, it's fairly rare that you'll always be copying files called OLDFILE to a new name called NEWFILE.

Note: If you own additional disk drives, you may want to change the drive number at \$C002-\$C003 to 9, 10, or 11. Also, if you own a dual drive, you may change one or both of the zeros in the ASCII string to ones.

Routine

C000		SETLFS	=	\$FFBA	
C000		SETNAM	=	\$FFBD	
C000		OPEN	=	\$FFC0	
C000		CLOSE	=	\$FFC3	
C000		CLRCHN	=	\$FFCC	
					;
C000	A9 01	COPYFL	LDA	#1	; logical file (1)
C002	A2 08		LDX	#8	; disk drive is device 8
C004	A0 0F		LDY	#15	; command channel 15
C006	20 BA FF		JSR	SETLFS	; prepare to open it
C009	A9 15		LDA	#BUFLEN	; length of buffer
C00B	A2 1E		LDX	#<BUFFER	; X and Y hold the
C00D	A0 C0		LDY	#>BUFFER	; address of the buffer

COPYFL

```
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR  SETNAM      ; set name
C012 20 C0 FF      JSR  OPEN        ; open it
C015 A9 01         LDA  #1          ; and immediately
C017 20 C3 FF      JSR  CLOSE       ; close the command channel
C01A 20 CC FF      JSR  CLRCHN      ; clear the channels
C01D 60           RTS          ; all done
                                ; Data area
C01E 43 30 3A BUFFER .ASC  "C0:NEWFILE=0:OLDFILE"
                                ; substitute your own filenames
C032 0D           .BYTE 13      ; RETURN character
C033           BUFLN = * - BUFFER
```

See also CONCAT, FORMAT, INITLZ, RENAME, SCRATCH, VALIDT.

Name

Custom characters for the 80-column screen

Description

Using the routine that writes to the 128's 80-column chip, **CUST80** redefines one character. This routine can easily be expanded to create an entirely new character set.

Prototype

1. Set up registers 18 and 19 of the VDC chip to point to the address of the letter *A* (uppercase/graphics mode).
2. Send eight bytes to register 31 to create the new character.

Explanation

The key to accessing the 80-column VDC chip is writing to locations \$D600 and \$D601, the gateway bytes (see **RE80CO** and **WR80CO** for more about the gateway bytes). The **STRVDC** routine at \$0C26 below handles this task. First, the VDC register to be **POKEd** is stored in \$D600. Next, we need to wait for bit 7 of \$D600 to turn on. At that point, \$D601 can be **PEEKed** or **POKEd**.

The VDC's uppercase/graphics character set starts at location \$2000 within the VDC's private 16K of memory. The shape for the letter *A* is found at \$2010. So, to change that shape, the routine must set up the address \$2010 in registers 18 and 19. Note that, unlike most other addresses in the 128, in this case the high byte is stored ahead of the low byte. (This could be called a quirk of the VDC.) **STRVDC** is called twice—once to store a \$20 into register 18, and once to store a \$10 into 19.

When the **POKE** address has been established, the values to be sent there are stored in VDC register 31. The 80-column chip automatically increments the address, so it's not necessary to keep writing to registers 18 and 19. The character shape in the source code is stored in binary form, so the actual appearance can be seen. The letter *A* is replaced by a small *z* inside a box.

The character sets are stored in a rather unusual fashion. The first eight bytes (\$2000–\$2007) are the @ character. The next eight bytes are unused. The next eight (\$2010–\$2017) are

CUST80 (128 only)

the letter *A*, followed by eight more unused bytes. This pattern continues. If you're planning to store several consecutive custom characters, remember to skip eight bytes between shapes.

Note: Both character sets can be displayed at the same time. Attribute memory determines which set is used. (See **VDCCOL** for more information about attribute memory.) The second half of each character set contains the reversed versions of the first 128 characters. These characters are what you see when you turn reverse mode on. Now, attribute memory can be changed to display a normal or a reverse character (again, see **VDCCOL**), which means that the reverse character shapes in the character set are redundant. It is actually possible to have four character sets in memory at the same time, a total of 512 characters. To reverse any of them, write to attribute memory (which gives you 512 more, reversed characters).

Routine

```

0C00          VDCADR  =   $D600
0C00          VDCDAT  =   $D601
0C00          VRMLO   =    19
0C00          VRMHI   =    18          ; note the high byte is first, not second
0C00          VRDAT   =    31
0C00          MEM4A   =   $2010          ; (internal memory for the VDC)
;
0C00  A9 20      CUST80  LDA  #>MEM4A  ; high byte of character memory
0C02  A2 12      LDX  #VRMHI  ; register 18
0C04  20 26 0C   JSR  STRVDC  ; set up the register
0C07  A9 10      LDA  #<MEM4A  ; low byte
0C09  A2 13      LDX  #VRMLO  ; register 19
0C0B  20 26 0C   JSR  STRVDC  ; and store the value
;
0C0E  A0 00      LDY  #0
0C10  B9 1E 0C   LOOP   LDA  CHAR,Y
0C13  A2 1F      LDX  #VRDAT  ; register 31
0C15  20 26 0C   JSR  STRVDC  ; store it
0C18  C8        INY          ; we have to move forward
0C19  C0 08      CPY  #8
0C1B  D0 F3      BNE  LOOP
0C1D  60        RTS          ; done
;
0C1E          CHAR    =    *
0C1E  FF          .BYTE %11111111
0C1F  81          .BYTE %10000001
0C20  B5          .BYTE %10110101
0C21  89          .BYTE %10001001
0C22  91          .BYTE %10010001
0C23  AD          .BYTE %10101101
0C24  81          .BYTE %10000001
0C25  FF          .BYTE %11111111
;

```

0C26				STRVDC	=	*		
0C26	8E	00	D6		STX	VDCADR		; store .X in the address gate
0C29	AE	00	D6	WAITAD	LDX	VDCADR		; and wait
0C2C	10	FB			BPL	WAITAD		; for bit 7 to click
0C2E	8D	01	D6		STA	VDCDAT		; store the data
0C31	60				RTS			; and quit

See also ANIMAT, CHRDEF, RE80CO, VDCCOL, WR80CO.

Name

Create DATA statements from numbers in memory

Description

If you have a short ML program—or sprites, custom characters, or other chunk of memory—you wish to add to a BASIC program, this program will convert the values in memory to a series of DATA statements that are tacked onto the end of the program currently in memory.

Prototype

1. Enter with the starting address in DFIRST and the ending address (plus one) in DLAST.
2. Subtract 2 from the pointer to the end of BASIC text and store this pointer in zero-page.
3. Begin a BASIC line by storing two bogus nonzero line links, which will be fixed later.
4. Next, store a two-byte line number (data from memory location 49152 will be put in line 49152, for example) and the BASIC token that represents the keyword DATA.
5. Loop six times, reading a byte from memory and converting it to ASCII characters.
6. If the loop isn't finished, add a comma between numbers.
7. After each line, store a zero-byte and go back to step 3.
8. When the last byte is converted, call the ROM routine LINKPRG to fix the line links.

Explanation

Before you SYS or JSR to this routine, store the beginning address in DFIRST and the ending address (plus one) in DLAST. For example, to create DATA statements for the range 8192–16191, you would put an 8192 in DFIRST, but a 16192 (one byte past 16191) in DLAST.

BASIC program lines have an overhead of five bytes, four at the beginning and one at the end. The first two are the line link, which points to the line link of the next BASIC line (the final link is two zeros, which mark the end of the program). After the link comes the line number, low-byte first. At the end of each line you'll find a zero byte.

To manufacture DATA statements, we put two nonzero numbers into the line-link area, and then a line number. The example program numbers the lines according to where in memory they're stored. So line 16394 would mark the beginning of the bytes that go into memory at 16394. After the line

link and the line number, an \$83 is stored. This is the BASIC token for DATA.

The values from memory are changed to ASCII in the subroutine called ASCII. The number 153 would be converted to the three characters 1, 5, and 3. It's similar to the BYTASC routine elsewhere in this book. Between the numbers, commas are stored.

Routine

```

C000          ZP      =   $FB
C000          VARTAB =   45      ; replace with TXTTOP = 4624 for the 128
C000          LINKPRG = $A533    ; LINKPRG = $4F4F on 128
;
C000 AD E7 C0 DATAMK LDA DFIRST ; low byte of beginning of memory to
; convert
C003 8D 27 C0          STA POINTR ; into POINTR below
C006 AD E8 C0          LDA DFIRST+1 ; high byte
C009 8D 28 C0          STA POINTR+1 ; also
C00C A5 2D             LDA VARTAB ; get the end-of-BASIC pointer (substitute
; TXTTOP for the 128)

C00E 38              SEC
C00F E9 02           SBC #2      ; subtract 2
C011 85 FB           STA ZP      ; save it in ZP
C013 A5 2E           LDA VARTAB+1 ; high byte (substitute TXTTOP+1 for the
; 128)
C015 E9 00           SBC #0      ; subtract zero, to account for page
; boundaries

C017 85 FC           STA ZP+1
C019 20 7B C0 NEWLIN JSR BOGUS ; set up a false line link
C01C 20 86 C0          JSR LINNUM ; create the line number and data token
C01F A9 06           LDA #6      ; number of data numbers per line
C021 8D EB C0          STA NUMDAT ; save it
C024 A0 00           LDY #0
C026 B9 FF FF LOADR  LDA $FFFF,Y ; this will be fixed
C029                POINTR    =   LOADR+1 ; self-modifying code
C029 20 9C C0          JSR ASCII ; make into ASCII numbers and store in
; memory
C02C EE 27 C0          INC POINTR ; add one to POINTR
C02F D0 03           BNE NOHI
C031 EE 28 C0          INC POINTR+1
C034 AD 28 C0 NOHI    LDA POINTR+1 ; see if we're done
C037 CD EA C0          CMP DLAST+1 ; does it equal the last byte?
C03A F0 11           BEQ LOOKLO ; maybe, look at the low byte
C03C CE EB C0 ANDER   DEC NUMDAT ; count down (six numbers per line)
C03F F0 2F           BEQ ENDLIN ; fix the end of the line
C041 A9 2C           LDA #44 ; else insert a comma
C043 A0 00           LDY #0
C045 91 FB           STA (ZP),Y ; store in memory
C047 20 E0 C0          JSR PLUSZP ; add to ZP
C04A 4C 24 C0          JMP MORELN ; go back for another byte from memory
C04D AD 27 C0 LOOKLO  LDA POINTR ; check the low byte
C050 CD E9 C0          CMP DLAST ; against DLAST
C053 D0 E7           BNE ANDER ; not equal, do more
;
; Clean up the end of the program.

C055 A9 00           LDA #0
C057 A0 02           LDY #2
C059 91 FB CLNLP     STA (ZP),Y ; put three zeros at the end of the program
C05B 88              DEY
C05C 10 FB           BPL CLNLP

```

DATAMK

```

C05E 20 DD C0      JSR  PL2ZP      ; double INC ZP
C061 20 E0 C0      JSR  PLUSZP     ; one more time
C064 A5 FB         LDA  ZP          ; set end-of-program pointer
C066 85 2D         STA  VARTAB     ; (substitute TXTTOP for the 128)
C068 A5 FC         LDA  ZP+1
C06A 85 2E         STA  VARTAB+1 ; (substitute TXTTOP for the 128)
C06C 20 33 A5     JSR  LINKPRG   ; relink the lines
C06F 60           RTS          ; that's it
;
C070 A9 00         ENDLIN LDA  #0          ; put a zero
C072 A8           TAY          ; at the end of the line
C073 91 FB         STA  (ZP),Y   ; store it
C075 20 E0 C0     JSR  PLUSZP     ; move ZP up one
C078 4C 19 C0     JMP  NEWLIN
C07B A9 01         BOGUS  LDA  #1          ; put ones in the line links, to be fixed
;                                     ; later
C07D A8           TAY          ;
C07E 91 FB         BOGLP  STA  (ZP),Y   ;
C080 88           DEY          ;
C081 10 FB         BPL  BOGLP
C083 4C DD C0     JMP  PL2ZP     ; double INC the ZP pointer
;
C086 A0 01         LINNUM LDY  #1          ;
;                                     ; copy the memory address to the line
;                                     ; number
C088 B9 27 C0     LINLP  LDA  POINTR,Y
C08B 91 FB         STA  (ZP),Y
C08D 88           DEY          ;
C08E 10 F8         BPL  LINLP
C090 20 DD C0     JSR  PL2ZP
C093 A0 00         LDY  #0
C095 A9 83         LDA  #$83     ; token for the data command
C097 91 FB         STA  (ZP),Y
C099 4C E0 C0     JMP  PLUSZP
;
C09C AA           ASCII  TAX          ; save in .X
C09D C9 64         CMP  #100     ; is it smaller than 100?
C09F B0 06         BCS  HAGHUN  ; no, do a hundreds place
C0A1 C9 0A         CMP  #10     ; less than 100; is it less than 10?
C0A3 B0 14         BCS  TENS     ; no, so it has a tens place
C0A5 90 23         BCC  ONES     ; it is less than 10; go to ONES
C0A7 A0 31         HAGHUN LDY  #49   ; put an ASCII 1 in .Y
C0A9 20 D1 C0     JSR  MIN100   ; subtract 100
C0AC C9 64         CMP  #100     ; is it still higher than 100?
C0AE 90 04         BCC  STORHN   ; no, continue
C0B0 C8           INY          ; yes
C0B1 20 D1 C0     JSR  MIN100   ; so subtract again
C0B4 AA           STORHN TAX          ; save in .X
C0B5 98           TYA          ; put an ASCII 1 or 2 into .A
C0B6 20 D5 C0     JSR  PUTMEM
C0B9 8A           TENS  TXA          ; get the number back
C0BA A0 30         LDY  #48
C0BC C9 0A         COM10 CMP  #10   ; compare .A to 10
C0BE 90 05         BCC  HAGTEN  ; get ready to leave
C0C0 E9 0A         SBC  #10     ; subtract 10
C0C2 C8           INY          ; .Y increases
C0C3 D0 F7         BNE  COM10   ; branch always
C0C5 AA           HAGTEN TAX          ;
C0C6 98           TYA          ;
C0C7 20 D5 C0     JSR  PUTMEM
;
C0CA 8A           ONES  TXA          ;
C0CB 09 30         ORA  #48

```

```

C0CD 20 D5 C0      JSR  PUTMEM
C0D0 60              RTS
;
C0D1 38              MIN100 SEC
C0D2 E9 64          SBC  #100
C0D4 60              RTS
;
C0D5 A0 00          PUTMEM LDY  #0
C0D7 91 FB          STA  (ZP),Y ; and store it
C0D9 20 E0 C0      JSR  PLUSZP
C0DC 60              RTS
;
C0DD 20 E0 C0      PL2ZP   JSR  PLUSZP
C0E0 E6 FB          PLUSZP INC  ZP ; INC ZP by one
C0E2 D0 02          BNE  FINZP ; if not equal, end
C0E4 E6 FC          INC  ZP+1 ; else, add one to high byte
C0E6 60              FINZP   RTS
;
C0E7 00 C0          DFIRST .WORD$C000
C0E9 0A C0          DLAST  .WORD$C00A
C0EB 00              NUMDAT .BYTE 0

```

See also RENUM1.

DERRCK

Name

Check the disk status and print a message

Description

DERRCK reads the disk drive's error channel and looks for certain common problems. For example, if you try to write to a disk that has a write-protect tab, an error 26 will result. When an error 26 is discovered, **DERRCK** prints a message that says *Please remove write-protect tab*.

Prototype

1. In preparation for **DERRCK**, open the command channel (15,8,15).
2. Within **DERRCK**, first print the message *DISK STATUS:*.
3. Read the error channel (using the Kernal routines **CHKIN** and **CHRIN**) and print the characters received.
4. Convert the error number to a binary coded decimal (BCD) number as it's received.
5. Search through a table of specific errors.
6. If the error number matches a number in the table, print a message that provides more information.

Explanation

The example routine attempts to open a file that doesn't exist on the disk. The **DERRCK** routine then reads the error channel and prints the message *Filename doesn't exist on disk, try again*.

The Kernal routines **SETLFS**, **SETNAM**, and **OPEN** should be called early in the program. **DERRCK** performs a Kernal **CHKIN** to cause input to come from channel 15 instead of the keyboard. The **PRINTS** subroutine is a general string-printing routine. The first thing it prints is the *DISK STATUS:* line. Next, the error channel is read and printed. The error number comes in as two ASCII numbers; error 73 would appear as two characters (\$37 and \$33). The ASCII numbers are combined into one byte (\$73, in this case) to make looking up the error a little easier.

Several error numbers can be ignored (0-20, 50, and 73). Others are fairly common (26, 33, 74, and 62). When one of the four common errors is encountered, a longer message is printed, again via **PRINTS**.

Routine

```

C000          ZP          =      $FB
C000          SETLFS     =      $FFBA
C000          SETNAM    =      $FFBD
C000          OPEN      =      $FFC0
C000          CHKIN     =      $FFC6
C000          CLOSE     =      $FFC3
C000          CHRIN     =      $FFCF
C000          CHROUT    =      $FFD2
C000          READST    =      $FFB7
C000          CLRCHN    =      $FFCC
;
C000 A9 0F          LDA   #15          ; logical file
C002 A8            TAY           ; secondary address (command channel)
C003 A2 08          LDX   #8           ; device number
C005 20 BA FF      JSR   SETLFS       ; get the channel ready
C008 A9 00          LDA   #0           ; no filename
C00A 20 BD FF      JSR   SETNAM      ; set the name
C00D 20 C0 FF      JSR   OPEN        ; and open it
C010 A9 02          LDA   #2           ; logical file
C012 A8            TAY           ; the secondary address
C013 A2 08          LDX   #8           ; a disk file
C015 20 BA FF      JSR   SETLFS       ;
C018 A9 0E          LDA   #LEN        ; the length of the fake filename
C01A A2 AB          LDX   #<FAKE      ;
C01C A0 C0          LDY   #>FAKE      ; address of fake
C01E 20 BD FF      JSR   SETNAM      ; this is not a file
C021 20 C0 FF      JSR   OPEN        ; open it (error now)
C024 20 32 C0      JSR   DERRCK      ; check the status
C027 A9 02          LDA   #2           ;
C029 20 C3 FF      JSR   CLOSE       ; close channel 2
C02C A9 0F          LDA   #15        ;
C02E 20 C3 FF      JSR   CLOSE       ; close channel 15
C031 60            RTS              ; and finish
;
C032 A2 0F          DERRCK LDX   #15          ; logical file 15
C034 20 C6 FF      JSR   CHKIN       ; ready for input
C037 A2 B9          LDX   #<DSTAT     ;
C039 A0 C0          LDY   #>DSTAT     ;
C03B 20 97 C0      JSR   PRINTS      ; print the DSTAT message
C03E 20 CF FF      JSR   CHRIN       ; get the first number
C041 20 D2 FF      JSR   CHROUT      ;
C044 0A            ASL              ;
C045 0A            ASL              ;
C046 0A            ASL              ;
C047 0A            ASL              ; shift it left four times
C048 8D AA C0      STA   ERROR        ; high nybble
C04B 20 CF FF      JSR   CHRIN       ; get the next one
C04E 20 D2 FF      JSR   CHROUT      ;
C051 29 0F          AND   #%00001111 ; mask out the high nybble
C053 0D AA C0      ORA   ERROR        ; add to ERROR
C056 8D AA C0      STA   ERROR        ; and store it
C059 20 CF FF      MORE  JSR   CHRIN       ; get a character from disk
C05C C9 0D          CMP   #13        ; is it a carriage return?
C05E F0 06          BEQ   EXAMIT      ; if so, we're done
C060 20 D2 FF      JSR   CHROUT      ; else print it
C063 4C 59 C0      JMP   MORE
C066 20 D2 FF      EXAMIT JSR   CHROUT      ; print the carriage return
C069 AD AA C0      LDA   ERROR        ; get the error number
C06C C9 21          CMP   #$21        ; is it 0-20?
C06E 90 23          BCC   ALLDONE     ; if so, exit
C070 A0 01          LDY   #<OKNUM     ; check for OK errors
C072 D9 C7 C0      OKLOOP CMP   OK,Y          ; if it matches
C075 F0 1C          BEQ   ALLDONE     ; skip ahead

```


DERRCK

```

C077 88          DEY
C078 10 F8      BPL  OKLOOP      ; loop back
C07A A0 03      LDY  #<NOKNUM    ; the error is not OK
C07C D9 C9 C0   CMP  NOK,Y      ; check NOK table
C07F F0 03      BEQ  MESSAGE    ; found it, so print a message
C081 88          DEY
C082 10 F8      BPL  NOKLOOP    ; loop back for more
;
C084 98          MESSAGE  TYA      ; index to .A
C085 0A          ASL      ; times 2
C086 A8          TAY      ; back in .Y
C087 B9 CD C0   LDA  NTABLE,Y    ; find the low byte
C08A AA          TAX      ; into .X
C08B C8          INY      ; go up 1
C08C B9 CD C0   LDA  NTABLE,Y    ; high byte
C08F A8          TAY      ; into .Y
C090 20 97 C0   JSR  PRINTS      ; print the message
C093 20 CC FF   JSR  CLRCHN      ; clear the channels
C096 60          RTS            ; and the subroutine is done
;
C097 86 FB      PRINTS  STX  ZP      ; low byte in ZP
C099 84 FC      STY  ZP+1        ; high byte, too
C09B A0 00      LDY  #0          ; get ready to print it
C09D B1 FB      PSLOOP  LDA  (ZP),Y ; get a character
C09F 48          PHA          ; push it
C0A0 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT      ; print it
C0A3 C8          INY          ;
C0A4 68          PLA          ; pull it
C0A5 C9 0D      CMP  #13        ; is it a RETURN?
C0A7 D0 F4      BNE  PSLOOP      ; if not, get another character
C0A9 60          RTS            ;
;
C0AA 00          ERROR   .BYTE 00
C0AB 30 3A 4E   FAKE    .ASC "0:NOTAFILENAME"
C0B9          LEN      =      *-FAKE
C0B9 44 49 53   DSTAT   .ASC "DISK STATUS:"
C0C6 0D          .BYTE 13
;
C0C7 50 73      OK      .BYTE $50,$73
C0C9          OKNUM    =      *-OK-1      ; number of OK errors
C0C9 26 33 74   NOK     .BYTE $26,$33,$74,$62
C0CD          NOKNUM   =      *-NOK-1      ; number of not OK errors
C0CD D5 C0 F6   NTABLE  .WORD WRPROT,WILD CD,NREADY,NFOUND
C0D5 50 4C 45   WRPROT .ASC "PLEASE REMOVE WRITE-PROTECT TAB."
C0F5 0D          .BYTE 13
C0F6 4E 4F 20   WILD CD .ASC "NO *S OR ?S ALLOWED IN FILENAME."
C118 0D          .BYTE 13
C119 50 4C 45   NREADY .ASC "PLEASE INSERT DISK OR TURN ON THE DRIVE."
C141 0D          .BYTE 13
C142 46 49 4C   NFOUND .ASC "FILENAME DOESN'T EXIST ON DISK, TRY AGAIN."
C16C 0D          .BYTE 13

```

See also CHK144, RDSTAT.

Name

Read the directory as a stream of bytes

Description

DIRBYT prints the directory on the screen without actually loading the directory file into memory (which is what **DIRPRG** does). Thus, any programs in the BASIC workspace are preserved.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. OPEN 1,8,0 with the name "\$0" (SETLFS, SETNAM, and OPEN).
3. On the 128, prior to SETNAM, load .A with the bank where the directory is to be OPENed and .X with the bank containing the directory filename, then SETBNK.
4. Discard the two track and sector bytes.
5. Check the two link bytes for the last entry.
6. If they're both zeros, exit the routine.
7. Otherwise, get and print (with **NUMOUT**) the number of blocks in the current entry on a new screen line.
8. Get characters from the current entry and print them until a zero byte is reached.
9. If a zero byte is reached, loop back to step 5.
10. If the next set of link bytes are both zeros, close file 1 and restore default devices.

Explanation

DIRBYT reads the directory byte by byte and displays it in a formatted fashion on the text screen.

The directory file is structured just like a BASIC program file, which is why you can type LOAD "\$0",8 and LIST it as if it were a program. At the beginning of the directory are two bytes that would indicate the load address if it really were a program. We have no use for these, and they are discarded.

The next two bytes are link bytes that point to the address in memory of the next entry in the file. These are equivalent to the link bytes in a BASIC program file that point to the next program line. If the two link bytes are both zeros (determined in **CHLINK**), we know we've reached the end of the file (likewise with a BASIC program). When this occurs, we branch to **EXIT**, closing file 1 and restoring default devices.

If one or both of the link bytes are nonzero bytes, we get and print characters from the current entry until a zero byte is

DIRBYT

reached. A zero marks the end of a line, again just as in a BASIC program line.

Each entry can be one of three types: the disk name, a program name, or the BLOCKS FREE message. The first two bytes after the link bytes in each program entry represent the number of blocks occupied by the corresponding program on the disk. If the entry is the BLOCKS FREE message at the bottom of the directory, the first two bytes refer to the number of blocks remaining on the disk. If the entry is the disk name, the first two bytes are zeros.

Regardless of the entry type, these first two bytes are printed as a two-byte integer with **NUMOUT**, a space is inserted, and the rest of the entry printed (in **LOOP**).

As is suggested with **DIRPRG**, you can display a portion of the directory by using the built-in wildcard notations. For instance, to show all two-character filenames that begin with *D*, change the directory filename in **FILENM** to "\$0:D?". Or to show any filename beginning with *D*, regardless of its length, change **FILENM** to "\$0:D*".

Note: **DIRBYT** lacks disk error checking. You can easily add this feature if you like by incorporating the subroutine **DERRCK** into the code. Place **DERRCK** just before **FILENM**, as noted in the source listing. Jump to **DERRCK** immediately after you have opened file 1 to the disk. Also, as noted in the source listing, be sure to open the error channel (15) at the beginning of the program.

On the 128, include **BNKNUM** and **BNKFNM** at the end of the program.

Routine

C000	SETLFS	=	65466	
C000	SETBNK	=	65384	; Kernal bank number for OPEN and ; filename (128 only)
C000	MMUREG	=	65280	; MMU configuration register (128 only)
C000	SETNAM	=	65469	
C000	OPEN	=	65472	
C000	CHKIN	=	65478	
C000	CHRIN	=	65487	
C000	CHROUT	=	65490	
C000	CLOSE	=	65475	
C000	CLRCHN	=	65484	
C000	ZP	=	251	
C000	LINPRT	=	48589	; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128 ; ; Read the directory as a stream of bytes. ; Open channel 15 here if you include disk ; error checking (DERRCK). ;

```

C000          DIRBYT = *
; LDA #0; set the 128 to bank 15 (128 only)
; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
; logical file 1
C000 A9 01          LDA #1
C002 A2 08          LDX #8
C004 A0 00          LDY #0
C006 20 BA FF      JSR SETLFS
; set parameters for read
;
; Include the following three instructions on
; the 128.
; LDA BNKNUM; open into bank number
; LDX BNKPNM; bank containing the ASCII
; filename
; JSR SETBNK
C009 A9 02          LDA #FNLENG
C00B A2 5D          LDX #<FILENM
C00D A0 C0          LDY #>FILENM
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR SETNAM
C012 20 C0 FF      JSR OPEN
; set up filename
; open the directory file for reading
;
; Insert JSR DERRCK here for disk error
; checking.
;
C015 A2 01          LDX #1
C017 20 C6 FF      JSR CHKIN
C01A 20 57 C0      JSR GET2
C01D 20 49 C0 NEWENT JSR CHLINK
C020 F0 1E          BEQ EXIT
C022 A9 0D          LDA #13
C024 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
; input from file 1
; discard the track and sector bytes
; is it the last entry?
; if so, exit the routine
; print each entry on a new physical line
;
; Get the number of blocks in the next
; entry and print with NUMOUT.
; get the low byte
; and put in X
C027 20 CF FF      JSR CHRIN
C02A AA           TAX
C02B 20 CF FF      JSR CHRIN
C02E 20 CD BD NUMOUT JSR LINPRT
C031 A9 20          LDA #32
C033 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
; insert a SPACE
;
; Read information on each program entry
; (filename, type, etc.).
; input a character from entry
; if zero byte, next byte is from a new entry
C036 20 CF FF LOOP JSR CHRIN
C039 F0 E2          BEQ NEWENT
C03B 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C03E D0 F6          BNE LOOP
C040 A9 01          LDA #1
C042 20 C3 FF      JSR CLOSE
C045 20 CC FF      JSR CLRCHN
; you're finished
; close logical file 1
; clear all channels and restore default
; devices
;
C048 60           RTS
;
; check two link bytes for 00
; store first byte
C049 20 CF FF CHLINK JSR CHRIN
C04C 85 FB          STA ZP
C04E 20 CF FE      JSR CHRIN
C051 05 FB          ORA ZP
C053 60           RTS
; get another byte
; and OR it with the first byte
; return a zero if both are zero, otherwise
; nonzero value returned
;
; get next four bytes from file 1
; get two bytes
C054 20 57 C0 GET4 JSR GET2
C057 20 CF FE GET2 JSR CHRIN

```

DIRBYT

```
C05A 4C CF FF      JMP  CHRIN      ; get a byte and RTS
;
; Insert DERRCK here if you're including
; error checking.
;
C05D 24 30      FILENM .ASC "$0"
C05F          FNLENG = *-FILENM ; filename for directory
; length of filename
; Include the next two variables on the 128.
; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number to OPEN
; into (128 only)
; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; ASCII filename is (128 only)
```

See also DIRPRG, FRESEC.

Name

Load the directory as a program file

Description

This routine loads the directory file on disk into the BASIC workspace. If you've worked in BASIC, you've probably done this many times with LOAD"\$",8. If so, you've certainly found, perhaps the hard way, that loading the directory in this manner overwrites any BASIC program currently in memory. But if the program you're executing is outside the BASIC workspace, which is often the case with ML, this method of reading the directory is completely suitable.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. Set up the parameters for a relative load of the directory file (SETLFS, SETNAM).
3. On the 128, prior to SETNAM, load .A with the bank where the directory is to be loaded and .X with the bank containing the directory filename. Then JSR to SETBNK.
4. Store zero in .A to indicate a load operation.
5. Load .X and .Y with the starting address of BASIC from TXTTAB.
6. JSR to LOAD.
7. Store .X and .Y in the end-of-BASIC text pointer.
8. JMP to LINKPG.

Explanation

DIRPRG loads the directory as a BASIC program into the current BASIC workspace. (A secondary address of zero causes a relative load.) This allows you to position the BASIC workspace anywhere you want before entering the routine. **DIRPRG** simply loads the directory file based on the current starting address of BASIC.

DIRPRG is very much like a relative load of any BASIC program (see **LOADBS**). As with **LOADBS**, we place a zero in the accumulator before executing the Kernal LOAD to cause a load rather than to verify. And again, before JSR'ing to LOAD, we store the starting address of BASIC (TXTTAB) in .X and .Y. (On the 128, TXTTAB is at location 45.)

After LOAD has finished, store .X and .Y containing the ending address of the directory file in VARTAB (or TEXTTP at 4624 on the 128). Finish up by JMP'ing to LINKPG to relink the lines of the directory file as a BASIC program.

DIRPRG

Note: You can look at different portions of the directory selectively by using the operating system's built-in wildcard notations. For instance, if you want to display a list of all files whose names begin with *PROG*, change FILENM in DIRPRG to "\$0:PROG*". On the other hand, if you want a list of all program names ending in *.OBJ* that are ten characters long, change FILENM to "\$0:?????.OBJ=P".

DIRPRG currently lacks disk error checking. You can add this feature if you like by incorporating the subroutine DERRCK into the code. Place DERRCK just before FILENM, as noted in the source listing. Jump to DERRCK immediately after the JSR LOAD instruction. Be sure to open the error channel (15) at the beginning of the program (also noted in the source listing).

On the 128, you must define and include BNKNUM and BNKFNM at the end of the program.

Routine

```

C000      SETLFS      =      65466
C000      SETNAM     =      65469
C000      LOAD       =      65493
C000      TXTTAB     =      43          ; TXTTAB = 45 on the 128—start-of-BASIC
                                           ; pointer
C000      VARTAB     =      45          ; TEXTIP = 4624 on the 128—end-of-BASIC
                                           ; pointer
C000      LINKPG     =      42291      ; LINKPG = 20303 on the 128
C000      SETBNK     =      65384      ; Kernal bank number for load and filename
                                           ; (128 only)
C000      MMUREG     =      65280      ; MMU configuration register (128 only)
                                           ;
                                           ; Load the directory into normal BASIC
                                           ; memory.
                                           ;
                                           ; Open channel 15 here if you include disk
                                           ; error checking (DERRCK).
                                           ;
C000      DIRPRG     =      *          ; LDA #0; set for bank 15 (128 only)
                                           ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
C000 A9 01          LDA #1          ; logical file number (value doesn't matter)
C002 A2 08          LDX #8          ; device number for disk drive
C004 A0 00          LDY #0          ; secondary address of zero causes relative
                                           ; load
C006 20 BA FF      JSR SETLFS      ; set parameters for relative load
                                           ; Include the following three instructions
                                           ; for the 128 only.
                                           ; LDA BNKNUM; bank containing the
                                           ; program
                                           ; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing the
                                           ; ASCII filename
                                           ; JSR SETBNK
C009 A9 02          LDA #FNLENG     ; length of filename
C00B A2 22          LDX #<FILENM    ; the filename is "$0"
C00D A0 C0          LDY #>FILENM
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR SETNAM      ; set up filename

```

```

C012 A9 00          LDA #0          ; flag for load
C014 A6 2B          LDX TXTTAB      ; low byte of start-of-BASIC program
                                ; address
C016 A4 2C          LDY TXTTAB+1    ; high byte of start-of-BASIC program
                                ; address
C018 20 D5 FF       JSR LOAD        ; load the directory at the start of BASIC
                                ;
                                ; JSR DERRCK; Insert here for disk error
                                ; checking.
                                ;
                                ; Change VARTAB in the next two
                                ; instructions to TEXTTP on the 128.
C01B 86 2D          STX VARTAB      ; store end of directory address into end-of-
                                ; BASIC program pointer
C01D 84 2E          STY VARTAB+1    ;
C01F 4C 33 A5       JMP LINKPG     ; relink lines of tokenized program text and
                                ; RTS
                                ;
                                ; Insert DERRCK here if you're including
                                ; disk error checking.
                                ;
C022 24 30          FILENM .ASC "$0" ; directory name
C024          FNLENG = * -- FILENM  ; length of filename
                                ; Include the next two variables for the 128
                                ; only.
                                ; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number where
                                ; program is to be loaded
                                ; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
                                ; ASCII filename is located

```

See also DIRBYT, FRESEC.

DISRSR

Name

Disable RUN/STOP-RESTORE

Description

DISRSR disables the reset function of the RUN/STOP-RESTORE key combination by redirecting the NMI interrupt vector to the end of the normal NMI interrupt handler.

Prototype

Change the NMI interrupt vector to point to a harmless routine that skips the normal interrupt handling.

Explanation

There are two normal sources for an NMI interrupt in the 64 and 128. One is the CIA (Complex Interface Adapter) #2 chip, which generates the interrupts to handle RS-232 communications. The other is the RESTORE key.

DISRSR changes the NMI interrupt vector so that it skips both sources of NMI interrupts. Note that, in addition to disabling RUN/STOP-RESTORE, this technique will also disable RS-232 communications through the user port.

On the 64, this is accomplished by pointing the NMI vector directly to the RTI instruction at the end of the normal NMI service routine. The 128 pushes the A, X, and Y registers, as well as the configuration register, onto the stack just before jumping through the NMI vector. As a result, before leaving the routine, you have to restore these registers. This is done by jumping to the common IRQ exit routine at 65331.

On the 64, the A, X, and Y registers are also stored on the stack, but as part of the NMI interrupt handler routine itself. Since we skip these instructions altogether on this machine, you don't need to restore the registers before exiting the routine.

Routine

```
C000          NMIVEC    =    792          ; vector to nonmaskable interrupt routine
C000          RTINMI    =   65217         ; RTINMI = 65331 on the 128—return from
                                          ; NMI routine address
                                          ;
                                          ; Disable RUN/STOP-RESTORE key
                                          ; sequence by skipping NMI handler.
                                          ; redirect NMI vector, low byte first
C000  A9 C1          DISRSR  LDA  #<RTINMI
C002  8D 18 03      STA  NMIVEC
C005  A9 FE          LDA  #>RTINMI      ; then high byte
C007  8D 19 03      STA  NMIVEC+1
C00A  60            RTS                ; we're done
```

See also DISTOP, ERRRDT, RSTVEC.

Name

Disable the STOP key by changing the STOP vector

Description

DISTOP disables the STOP key by redirecting the STOP vector past the STOP key check in the normal STOP handler.

Prototype

Store the address of that portion of the STOP routine that is just beyond the STOP key check into the STOP vector and RTS.

Explanation

The STOP vector at location 808 is one of Kernal indirect vectors in page 3. This vector ordinarily points to a short ROM routine that checks whether the STOP key is pressed.

Press the STOP key, and a \$7F is stored into the STOP key flag at location \$91. The Kernal STOP routine, when called, determines whether the STOP key flag contains this value. This routine begins with the same series of instructions on the 128 as on the 64. The only difference in the two is the address of the routine—on the 128, it's at 63086.

On the 64, the code for this routine goes like this:

```

F6ED A5 91    LDA $91
F6EF C9 7F    CMP #$7F
F6F1 D0 07    BNE $F6FA
            .
            .
            .
F6FA 60      RTS
    
```

In **DISTOP**, we disable the STOP key by pointing the STOP vector to the CMP at \$F6EF. Consequently, since the accumulator never gets the \$7F from location \$91, the routine always branches to the RTS at \$F6FA.

Routine

```

C000      STOPVC    =    808      ; vector to Kernal STOP key routine
C000      STOP      =    63213    ; STOP = 63086 on the 128—STOP routine
                                           ; address
                                           ;
                                           ; Disable STOP key by skipping STKEY flag
                                           ; check.
C000 A9 EF      DISTOP LDA #<STOP+2 ; redirect STOP vector ahead by two bytes
C002 8D 28 03   STA  STOPVC        ; change low byte first
C005 A9 F6      LDA  #>STOP+2     ; and then high byte
C007 8D 29 03   STA  STOPVC+1
C00A 60        RTS                ; we're done
    
```

See also DISRSR, ERRRDT, RSTVEC.

DIVBYT

Name

Divide one byte value by another and store the result (and remainder) in memory

Description

This version of the division routine repeatedly subtracts the second number from the first. The leftover number is kept in REMAIN. The result is in TOTAL.

Prototype

1. Store the first number in FIRST and the second in SECOND.
2. Zero out the total and remainder.
3. Load the accumulator from FIRST.
4. Compare to SECOND.
5. If the carry flag is clear, store the remainder in REMAIN and exit.
6. INC the total and subtract SECOND from FIRST.
7. Branch back to step 4.

Explanation

When you're dealing with byte-sized quantities (0–255), dividing by repeated subtraction of one number from another will suffice. To divide 99 by 10, just subtract 10 until you have a number smaller than 10. Whatever is left is the remainder.

For division of larger numbers, see DIVINT.

Routine

```
C000          LINPRT = $BDCD ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128
C000          CHROUT = $FFD2
;
C000 20 19 C0      JSR  DIVBYT ; divide them
C003 A9 00          LDA  #0
C005 AE 39 C0      LDX  TOTAL ; print the result
C008 20 CD BD      JSR  LINPRT
C00B A9 0D          LDA  #13 ; print RETURN
C00D 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C010 A9 00          LDA  #0
C012 AE 3A C0      LDX  REMAIN ; print the remainder
C015 20 CD BD      JSR  LINPRT
C018 60            RTS
;
C019 A9 00          LDA  #0 ; zero out the total
C01B 8D 39 C0      STA  TOTAL ; store it in TOTAL
C01E 8D 3A C0      STA  REMAIN ; and remainder
C021 AD 37 C0      LDA  FIRST ; get the number
C024 CD 38 C0      VLOOP  CMP  SECOND ; compare it with the second
C027 90 0A          BCC  DONE ; SECOND is bigger
C029 EE 39 C0      INC  TOTAL ; else, increment the result
C02C F0 08          BEQ  NOREM ; no remainder
C02E ED 38 C0      SBC  SECOND ; carry is set, so subtract
```

```

C031 B0 F1          BCS  VLOOP      ; branch always (carry is set)
C033 8D 3A C0 DONE  STA  REMAIN    ;
C036 60          NOREM RTS         ; .A holds the remainder
                                       ; end the subroutine
C037 64          FIRST .BYTE 100
C038 03          SECOND .BYTE 3
C039 00          TOTAL  .BYTE 0
C03A 00          REMAIN .BYTE 0

```

See also DIVFP, DIVINT.

DIVFP

Name

Divide one floating-point number by another

Description

Like most of the other floating-point routines in this book, **DIVFP** depends on built-in BASIC routines. The example program divides 30,000 by 302 and prints out the result, complete with decimal fractions.

Prototype

1. Set up the dividend (or numerator) in floating-point accumulator 2 (FAC2).
2. Put the divisor (or denominator) in FAC1.
3. Call the **FDIVT** routine in ROM. The answer can be found in FAC1.

Explanation

The framing program converts the integer value 30,000 to a floating-point number with **GIVAYF**. The **MOVEF** routine moves it from FAC1 to FAC2. Next, the number 302 is stored into FAC1, and the **DIVFP** routine is called (a simple ROM call). Finally, **FOUT** converts the contents of FAC1 to ASCII numbers, which are then printed to the screen.

Routine

C000		ZP	=	\$FB		
C000		CHROUT	=	\$FFD2		
C000		FDIVT	=	\$BB12	; FDIVT = \$8B4C on the 128—divide FAC2 ; by FAC1; result in FAC1	
C000		MOVEF	=	\$BC0F	; MOVEF = \$8C3B on the 128—moves FAC1 ; to FAC2	
C000		GIVAYF	=	\$B391	; GIVAYF = \$AF03 on the 128—converts ; integer to floating point	
C000		FOUT	=	\$BDDD	; FOUT = \$8E42 on the 128—converts FAC1 ; to ASCII string ; ; Convert the numbers 30000 and 302 to ; floating point and divide. ; high byte of 30000	
C000	A9	75	LDA	#>30000		
C002	A0	30	LDY	#<30000		
C004	20	91	B3	JSR	GIVAYF	; convert it; now it's in FAC1
C007	20	0F	BC	JSR	MOVEF	; move FAC1 to FAC2
C00A	A9	01	LDA	#>302		
C00C	A0	2E	LDY	#<302		
C00E	20	91	B3	JSR	GIVAYF	; convert it ; FAC1 now holds 302; FAC2 holds 30000. ; divide 30000 by 302; the result is in FAC1
C011	20	29	C0	JSR	DIVFP	
C014	20	DD	BD	JSR	FOUT	; convert to ASCII
C017	85	FB	STA	ZP		; pointer
C019	84	FC	STY	ZP+1		; to the string

C01B	A0	00				LDY	#0	
C01D	B1	FB	PRTLOP			LDA	(ZP),Y	
C01F	D0	01				BNE	PRNIT	
C021	60					RTS		
C022	20	D2	FF	PRNIT		JSR	CHROUT	
C025	C8					INY		
C026	D0	F5				BNE	PRTLOP	
C028	60					RTS		
C029	20	12	BB	DIVFP		JSR	FDIVT	;
C02C	60					RTS		; divide FAC2 by FAC1
								; the result is in FAC1

See also DIVBYT, DIVINT.

DIVINT

Name

Divide one integer value into another

Description

For values that take up two bytes or more, this division routine is preferable to the subtraction method used in **DIVBYT**. It's much faster than subtracting.

Prototype

1. Since there are 16 bits in a two-byte integer, store a 16 into a counter (change this if you're using larger numbers).
2. Store zeros into ANSWER and WORK, which will eventually contain the answer and the remainder.
3. Copy the numerator, also called the dividend, from DIVNUM to a work area COPYN.
4. Begin division: Rotate COPYN to the left. The additional bit rotates into WORK.
5. Compare the contents of WORK to DIVDEN (the denominator or divisor).
6. If WORK is equal or larger, the carry flag will be set. Rotate the set carry (a 1) left into ANSWER and execute step 7.
7. Subtract DIVDEN from WORK and store the result in WORK. Skip step 8.
8. If, after step 5, WORK was smaller, carry would be clear. Rotate this zero bit left into ANSWER.
9. Decrement the counter setup in step 1. If it's not yet zero, loop back to step 4.

Explanation

The following partial example of a binary division may be helpful in understanding how division works in ML:

$$\begin{array}{r} 0001 \\ 110 \overline{)10110010} \\ \underline{110} \\ 110 \end{array}$$

The 110 is the denominator (or divisor) being divided into 10110010, the numerator (or dividend). There's a third work area, called WORK in the program below, which starts out

holding a zero. The main loop rotates DIVDEN (10110010 in the example above) to the left, and the high bit goes into WORK:

	WORK	DIVDEN
1	00000001	0110010x
2	00000010	110010xx
3	00000101	10010xxx
4	00001011	0010xxxx

As you can see, the number in WORK gradually grows larger as more bits are shifted left (the *x*'s represent unknown bits that don't matter). Since the example is dividing by the number 110, at each step, we have to compare WORK to the denominator. The binary numbers %1, %10, and %101 are smaller, so the carry flag is clear, and a zero gets rotated into ANSWER. Note the first three zeros in the example.

When WORK is equal to or larger than DIVDEN, carry is set (which means a 1 gets rotated into the answer), and we have to subtract DIVDEN from WORK. Then the rotate instructions and compares continue.

After division is complete, the answer is held in ANSWER. The remainder can be found in WORK. The example program divides two numbers (3112/550) and prints the answer. The remainder, preceded by the letter *R* is also printed.

To use this routine in your own programs, store the integer values in DIVNUM and DIVNUM. Using the bit-shifting method is faster than subtracting. Dividing 60,000 by 3, for example, would require 30,000 loops in DIVBYT, but only 16 in DIVINT.

Note: If you're dividing by a power of 2 (2, 4, 8, 16, 32, and so forth), you can skip this routine and simply shift the dividend to the right, with LSR for the high byte and ROR for any intermediate or lower bytes.

Warning: Division by zero is mathematically illegal, and this program doesn't contain a trap for zero. If you think a user might try dividing by zero, you'll need to check for zeros at the beginning of DIVINT.

Routine

```

C000          LINPRT =   $BDCD      ; LINPRT = $8E32 for the 128
C000          CHROUT =   $FFD2
;
C000 A9 93          LDA   #147      ; clear screen
C002 20 D2 FF      JSR   CHROUT    ; print it
C005 AE 41 C0      LDX   DIVNUM    ; low byte of the numerator or dividend
C008 AD 42 C0      LDA   DIVNUM+1  ; high byte

```


DIVINT

```

C00B 20 CD BD      JSR   LINPRT      ; print it
C00E A9 2F        LDA   #47         ; the slash (/), to indicate division
C010 20 D2 FF     JSR   CHROUT     ; print it
C013 AE 43 C0     LDX   DIVDEN     ; low byte of the denominator or divisor
C016 AD 44 C0     LDA   DIVDEN+1   ; high byte
C019 20 CD BD     JSR   LINPRT     ; print it
C01C A9 0D        LDA   #13        ; print RETURN
C01E 20 D2 FF     JSR   CHROUT     ; new line
C021 20 4C C0     JSR   DIVINT     ; divide the numbers
C024 AE 47 C0     LDX   ANSWER     ; and print the answer
C027 AD 48 C0     LDA   ANSWER+1
C02A 20 CD BD     JSR   LINPRT
C02D A9 0D        LDA   #13        ; print RETURN again
C02F 20 D2 FF     JSR   CHROUT
C032 A9 52        LDA   #82        ; letter R for remainder
C034 20 D2 FF     JSR   CHROUT     ; print it, then
C037 AE 45 C0     LDX   REMAIN     ; low byte of remainder
C03A AD 46 C0     LDA   REMAIN+1  ; high byte
C03D 20 CD BD     JSR   LINPRT     ; print it
C040 60           RTS          ; and quit
;
C041 28 0C        DIVNUM .WORD 3112 ; 3112 will be divided by
C043 26 02        DIVDEN .WORD 550  ; 550
C045 00 00        WORK   .BYTE 0,0
C047             REMAIN  =    WORK   ; the remainder will end up in WORK (also
; known as REMAIN)
;
C047 00 00        ANSWER .BYTE 0,0
C049 00 00        COPYN  .BYTE 0,0
C04B 00           COUNTR .BYTE 0
;
C04C 20 61 C0    DIVINT JSR   SETUP   ; set the counter to 16
C04F 20 67 C0    JSR   ZEROS   ; zero out WORK and ANSWER
C052 20 72 C0    JSR   COPYNM  ; copy DIVNUM to COPYN
C055 20 7F C0    DIVLP  JSR   MVOVER  ; rotate COPYN and WORK to the left
C058 20 8C C0    JSR   DIVIDE  ; the main division routine
C05B CE 4B C0    DEC   COUNTR ; count down
C05E D0 F5      BNE   DIVLP  ; if it's not zero yet, keep going
C060 60         RTS          ; quit the DIVINT routine
;
; Setup just puts a 16 into COUNTR.
; 16 represents the number of bits in
; DIVNUM.
C061 A9 10        SETUP  LDA   #16
C063 8D 4B C0    STA   COUNTR
C066 60         RTS
;
; Next, copy zeros into WORK and
; ANSWER.
C067 A9 00        ZEROS  LDA   #0
C069 A0 03        LDY   #3
C06B 99 45 C0    ZLOOP  STA   WORK,Y
C06E 88          DEY
C06F 10 FA      BPL   ZLOOP  ; as long as .Y is zero or higher, loop back
C071 60         RTS
;
; Copy DIVNUM to COPYN.
C072 AD 41 C0    COPYNM LDA   DIVNUM
C075 8D 49 C0    STA   COPYN
C078 AD 42 C0    LDA   DIVNUM+1
C07B 8D 4A C0    STA   COPYN+1
C07E 60         RTS
;
; Move a bit to the left from COPYN to
; WORK.

```

```

C07F 0E 49 C0 MVOVER ASL COPYN ; low-byte shifts left
C082 2E 4A C0        ROL COPYN+1 ; into high byte
C085 2E 45 C0        ROL WORK ; into WORK
C088 2E 46 C0        ROL WORK+1 ; and high byte of WORK
C08B 60              RTS
;
C08C AD 46 C0 DIVIDE LDA WORK+1 ; high byte of WORK
C08F CD 44 C0        CMP DIVDEN+1 ; compare to the divisor
C092 F0 09          BEQ LOOKMR ; look more (check the low byte) if equal
C094 B0 0F          BCS SUBTR ; WORK is higher, so subtract
; If we fall through from above, carry is
; clear.
C096 2E 47 C0 FIXANS ROL ANSWER ; move the carry flag into ANSWER
C099 2E 48 C0        ROL ANSWER+1 ; high byte, too
C09C 60              RTS ; end of FIXANS and/or subroutine
;
C09D          LOOKMR - * ; check the low byte if the high byte was
; equal
C09D AD 45 C0        LDA WORK ; get value in WORK
C0A0 CD 43 C0        CMP DIVDEN ; compare to denominator (divisor) low
; byte
C0A3 90 F1          BCC FIXANS ; if carry is clear, DIVDEN is bigger, so exit
;
C0A5          SUBTR - * ; else subtract DIVDEN from WORK
C0A5 20 96 C0        JSR FIXANS ; carry is always set (note the RTS of
; FIXANS returns to here)
; carry was changed by FIXANS, so set it
C0A8 38          SEC
C0A9 AD 45 C0        LDA WORK
C0AC ED 43 C0        SBC DIVDEN
C0AF 8D 45 C0        STA WORK ; subtract DIVDEN from WORK
C0B2 AD 46 C0        LDA WORK+1 ; high byte, too
C0B5 ED 44 C0        SBC DIVDEN+1
C0B8 8D 46 C0        STA WORK+1
C0BB 60              RTS

```

See also DIVBYT, DIVFP.

ERRRDT

Name

Change the ERROR vector

Description

ERRRDT redirects BASIC's ERROR vector to your own routine.

Prototype

Store the address of the custom error routine into the ERROR vector; then RTS.

Explanation

When an error occurs during a BASIC program, an indirect jump is taken through the ERROR vector at location 768. This vector normally points to the ROM routine which displays the appropriate one of the familiar BASIC error messages, such as SYNTAX ERROR, ILLEGAL QUANTITY ERROR, and so forth. In some cases, however, you may want to substitute a custom error message in place of the standard one. In this case, you can change the address in the ERROR vector to point to an error message routine of your own.

For example, when you type in BASIC programs that contain many numeric DATA statements being POKEd into memory, you'll frequently get an error that's difficult to pin down. If you accidentally include a number higher than 255 and run the program, you'll get the error message ?ILLEGAL QUANTITY IN LINE xxx. But the line given as xxx is the one containing the READ statement rather than the one with the errant data. The READ works just fine (it's legal to READ numbers greater than 255), but the POKE causes the problem.

The example program relies on **ERRRDT** to solve this problem. Ordinarily, the ERROR vector points to a routine that prints either a BASIC error message or the READY prompt. Using the .X register, this routine locates the error message in a table and then prints it. If you're in program mode, the number of the line that's currently being executed is taken from CURLIN (location 57 on the 64; 59 on the 128) and is printed as well.

ERRRDT changes the ERROR vector to point to our own custom error handler at EWEDGE. If an error other than an illegal quantity error occurs (.X <> 14), normal error handling will result. But if .X contains a 14 upon entry into EWEDGE—meaning an illegal quantity has occurred—the current DATA line number (CURLIN) will be stored into the current BASIC

line (DATLIN) before the normal error handler will execute. And so, in our example above, instead of telling us that the error occurred in the line with the READ statement, with this routine in place, BASIC reports the actual DATA line containing the typo.

Of course, this routine fails to distinguish among the many possible sources of illegal quantity errors. If your program contains a POKE 251,257, for instance, the error message that results will erroneously point you to the last DATA line that was read. Because of this, you should limit the use of this wedge to BASIC programs that contain many numeric DATA statements—primarily BASIC loaders of ML object code.

Routine

```

C000          ERRVEC = 768          ; error vector
C000          ERRNOR = 58251       ; ERRNOR = 19775 on the 128—normal
                                ; error-service routine
C000          CURLIN = 57         ; CURLIN = 59 on the 128—current BASIC
                                ; line being executed
C000          DATLIN = 63         ; DATLIN = 65 on the 128—current data
                                ; line
                                ;
                                ; Insert a custom error routine that looks for
                                ; an illegal quantity error.
                                ; Assume it occurs while reading data and
                                ; report the data line number.
                                ;
                                ; ERRRDT points the ERRVEC vector to our
                                ; routine.
                                ; low byte first
C000 A9 0B          ERRRDT LDA #<EWEDGE
C002 8D 00 03          STA ERRVEC
C005 A9 C0          LDA #>EWEDGE ; then high byte
C007 8D 01 03          STA ERRVEC+1
C00A 60              RTS          ; and exit the setup routine
                                ;
                                ; Upon entry, X contains the error number.
                                ; We let the system handle
                                ; all errors except the illegal quantity error
                                ; (error 14).
                                ; is it an illegal quantity error?
C00B E0 0E          EWEDGE CPX #14
C00D D0 08          BNE EXIT      ; if not, exit through the normal error handler
                                ; Otherwise, substitute the current data line
                                ; for the current BASIC line.
                                ; low byte first
C00F A5 3F          LDA DATLIN
C011 85 39          STA CURLIN
C013 A5 40          LDA DATLIN+1 ; then high byte
C015 85 3A          STA CURLIN+1
C017 4C 8B E3 EXIT  JMP ERRNOR   ; and execute the normal error handler
                                ; routine

```

See also DISRSR, DISTOP, RSTVEC.

EXPLOD

Name

Produce an explosion sound

Description

EXPLOD provides the sound of an explosion and could be used in any number of game programs, with or without modification.

Prototype

1. Clear the SID chip with **SIDCLR**.
2. Set the necessary SID chip parameters (volume, attack/decay, sustain/release, and frequency).
3. Select the noise waveform and gate the sound.
4. Cause a delay (here, 120 jiffies), and then start the release cycle (ungate the sound).
5. Then RTS.

Explanation

This routine relies on the noise waveform to achieve its effect. You can alter the sound that's produced by varying a number of parameters in the routine. These include the attack/decay and sustain/release rates, the base frequency for the noise waveform, and the number of jiffies between gating and ungating the chip.

EXPLOD is no different in one respect from other sound-effect routines in this book. After the release cycle is complete, the SID chip hums on in the background. Again, to prevent this, after the explosion has sounded, store zeros in the frequency registers (**FREHI1**, **FREHI3**) or turn the chip off altogether by JSR'ing to **SIDCLR**.

Routine

```
C000          SIGVOL    =    54296      ; SID chip volume register
C000          ATDCY1    =    54277      ; voice 1 attack/decay register
C000          SUREL1    =    54278      ; voice 1 sustain/release register
C000          FRELO1    =    54272      ; voice 1 frequency control (low byte)
C000          FREHI1    =    54273      ; voice 1 frequency control (high byte)
C000          VCREG1    =    54276      ; voice 1 control register
C000          JIFFLO    =    162        ; low byte of jiffy clock
;
C000 20 2F C0 EXPLOD JSR  SIDCLR        ; clear the SID chip
C003 A9 0F          LDA  #15           ; set volume
C005 8D 18 D4      STA  SIGVOL
C008 A9 0C          LDA  #$0C         ; set attack/decay
C00A 8D 05 D4      STA  ATDCY1
C00D A9 18          LDA  #$18         ; set sustain/release
C00F 8D 06 D4      STA  SUREL1
C012 A9 00          LDA  #0           ; set voice 1 low frequency
C014 8D 00 D4      STA  FRELO1
C017 A9 18          LDA  #24         ; set voice 1 high frequency
```

```

C019 8D 01 D4          STA  FREHI1
C01C A9 81            LDA  #%10000001 ; select noise waveform and gate sound
C01E 8D 04 D4          STA  VCREG1
C021 A9 78            LDA  #120        ; cause a delay of 120 jiffies
C023 65 A2            ADC  JIFFLO       ; add current jiffy reading
C025 C5 A2            DELAY CMP  JIFFLO       ; and wait for 120 jiffies to elapse
C027 D0 FC
C029 A9 80            LDA  #%10000000 ; ungate sound
C02B 8D 04 D4          STA  VCREG1
C02E 60
;
; Clear the SID chip.
C02F A9 00            SIDCLR LDA  #0          ; fill with zeros
C031 A0 18            LDY  #24         ; index to FRELO1
C033 99 00 D4 SIDLOP STA  FRELO1,Y    ; store zero in SID chip address
C036 88              DEY          ; for next lower byte
C037 10 FA           BPL  SIDLOP    ; fill 25 bytes
C039 60              RTS

```

See also BEEPER, BELLRG, INTMUS, MELODY, NOTETB, SIDCLR, SIDVOL, SIRENS.

Name

Print floating-point accumulator 1 to a specified number of decimal places

Description

If you print a floating-point variable, anywhere from zero to nine decimal places may be displayed. In many situations, you'll want to format your numeric output. With **FACPRD**, you can do just that. This routine lets you specify the number of decimal places to print when you're outputting floating-point numbers to the screen. In the process, no rounding occurs.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the number of decimal places to print in **DECIML**.
2. Keep a counter of digits past the decimal in zero page.
3. Load each character from the number string.
4. If the end of the string is reached (a zero byte occurs), print a decimal point and/or the proper number of trailing zeros (in **OUTCHK**).
5. Increase the decimal counter if the decimal point has been printed.
6. Otherwise, check the current character for a decimal point. If one occurs, increase the decimal counter.
7. Check to see whether zero decimal places have been requested. If so, exit the routine.
8. Determine whether the last decimal place has been printed. If so, place a terminator byte of zero at the end of the number string.
9. Print the current character and branch back to step 3.

Explanation

This program is much like the example program shown under **FACPRD**, where a floating-point number—365.25—is converted to an ASCII string and printed to the screen. Again, in this routine, the number 365.25 is printed. Here, however, you have the option of specifying the number of decimal places (0–9) that are displayed. Notice that **CHRGTR** allows only numeric input, with the exception of the **RETURN** key. Pressing **RETURN** exits the program.

FACPRD takes the ASCII string in the workspace area at the top of the stack (beginning at \$100) and displays it to the number of decimal places in **DECIML**. The routine begins by

initializing a decimal-place counter in zero page to \$FF. Each character from the string is then examined to see whether it's a terminator byte (zero) or a decimal point.

If a terminator byte occurs, we branch to the routine OUTCHK. OUTCHK prints a decimal point (if needed) and the proper number of trailing zeros.

If a decimal point occurs, increment the decimal counter and print the decimal point if one or more decimal places have been requested. As a result, the counter will contain a positive value once the decimal point has been printed. On the other hand, if DECIML is zero (no decimal places have been specified), we simply exit the routine.

Assuming the decimal point has been printed, before we print each character from the string, the decimal counter is compared to DECIML (the number of decimal places requested). If they agree in value, a terminator byte is placed at the next character position within the string. So, after the current character is printed, the next character (the zero byte) will send us to OUTCHK where trailing zeros can be added if necessary.

Routine

C000		ZP	=	251		
C000		CHROUT	=	65490		
C000		GETIN	=	65508		
C000		FAC1	=	97	; FAC1 = 99 on the 128—floating-point ; accumulator 1	
C000		FOUT	=	48605	; FOUT = 36418 on the 128—converts FAC1 ; to ASCII	
C000		STWORK	=	256	; workspace at the top of the stack ; ; Print the number in floating-point ; accumulator 1 to the number ; of decimal places requested. Quit on ; RETURN.	
C000	A9	93	CLRCHR	LDA	#147 ; clear the screen	
C002	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	
C005	A0	00		LDY	#0 ; as an index for PRTLOP	
C007	B9	8C	C0	PRTLOP	LDA	STRING,Y ; print the prompt "NUMBER OF DECIMAL ; PLACES (0-9)?"
C00A	FD	06		BEQ	CHRGTR ; if zero byte, skip ahead	
C00C	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT ; print each character in the prompt	
C00F	C8			INY	; next character	
C010	D0	F5		BNE	PRTLOP ; branch always	
C012	20	E4	FF	CHRGTR	JSR	GETIN ; get a keypress in the range 0-9, or a ; RETURN
C015	F0	FB		BEQ	CHRGTR ; if no keypress	
C017	C9	0D		CMP	#13 ; is it RETURN?	
C019	F0	27		BEQ	EXIT ; if so, then quit	
C01B	CD	AD	C0	CMP	RANGE1 ; is it zero?	
C01E	90	F2		BCC	CHRGTR ; if it's less, get another key	
C020	CD	AE	C0	CMP	RANGE2 ; is it 9 plus 1?	
C023	B0	ED		BCS	CHRGTR ; if it's more, get another key	
C025	29	0F		AND	#15 ; put ASCII number in a range 0-9	
C027	8D	B5	C0	STA	DECIML ; store .A for FACPRD	

FACPRD

```

C02A A0 05          LDY #5          ; index to floating-point number
C02C B9 AF C0 LOOP LDA FPNUM,Y    ; store each byte of FPNUM in FAC1
C02F 99 61 00      STA FAC1,Y
C032 88            DEY          ; for next byte
C033 10 F7        BPL LOOP      ; if .Y is 0-5, continue
C035 20 DD BD     JSR FOUT      ; convert contents of FAC1 to ASCII string
                                ; string is in stack area
C038 20 43 C0     JSR FACPRD   ; print the FAC1 to DECIML decimal places
C03B A9 0D        LDA #13      ; print RETURN
C03D 20 D2 FF     JSR CHROUT
C040 D0 C3        BNE OUTLOP   ; handle another request
C042 60          EXIT RTS

;
; FACPRD displays the number in FAC1 to a
; number (DECIML) of decimal places.
; as an index
; as a decimal counter
; store decimal counter in zero page
C043 A0 00      FACPRD LDY #0
C045 A2 FF      LDX #255
C047 86 FB      STX ZP
C049 B9 00 01 MORE LDA STWORK,Y  ; load each ASCII byte of string
C04C F0 20      BEQ OUTCHK   ; if zero byte, print decimal and/or trailing
                                ; zeros
C04E A6 FB      LDX ZP        ; check decimal counter
C050 10 04      BPL INCRZP   ; increase decimal counter if decimal has
                                ; already been reached
C052 C9 2E      CMP #46      ; is it currently a decimal point?
C054 D0 12      BNE PRINT   ; no, so print .A
C056 E6 FB      INC ZP        ; increment decimal counter
C058 AE B5 C0   INCRZP LDX DECIML ; load with number of decimal places
                                ; requested
C05B F0 2E      BEQ OUT      ; if zero decimal points requested
C05D E4 FB      CPX ZP        ; compare with decimal-place counter
C05F D0 07      BNE PRINT   ; we haven't reached the last one, so print
                                ; .A
C061 48          PHA          ; save .A
C062 A9 00      LDA #0        ; put terminator character in the position
                                ; which follows
C064 99 01 01   STA STWORK+1,Y
C067 68          PLA          ; restore .A
C068 20 D2 FF PRINT JSR CHROUT ; print a character
C06B C8          INY          ; next character
C06C D0 DB      BNE MORE     ; branch always
C06E AE B5 C0 OUTCHK LDX DECIML ; see whether decimal and/or extra zeros
                                ; need printing
C071 E4 FB      CPX ZP        ; have all decimal places been printed?
C073 F0 16      BEQ OUT      ; yes, so get out
C075 B0 05      BCS DECIZR   ; if carry set, we need to print one or more
                                ; trailing zeros
C077 A9 2E      LDA #46      ; otherwise, print a decimal point
C079 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C07C AD B5 C0 DECIZR LDA DECIML ; subtract decimal counter from requested
                                ; number of places
C07F 38          SEC
C080 E5 FB      SBC ZP
C082 AA          TAX          ; we'll fill remainder with zeros
C083 A9 30      LDA #48
C085 20 D2 FF ZRLOOP JSR CHROUT ; print a zero
C088 CA          DEX
C089 D0 FA      BNE ZRLOOP   ; if more to print, continue
C08B 60          RTS

;
C08C 4E 55 4D STRING .ASC "NUMBER OF DECIMAL PLACES (0-9)?"

```

```
COAB 0D 00          .BYTE 13,0          ; carriage return and terminator byte
;
COAD 30          RANGE1 .BYTE 48          ; ASCII 0
COAE 3A          RANGE2 .BYTE 58          ; ASCII 9 plus 1
COAF 89 B6 A0    FPNUM  .BYTE 137,182,160,0,0
; the value for 365.25 in FP accumulator
COB5 00          DECIML  .BYTE 0          ; storage for number of decimal places
```

See also BYTASC, CNUMOT, FACPRT, NUMOUT.

Name

Print the value in floating-point accumulator 1

Description

All BASIC mathematical operations use a series of six locations—known collectively as a *floating-point accumulator*—to store real numbers. Actually, the 64 and 128 have two separate floating-point accumulators. The primary one, located at 97–102 on the 64 and 99–104 on the 128, is labeled FAC1. The secondary one, often used to hold an interim value in a calculation, is FAC2 (located at 105–110 on the 64 and 107–112 on the 128).

At any rate, whether you use BASIC's built-in routines as they are, modify them, or write your own, you'll certainly need to display the contents of these floating-point accumulators at some point. The routine that follows prints the contents of floating-point accumulator 1 to the screen.

Prototype

1. Prior to the routine, JSR to FOUT to convert the contents of floating-point accumulator 1 to an ASCII string at \$100.
2. Beginning at \$100, print each byte of the string until a zero byte is found.

Explanation

In the example program, the number 365.25—the number of days in a year—is represented by FPNUM, just as it would appear in one of the floating-point accumulators. The first byte of FPNUM is the binary exponent of the number (plus 129 to account for negative exponents)—that is $137 - 129$, which is 8, so the exponent is 2 to the eighth power. The next four bytes are the mantissa of the number, with the first bit in the series containing the sign of the number. The last byte is the sign byte—0 indicates a positive number; 255, a negative number.

In the program, the floating-point representation of 365.25 is stored in floating-point accumulator 1. The BASIC routine FOUT (located at 48605 on the 64 and 36418 on the 128) converts it into an ASCII string and stores it in a workspace area at the top of the stack (beginning at \$100). After the number has been converted, **FACPRT** prints it to the screen.

In converting the floating-point number to an ASCII string, FOUT positions a terminator byte of zero at the end of

the string. As a result, this routine is much like other string-printing routines in this book. Using CHROUT, you simply output each byte of the string to the screen until a zero byte is reached.

Routine

```

C000      CHROUT  = 65490
C000      FAC1   = 97           ; FAC1 = 99 on the 128—floating-point
                                   ; accumulator 1
C000      FOUT   = 48605       ; FOUT = 36418 on the 128—converts FAC1
                                   ; to ASCII
C000      STWORK = 256         ; workspace at the top of the stack
                                   ;
                                   ; Print the number in floating-point
                                   ; accumulator 1.

C000      MAIN   = *
C000 A9 93      CLRCHR LDA #147           ; clear the screen
C002 20 D2 FF    JSR  CHROUT
C005 A0 05      LDY  #5                 ; index to floating-point number
C007 B9 24 C0   LOOP LDA FPNUM,Y       ; store each byte of FPNUM in FAC1
C00A 99 61 00   STA  FAC1,Y
C00D 88         DEY
C00E 10 F7     BPL  LOOP                 ; If Y is 0-5, continue
C010 20 DD BD   JSR  FOUT                 ; convert contents of FAC1 to ASCII string
                                   ; string is in stack area
C013 4C 16 C0   JMP  FACPRT              ; print the FAC1 value and return
                                   ;
                                   ; FACPRT prints the number in floating-
                                   ; point accumulator 1.
                                   ; as an index
C016 A0 00      FACPRT LDY #0
C018 B9 00 01   MORE  LDA STWORK,Y     ; load each ASCII byte of string
C01B F0 06      BEQ  OUT                 ; if zero byte, we're finished
C01D 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT              ; otherwise, print it
C020 C8         INY                       ; next byte
C021 D0 F5     BNE  MORE                  ; branch always
C023 60         OUT  RTS                 ; return to MAIN
                                   ;
C024 89 B6 A0   FPNUM .BYTE 137,182,160,0,0,0
                                   ; the value for 365.25 in FP accumulator 1

```

See also BYTASC, CNUMOT, FACPRT, NUMOUT.

FETCH (128 only)

Name

Retrieve from expansion RAM memory

Description

FETCH is just the opposite of **STASH**; it transfers bytes from expansion RAM in the model 1700 and 1750 RAM Expansion Modules into system memory.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the REC registers set with the appropriate system memory base address, expansion RAM base address, and number of bytes to transfer. The .X register should contain the system bank number.
2. Load .Y with the value required in the command register (location 57089) to perform a fetch operation.
3. JMP to the Kernal routine DMACALL.

Explanation

Memory locations 57088–57098, on the 128, are used to address the REC (RAM Expansion Controller chip) registers in the model 1700 or 1750 RAM Expansion Modules. The REC chip performs four different memory-management operations: stashing, fetching, swapping, and verifying.

The program below is designed to be used with the program provided with **STASH**. That particular program stores BASIC programs into one of four 32K memory partitions in the RAM expansion unit. This program, on the other hand, retrieves BASIC programs which have been stored to the expansion module.

So, after you've run the program associated with **STASH** and saved a few BASIC programs to expansion RAM, run this one. Notice that since it's assembled at a different location than its companion program, both can reside in memory simultaneously.

Next, SYS to the starting location (4864) of the program, following the SYS address with the number of a partition that contains a previously stored BASIC program. For example, suppose you wanted to fetch a previously saved BASIC program from partition 2, you'd enter **SYS4864,2**. The BASIC program in partition 2 would then be restored to the BASIC text area.

The program associated with **STASH**, when called, saves the BASIC pointers—the start- and end-of-BASIC addresses—followed by the BASIC program itself. Two separate transfer operations are required to restore it. The BASIC pointers are

the first thing brought back from the designated partition. Once they're installed, the BASIC program which follows is retrieved. As with the companion program, the expansion-RAM base address updates automatically with each byte transferred (bits 6 and 7 in 57098 are 00 by default).

Routine

1300		CHROUT	=	65490	
1300		DMACALL	=	65360	; Kernal routine which passes command in .X
					; to DMA controller
1300		DMASYA	=	57090	; DMA system memory base address register
1300		DMAEXA	=	57092	; DMA expansion memory base address
					; register
1300		DMABNK	=	57094	; DMA expansion memory bank register
1300		DMADAT	=	57095	; DMA number of bytes to transfer
1300		TXTTAB	=	45	; start-of-BASIC pointer
1300		TEXTTP	=	4624	; end-of-BASIC program pointer
1300		ZP	=	251	
					; Get BASIC program from RAM expansion
					; bank 0 or 1 on 32K boundaries.
					; Use this program in tandem with the
					; program under STASH.
1300	C9	01		CMP	#1
1302	90	5D		BCC	PRTMSG
					; make sure .A is in range 1-4
					; .A is less than 1, so print an error message
					; and leave
1304	C9	05		CMP	#5
1306	B0	59		BCS	PRTMSG
					; .A is 5 or greater, so print error message
					; and leave
					; now subtract 1 to put it in range 0-3
1308	38			SEC	
1309	E9	01		SBC	#1
130B	4A			LSR	
					; determine RAM expansion bank
130C	8D	06	DF	STA	DMABNK
					; store it into register
130F	A9	00		LDA	#0
					; determine 32K offset in each bank (high
					; byte)
1311	8D	04	DF	STA	DMAEXA
					; also store zero into base address for
					; expansion memory (low byte)
1314	90	02		BCC	EXPOFF
					; if partition number is 1 or 3, carry is clear,
					; so 0K offset
1316	A9	20		LDA	#32
1318	8D	05	DF	EXPOFF	STA DMAEXA+1
					; offset by 32K if partition number is 2 or 4
					; store in base address for expansion memory
					; (high byte)
131B	A9	FB		LDA	#ZP
					; store starting address of two pointers in
					; system-memory address register
131D	8D	02	DF	STA	DMASYA
					; low byte
1320	A9	04		LDA	#4
					; store number of bytes to transfer in DMA
					; register (low byte)
1322	8D	07	DF	STA	DMADAT
1325	A9	00		LDA	#0
					; store zero to high byte
1327	8D	08	DF	STA	DMADAT+1
132A	8D	03	DF	STA	DMASYA+1
					; also store zero to high byte of system-
					; memory address
132D	AA			TAX	
					; put system-memory bank number in .X
132E	20	6F	13	JSR	FETCH
					; retrieve BASIC pointers
1331	A5	FB		LDA	ZP
					; install start-of-BASIC pointer
1333	85	2D		STA	TXTTAB
1335	A5	FC		LDA	ZP+1
1337	85	2E		STA	TXTTAB+1
1339	A5	FD		LDA	ZP+2
					; install end-of-BASIC pointer
133B	8D	10	12	STA	TEXTTP
133E	A5	FE		LDA	ZP+3

FETCH (128 only)

1340	8D	11	12		STA	TEXTTP+1			
									; Now retrieve BASIC program which was
									; saved after the pointers.
1343	38				SEC				; determine number of bytes in BASIC
									; program
1344	AD	10	12		LDA	TEXTTP			; get end-of-BASIC low byte
1347	E5	2D			SBC	TXTTAB			; subtract start-of-BASIC low byte
1349	8D	07	DF		STA	DMADAT			; store result into DMA register for number of
									; bytes to transfer
134C	AD	11	12		LDA	TEXTTP+1			; get end-of-BASIC high byte
134F	E5	2E			SBC	TXTTAB+1			; subtract start-of-BASIC high byte
1351	8D	08	DF		STA	DMADAT+1			; store to high byte of register
1354	A5	2D			LDA	TXTTAB			; store starting address of BASIC as system
									; base address
1356	8D	02	DF		STA	DMASYA			
1359	A5	2E			LDA	TXTTAB+1			
135B	8D	03	DF		STA	DMASYA+1			
									; System bank number is in .X, and DMAEXA
									; updates automatically (see 57098).
135E	4C	6F	13		JMP	FETCH			; retrieve BASIC program and RTS
									;
1361	A0	00		PRTMSG	LDY	#0			; index for PRTLOP
1363	B9	74	13	PRTLOP	LDA	ERRMSG,Y			; get a character for the error message
1366	F0	06			BEQ	PRTEND			; end on a zero byte
1368	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHROUT			; print the character if not zero
136B	C8				INY				; next character
136C	D0	F5			BNE	PRTLOP			; branch always
136E	60			PRTEND	RTS				; leave the program
									;
									; Enter this routine with DMA registers set
									; up, and system bank number in .X
136F	A0	81		FETCH	LDY	##%10000001			; command register (57089) value for fetch
1371	4C	50	FF		JMP	DMACALL			; call DMA Kernal routine and RTS
									;
1374	4E	4F	54	ERRMSG	.ASC	"NOT A VALID PARTITION NUMBER"			
									; error message
1390	00				.BYTE	0			; terminator byte

See also STASH.

Name

General memory fill

Description

This routine fills a portion of memory with a particular byte. Just specify in the equates the starting address for the portion of memory you want to fill (BLOCK), the number of bytes you want to fill (NUMBER), and the particular byte you want to store (FILBYT).

Prototype

1. Store the number of bytes to be filled into the variable COUNTR at the end of the program.
2. Store the accumulator containing the fill byte into a temporary storage location (TEMPA).
3. In FILLOP, store the contents of TEMPA in BLOCK, using zero-page addressing until COUNTR decrements to zero. Then return to the calling program.

Explanation

To demonstrate FILMEM, the example program stores a 90 (screen code for Z) into 400 bytes of screen memory.

Within the routine itself, a two-byte counter (COUNTR) decrements each time a byte is copied. When this counter reaches 0 (the high byte must decrement to 255 on the last pass), the routine is complete.

On the 128, to fill memory in another bank, use the Kernal routine INDSTA at 65399. Define the target bank number at the end of the program as BNKFIL. Then substitute the four commented instruction lines in the middle of FILMEM for the STA (ZP),Y at \$C024.

Routine

```

C000      ZP      =      251
C000      CHROUT =      65490
C000      BLOCK  =      1384      ; memory block to fill
C000      FILBYT =      90        ; byte to fill with
C000      NUMBER =      400      ; number of bytes to fill
C000      INDSTA =      65399    ; Kernal routine to store indirectly to any
                                ; bank (128 only)
                                ;
                                ; Fill NUMBER of bytes of memory with the
                                ; value in .A.
                                ; clear the screen
C000 A9 93      CLRCHR LDA #147
C002 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C005 A9 68      LDA  #<BLOCK      ; store memory block to fill in zero page, low
                                ; byte first
C007 85 FB      STA  ZP
C009 A2 05      LDX  #>BLOCK      ; then high byte
C00B 86 FC      STX  ZP+1
    
```


FILMEM

C00D	A2	90		LDX	#<NUMBER		; then put low byte of number of bytes to fill ; in .X
C00F	A0	01		LDY	#>NUMBER		; and high byte in .Y
C011	A9	5A		LDA	#FILBYT		; byte to fill with in .A (screen code for a ; diamond)
C013	4C	16	C0	JMP	FILMEM		; fill memory and RTS ; ; Fill memory. Enter with the number of ; bytes to move in .X (low) ; and .Y (high). Memory block is in two bytes ; at ZP.
C016	8E	3C	C0	FILMEM	STX	COUNTR	; store number to COUNTR, low byte first
C019	8C	3D	C0		STY	COUNTR+1	; then high byte
C01C	8D	3E	C0		STA	TEMPA	; store FILBYT temporarily
C01F	A0	00			LDY	#0	; index for FILLOP
C021	AD	3E	C0	FILLOP	LDA	TEMPA	; restore FILBYT in .A
C024	91	FB			STA	(ZP),Y	; store a byte into memory block ; For the 128, substitute the next four lines ; for the previous line ; to fill memory in another bank. ; LDX #ZP; put zero-page pointer to ; memory block in location 697 ; STX 697 ; LDX BNKFIL; bank number for memory ; fill ; JSR INDSTA; store into bank .X ; beginning at block ;
C026	E6	FB		INC	ZP		; increase ZP pointer by one, low byte first
C028	D0	02		BNE	DECCTR		; if low byte hasn't turned over, decrement ; the counter
C02A	E6	FC		INC	ZP+1		; increase ZP high byte
C02C	CE	3C	C0	DECCTR	DEC	COUNTR	; decrement counter low byte
C02F	D0	F0		BNE	FILLOP		; if low byte hasn't turned over, continue ; filling ; otherwise, decrement the high byte ; determine whether we've filled the last ; page
C031	CE	3D	C0		DEC	COUNTR+1	
C034	AD	3D	C0		LDA	COUNTR+1	
C037	C9	FF		CMP	#255		; on the last page, high byte of counter goes ; from 0 through 255
C039	D0	E6		BNE	FILLOP		; if not on the last page, continue ;
C03B	60			RTS			
C03C	00	00		COUNTR	.WORD	0	; two-byte counter for remaining number of ; bytes to fill
C03E	00			TEMPA	.BYTE	0	; temporary .A storage ; BNKFIL .byte 15; the bank number for ; memory fill (128 only)

Name

Find the cursor location

Description

FINDCR uses the Kernal routine **PLOT** to return the current cursor position by row (in *.X*) and column (in *.Y*). This routine is handy in game writing, especially when you're tracking a player's screen position.

Prototype

1. Set the carry flag—required by **PLOT**.
2. **JSR** to the Kernal routine **PLOT** and return (or simply **JMP** to **PLOT**).

Explanation

The example routine allows you to move about the screen by using the cursor keys or simply by typing in characters. Whenever you press **X**, its position is returned to the main program by **FINDCR**. The row and column number, separated by a space, are then printed with **NUMOUT**.

Note: Setting the carry flag and calling **PLOT** causes the cursor position to be placed in *.X* and *.Y*. Upon returning from **PLOT**, *.X* contains one fewer than the actual row number, while *.Y* contains one fewer than the column number—that is, if you're used to numbering the columns 1–40 and the rows 1–25. Programmers who start counting at zero will find the columns and rows to be just right (0–39 and 0–24, or 0–79 and 0–24 on the 80-column screen of the 128). If you're working within a window on the 128, the values returned in *.X* and *.Y* are relative to the top of the window rather than to the top of the screen.

Warning: If you use this routine within a loop indexed by *.Y* or *.X*, be sure to save the current index value to a safe location before calling it since **PLOT** affects both the *.X* and *.Y* registers.

Routine

```

C000      PLOT      =    65520      ; Kernal cursor-position routine
C000      GETIN    =    65508
C000      CHROUT   =    65490
C000      LINPRT   =    48589      ; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
;
; Print the current cursor row (0–24) and
; column (0–39) when X key is pressed.
; clear the screen
C000 A9 93      CLRCHR LDA #147
C002 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C005 20 E4 FF   LOOP  JSR  GETIN      ; get a character
C008 C9 58      CMP   #88           ; is it X?
    
```

FINDCR

```

C00A F0 06          BEQ  LOCATE      ; it's X, so determine position
C00C 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT     ; otherwise, print character
C00F 4C 05 C0      JMP  LOOP        ; and continue
C012 20 35 C0 LOCATE JSR  FINDCR     ; determine the cursor position
C015 8C 3A C0      STY  TEMPY      ; save .Y
C018 A9 58          LDA  #'X         ; print X
C01A 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT     ;
C01D A9 0D          LDA  #13        ; print RETURN
C01F 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT     ;
C022 20 30 C0      JSR  NUMOUT     ; print the row
C025 A9 20          LDA  #32        ; print space
C027 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT     ;
C02A AE 3A C0      LDX  TEMPY      ; get the column
C02D 4C 30 C0      JMP  NUMOUT     ; print the column and RTS
;
; Print the two-byte integer in .X (low byte)
; and .A (high byte).
; high byte of row or column is always zero
; here
C030 A9 00          NUMOUT LDA  #0
C032 4C CD BD      JMP  LINPRT     ; print number and RTS
;
; Locate the cursor. Return position in .X
; (row) and .Y (column).
; set carry to locate cursor
; locate the cursor
C035 38           FINDCR SEC
C036 20 F0 FF     JSR  PLOT
C039 60           RTS
;
C03A 00           TEMPY .BYTE 0 ; temporary .Y storage

```

See also PLOTCR.

Name

Find the program counter address (from a subroutine)

Description

The program counter (PC) is an internal register in the 6510 and 8502 microprocessors that keeps track of which ML instruction is currently being executed. There are times when it's necessary to find out where in memory a program is located. And, on occasion, a subroutine may need to figure out which part of the program did the original JSR. This subroutine figures out the program counter address and stores it in memory.

Prototype

1. JSR to **FINDME** (the subroutine that finds the PC).
2. Within the subroutine, use PLA twice to pull the two-byte address off the stack.
3. After storing the address somewhere, push the address back.
4. RTS.

Explanation

When you JSR (Jump to a SubRoutine), the computer has to be able to figure out the return address when an RTS (ReTurn from Subroutine) instruction ends the subroutine. So, just before jumping to the subroutine, the computer puts the return address on the stack, high byte first, followed by the low byte.

Knowing this makes it a simple matter to pull the address from the stack and store it in memory (location 829 was chosen for storage, for no particular reason except that it's available on the 64). Before the subroutine executes the RTS to get back, you must put the return address back on the stack so that the RTS will work properly.

Note: The main program that calls **FINDME** does the JSR at location \$C000. The return address should bring you back to \$C003, the next instruction after JSR **FINDME**. Actually, the address that's pushed onto the stack is \$C002 (the return address minus one). What happens during an RTS is that the address is taken from the stack and then the PC is incremented. After each instruction, the program counter counts forward, and RTS is no exception. Thus, when the address is printed, you'll see a 49154 (decimal) instead of a 49155.

FINDME

Warning: This might seem to be a convenient way to figure out the program counter value, in case you want to relocate the routine to another place in memory. The problem is that JSR uses an absolute address, so the **FINDME** subroutine must be at a known location. If you relocate the object code to \$8000, for example, the first three bytes of the program (20 0D C0) will still JSR to \$C00D. You should either load the **FINDME** routine as a separate program or limit its use to finding the address of the calling routine. Another routine (**FINDPC**) may be preferable if you're moving ML routines around and don't know where they'll be placed.

Location 829 is not available on the 128. Programmers should substitute two other consecutive free memory locations on the 128.

Routine

```
C000          IMHERE = 829          ; choose a different address for the 128
C000          LINPRT = $BDCD       ; general routine to print a two-byte unsigned
                                     ; integer
                                     ; LINPRT = $8E32 ; (substitute this for
                                     ; the 128)
                                     ;
C000 20 0D C0          JSR  FINDME          ; Now print address value.
C003 AE 3D 03          LDX  IMHERE         ; low byte
C006 AD 3E 03          LDA  IMHERE+1      ; high byte
C009 20 CD BD          JSR  LINPRT        ; print as a decimal number
C00C 60                RTS               ; all done
                                     ;
                                     ; subroutine to find address (minus 1) of
                                     ; calling routine
C00D 68                FINDME  PLA        ; pull low byte from stack
C00E 8D 3D 03          STA  IMHERE       ; store in IMHERE
C011 68                PLA        ; now get the high byte
C012 8D 3E 03          STA  IMHERE+1     ; and store in IMHERE+1
C015 48                PHA        ; put it back
C016 AD 3D 03          LDA  IMHERE       ; low byte
C019 48                PHA        ; goes back also
C01A 60                RTS               ; otherwise, this RTS won't work
```

See also FINDPC.

Name

Find the program counter address (in-line code)

Description

Most ML instructions are location-independent. LDA # $\$08$ loads an 8 into the accumulator regardless of where the instruction happens to reside in memory. But JMPs and JSRs are absolute instructions. If a program is relocated to a new section of memory, the internal JMPs and JSRs should be modified. This routine lets you find out where you are in memory, so you may make the necessary modifications.

Prototype

1. Put an RTS instruction somewhere safe in memory.
2. JSR to it, which means coming back immediately.
3. Transfer the stack pointer to $.X$.
4. Decrement $.X$ twice and put the result back in the stack pointer with TXS.
5. Pull the address from the stack.

Explanation

The JSR instruction pushes the return address (minus 1) onto the stack, which for the 6510 and 8502 microprocessors is always located in page 1. The stack builds down in memory from $\$1FF$.

The opcode for the RTS instruction is 96 (decimal), so if a 96 is stored in memory and you JSR there, the program bounces right back to where it started. But in the meantime, the stack has very briefly held the return address from the JSR. All you have to do to reset the stack pointer to the address is transfer the stack pointer to $.X$ (TSX), decrement $.X$ twice, and transfer $.X$ back to the stack pointer (TXS). PLA pulls the low byte off the stack and another PLA pulls the high byte.

Note: The resulting address is stored in the IMHERE location (location 829 is used in the example routine, but it's available only on the 64). The JSR at $\$C005$ originally put the address on the stack. The return address is $\$C008$, but the value on the stack is actually one less than that. When the transfers, decrements, and pulls are finished, the result will be a $\$07$ in IMHERE and a $\$C0$ in IMHERE+1.

FINDPC

Warning: Do *not* use this as a subroutine. If you do, you'll find the address of the subroutine instead of the routine that called it.

Locations 828-830 are not free on the 128. Substitute three other free locations for the labels FREE and IMHERE on the 128.

Routine

```
C000          FREE    =    828          ; could be any free location
C000          IMHERE  =    829          ; two bytes to store eventual program counter
                                           ; (choose other addresses for the 128)
C000 A9 60      FINDPC LDA #96          ; the object code for RTS
C002 8D 3C 03   STA FREE              ; set up the shortest subroutine, there and
                                           ; back
C005 20 3C 03   JSR  FREE              ; bouncing back (note the address)
                                           ;
C008 BA        MINUS  TSX              ; stack pointer in X
C009 CA        DEX              ; decrement once
C00A CA        DEX              ; and twice
C00B 9A        TXS              ; put it back in the stack pointer
C00C 68        PLA              ; pull one byte
C00D 8D 3D 03   STA IMHERE            ; low byte of PC into IMHERE
C010 68        PLA              ; pull the next byte
C011 8D 3E 03   STA IMHERE+1          ; high byte of PC
C014 60        RTS              ; end of this routine, normally we'd process
                                           ; address value
                                           ; The value in 829 will point to
                                           ; one byte before the label MINUS above.
```

See also FINDME.

Name

Read a joystick fire button

Description

This simple routine checks the fire button of the specified joystick.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the accumulator containing the number of the joystick whose fire button you wish to check.
2. Load the contents of the appropriate joystick register into the accumulator.
3. Test bit 4 of the accumulator by ANDing with %00010000 and RTSing to the main program. (If the zero flag is set as a result of the AND, the fire button is pressed.)

Explanation

Pressing the fire button on either joystick clears bit 4 of the corresponding joystick register. Joystick port 1 is wired to the register at 56321 (CIAPRB), while port 2 is connected to 56320 (CIAPRA). You might expect the sequence of the registers (56320–56321) to be the same as the sequence of the joystick labels (1–2), but for some reason they’re switched.

Before you call **FIREBT**, provide the joystick number in the accumulator. The routine then reads the appropriate register and returns with the zero flag set if the fire button for that joystick is being pressed.

In the example program, pressing the fire button on joystick 1 causes the border color of the screen to increment.

Routine

```

C000          CIAPRA    =    56320          ; data port register A
C000          BGCOLOR  =    53281          ; screen background color register
;
; Read joystick 1 fire button. Change screen
; color when pressed.
C000 A9 01          JOYLOP   LDA  #1          ; put joystick number in .A
C002 20 0B C0      JSR  FIREBT          ; read fire button
C005 D0 F9          BNE  JOYLOP          ; if fire button not pressed, check it again
C007 EE 21 D0      INC  BGCOLOR          ; increment screen color
C00A 60           RTS                    ; and you're done
;
; Enter the routine with joystick number
; in .A.
C00B 29 01          FIREBT   AND  #1          ; determine joystick offset
C00D AA           TAX                    ; put offset in .X
C00E BD 00 DC      LDA  CIAPRA,X        ; read joystick 1 (.X = 1) or 2 (.X = 0)
C011 29 10          AND  #%00010000     ; test fire button bit—result is zero if fired
C013 60           RTS                    ; zero flag set if fired

```

See also JOY2TO, JOY2SE, JOYSTK.

FORMAT

Name

Format a disk

Description

A disk must be formatted before it can be used. This process lays down the tracks and sectors that will later hold the programs and files you save to the disk. This routine formats a disk, preparing it for reading and writing.

Prototype

1. Open the command channel (with the Kernal SETLFS, SETNAM, and OPEN routines).
2. Send the command "N0:diskname, ID".
3. Close the file.

Explanation

This routine is the equivalent of the BASIC command OPEN 1, 8, 15, "N0:diskname, ID":CLOSE 1. The first number (the logical file number) is unimportant. The second is the disk drive number, which is almost always 8 unless you own more than one drive, in which case the device number may be 8-11. The final number is the secondary address. When you open a disk file, the secondary address is the channel number, and channel 15 is reserved for direct commands to the drive. The N0: command is short for NEW the disk. It's followed by your choice of disk name, plus the ID.

Note: If the disk has previously been formatted, you can omit the ID number. The disk will not be reformatted. Instead, the directory will be cleared and the disk will be renamed with the new disk name. As far as the disk drive is concerned, this is equivalent to reformatting the disk. Leaving off the ID speeds up the formatting process.

Warning: This program will erase everything on your disk. Experiment with it at your own risk.

Routine

C000		SETLFS	=	\$FFBA	
C000		SETNAM	=	\$FFBD	
C000		OPEN	=	\$FFC0	
C000		CLOSE	=	\$FFC3	
C000		CLRCHN	=	\$FFCC	
C000	A9 01	FORMAT	LDA	#1	; logical file (1)
C002	A2 08		LDX	#8	; disk drive is device 8
C004	A0 0F		LDY	#15	; command channel 15
C006	20 BA FF		JSR	SETLFS	; prepare to open it
C009	A9 0D		LDA	#BUFLen	; length of buffer
C00B	A2 1E		LDX	#<BUFFER	; X and Y hold the

```

C00D A0 C0          LDY #>BUFFER      ; address of the buffer
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR SETNAM      ; set name
C012 20 C0 FF      JSR OPEN        ; open it
C015 A9 01         LDA #1          ; and immediately
C017 20 C3 FF      JSR CLOSE       ; close the command channel
C01A 20 CC FF      JSR CLRCHN     ; clear the channels
C01D 60            RTS              ; all done
;
; Data area
C01E 4E 30 3A BUFFER .ASC "N0:MYDISK,MD"
; Substitute your own name for MYDISK, and
; your own ID for MD
C02A 0D            .BYTE 13
C02B              BUFLN = *-BUFFER ; RETURN character

```

See also CONCAT, COPYFL, INITLZ, RENAME, SCRATCH, VALIDT.

FRESEC

Name

Print the number of free sectors remaining on the disk

Description

FRESEC prints the number of free sectors remaining on the disk without printing the entire directory. Such a routine is useful in reporting to the user the amount of space remaining on the disk before a save is attempted.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. OPEN 1,8,0 with a directory specifier, \$0:, and a non-existent filename (SETLFS, SETNAM, and OPEN) for reading.
3. On the 128, prior to SETNAM, load .X with the bank containing the directory filename. Then JSR to SETBNK.
4. Read in and discard the first six bytes (two track and sector bytes, two link bytes, and two for the number of blocks occupied).
5. Read bytes from the disk header until a zero byte occurs.
6. Discard the two link bytes from the BLOCKS FREE entry.
7. Print the two-byte number representing the blocks free with **NUMOUT**.
8. Print the BLOCKS FREE message and close the file.

Explanation

In **FRESEC**, we use the directory name \$0:Z-£=U. This tells the computer to search the directory for any USR programs that begin with the characters Z-£. Of course, it's very unlikely that such a file exists. Not finding this filename, the computer loads the directory header and reports the number of free blocks on the disk.

To see what we mean, try this from BASIC: Just LOAD "\$0:Z-£=U",8 and list what loads.

The directory file is structured much like a BASIC program file. Within the directory, each entry (including the disk header and the BLOCKS FREE message) is comparable to a program line.

At the beginning of the directory are two bytes that act as a load address for a program. (If you LOAD "\$",8,1, the directory finds its way into 1024, which is where screen memory is located.) We have no use for these bytes, and they are discarded. The next two bytes are link bytes that point to the address of the first entry in the directory. These are equivalent to

the link bytes in a BASIC program file that point to the next program line. Again, these bytes, here associated with the disk name, are discarded.

The next two bytes represent the number of blocks occupied by that particular program entry (or filename). If the entry is the disk header, these two bytes are always zero, and we discard them.

After this, we move to the end of the disk header description by finding the next zero byte. Just as with a BASIC program, this zero byte marks the end of each line (or entry). So now, we're positioned at the beginning of the BLOCKS FREE entry. Again, the first two bytes in the entry are link bytes, and we ignore them.

Finally, we've reached our destination within the directory. The next two bytes represent the number of free sectors remaining on the disk in low-byte/high-byte form. This two-byte integer is printed out with **NUMOUT**, a space is inserted, and **BLOCKS FREE** is printed.

Our purpose accomplished, file 1 is closed and default devices are restored with **CLRCHN**.

Note: **FRESEC** currently lacks disk error checking. You can easily add this feature, if you like, by incorporating the subroutine **DERRCK** into the code. Place **DERRCK** just before **FILENM**, as noted in the source listing. Jump to **DERRCK** immediately after you have opened file 1 to the disk. Also, be sure to open the error channel (15) at the beginning of the program. (Again, this is noted in the source listing.)

On the 128, you must define and include **BNKNUM** and **BNKFNM** at the end of the program.

Routine

C000	SETLFS	=	65466	: (128 only)
C000	SETNAM	=	65469	
C000	OPEN	=	65472	
C000	CHKIN	=	65478	
C000	CHRIN	=	65487	
C000	CHROUT	=	65490	
C000	CLOSE	=	65475	
C000	CLRCHN	=	65484	
C000	LINPRT	=	48589	: LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
C000	SETBNK	=	65384	: Kernal bank number for OPEN and : filename (128 only)
C000	MMUREG	=	65280	: MMU configuration register (128 : : Read and print the number of free sectors : remaining on the disk. : : Open channel 15 here if you include disk

FRESEC

```

; error checking (DERRCK).
;
C000      FRESEC  -  *
; LDA #0; set the 128 to bank 15 (128 only)
; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
; logical file 1
; device number for disk drive
; secondary address to read
; set file parameters
; Include the following three instructions
; for the 128 only.
; LDA BNKNUM; bank number for data
; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing the
; ASCII filename
; JSR SETBNK
; length of filename
; address of filename
C009  A9 08      LDA  #FNLENG
C00B  A2 51      LDX  #<FILENM
C00D  A0 C0      LDY  #>FILENM
C00F  20 BD FF   JSR  SETNAM
C012  20 C0 FF   JSR  OPEN
; set up filename
; open the directory file for reading
;
; JSR DERRCK; Insert here for disk error
; checking
;
C015  A2 01      LDX  #1
C017  20 C6 FF   JSR  CHKIN
C01A  A2 05      LDX  #5
; take input from file 1
; discard six bytes (track and sector, link,
; and blocks occupied—two each)
C01C  20 CF FF   JSR  CHRIN
C01F  CA        DEX
C020  10 FA      BPL  TOSSIT
;
; Read information on disk header until
; zero byte is reached. What follows
; is the number of blocks occupied (two
; bytes) and BLOCKS FREE message.
; get a byte from open file
; is it a zero byte yet?
; We've reached the end of the header. The
; next two bytes are link bytes.
; discard them
C022  20 CF FF   JSR  CHRIN
C025  D0 FB     INLOOP BNE  INLOOP
;
; Print the two-byte number representing
; number of blocks remaining with
; NUMOUT.
C02D  20 CF FF   JSR  CHRIN
C030  AA        TAX
; low byte of number
C031  20 CF FF   JSR  CHRIN
; high byte of number
C034  20 CD BD   NUMOUT JSR  LINPRT
;
; Print BLOCKS FREE message.
; print a SPACE
C037  A9 20      LDA  #32
C039  20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C03C  20 CF FF   PRTLOP JSR  CHRIN
; get a character
C03F  20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
; and print it
C042  D0 F8     BNE  PRTLOP
; if not zero byte, get another character
C044  A9 0D      LDA  #13
; last character, so print a RETURN
C046  20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C049  A9 01      LDA  #1
C04B  20 C3 FF   JSR  CLOSE
; close file 1

```

```
C04E 4C CC FF      JMP  CLRCHN      ; clear all channels, restore default devices,
                  ; and return
                  ;
                  ; Insert DERRCK routine here if you're
                  ; including error checking.
                  ;
C051 24 30 3A FILENM .ASC "$0:Z-£=U" ; filename for USR program Z-£ in the
                  ; directory
C059          FNLENG = * - FILENM    ; length of filename
                  ; Include the next two variables on the 128.
                  ; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number for data
                  ; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
                  ; ASCII filename is located
```

See also DIRBYT, DIRPRG.

Name

Exit machine language and GOTO a BASIC line number

Description

There are several ways to combine machine language routines with BASIC. The most common way to call an ML program is with the SYS statement. When you're finished, RTS returns control to the BASIC program.

With the following **GOTOBL** routine, a machine language program can return to any given line number within a BASIC program. This means that if you SYS to an ML routine, you can return to the BASIC program at some point other than where you SYSed from. If you want, you can even have a series of conditional GOTOs to different BASIC line numbers within your ML program. Or you can pass a variable value to the ML routine using **PASFMV**, convert it to an integer, and GOTO the chosen line number.

Prototype

1. Store the BASIC line number you intend to go to at the end of the routine (BSLINE).
2. Within the routine itself, store the low and high bytes of the target BASIC line number in .A and .Y and store them in LINNUM.
3. Then jump into BASIC's GOTO routine.

Explanation

In the example program, **GOTOBS** performs a GOTO to line 2000 within the BASIC program. When you try the program, be sure that you have a line 2000 in memory; otherwise, you'll get an undefined line error.

GOTOBL itself is very straightforward. Within it, the target line number (BSLINE) is placed in the two-byte LINNUM (location 20 on the 64 and 22 on the 128). After this, the program jumps directly into the middle of BASIC's GOTO routine (43196 on the 64 and 23035 on the 128). We skip the part of the GOTO routine that gets the target line number since it's already provided.

Routine

```

C000          LINNUM = 20          ; LINNUM = 22 on the 128—integer line
                                ; number
C000          GOTOBS = 43196      ; GOTOBS = 23035 on the 128—GOTO the
                                ; line number in LINNUM
                                ;
                                ; Exit ML and GOTO a BASIC line.
C000 AD 0D C0 GOTOBL LDA BSLINE   ; store low byte of line number to return to
C003 85 14      STA LINNUM
C005 AC 0E C0      LDY BSLINE+1   ; now, store high byte
C008 84 15      STY LINNUM+1
C00A 4C BC A8      JMP GOTOBS     ; exit ML, GOTO BASIC line
                                ;
C00D D0 07      BSLINE .WORD2000 ; BASIC line to GOTO

```

See also PASFMV, PASMEN, PASREG, PASUSR.

GOTOCP

Name

GOTO from a character input using sequential compares and branches

Description

This is probably the fastest way to execute a routine based on a limited number of keyboard responses. Here, you simply get a character from the keyboard and check the response sequentially against a series of allowed ASCII responses. If a suitable response is found, branch to the appropriate routine.

Prototype

1. Get a keypress.
2. Compare its ASCII value with each acceptable response and branch to the appropriate routine.
3. If the response is not among those compared with, branch to step 1.

Explanation

The example program illustrates a common programming situation—checking for a Y (yes) or N (no) response. If you press Y, the screen border color changes to white. An N changes it to black.

As it's currently written, the routine checks for two characters. But additional *CMP #ASCII value:BEQ routine address* instructions can be added if you need to check for more keys.

If many characters are checked for, place the *CMP* and *BEQ* steps for the most commonly pressed keys early in the code. This will speed execution of the routine slightly.

If the routines you wish to execute lie outside the range of the branch instruction (128 bytes backward or 127 bytes forward), you can use *GOTOST*. Or, you can use a *CMP #ASCII value: BNE next compare: JMP routine address* arrangement instead.

Routine

```
C000          GETIN    =    65508
C000          EXTCOL  =    53280          ; border color register
;
; Limit input to Y or N. Then, go to
; appropriate routine.
C000 20 E4 FF GOTOCP JSR   GETIN      ; get a character from keyboard
C003 C9 4E          CMP   #78        ; is it N?
C005 F0 09          BEQ  ROUTEN     ; N was pressed, so go to NO routine
C007 C9 59          CMP   #89        ; is it Y?
```

```

C009 D0 F5          BNE GTOCP      ; neither N nor Y, so get another key
C00B A9 01          ROUTEY LDA #1      ; If Y, fall through to ROUTEY.
C00D 4C 15 C0      JMP BORCOL    ; Y routine
C010 A9 00          ROUTEN LDA #0      ; change border color to white
C012 4C 15 C0      JMP BORCOL    ; N routine
                                   ; change border color to black
                                   ;
                                   ; Set border color. Enter with color value
                                   ; in .A.
                                   ; set register

C015 8D 20 D0 BORCOL STA EXTCOL
C018 60            RTS

```

See also GOTOST.

GOTOST

Name

GOTO from a character input and execute using the stack

Description

GOTOST, like **GOTOCP**, checks for limited keypresses, executing a certain routine based on the response. The approach taken here is preferred, however, when the number of keypresses and corresponding routines is lengthy.

As with **GOTOCP**, we begin by getting a character from the keyboard. At this point (in **CHKLOP**), we check the response against a number of suitable characters in a table (**KEYS**). If the incoming key is in the table, we go to the appropriate routine by placing its address, less one, on the stack and executing an **RTS**. The **RTS** causes the program to jump to the chosen routine.

The location of each acceptable routine is listed in a table of two-byte addresses (labeled **ROUTES**) at **\$C02C**. These addresses are automatically calculated by the assembler.

Prototype

1. Get a keypress.
2. Check the key entered against a table of allowed character input.
3. If the input key is the same as a character in the table, use its relative position in the table to determine the address of the corresponding routine.
4. Push the high and low address bytes of the selected routine onto the stack.
5. Execute an **RTS**, thereby jumping to the chosen routine.

Explanation

The following program demonstrates this routine by checking for an **A** or a **B** keypress. If **A** is pressed, the background color of the screen is cycled through the available colors; if **B** is pressed, the border color rotates. If neither key is pressed, the program gets another keypress.

Note: The table of acceptable characters can contain the entire ASCII set (as many as 255 characters), if you like. To speed execution of the routine, place the characters representing the more likely responses at the beginning of the table.

Routine

C000	GETIN	=	65508	
C000	BGCOL0	=	53281	; text-screen background color register 0
C000	EXTCOL	=	53280	; text-screen border color register
				;

```

; Check for keys in table and execute
; appropriate routine using stack.
; Change (A) background or (B) border color.
; check for keys, and execute appropriate
; routine
C000 4C 03 C0 LOOP JMP GOTOST

C003 20 E4 FF GOTOST JSR GETIN ; get ASCII key value
C006 A2 00 LDX #0
C008 DD 30 C0 CHKLOP CMP KEYS,X ; check each character in table
C00B F0 07 BEQ FOUND ; if found
C00D E8 INX
C00E E0 02 CPX #NUMKEY ; check key number
C010 D0 F6 BNE CHKLOP ; if more in table, check next character
C012 F0 EF BEQ GOTOST ; if no match, get another keypress
C014 8A FOUND TXA ; character key has been pressed
C015 0A ASL ; double its value since routines are at two-
; byte addresses

C016 AA TAX
C017 BD 2D C0 LDA ROUTES+1,X ; get high byte of routine address
C01A 48 PHA ; push it on stack
C01B BD 2C C0 LDA ROUTES,X ; push low byte
C01E 48 PHA
C01F 60 RTS ; RTS causes program to return to last
; address on stack plus one
;
; Routines for A and B follow.
C020 EE 21 D0 BCKCOL INC BGCOL0 ; cycle background color
C023 4C 00 C0 JMP LOOP ; and get another keypress
;
C026 EE 20 D0 BORCOL INC EXTCOL ; cycle border color
C029 4C 00 C0 JMP LOOP ; and get another keypress
;
C02C 1F C0 25 ROUTES .WORD BCKCOL-1,BORCOL-1
; two-byte addresses of each routine minus 1
C030 41 42 KEYS .ASC "AB" ; list of acceptable keystrokes
C032 NUMKEY = *-KEYS ; number of acceptable keys

```

See also GOTOCP.

HIDBIT

Name

Hide a two-byte instruction with the BIT instruction

Description

The BIT instruction tests one value against another, but apart from setting a few status register flags, it changes the contents of neither the registers nor memory. Because it is almost a do-nothing command, BIT can be used to hide a two-byte instruction.

Prototype

1. Precede each instruction in a series with a .BYTE \$2C.
2. Jump or branch into the list at various entry points.

Explanation

Suppose you saw the following fragment in a machine language routine. What would it do?

```
033C LDA #$41
033E BIT $42A9
0341 JSR $FFD2
```

If you enter it at \$033C, the routine will put the ASCII value of *A* into the accumulator, perform a BIT, and then print the accumulator value. But what is the significance of the comparison with location \$42A9? There is none. It doesn't matter what value is found at \$42A9, and it doesn't matter that the N, Z, and V flags are affected by the BIT instruction.

Instead, the BIT instruction hides the two bytes \$A9 and \$42 (stored low byte first, of course). Those two bytes combine to form the instruction LDA #\$42. So if you enter the routine just past the BIT instruction (at location \$033F), the routine prints the letter *B*. As a single routine, it prints either an *A* or a *B*. There's no shorter way to write a two-in-one (or more) routine.

One valuable application for this little trick is in extending the range of branch instructions. A BEQ or BNE can branch forward 127 bytes or backward 128. But if you hide an additional BEQ or BNE inside a BIT, you can increase the range of a branch.

Routine

```
C000          ZP          =    $FB
C000          GETIN      =    $FFE4
C000          CHROUT     =    $FFD2

C000 20 E4 FF ENTRY    JSR   GETIN      ; get a key
C003 F0 FB          BEQ   ENTRY      ; go back if no key pressed
;
```

```

C005 C9 31      HIDBIT    CMP    #49          ; the 1 key?
C007 F0 0D      BEQ    KEY1        ; branch ahead
C009 C9 32      CMP    #50          ; is it a 2?
C00B F0 0C      BEQ    KEY2        ; branch ahead
C00D C9 33      CMP    #51          ; check for 3
C00F F0 0B      BEQ    KEY3        ; yes, it is
C011 C9 34      CMP    #52          ; now a 4
C013 F0 0A      BEQ    KEY4        ; another branch
C015 2C         .BYTE $2C      ; the BIT instruction
C016 A9 93      KEY1     LDA    #147        ; clear screen for 1
C018 2C         .BYTE $2C
C019 A9 12      KEY2     LDA    #18          ; reverse on for 2
C01B 2C         .BYTE $2C
C01C E6 FB      KEY3     INC    ZP          ; another two-byte instruction for 3
C01E 2C         .BYTE $2C
C01F F0 06      KEY4     BEQ    QUIT        ; two bytes hiding another BEQ (always
                                ; equal if we get here)
C021 20 D2 FF      JSR    CHROUT      ; print a key
C024 4C 00 C0      JMP    ENTRY      ; and jump back
C027 60         QUIT     RTS

```

Name

Fill high-resolution color memory

Description

In machine language, setting up a high-resolution graphics screen on the 64 or 128 is a multistep process. The 16K video bank where the screen is to be located is selected (**VIDBNK**), bitmap mode is enabled (**BITMAP**), and the newly created screen is cleared (**CLRHS** or **CLRHRF**).

In addition, before you draw anything on this screen, the foreground color—the color of the individual pixels or dots on the screen—and the background color must be assigned. Just as **COLFIL** fills color memory for a text screen, **HRCOLF** fills the 1000-byte area of memory associated with the standard high-resolution screen (as opposed to a multicolor-mode screen).

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the foreground color value in the accumulator and the background color value in **.X**.
2. Store the **.X** register contents into a temporary location.
3. Shift the low nybble of the accumulator into its high nybble.
4. OR in the temporary location so that the accumulator contains the foreground color in its high nybble and the background color in its low nybble.
5. Within a loop, store **.A** in all 1000 bytes representing high-resolution color memory and return to the main program.

Explanation

The example program sets up a high-resolution graphics screen (or bitmap) at the start of video bank 1—location 16384 to be exact. Color memory for this screen directly follows.

Placing the bitmap screen in a video bank other than bank 0 makes the code a little more involved, especially on the 128. Above 16383, memory in bank 15 on the 128 consists only of ROM, although **POKE**ing values into locations 16384 or higher of bank 15 causes whatever is being stored to go into bank 0 RAM. And this, among other reasons, requires us to treat the 128 version differently, as you'll soon see. (For comparison purposes, you might look at the program under **CLRHRF**, which creates a high-resolution graphics screen at location 8192.)

Initially, on the 64, the contents of the VIC-II chip mem-

ory control register, or VMCSB at 53272, are saved to a temporary location. This register contains the offset address within the current video bank for the character set (in its low nybble) and the text screen (in its high nybble). By saving it out in this manner, we'll later be able to restore the text screen when we exit bitmap mode.

On the 128, you don't need to save VMCSB. The reason is that on this machine VMCSB takes its value during each IRQ interrupt from one of two shadow registers. In text mode, this register is VM1 at 2604, while in bitmap mode it's VM2 at 2605. Since we never alter VM1 in the program, we don't need to worry about storing it (or VMCSB).

Next, a value of %10000000 is stored into VMCSB (into VM2 on the 128, since this register gets copied to VMCSB when we enter bitmap mode). The high nybble of VMCSB (or VM2) still points to the offset address for the text screen, but in normal bitmap mode, the text screen is actually color memory for the graphics screen. So storing an \$8 high nybble offsets color memory by 8K in the video bank we're about to choose (bank 1). This places color memory for the bitmap screen at 24576. (Video bank 1 starts at 16384, and the \$8 in the high nybble of the VMCSB register sets color memory 8×1024 bytes higher than the base.)

Only bit 3 of the low nybble of VMCSB (or VM2 on the 128) is significant in bitmap mode. This bit is the 8K offset to the bitmap screen within the current video bank. It tells the computer whether the bitmap screen is to be located in the first half of the video bank (if set to zero) or in the second half (if set to one). And in this case, since we're placing the screen in the first half, starting at 16384, bit 3 is cleared.

After establishing the offset address of the high-resolution graphics screen and its color memory within the video bank, we actually assign a video bank number of 1 (defined as BNKNUM) using **VIDBNK**. Then we enter bitmap mode with **BITMAP**. On the 128, in this routine be sure to replace **SCROLY** at 53265 with its shadow register **GRAPHM** at 216. (See **BITMAP** for details on why this is done.)

After this, the high-resolution screen we've created is cleared with **CLRHR**, a method employing self-modifying code which fills the screen with zeros. See **CLRHR** for an explanation. (Using **CLRHRF** is another option.)

On the 128, just before clearing the screen, you can insert an **STA MMUREG + 1**. This instruction causes the computer to

be placed into bank 0 as long as the accumulator contains a nonzero value. And, of course, this is where our bitmap resides on the 128. (Recall that above 16383, bank 15 is ROM.) So, if you PEEK the high-resolution screen here, you'll see its contents, rather than ROM, in bank 15.

At this point in the program, we use the current routine, **HRCOLF**, to fill color memory with bytes representing medium gray on black. Each byte of color memory, assigned to an 8×8 group of pixels on the bitmap, contains the foreground color value for these pixels in its high nybble and their background color value in the low nybble. The relative color values, defined as **FORECL** and **BACKCL** in the equates, are passed to the routine in **.A** and **.X**. (See **COLFIL** for a table of colors and their corresponding values.)

HRCOLF combines the two color values into a single byte and fills color memory with this byte within **HRCLOP**. The code for this memory-filling loop is similar to that used elsewhere in this book, and no description is needed here (see **CLRFIL** and **COLFIL**).

After color memory is filled, the program awaits a keypress before returning you to the normal text screen. The Kernal routine **GETIN** is used to fetch this keypress.

Since the Kernal is not present in bank 0, 128 users must switch to a bank where the Kernal is available. Here, we switch to bank 15 by storing a zero into the MMU configuration register at 65280. On a 128, add **LDA #0:STA MMUREG** to the code before calling **GETIN**.

When a key is pressed, **BITMAP** disables bitmap mode, and **VIDBNK** puts you back into the original 16K video bank (assumed to be bank 0, defined as **BNKNM0**). Commodore 128 users should see the normal text screen almost immediately as **VM1** is copied to **VMCSB** on the next **IRQ** interrupt. But 64 users must physically reset the **VIC-II** chip memory control register before it becomes visible.

Routine

C000	ZP	=	251	
C000	GETIN	=	65508	
C000	VMCSB	=	53272	; VIC-II chip memory control register
C000	SCROLY	=	53265	; scroll/control register—use GRAPHM =
				; 216 on the 128
C000	C12PRA	=	56576	; CIA 2 data port register A
C000	C2DDRA	=	56578	; CIA 2 data direction register A
C000	FORECL	=	12	; for medium-gray foreground
C000	BACKCL	=	0	; for black background
C000	SCREEN	=	24576	; start of hi-res color memory

```

C000          MMUREG = 65280 ; MMU configuration register (128 only)
C000          VM2   = 2605  ; VIC-II chip memory control shadow register
                          ; (128 only)
                          ;
                          ; Locate hi-res screen at 16384 and clear it,
                          ; color memory (gray on black)
                          ; at 24576. Enable/disable bitmap mode with
                          ; BITMAP, clear hi-res screen
                          ; with CLRHR5, and fill color memory with
                          ; HRCOLF.
C000 AD 18 D0          LDA VMCSB ; temporarily save VMCSB (64 only)
C003 8D 8F C0          STA TEMP ; (64 only)
                          ; Now offset bitmap by 0K in video bank,
                          ; locating color at 24K.
C006 A9 80            LDA #%10000000 ; LDA #%0xxx1000 if hi-res screen is in
                          ; second half of video bank
C008 8D 18 D0          STA VMCSB ; reset register (replace VMCSB with VM2 on
                          ; the 128)
                          ; Now choose bank number.
C00B AD 91 C0          LDA BNKNUM ; .A contains bank 0-3
C00E 20 76 C0          JSR VIDBNK ; select video bank 1
C011 20 6D C0          JSR BITMAP ; enter bitmap mode
                          ; STA MMUREG+1; set the 128 to bank 0
                          ; (128 only)
C014 20 33 C0          JSR CLRHR5 ; clear the hi-res screen
C017 A9 0C            LDA #FORECL ; foreground color for hi-res screen
C019 A2 00            LDX #BACKCL ; and background color
C01B 20 51 C0          JSR HRCOLF ; clear hi-res color memory
                          ; LDA #0; set the 128 to bank 15 (128 only)
                          ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
C01E 20 E4 FF WAIT    JSR GETIN  ; get a keypress
C021 F0 FB            BEQ WAIT  ; if no keypress, then wait
C023 20 6D C0          JSR BITMAP ; turn off bitmap mode
C026 AD 92 C0          LDA BNKNM0 ; return to original video bank; .A contains
                          ; bank 0-3
C029 20 76 C0          JSR VIDBNK ; select bank 0
                          ;
                          ; Reset pointer to character set.
C02C AD 8F C0          LDA TEMP  ; (64 only)
C02F 8D 18 D0          STA VMCSB ; (64 only)
C032 60                RTS
                          ;
                          ; Clear the hi-res screen with a self-
                          ; modifying code method.
C033 AD 8E C0 CLRHR5 LDA HRSCRN+1 ; store hi-res screen address in dummy
                          ; location—$FFFF
C036 8D 46 C0          STA LOOP+2
C039 AD 8D C0          LDA HRSCRN
C03C 8D 45 C0          STA LOOP+1
                          ; Fill 32 pages with zeros.
C03F A9 00            LDA #0
C041 A8                TAY
C042 A2 20            LDX #32 ; 32 pages
C044 99 FF FF LOOP    STA $FFFF,Y ; fill a block of 256 bytes with zeros
C047 C8                INY
C048 D0 FA            BNE LOOP
C04A EE 46 C0          INC LOOP+2 ; page filled, so increase high-byte pointer
C04D CA                DEX
C04E D0 F4            BNE LOOP ; to fill all pages
C050 60                RTS
                          ;
                          ; Clear hi-res color memory to FORECL on
                          ; BACKCL.

```

HRCOLF

```

C051 8E 90 C0 HRCOLF STX  TEMPX      ; store BACKCL in .X temporarily
C054 0A              ASL              ; shift low nybble of FORECL into high
                                   ; nybble

C055 0A              ASL
C056 0A              ASL
C057 0A              ASL
C058 0D 90 C0      ORA  TEMPX      ; .A now contains foreground color in high
                                   ; nybble, background in low nybble

C05B A0 FA              LDY  #250
C05D 88              HRCLOP  DEY
C05E 99 00 60      STA  SCREEN,Y      ; first quarter
C061 99 FA 60      STA  SCREEN+250,Y
                                   ; second quarter
C064 99 F4 61      STA  SCREEN+500,Y
                                   ; third quarter
C067 99 EE 62      STA  SCREEN+750,Y
                                   ; fourth quarter
C06A D0 F1              BNE  HRCLOP      ; fill all 250 bytes with color byte
C06C 60              RTS

C06D AD 11 D0  BITMAP LDA  SCROLY      ; Enable/disable bitmap mode.
                                   ; substitute GRAPHM for SCROLY on the
                                   ; 128
C070 49 20              EOR  #%00100000      ; flip bit 5
C072 8D 11 D0      STA  SCROLY      ; reset register (again use GRAPHM instead
                                   ; of SCROLY on the 128)

C075 60              RTS

                                   ;
                                   ; Select a 16K video bank. .A comes in
                                   ; containing the chosen bank number.
                                   ; effectively (3 - bank number)
                                   ; store it temporarily
                                   ; set data direction register for output

C076 49 03              VIDBNK EOR  #3
C078 85 FB              STA  ZP
C07A AD 02 DD      LDA  C2DDRA
C07D 09 03              ORA  #3
C07F 8D 02 DD      STA  C2DDRA

C082 AD 00 DD      LDA  C12PRA      ; take current C12PRA value
C085 29 FC              AND  #252      ; and keep bits 2-7
C087 05 FB              ORA  ZP      ; OR with (3 - bank number)
C089 8D 00 DD      STA  C12PRA      ; reset register
C08C 60              RTS

C08D 00 40              HRSCRN .WORD 16384      ; locate hi-res screen
C08F 00              TEMP  .BYTE 0      ; temporary storage for VMCSB configuration
C090 00              TEMPX .BYTE 0      ; temporary storage for .X
C091 01              BNKNUM .BYTE 1      ; bank 1
C092 00              BNKNM0 .BYTE 0      ; bank 0 or original bank

```

See also BITMAP, CLRHRF, CLRHRS, HRPOLR, HRSETP, PAINT.

Name

Set or clear a point on the hi-res screen based on polar coordinates

Description

Polar coordinates use two numbers, an angle and a distance value, to describe a position on a (usually circular) grid.

HRPOLR translates these two numbers into a point on the hi-res screen and turns the point on or off.

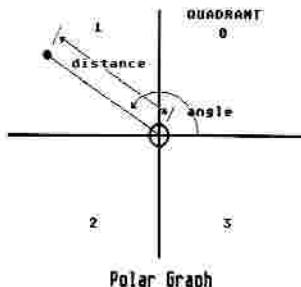
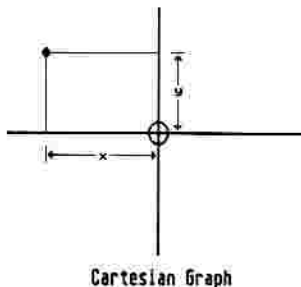
Prototype

1. Before beginning, create two lookup tables—one for 64 sine values, the other for 64 cosines (details below).
2. Start by looking up the sine (or cosine), based on the quadrant (0–3). Although this is a number in the range 0–255, it is treated as if it had a leading decimal point.
3. Multiply by LENGTH to find the x coordinate.
4. Add or subtract from the origin XORG and save the number.
5. Repeat the steps above, substituting cosine (or sine) to find the y coordinate.
6. Plot the resulting point on the hi-res screen.

Explanation

To locate a point on a one-dimensional line, you need a single number representing the distance from the origin. On a two-dimensional flat plane, such as the hi-res screen, you need two numbers. The most common way to describe a point is to use the orthogonal Cartesian coordinate system (named for the French mathematician and philosopher René Descartes), which has two axes and x and y coordinates. A second, equally valid, method for plotting a point is to use polar coordinates, where the two numbers are an angle and a distance value. In the figure, the same point can be described in either Cartesian or polar terms.

Describing a Point



Angles are customarily measured in degrees (360 per circle) or radians (2π per circle). Both systems are rather arbitrary, and neither is especially well-suited to machine language. So a third method has been employed in the example routine, one that uses 256 "slices" per circle. Call these **MLDegrees**. Note that a right angle, which is 90 degrees or 0.5π radians, is 64 **MLDegrees**. The advantage of this system is that an angle can be described by single byte. Also, by examining the two highest bits of the angle value, you can tell which quadrant the angle inhabits.

The **HRSETP** subroutine, which calculates and turns on a pixel, is described elsewhere in this book. The **MUL16** subroutine is basically the same as the **MULSHF** routine.

Before calling this routine, you have to create two lookup tables for the sine and cosine tables. Use the following short BASIC program:

```
10 FOR J=0 TO 63: RAD=J*(π/128): C=INT(COS
  (RAD)*256): S=INT(SIN(RAD)*256)
20 POKE 52992+J,C: POKE 53056+J,S: NEXT: END
```

This creates the cosine value table at 52992-53055 and the sine value table at 53056-53119. You can also include these values as a series of **.BYTE** statements, or they can be loaded from a disk file.

The two example routines draw a circle and a spiral. The circle routine keeps the length constant while stepping through the angles from 0 through 255 slices. The spiral pro-

gram does the same thing, but the length gradually decreases as the program runs.

Note: Before using this routine on the 128, enter POKE 216,255 or add the appropriate LDA and STA to the beginning of the program. Also, in the BASIC setup routine, substitute location 4864 for 52992 and location 4928 for 53056. These two locations, used for the table of sines and cosines, should be changed in the equates as well.

Routine

```

C000          Z1          =    251          ; pointer to the particular byte to be changed
C000          HRSCRN     =   $2000        ; screen is at 8192 decimal
C000          HRCOLR     =   $0400        ; color memory at 1024
C000          GETIN      =   $FFE4
C000          COSINE     =   52992        ; address of cosine value table
C000          SINE       =   53056        ; address of sine value table
;
C000  20  64  C1          JSR  HRSETUP     ; set up and clear the hi-res screen and color
; memory
C003  20  12  C0          JSR  CIRCLE     ; plot a circle
C006  20  2D  C0          JSR  SPIRAL     ; and a spiral
C009  20  E4  FF  LOOPG   JSR  GETIN      ; wait
C00C  F0  FB
C00E  20  9F  C1          JSR  HRCLEAR    ; turn off hi-res screen and restore to normal
C011  60
;
C012  A9  00          CIRCLE  LDA  #0
C014  8D  CA  C0          STA  ANGLE     ; start at angle of 0
C017  A9  63          LDA  #99        ; length of 99
C019  8D  CB  C0          STA  LENGTH
C01C  20  24  C0          JSR  CIRLP
C01F  A9  32          LDA  #50        ; down below
C021  8D  CB  C0          STA  LENGTH     ; second circle, radius of 50
C024  20  4A  C0  CIRLP   JSR  HRPOLR
C027  EE  CA  C0          INC  ANGLE
C02A  D0  F8          BNE  CIRLP
C02C  60
;
C02D  A9  00          SPIRAL  LDA  #0
C02F  8D  CA  C0          STA  ANGLE     ; angle starts at 0
C032  A9  64          LDA  #100
C034  8D  CB  C0          STA  LENGTH     ; length is 100
C037  20  4A  C0  SPLOOP  JSR  HRPOLR     ; plot it
C03A  EE  CA  C0          INC  ANGLE     ; add 1 to the angle
C03D  AD  CA  C0          LDA  ANGLE
C040  29  0F          AND  #15        ; every 16 slices, the length decreases by 1
C042  D0  F3          BNE  SPLOOP
C044  CE  CB  C0          DEC  LENGTH     ; length minus 1
C047  D0  EE          BNE  SPLOOP     ; and loop back until 0
C049  60          RTS          ; done
;
C04A  AD  CA  C0  HRPOLR  LDA  ANGLE     ; find the angle
C04D  29  3F          AND  #$3F        ; strip off bits 6 and 7
C04F  AA          TAX          ; look up
C050  BD  00  CF          LDA  COSINE,X   ; the cosine (0-255) from a table
C053  2C  CA  C0          BIT  ANGLE     ; check for quad 1 and 3
C056  50  03          BVC  XXX        ; OK if 0 or 2
C058  BD  40  CF          LDA  SINE,X
C05B  8D  DD  C1  XXX    STA  B1         ; else, load the sine
; get ready to multiply

```

HRPOLR

```

C05E AD CB C0          LDA LENGTH
C061 8D DE C1          STA B2          ; length in byte 2
C064 20 AF C1          JSR MUL16        ; multiply them
C067 AD CA C0          LDA ANGLE        ; check quadrant
C06A 29 C0             AND #%11000000 ; bits 6 and 7 are important
C06C F0 11             BEQ PLUSX        ; two zeros
C06E C9 C0             CMP #$C0        ; or two ones
C070 F0 0D             BEQ PLUSX        ; mean add to XORG
C072 AD CC C0          LDA XORG        ; else, subtract
C075 38                SEC
C076 ED E0 C1          SBC TM+1        ; the high byte
C079 8D CE C0          STA REALX       ; and save it
C07C 4C 89 C0          JMP CHECKY      ; now do the y location
C07F AD CC C0          LDA XORG        ; quadrant 0 or 3
C082 18                CLC
C083 6D E0 C1          ADC TM+1        ; add the high byte
C086 8D CE C0          STA REALX       ; and store it
;
C089 AD CA C0          CHECKY LDA ANGLE        ; get the angle again
C08C 29 3F             AND #$3F        ; bits 0-5
C08E AA                TAX
C08F BD 40 CF          LDA SINE,X      ; get the sine
C092 2C CA C0          BIT ANGLE      ; check the quadrant
C095 50 03             BVC YYY
C097 BD 00 CF          LDA COSINE,X   ; else, get the cosine
C09A 8D DD C1          STA B1         ; store it for multiplying
C09D AD CB C0          LDA LENGTH     ; the length
C0A0 8D DE C1          STA B2         ; also
C0A3 20 AF C1          JSR MUL16      ; multiply them
C0A6 AD CD C0          LDA YORG       ; get y origin
C0A9 2C CA C0          BIT ANGLE      ; test the angle
C0AC 10 0A             BPL SUBTRACT   ; 128-255 mean subtract
C0AE 18                CLC
C0AF 6D E0 C1          ADC TM+1        ; add the high byte
C0B2 8D CF C0          STA REALY     ; and store
C0B5 4C BF C0          JMP FORWD     ; skip the subtracting
C0B8 38                SEC
C0B9 ED E0 C1          SUBTRACT SBC TM+1 ; subtract from YORG
C0BC 8D CF C0          STA REALY
;
C0BF AE CE C0          FORWD  LDX REALX     ; get the point's x
C0C2 AC CF C0          LDY REALY     ; and y positions
C0C5 18                CLC
C0C6 20 D0 C0          JSR HRSETP    ; and turn on the point
C0C9 60                RTS
;
C0CA 00                ANGLE .BYTE 0
C0CB 00                LENGTH .BYTE 0
C0CC 64                XORG .BYTE 100 ; the center of the plotting area
C0CD 64                YORG .BYTE 100 ; same for y
C0CE 00                REALX .BYTE 0
C0CF 00                REALY .BYTE 0
;
C0D0                HRSETP = * ; set a point on the hi-res screen
; based on values in .X, .Y, and the carry flag
C0D0 20 3D C1          JSR SVREGS    ; save the registers
C0D3 20 DD C0          JSR HRCALC   ; calculate the location (in Z1) and the bit
; pattern (MASK)
C0D6 20 27 C1          JSR POINT1   ; (substitute POINT0 for turning off a pixel)
C0D9 20 50 C1          JSR LDREGS   ; restore the registers
C0DC 60                RTS
;
C0DD 08                HRCALC PHP ; save the status register

```

```

CODE A9 00      LDA #<HRSCRN ; initialize Z1
COE0 85 FB      STA Z1 ; to point to
COE2 A9 20      LDA #>HRSCRN ; the hi-res screen
COE4 85 FC      STA Z1+1
COE6 98         TYA ; handle the row
COE7 29 07      AND #7 ; mask out the three low bits
COE9 05 FB      ORA Z1 ; and add them to Z1
COEB 85 FB      STA Z1
COED 98         TYA ; get .Y again
COEE 4A         LSR ; shift right
COEF 4A         LSR ; three
COF0 4A         LSR ; times
COF1 A8         TAY ; now .Y is a counter for adding 320
COF2 F0 10      BEQ ROWEND ; if 0, skip the next part
COF4 A9 40      ROWLP LDA #<320 ; low byte of 320
COF6 18         CLC
COF7 65 FB      ADC Z1 ; add to Z1
COF9 85 FB      STA Z1 ; store it
COFB A9 01      LDA #>320 ; high byte
COFD 65 FC      ADC Z1+1 ; add to Z1
COFF 85 FC      STA Z1+1
C101 88         DEY ; loop back
C102 D0 F0      BNE ROWLP

; Z1 now points to the left edge of the hi-res
; screen (1 of 200 rows).
;
;
C104 28         ROWEND PLP ; retrieve the carry flag
C105 90 02      BCC TIMEX ; if clear, the left side of the seam
C107 E6 FC      INC Z1+1 ; otherwise, add 256 to the pointer
C109 8A         TIMEX TXA ; now do .X, the column
C10A 29 F8      AND #%11111000 ; mask off 0-7 (the individual bits)
C10C 18         CLC
C10D 65 FB      ADC Z1 ; add to Z1
C10F 85 FB      STA Z1 ; store it
C111 90 02      BCC NOMORE ; if carry is clear,
C113 E6 FC      INC Z1+1 ; skip this INC
C115 A9 80      NOMORE LDA #$80 ; now set up mask
C117 8D 63      C1 STA MASK
C11A 8A         TXA ; return .X to .A
C11B 29 07      AND #%00000111 ; bottom three bits (0-7 value)
C11D F0 07      BEQ CLOSEUP ; if zero, skip it
C11F AA         TAX ; otherwise, set up .X for a counter
C120 4E 63      C1 XLOOP LSR MASK ; move it right
C123 CA         DEX ; count down
C124 D0 FA      BNE XLOOP
C126 60         CLOSEUP RTS ; Finished. Z1 points to the byte and MASK
; holds the bitmask.
;
;
C127 A0 00      POINT1 LDY #0 ; this sets a point on the screen
C129 AD 63      C1 LDA MASK ; get the mask
C12C 11 FB      ORA (Z1),Y ; turn on a pixel
C12E 91 FB      STA (Z1),Y ; put it on the screen
C130 60         RTS ; and that's all
;
;
C131 A0 00      POINT0 LDY #0 ; almost the same as POINT1, but it clears a
; pixel
C133 AD 63      C1 LDA MASK ; get the bitmask
C136 49 FF      EOR #$FF ; flip the bits
C138 31 FB      AND (Z1),Y ; AND instead of OR
C13A 91 FB      STA (Z1),Y ; store it
C13C 60         RTS ; finished
;
;
C13D 08         SVREGS PHP ; first save .P
C13E 48         PHA ; then .A

```


HRPOLR

```

C13F 08          PHP          ; then .P again
C140 8D 5F C1   STA  TEMPA    ; save .A
C143 8E 60 C1   STX  TEMPX    ; .X
C146 8C 61 C1   STY  TEMPY    ; and .Y
C149 68         PLA          ; pull .P into .A
C14A 8D 62 C1   STA  TEMPP    ; store it
C14D 68         PLA          ; get .A again
C14E 28         PLP          ; and .P
C14F 60         RTS          ;

C150 AE 60 C1 LDREGS LDX  TEMPX    ; restore .X
C153 AC 61 C1   LDY  TEMPY    ; and .Y
C156 AD 62 C1   LDA  TEMPP    ; get .P
C159 48         PHA          ; push it
C15A AD 5F C1   LDA  TEMPA    ; get .A back
C15D 28         PLP          ; and restore .P
C15E 60         RTS          ; done
;

C15F 00         TEMPA  .BYTE 0
C160 00         TEMPX  .BYTE 0
C161 00         TEMPY  .BYTE 0
C162 00         TEMPP  .BYTE 0
C163 00         MASK   .BYTE 0
;

C164 A9 3B          HRSETUP LDA  #59          ; to set up the hi-res screen at $2000
C166 8D 11 D0      STA  53265      ; put a 59 into 53265
C169 A9 18         LDA  #24          ;
C16B 8D 18 D0      STA  53272      ; and a 24 into 53272
C16E A9 10         LDA  #$10        ; white and black
C170 A0 00         LDY  #0          ; index into color memory
C172 99 00 04 COLLP STA  HRCOLR,Y
C175 99 FA 04     STA  HRCOLR+250,Y
C178 99 F4 05     STA  HRCOLR+500,Y
C17B 99 EE 06     STA  HRCOLR+750,Y
C17E C8          INY
C17F C0 FA       CPY  #250         ; fill 1000 bytes
C181 D0 EF       BNE  COLLP
;

C183 A9 00         LDA  #<HRSCRN    ; now set up the clear screen routine
C185 8D 93 C1     STA  FAKE+1
C188 A9 20         LDA  #>HRSCRN    ; high byte
C18A 8D 94 C1     STA  FAKE+2
C18D A2 20         LDX  #32         ; 32 pages
C18F A0 00         LDY  #0
C191 98          TYA          ; zero for cleared bits
C192 99 FF FF FAKE STA  $FFFF,Y
C195 C8          INY
C196 D0 FA       BNE  FAKE
C198 EE 94 C1     INC  FAKE+2      ; increment the high byte
C19B CA          DEX
C19C D0 F4       BNE  FAKE
C19E 60         RTS
;

C19F A9 1B          HRCLEAR LDA  #27          ; turn off hi-res
C1A1 8D 11 D0      STA  53265      ; 27 into 53265
C1A4 A9 15         LDA  #21          ;
C1A6 8D 18 D0      STA  53272      ; 21 into 53272
C1A9 A9 93         LDA  #147         ; clear screen
C1AB 20 D2 FF     JSR  $FFD2
C1AE 60         RTS
C1AF          =  *          ; multiplies two numbers
C1AF A9 00         LDA  #0          ; zero out
C1B1 8D DF C1     STA  TM          ; low byte

```

```

C1B4 8D E0 C1          STA  TM+1      ; and high byte of the result
C1B7 A2 08             LDX  #8        ; eight cycles
C1B9 AD DD C1  MULSTR LDA  B1
C1BC 2E DE C1          ROL  B2        ; multiply or not?
C1BF 90 0F             BCC  NOMULT    ; no, it's a zero
C1C1 18               CLC
C1C2 6D DF C1          ADC  TM        ; add B1 to TM
C1C5 8D DF C1          STA  TM        ; store it
C1C8 A9 00             LDA  #0        ; and the
C1CA 6D E0 C1          ADC  TM+1      ; high byte
C1CD 8D E0 C1          STA  TM+1      ; in TM
C1D0 CA               NOMULT DEX      ; count down (eight bits)
C1D1 D0 01             BNE  MLMORE    ; not equal yet
C1D3 60               RTS          ; the main return of MUL16
C1D4 0E DF C1  MLMORE ASL  TM        ; move it left
C1D7 2E E0 C1          ROL  TM+1      ; and the high byte
C1DA 4C B9 C1          JMP  MULSTR    ; go back
;
C1DD 00               B1      .BYTE 0
C1DE 00               B2      .BYTE 0
C1DF 00 00           TM      .BYTE 0,0

```

See also BITMAP, CLRHRF, CLRHRS, HRCOLF, HRSETP, PAINT.

Name

Set or clear a point on the hi-res screen

Description

Enter this routine with the *x* coordinate of the point in the *.X* register and carry flag and the *y* coordinate (0–199) in the *.Y* register. The corresponding point on the hi-res screen is then turned on. Because of the unusual way that hi-res memory is laid out, most of the routine is devoted to shuffling numbers around, calculating the appropriate memory location.

Prototype

1. Save the register values.
2. Calculate the memory location by first setting a zero-page location to point to the start of hi-res screen memory.
3. Next, add in the lower three bits of *.Y* (0–7).
4. Divide *.Y* by 8, and add 320 that number of times.
5. Mask off the lower three bits of *.X* and add the result.
6. Use the lower three bits as a counter to rotate the bit to its proper place in the *MASK* variable.
7. Set the point by putting a zero in *.Y*, *MASK* in *.A*, and *ORA* indirectly off the zero-page pointer.
8. To clear the point, exclusive-OR *MASK* with *\$FF* and *AND* it with the memory location.
9. Restore the original register values.

Explanation

The horizontal width of the hi-res screen is 320 pixels (numbered 0–319). The vertical height is 200 lines (0–199). The total of 64,000 points fit into exactly 8000 bytes, because each byte has eight bits that control eight screen pixels. Hi-res screen memory is laid out in a manner very similar to the text screen.

This up and down zig-zagging pattern causes a few difficulties. The *HRCALC* subroutine at *\$C02F–\$C078* must go through some contortions to figure out just where a given point is located in memory. Initially, the starting location of the hi-res screen (8192, in the example) is stored in the zero-page pointer *Z1* (*\$FB–\$FC*).

The *y* position is handled first. It has two components: bits 0–2 and bits 3–7. Bits 0–2 hold a value between 0 and 7 that can be added directly to the *Z1* pointer. Bits 3–7 hold values divisible by 8 (0, 8, 16, 24, and so on). Each time the value in *y* increases by 8, the screen memory increases by 320

HRSETP

The framing routine at the very beginning starts .X at 0 and .Y at 150, and draws a diagonal line from the bottom left corner to the top right. HRSETUP and HRCLEAR enter and exit hi-res mode. Note that no ROM routines are called, except for GETIN, which waits for a key to be pressed before exiting to BASIC.

Note: Before using this routine on the 128, enter POKE 216,255 (or add the line LDA #255: STA 216 to the program).

Routine

```

C000          ZI      =    251      ; pointer to the particular byte to be changed
C000          HRSCRN =    $2000     ; screen is at 8192 decimal
C000          HRCOLR =    $0400     ; color memory at 1024
C000          GETIN  =    $FFE4

C000 20 B6 C0          JSR  HRSETUP  ; set up and clear the hi-res screen and color
                                   ; memory

C003 A2 00          LDX  #0
C005 A0 96          LDY  #150
C007 18            CLC
C008 20 22 C0 MAIN  JSR  HRSETP  ; turn on the point
C00B E8            INX              ; and its neighbor
C00C D0 01          BNE  NSET      ; if not zero, continue
C00E 38            SEC              ; else, set carry for the seam
C00F 20 22 C0 NSET  JSR  HRSETP  ; next one
C012 E8            INX
C013 D0 01          BNE  NSEU      ; handle the overflow
C015 38            SEC
C016 88            DEY
C017 D0 EF          BNE  MAIN
C019 20 E4 FF GL    JSR  GETIN    ; get a key
C01C F0 FB          BEQ  GL        ; wait before exiting

C01E 20 F1 C0          JSR  HRCLEAR  ; turn off hi-res screen and restore to normal
C021 60          RTS

C022          HRSETP  =    *        ; set a point on the hi-res screen
                                   ; based on values in .X, .Y, and the carry
                                   ; flag

C022 20 8F C0          JSR  SVREGS   ; save the registers
C025 20 2F C0          JSR  HRCALC   ; calculate the location (in ZI) and the bit
                                   ; pattern (MASK)
C028 20 79 C0          JSR  POINT1  ; (substitute POINT0 for turning off a pixel)
C02B 20 A2 C0          JSR  LDREGS   ; restore the registers
C02E 60          RTS

C02F 08            ;
C030 A9 00          HRCALC PHP      ; save the status register
C032 85 FB          LDA  #<HRSCRN ; initialize ZI
C034 A9 20          STA  ZI        ; to point to
C036 85 FC          LDA  #>HRSCRN ; the hi-res screen
                                   STA  ZI+1

C038 98            ;
C039 29 07          TYA            ; handle the row
C03B 05 FB          AND  #7        ; mask out the three low bits
C03D 85 FB          ORA  ZI        ; and add them to ZI
C03F 98            TYA
C040 4A            LSR            ; get .Y again
C041 4A            LSR            ; shift right
C042 4A            LSR            ; three
                                   ; times

```

```

C043 A8          TAY          ; now .Y is a counter for adding 320
C044 F0 10      BEQ          ROWEND ; if zero, skip the next part
C046 A9 40      ROWLP        LDA #<320 ; low byte of 320
C048 18         CLC
C049 65 FB      ADC Z1        ; add to Z1
C04B 85 FB      STA Z1        ; store it
C04D A9 01      LDA #>320    ; high byte
C04F 65 FC      ADC Z1+1     ; add to Z1
C051 85 FC      STA Z1+1
C053 88         DEY          ; loop back
C054 D0 F0      BNE ROWLP

;
; Z1 now points to the left edge of the hi-
; res screen (1 of 200 rows).
;
C056 28         ROWEND PLP    ; retrieve the carry flag
C057 90 02      BCC TIMEX    ; if clear, the left side of the seam
C059 E6 FC      INC Z1+1     ; otherwise, add 256 to the pointer
C05B 8A         TIMEX TXA    ; now do .X, the column

C05C 29 F8      AND #11111000 ; mask off 0-7 (the individual bits)
C05E 18         CLC
C05F 65 FB      ADC Z1        ; add to Z1
C061 85 FB      STA Z1        ; store it
C063 90 02      BCC NOMORE   ; if carry's clear,
C065 E6 FC      INC Z1+1     ; skip this INC
C067 A9 80      NOMORE LDA #80 ; now set up MASK
C069 8D B5 C0   STA MASK
C06C 8A         TXA          ; return .X to .A
C06D 29 07      AND #00000111 ; bottom three bits (0-7 value)
C06F F0 07      BEQ CLOSEUP  ; if zero, skip it
C071 AA         TAX          ; otherwise, set up .X for a counter
C072 4E B5 C0   XLOOP LSR MASK ; move it right
C075 CA         DEX          ; count down
C076 D0 FA      BNE XLOOP
C078 60         CLOSEUP RTS  ; Finished. Z1 points to the byte and MASK
; holds the bitmask.
;
C079 A0 00      POINT1 LDY #0  ; this sets a point on the screen
C07B AD B5 C0   LDA MASK      ; get the mask
C07E 11 FB      ORA (Z1),Y    ; turn on a pixel
C080 91 FB      STA (Z1),Y    ; put it on the screen
C082 60         RTS          ; and that's all
;
C083 A0 00      POINT0 LDY #0  ; almost the same as POINT1, but it clears
; a pixel
C085 AD B5 C0   LDA MASK      ; get the bit mask
C088 49 FF      EOR #$FF     ; flip the bits
C08A 31 FB      AND (Z1),Y    ; AND instead of OR
C08C 91 FB      STA (Z1),Y    ; store it
C08E 60         RTS          ; finished
;
C08F 08         SVREGS PHP    ; first save .P
C090 48         PHA          ; then .A
C091 08         PHP          ; then .P again
C092 8D B1 C0   STA TEMPA    ; save .A
C095 8E B2 C0   STX TEMPX    ; .X
C098 8C B3 C0   STY TEMPY    ; and .Y
C09B 68         PLA          ; pull .P into .A
C09C 8D B4 C0   STA TEMPP    ; store it
C09F 68         PLA          ; get .A again
C0A0 28         PLP          ; and .P
C0A1 60         RTS
;

```

HRSETP

```

COA2 AE B2 C0 LDREGS LDX TEMPX ; restore .X
COA5 AC B3 C0 LDY TEMPY ; and .Y
COA8 AD B4 C0 LDA TEMPP ; get .P
COAB 48 PHA ; push it
COAC AD B1 C0 LDA TEMPA ; get .A back
COAF 28 FLP ; and restore .P
COB0 60 RTS ; done

COB1 00 TEMPA .BYTE 0
COB2 00 TEMPX .BYTE 0
COB3 00 TEMPY .BYTE 0
COB4 00 TEMPP .BYTE 0
COB5 00 MASK .BYTE 0

COB6 A9 3B HRSETUP LDA #59 ; to set up the hi-res screen at $2000
COB8 8D 11 DO STA 53265 ; put a 59 into 53265
COBB A9 18 LDA #24
COBD 8D 18 DO STA 53272 ; and a 24 into 53272
COC0 A9 10 LDA #$10 ; white and black
COC2 AD 00 LDY #0 ; index into color memory
COC4 99 00 04 COLLP STA HRCOLR,Y
COC7 99 FA 04 STA HRCOLR+250,Y
COCA 99 F4 05 STA HRCOLR+500,Y
COCd 99 EE 06 STA HRCOLR+750,Y
CODO C8 INY
COD1 C0 FA CPY #250 ; fill 1000 bytes
COD3 D0 EF BNE COLLP

COD5 A9 00 LDA #<HRSCRN ; Now set up the clear-screen routine.
COD7 8D E5 C0 STA FAKE+1
CODA A9 20 LDA #>HRSCRN ; high byte
CODC 8D E6 C0 STA FAKE+2
CODF A2 20 LDX #32 ; 32 pages
COE1 A0 00 LDY #0
COE3 98 TYA ; zero for cleared bits
COE4 99 FF FF FAKE STA $FFFF,Y
COE7 C8 INY
COE8 D0 FA BNE FAKE
COEA EE E6 C0 INC FAKE+2 ; increment the high byte
COED CA DEX
COEE D0 F4 BNE FAKE
COF0 60 RTS

COF1 A9 1B HRCLEAR LDA #27 ; Turn off hi-res.
COF3 8D 11 DO STA 53265 ; 27 into 53265
COF6 A9 15 LDA #21
COF8 8D 18 DO STA 53272 ; 21 into 53272
COFB A9 93 LDA #147 ; clear screen
COFD 20 D2 FF JSR $FFD2
C100 60 RTS

```

See also BITMAP, CLRHRF, CLRHRS, HRCOLF, HRPOLR, PAINT.

Name

Increment a two-byte counter

Description

The machine language INC instruction increments a value in memory by one. This **INC2** routine extends the usefulness of INC to cover a wider range of values (0–65535 instead of 0–255).

Prototype

1. INCRement the low byte of a counter.
2. If it has reached zero, increment the high byte.
3. If the high byte has reached zero, the counter has gone past the limit of 65535. Set the carry flag to indicate an error.

Explanation

The example program waits for a keypress and exits if the F1 key is detected. Otherwise, it prints the character and calls **INC2** to keep track of how many keys have been pressed.

Within the **INC2** subroutine, the low byte of COUNTER is increased by one. If it reaches zero, the high byte is also increased. Then the carry flag is cleared, and the subroutine ends. Clearing the carry flag isn't necessary, but it's included to signal a successful two-byte increment. If **INC2** ever counts beyond the top limit (\$FFFF), carry is set to indicate an overflow.

Back in the main routine, the program ends when F1 is pressed or if the user presses more than 65,535 keys. At that point, two RETURNS are printed followed by the number of keystrokes.

Note to 128 users: Since this program checks for the F1 key, which is predefined to print GRAPHIC, you should add the line KEY1, CHR\$(133) to insure that the program works properly on the 128. Alternately, you could call the Kernal routine PFKEY at \$FF65. This routine redefines a given function key.

Routine

```

C000          F1      =    133
C000          GETIN  =    $FFE4
C000          CHROUT =    $FFD2
C000          LINPRT =    $BDCD          ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128—ROM
                                           ; routine to print a number
C000 A9 00          LDA  #0              ; clear the counter
C002 8D 41 C0      STA  COUNTER
C005 8D 42 C0      STA  COUNTER+1
    
```


INC2

```
C008 20 E4 FF MLOOP JSR GETIN ; get a keypress
C00B F0 FB BEQ MLOOP ; loop until it happens
C00D C9 85 CMP #F1 ; is it the F1 key?
C00F F0 08 BEQ CLEANUP ; yes, finish up
C011 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT ; else, print it
C014 20 2B C0 JSR INC2 ; and the counter clicks
C017 90 EF BCC MLOOP ; carry clear means less than 65535 characters
; fall through to CLEANUP if carry set after
; INC2
C019 A9 0D CLEANUP LDA #13 ; RETURN character
C01B 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT ; print it
C01E 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT ; print it again
C021 AE 41 C0 LDX COUNTER ; low byte of counter value
C024 AD 42 C0 LDA COUNTER+1 ; high byte
C027 20 CD BD JSR LINPRT ; print the number of keys pressed
C02A 60 RTS ;
C02B EE 41 C0 INC2 INC COUNTER ; add one to the counter
C02E F0 02 BEQ INCHI ; if equal to zero, increment the high byte
C030 18 FINIS CLC ; clear carry (meaning OK)
C031 60 RTS ; and return
C032 EE 42 C0 INCHI INC COUNTER+ ; up the high byte
C035 D0 F9 BNE FINIS ; if it's not zero, OK
C037 A9 FF LDA #$FF
C039 8D 41 C0 STA COUNTER
C03C 8D 42 C0 STA COUNTER+
C03F 38 SEC ; carry set means we've reached the limit
C040 60 RTS ;
C041 00 00 COUNTER .BYTE 0,0
```

See also ADDBYT, ADDEFP, ADDINT.

Name

Initialize a disk

Description

INITLZ initializes a disk, forcing the block allocation map (BAM) to be read into the disk drive's memory. This is sometimes useful after a new disk has been inserted or after changes have been made to the files on the disk.

Prototype

1. Open the disk command channel, channel 15.
2. As part of the filename, send the initialize command, I0.
3. Close the command channel.

Explanation

Brand-new blank disks must be formatted before they can be used. On some computers, this process is called *initializing* a disk. On Commodore computers, however, initializing has quite a different meaning.

When you send the DOS command *I0*, the disk drive reads the current block allocation map into memory, so it knows which sectors are already taken. This process should happen automatically when the disk drive senses that a new disk has been inserted. But it doesn't hurt to force an initialization. It may even be necessary if you tamper with file information (unscratching a file, for example).

The program works like most of the other DOS routines. It opens channel 15, the disk command channel, with the Kernal SETLFS routine. Then, in the process of setting the name, it uses the two characters *I0*. When the file is opened (with Kernal SETNAM and OPEN), the command is automatically sent to the drive. Then the file is closed and channels are cleared.

Routine

C000		SETLFS	=	\$FFBA	
C000		SETNAM	=	\$FFBD	
C000		OPEN	=	\$FFC0	
C000		CLOSE	=	\$FFC3	
C000		CLRCHN	=	\$FFCC	
C000	A9 01	INITLZ	LDA	#1	; logical file number
C002	A2 08		LDX	#8	; device number for disk drive
C004	A0 0F		LDY	#15	; secondary address for command channel
C006	20 BA FF		JSR	SETLFS	; prepare to open file
C009	A9 03		LDA	#BUFLen	; length of buffer
C00B	A2 1E		LDX	#<BUFFER	; X and Y hold the
C00D	A0 C0		LDY	#>BUFFER	; address of the buffer
C00F	20 BD FF		JSR	SETNAM	; set up filename

INITLZ

```
C012 20 C0 FF      JSR  OPEN      ; open it
C015 A9 01        LDA  #1        ; and immediately
C017 20 C3 FF      JSR  CLOSE     ; close the command channel
C01A 20 CC FF      JSR  CLRCHN    ; clear the channels
C01D 60           RTS          ; all done
                                   ; data area

C01E 49 30        BUFFER  .ASC  "IO"
C020 0D           .BYTE  13      ; RETURN character
C021             BUFLN  =  * - BUFFER
```

See also CONCAT, COPYFL, FORMAT, RENAME, SCRATCH, VALIDT.

Name

Interrupt-driven clock

Description

This routine updates a digital clock at the upper right corner of the screen during each IRQ interrupt. This clock relies on the first time-of-day clock (TOD 1) to maintain accurate time.

A feature of this routine is that it allows you to toggle the clock display on or off by pressing the F7 key. If the clock distracts you or becomes annoying, simply press F7 and clear the screen. (On the 128, before SYSing to the routine, you'll need to define the F7 key to a null string by entering KEY 7, "".)

To disable the clock altogether, press RUN/STOP-RESTORE to reset the IRQ interrupt vector.

Prototype

This is actually a two-part routine. Before entering the first part (INTCLK), store the current time in binary-coded decimal format as TIMSET at the end of the program. Be sure to add \$80 to the hours byte if the time is p.m. (See TOD2ST for details on setting the time-of-day clocks.)

In INTCLK:

1. Using TOD1ST, set TOD 1 clock to the time specified in TIMSET.
2. Disable IRQ interrupts with SEI.
3. Redirect the IRQ interrupt vector at 788-789 to MAIN.
4. With the vector changed, reenale IRQ interrupts and RTS.

In MAIN:

1. Determine whether the last key pressed was F7. If it was, toggle a clock display flag from 0 to 1, or vice versa, with EOR #1.
2. If the clock display flag contains a zero, exit the routine through the normal IRQ interrupts (in step 7).
3. Otherwise, store the current cursor color (COLOR) into each color RAM position for the clock display. Then store the current screen background color in the initial color position.
4. In PLACLP, read and store to the clock display in reverse video the digits for the hour, minute, and second. Precede each digit pair with a reverse colon. (The first colon is not seen because its color is the screen background color.)
5. Print a reverse decimal and the tenths of seconds.

6. If the hours byte is negative, print a *P* for p.m.; otherwise, print an *A*.
7. Exit by executing the normal IRQ interrupts.

Explanation

The actual readout for the clock is stored to the screen during the routine MAIN. Within this routine, the *Y* register is used to index the screen position in the clock display, while *X* points to the relative TOD clock bytes—either hours, minutes, seconds, or tenths of seconds.

First, MAIN fills the underlying color RAM for the display with the current cursor color (as stored in COLOR). This takes place in COLOOP. Because the clock is displayed in the current text color, the readout will be visible regardless of the screen background color (assuming, of course, that the text color differs from the screen background color).

After COLOOP, the clock itself is stored to the screen. Each digit pair within the clock—representing hours, minutes, and seconds—is separated by a reverse colon for better readability. A reverse decimal point is located between the seconds place and tenths-of-seconds place at \$C05B.

Notice also that a colon is placed just before the clock display. This colon doesn't actually appear on the screen since its color byte is taken from the screen background color register. Nevertheless, it prevents the clock display from being accepted as a BASIC line if the user should accidentally hit RETURN over this line.

Bytes from the TOD clock are in binary-coded decimal format. The high nybble of each byte represents the ten's place, while the low nybble is the one's place. By alternately masking low and high nybbles and converting the result to screen codes in PLACLP, you can store each byte from the TOD clock reading in screen memory as a two-digit number. Since bit 7 is the a.m./p.m. flag in the hours byte, it must be masked in order to read the hours digits correctly.

The exception to this arrangement within the TOD clock is the tenths-of-seconds place. Since no more than a single decimal digit need be stored in the tenths byte, the high nybble is unused. As a result, we needn't break this byte into separate nybbles. We simply store it after converting it to a screen code.

The last thing to be done in the routine, before exiting to the normal IRQ interrupt handler, is to display the *A* or *P* for

a.m. or p.m. The code for this begins at \$C068.

Note: INTCLK currently uses TOD1 (the clock in CIA #1) to keep time. If, for some reason, this clock is unavailable, you can just as easily use TOD2 by substituting TODTN2 for TODTN1 in the program.

Routine

```

C000          TODTN1  =   56328      ; time-of-day clock 1—tenths-of-seconds
          ; register
C000          TODTN2  =   56584      ; time-of-day clock 2—tenths-of-seconds
          ; register
C000          IRQVEC  =    788       ; vector to IRQ interrupt routine
C000          IRQNOR  =   59953      ; IRQNOR = 64101 on 128—normal
          ; interrupt service routine
C000          LSTX    =    197       ; LSTX = 213 on the 128—last key pressed
C000          SCRCLK  =   1050       ; screen address for the clock
C000          COLCLK  =   55322      ; color RAM for clock
C000          BGCOLOR =   53281      ; background color register for screen
C000          COLOR   =    646       ; COLOR = 241 on the 128—text foreground
          ; color register
          ;
          ; Set up an interrupt-driven clock display.
          ; Replace TODTN1 with TODTN2 to use
          ; TOD clock 2.
C000 20 7F C0 INTCLK JSR  TOD1ST     ; set TOD clock 1 and start it by writing to
          ; tenths
C003 78              SEI             ; disable IRQ interrupts to change the IRQ
          ; vector
C004 A9 10          LDA  #<MAIN     ; store the low byte of interrupt wedge
C006 8D 14 03      STA  IRQVEC
C009 A9 C0          LDA  #>MAIN     ; and the high byte
C00B 8D 15 03      STA  IRQVEC+1
C00E 58            CLI             ; reenable IRQ interrupts
C00F 60            RTS             ; exit setup routine
          ;
C010 A5 C5          MAIN  LDA  LSTX   ; check for F7
C012 C9 03          CMP  #3         ; is it F7?
C014 D0 08          BNE  NOTTOG     ; don't toggle the clock if not F7
C016 AD 92 C0 TOGGLE LDA  CLKFLG    ; toggle clock on/off
C019 49 01          EOR  #1
C01B 8D 92 C0      STA  CLKFLG     ; reset flag
C01E AD 92 C0 NOTTOG LDA  CLKFLG    ; necessary for NOTTOG
C021 F0 4F          BEQ  EXIT       ; if flag is zero, don't show the clock
          ; instead, execute normal IRQs
          ; make clock color the same as text color
C023 A0 0B          LDY  #11
C025 AD 86 02      LDA  COLOR
C028 99 1A D8 COLOOP STA  COLCLK,Y ; get cursor color
C02B 88            DEY             ; store it to each color RAM position
          ; next lower position
C02C D0 FA          BNE  COLOOP     ; do 12 positions
C02E AD 21 D0      LDA  BGCOLOR    ; get background color for first colon
C031 8D 1A D8      STA  COLCLK     ; so first colon is not seen
C034 A2 03          LDX  #3         ; as an index for hrs., mins., secs., tenths
C036 A0 FF          LDY  #255      ; so .Y starts with zero in PLACLP
C038 C8            INY             ; for next position in the clock
C039 20 79 C0      JSR  COLON      ; POKE in colon at beginning of clock
C03C C8            INY             ; for next position
C03D BD 08 DC      LDA  TODTN1,X   ; start with hrs.
C040 48            PHA             ; store it temporarily
C041 29 70          AND  #%01110000 ; mask out low nybble and bit 7
C043 4A            LSR             ; shift high nybble into low nybble
C044 4A            LSR

```

INTCLK

```

C045 4A          LSR
C046 4A          LSR
C047 09 B0      ORA #176 ; convert to numeric range (+48), reverse
                          ; (+128)
C049 99 1A 04   STA SCRCLK,Y ; position the result on the screen
C04C C8         INY ; for next position
C04D 68         PLA ; retrieve byte to handle low nybble
C04E 29 0F      AND #$0F ; mask out high nybble
C050 09 B0      ORA #176 ; convert to numeric range, reverse
C052 99 1A 04   STA SCRCLK,Y ; and store result to screen
C055 CA         DEX ; for next place—mins. and secs.
C056 D0 E0      BNE PLACLP ; do three bytes—hrs., mins., secs.
C058 C8         INY ; to position decimal
C059 A9 AE      LDA #174 ; screen code for a reverse decimal
C05B 99 1A 04   STA SCRCLK,Y ; POKE it
C05E C8         INY ; to position tenths place
C05F AD 08 DC   LDA TODTN1 ; get the tenths byte and restart the clock
C062 09 B0      ORA #176 ; convert to numeric range and reverse
C064 99 1A 04   STA SCRCLK,Y ; display the tenths
C067 C8         INY ; to position a.m./p.m.
C068 AD 0B DC   LDA TODTN1+3 ; read hours
C06B 30 08      BMI PMFLAG ; bit 7 is set indicating p.m. time
C06D A9 81      LDA #129 ; screen code for reverse A—a.m.
C06F 99 1A 04   PRAMPM STA SCRCLK,Y ; store it to screen
C072 4C 31 EA   EXIT JMP IRQNOR ; exit always
C075 A9 90      PMFLAG LDA #144 ; screen code for P
C077 D0 F6      BNE PRAMPM ; print P and exit to normal interrupts
                          ;
                          ; POKE in a reverse colon at current screen
                          ; position.

C079 A9 BA      COLON LDA #186
C07B 99 1A 04   STA SCRCLK,Y
C07E 60         RTS
                          ;
                          ; Set TOD clock 1 (or 2).
                          ; Replace TODTN1 with TODTN2 to set TOD
                          ; clock 2.
C07F A0 00      TOD1ST LDY #0 ; as an index for the time setting
C081 A2 03      LDX #3 ; as an index for hrs., mins., secs., tenths
C083 B9 8E C0   SETLOP LDA TIMSET,Y ; read in the time to set
C086 9D 08 DC   STA TODTN1,X ; store to clock—hrs. first
C089 C8         INY ; for next TIMSET byte
C08A CA         DEX ; for next clock byte (mins., secs., tenths)
C08B 10 F6      BPL SETLOP ; set all four bytes of clock
C08D 60         RTS
                          ;
C08E 82 30 13   TIMSET .BYTE $82,$30,$13,$0
                          ; hrs., mins., secs., tenths for clock
                          ; (02.30.13.0 p.m.)
C092 01         CLKFLG .BYTE 1 ; For a.m., subtract $80 from hrs. place.
                          ; clock display flag—display it (1) or don't
                          ; display (0)

```

See also ALARM2, TOD1DL, TOD1RD, TOD2PR, TOD2ST.

Name

Produce a delay using an IRQ interrupt counter

Description

INTDEL uses the IRQ interrupt as an event timer.

Unless they're disabled, interrupt requests (IRQs) occur at regular intervals—once every 1/60 second to be exact—regardless of what's happening in the main program. This is the basis of this routine.

INTDEL updates a counter during each IRQ interrupt, thus freeing your main program to do other things. In other words, you no longer have to halt the current action to update a timer. Instead, you can wait until the ongoing activity is complete before checking the state of the timer.

For instance, if you're writing a joystick-controlled, timed, arcade-style game in which a player must defend his ground base from aerial invaders in the form of sprites. And these sprites, as is often the case, are interrupt-driven, meaning they're constantly moving regardless of what's happening in the rest of your program.

Now suppose the player needed to aim his artillery at an incoming attacker, but your program was off somewhere updating the timer. It could easily be curtains for the unfortunate player. But with this routine, you could allow the player to ward off the attacker before checking the timer.

Another practical application of an interrupt timer such as this one is in generating interrupt-driven music. Here, the interrupt timer typically determines the duration of a specific note.

Prototype

In **INTDEL**:

1. Disable IRQ interrupts with SEI.
2. Redirect the IRQ interrupt vector at 788 to DWEDGE.
3. Initialize the counter flag to a value of one, indicating the countdown is ongoing.
4. Set DELCTR to the delay time specified by DELAY. In the process, increment the high byte of DELCTR by one.
5. With the vector having been changed in step 2, reenable IRQ interrupts and RTS.

In **DWEDGE**:

1. Check CTRFLG to determine if a delay countdown is in progress.

2. If it isn't (CTRFLG = 0), exit the routine through the normal IRQ interrupt handler (in step 7).
3. Otherwise, decrement the low byte of the delay counter and exit through the normal IRQ interrupt handler, provided the low byte hasn't reached zero.
4. If the low byte has reached zero in step 3, then decrement the high byte of DELCTR as well.
5. If the resulting high byte has yet to reach zero, then exit through step 7.
6. Otherwise, store a value of zero to CTRFLG, indicating the countdown is complete.
7. Exit by executing the normal IRQ interrupts.

Explanation

The program below initially sets the two-byte interrupt timer (DELCTR) in INTDEL to 330 interrupts, or five and a half seconds, and the timer flag (CTRFLG) to 1. Then, within INLOOP, it prints a series of ten spade characters on the screen before checking the timer flag. If CTRFLG is 1, meaning the IRQ timer is still counting down, the program prints another ten spades.

When the timer finally reaches zero, CTRFLG itself becomes zero in \$C041. This halts the main program, but not before the last ten spades have printed.

Note: As always, when redirecting the IRQ vector to your own routine, be sure you first disable the IRQ interrupts.

Routine

```

C000          ZP          =      251
C000          CHROUT     =      65490
C000          SPADE      =      97          ; ASCII value for spade character
C000          IRQVEC     =      788        ; vector to IRQ interrupt routine
C000          IRQNOR     =      59953     ; IRQNOR = 64101 on the 128—normal IRQ
                                           ; interrupt service routine
C000          DELAY      =      330       ; delay for 330 IRQ interrupts (5.5 secs.)
                                           ;
                                           ; Carry out an activity (INLOOP) until the
                                           ; interrupt delay finishes.
C000 20 13 C0 MAIN      JSR      INTDEL   ; setup the interrupt delay
C003 A9 61              MNLOOP    LDA      #SPADE ; get the spade character
C005 A0 0A              LDY      #10      ; initialize index for INLOOP
C007 20 D2 FF INLOOP    JSR      CHROUT   ; print it
C00A 88                DEY
C00B D0 FA              BNE      INLOOP   ; repeat INLOOP ten times
C00D AD 47 C0          LDA      CTRFLG   ; is countdown complete?
C010 D0 F1              BNE      MNLOOP   ; if not, then continue MNLOOP
C012 60                RTS              ; we're finished
                                           ;
                                           ; Insert IRQ interrupt wedge for delay timer.
                                           ; Initialize flag and delay.

```

```

C013 78          INTDEL  SEI          ; disable IRQ interrupts to change IRQ
                                           ; vector
                                           ; Then store the address of our routine into
                                           ; IRQ vector.
C014 A9 30          LDA  #<DWEDGE ; low byte first
C016 8D 14 03      STA  IRQVEC
C019 A9 C0          LDA  #>DWEDGE ; then high byte
C01B 8D 15 03      STA  IRQVEC+1
C01E A9 01          LDA  #1      ; initialize CTRFLG to 1
C020 8D 47 C0      STA  CTRFLG
C023 A9 4A          LDA  #<DELAY ; initialize DELCTR, low byte first
C025 8D 48 C0      STA  DELCTR
C028 A2 01          LDX  #>DELAY ; then high byte
C02A E8            INX      ; so high byte goes from one to zero on last
                                           ; pass during countdown
C02B 8E 49 C0      STX  DELCTR+1
C02E 58            CLI      ; We've reset the vector. Now reenable IRQ
                                           ; interrupts and
C02F 60            RTS      ; exit setup.
                                           ;
C030 AD 47 C0 DWEDGE LDA  CTRFLG ; check to see if countdown is ongoing
C033 F0 0F          BEQ  EXIT    ; if not, exit through the normal IRQ
                                           ; interrupt routines
C035 CE 48 C0      DEC  DELCTR ; decrement low byte of delay counter
C038 D0 0A          BNE  EXIT    ; if low byte hasn't turned over yet, exit
C03A CE 49 C0      DEC  DELCTR+1 ; the low byte has reached zero, so decrease
                                           ; counter high byte
C03D D0 05          BNE  EXIT    ; if high byte is not zero, exit
                                           ; DELCTR has reached zero (both low and
                                           ; high bytes).
C03F A0 00          LDY  #0
C041 8C 47 C0      STY  CTRFLG ; to prevent further countdown
C044 4C 31 EA EXIT JMP  IRQNOR ; service the standard IRQ routines
                                           ;
C047 00          CTRFLG .BYTE 0 ; flag is one while countdown continues, zero
                                           ; when done
C048 00 00          DELCTR .WORD 0 ; storage for two-byte interrupt delay counter

```

See also BYT1DL, BYT2DL, JIFDEL, KEYDEL, TOD1DL.

INTMUS

Name

Interrupt-driven music

Description

With **INTMUS**, you can enhance any programs—especially games—by adding background music that runs automatically.

Prototype

Before entering this routine, set up a table of note values which index frequencies from **FREQTB** (**NOTES**), a table containing the relative durations for each note in **NOTES** (**NDURTB**), and a table of the two-byte frequencies needed for the tune (**FREQTB**).

In the initialization routine (**INTMUS**):

1. Disable IRQ interrupts before changing the IRQ interrupt vector.
2. Redirect the IRQ interrupt vector to the music-playing routine (**MAIN**).
3. Set a note counter (**NOTENM**) to zero.
4. Clear the SID chip with **SIDCLR** and set the appropriate parameters for the chip (volume and attack/decay).
5. Initialize a duration counter (**DURATE**) for the first pass through **MAIN**.
6. Reenable IRQ interrupts and **RTS**.

Then, in **MAIN**:

1. Decrement the duration counter.
2. If it decrements to zero, get a note to play. Otherwise, allow the note that's currently playing to continue by exiting through the normal IRQ interrupt handler.
3. Assuming the duration counter reaches zero, get the note number and index the next note's duration using it.
4. Adjust the time each note plays by multiplying its duration by some factor (here, 8).
5. Store the result in the duration counter.
6. Get a note from the **NOTES** table and use it to index the corresponding two-byte frequency value in **FREQTB**. Store the frequency taken from **FREQTB** into the frequency registers for voice 1.
7. Ungate, and then gate, the waveform (here, a sawtooth waveform).

8. Increment the note counter and determine if all notes have played. If not, continue playing the tune. Otherwise, reinitialize the note counter to start the tune over.

Explanation

The principle behind interrupt-driven music is that you let the IRQ interrupt generated every 1/60 second determine when and how long each note is played.

After redirecting the IRQ vector to a music-playing routine (MAIN), the SID chip is set up and several counters are initialized. One of these counts how many notes have been played (NOTENM) while the other keeps up with how long the current note has played (DURATE).

Once IRQ interrupts are reenabled, MAIN is accessed during each IRQ interrupt. The first time this happens, a note based on a reference value (in NOTES) is selected from a table of frequencies (FREQTB) and stored in the frequency register for voice 1. At the same time, a duration time for the note is taken from another table (NDURTB) and stored in the duration counter (DURATE). Before exiting, the pointer to the next note (NOTENM) is incremented and the current note starts playing.

Each time the IRQ returns to MAIN thereafter, the duration counter decrements. When it reaches zero, the next note from NOTES gets stored into the frequency register, DURATE is reset for this note's duration, and the cycle repeats itself. When all notes have played, NOTENM becomes zero, and the tune starts over again.

In setting up the note (NOTES) and frequency (FREQTB) tables, the same method used in MELODY is used here. Each number in NOTES references a two-byte frequency value in FREQTB. Again, the frequencies listed in FREQTB are taken from the table of notes in the programmer's reference guide for either the 64 or 128. Expand FREQTB to include whatever notes your song calls for. If you like, you can even have NOTETB generate a complete frequency table for you.

After you've worked out the relative time spent playing each note with the values in NDURTB, you'll need to adjust the overall tempo of the song. The three ASLs at \$C02F, for the current song, increase the tempo by a factor of eight. For each tune you play, you may need to add or take away one or more of these (ASLs) before the song sounds right.

INTMUS

Routine

```

C000          IRQVEC      =    788      ; vector to IRQ interrupt routine
C000          IRQNOR      =   59953     ; IRQNOR = 64101 on the 128
C000          FRELO1      =   54272     ; starting address for the SID chip
C000          FREHI1      =   54273     ; voice 1 high frequency
C000          VCREG1      =   54276     ; voice 1 control register
C000          ATDCY1      =   54277     ; voice 1 attack/decay register
C000          SIGVOL      =   54296     ; SID chip volume register
;
; Set up an IRQ interrupt to play background
; music.
C000 78          INTMUS   SEI
; disable IRQ interrupts to change the
; vector
; store the low byte of the IRQ wedge
C001 A9 24          LDA    #<MAIN
C003 8D 14 03       STA    IRQVEC
C006 A9 C0          LDA    #>MAIN      ; and the high byte
C008 8D 15 03       STA    IRQVEC+1
C00B A9 00          LDA    #0
C00D 8D A1 C0       STA    NOTENM     ; set pointer to first note in table
C010 20 A2 C0       JSR    SIDCLR     ; clear the SID chip
C013 A9 0F          LDA    #15      ; set the volume to maximum
C015 8D 18 D4       STA    SIGVOL
C018 A9 1A          LDA    #$1A      ; set attack/decay
C01A 8D 05 D4       STA    ATDCY1
C01D A9 01          LDA    #1
C01F 8D A0 C0       STA    DURATE     ; initialize duration counter for first pass
C022 58             CLI             ; with vector changed, reenable IRQ
; interrupts
C023 60             RTS
;
; Main actually plays the music.
; see if current note has finished playing
; if not, allow it to finish
; index to NOTES
; get the note's duration from a table
; multiply by 8 so each note lasts eight times
; longer
C024 CE A0 C0 MAIN DEC    DURATE
C027 D0 36          BNE    EXIT
C029 AE A1 C0       LDX    NOTENM
C02C BD 7B C0       LDA    NDURTB,X
C02F 0A             ASL
;
; and store it into the counter
; get index for FREQTB
; double it since FREQTB contains two-byte
; addresses
; to index FREQTB
; get low byte of note's frequency
; store it in voice 1
; get high byte of note's frequency
; store it in voice 1
; ungate sawtooth waveform
C030 0A             ASL
C031 0A             ASL
C032 8D A0 C0       STA    DURATE
C035 BD 62 C0       LDA    NOTES,X
C038 0A             ASL
; gate waveform
C039 AA             TAX
C03A BD 94 C0       LDA    FREQTB,X
C03D 8D 00 D4       STA    FRELO1
C040 BD 95 C0       LDA    FREQTB+1,X
C043 8D 01 D4       STA    FREHI1
C046 A9 20          LDA    #%00100000
C048 8D 04 D4       STA    VCREG1
C04B A9 21          LDA    #%00100001
C04D 8D 04 D4       STA    VCREG1
; increase note counter
C050 EE A1 C0       INC    NOTENM
C053 AD A1 C0       LDA    NOTENM
C056 C9 19          CMP    #NMNOTE
; determine if all notes have played
; if not, then continue
C058 90 05          BCC    EXIT
C05A A9 00          LDA    #0
; if yes, start again with first note
; exit through normal IRQ interrupt handler
C05C 8D A1 C0       STA    NOTENM
C05F 4C 31 EA EXIT JMP    IRQNOR
;
; table of note indexes
C062 02 02 04 NOTES .BYTE 2,2,4,4,5,5,4,5,5,4,3,2
C06E 03 02 02       .BYTE 3,2,2,4,2,1,0,0,0,0,1,1,2

```

```

C07B          NMNOTE = * - NOTES ; number of notes
C07B 02 06 02 NDURTB .BYTE 2,6,2,6,4,3,1,2,2,1,1,2,1,1,4,2
                                ; table of note durations
C08B 01 02 03          .BYTE 1,2,3,1,2,2,1,2,12
C094 C3 10 EF  FREQTB .WORD 4291,5103,5728,6812,7647,8583
                                ; tabale of two-byte frequency values
C0A0 00          DURATE .BYTE 0 ; duration counter
C0A1 00          NOTENM .BYTE 0 ; note number counter
                                ;
                                ; Clear the SID chip.
C0A2 A9 00      SIDCLR LDA #0 ; fill with zeros
C0A4 A0 18          LDY #24 ; as the offset from FRELO1
C0A6 99 00 D4  SIDLOP STA FRELO1,Y ; store zero in each SID chip address
C0A9 88          DEY ; for next lower address
C0AA 10 FA          BPL SIDLOP ; fill 25 bytes
C0AC 60          RTS ; we're done

```

See also BEEPER, BELLRG, EXPLOD, MELODY, NOTETB, SIDCLR, SIDVOL, SIRENS.

IRQINT

Name

Set up an IRQ interrupt routine

Description

IRQINT redirects the IRQ interrupt vector to your own routine

Prototype

1. SEI to disable the IRQ interrupts.
2. Store the address of your custom IRQ routine into the IRQ interrupt vector.
3. Reenable the IRQ interrupts with a CLI and RTS.

Explanation

The program below demonstrates how this routine might be used. In it, **IRQINT** changes the IRQ vector to point to the routine **WEDGE**. This routine, in turn, checks the shift key flag, halting the current program if a shift key is being pressed. The shift keys include **SHIFT**, **CTRL**, and the Commodore key on the 64 and 128; and also **CAPS LOCK** and **ALT** on the 128.

Since **WEDGE** is accessed during each IRQ interrupt (every 1/60 second), you can halt almost anything run from **BASIC**—games, commands such as **LIST**, and so on.

Notice we rely on the Kernal routine **SCNKEY** rather than **GETIN** within our interrupt routine. Unlike **GETIN**, **SCNKEY** updates even while we're in the interrupt routine.

Note: It's important to disable IRQ interrupts, as we've done here, before changing the IRQ vector. If you skip this step and an IRQ interrupt occurs while the vector is being changed, your program could easily be sent to some meaningless address.

On the 128, your custom IRQ routine must be accessible from bank 15 since memory is configured for this bank prior to jumping through the IRQ vector.

Routine

```
C000      IRQVEC   =    788      ; vector to IRQ interrupt vector
C000      IRQNOR   =   59953     ; IRQNOR = 64101 on the 128—normal IRQ
                                ; interrupt handler
C000      SCNKEY   =   65439     ; Kernal routine to get a keypress
C000      SHFLAG   =    653      ; SHFLAG = 211 on the 128—shift key flag
                                ;
C000  78      IRQINT  SEI
                                ; IRQ interrupt routine to pause on shift key,
                                ; disable the IRQ interrupts before
                                ; changing the vector
C001  A9 0D      LDA   #<WEDGE  ; point the IRQ vector to our routine, low
                                ; byte first
```

```

C003 8D 14 03          STA  IRQVEC
C006 A9 C0            LDA  #>WEDGE ; and then high byte
C008 8D 15 03          STA  IRQVEC+1
C00B 58              CLI   ; reenable IRQ interrupts after changing
                               ; the vector
C00C 60              RTS

;
; Halt the program with SHIFT keypress.
; check the SHIFT flag
; if SHIFT not pressed, then exit through
; normal IRQ routine
; update SHIFT flag
; and check if it's still pressed
; exit through the normal IRQ interrupt
; handler
C00D AD 8D 02 WEDGE    LDA  SHFLAG
C010 F0 06            BEQ  FINIS
C012 20 9F FF          JSR  SCNKEY
C015 4C 0D C0          JMP  WEDGE
C018 4C 31 EA FINIS   JMP  IRQNOR

```

See also NMIINT, RAS64, RAS128.

Name

Jiffy clock delay

Description

One- and two-byte delay routines, causing pauses of less than a millisecond to a few seconds, have been provided elsewhere in this book (**BYT1DL**, **BYT2DL**). There will be times, though, when you'll need a routine to produce an extended delay—on the order of several seconds to several minutes. **JIFDEL**, which relies on the jiffy clock to time this delay, is just such a routine.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the delay length (defined in jiffies as **DELAYJ**) in **.A** (low byte) and **.X** (high byte). The current jiffy clock reading (the low and middle bytes) are in zero page (in **ZP**).
2. Add the delay value to the jiffy clock reading in **ZP**.
3. Compare the resulting value to the current jiffy clock reading and return from the routine when they agree.

Explanation

JIFDEL is a straightforward and practical routine. First add the number of jiffies (1/60 second intervals) that you've specified in **DELAYJ** to the current jiffy clock reading and then wait until the clock reads this total.

As it's written, the routine only uses the lower two bytes of the three-byte clock. With these two bytes alone, a delay anywhere from 1/60 second (one jiffy) to 1092 seconds (65,535 jiffies or 18.2 minutes) can be carried out. If you need a program delay that extends for an even longer time than 18.2 minutes, add the high byte of the jiffy clock as well.

In the example program below, **JIFDEL** causes a delay of 600 jiffies—ten seconds—before incrementing the border color of the screen. Notice that most of the code for this program is setup required by **JIFDEL**. The lower two bytes of the current jiffy clock reading are stored into zero page. Before this can be done, **IRQ** interrupts must be disabled so the clock won't advance while it's being read. The last requirement is that the specified delay (**DELAYJ**) be passed to the routine in the accumulator (low byte) and the **X** register (high byte).

Routine

```

C000          CHROUT  =    65490
C000          ZP      =    251
C000          TIME   =    160      ; three-byte jiffy clock
C000          EXTCOL =    53280    ; border color register
C000          DELAYJ =    600      ; 600 jiffies (ten seconds)
;
; Cause the border color to change after a
; specified delay.
C000  78          SEI
; disable interrupts so clock doesn't advance
; while being read
C001  A5  A2          LDA  TIME+2
C003  85  FB          STA  ZP      ; store jiffy low byte in zero page
C005  A6  A1          LDX  TIME+1    ; store middle byte also
C007  86  FC          STX  ZP+1
C009  58          CLI
; we've got the current jiffy time, so reenable
; interrupts
C00A  A9  58          LDA  #<DELAYJ
C00C  A2  02          LDX  #>DELAYJ
; store low byte and high byte of jiffy delay
C00E  20  15  C0      JSR  JIFDEL    ; carry out delay in .A and .X
C011  EE  20  D0      INC  EXTCOL    ; change the border color
C014  60          RTS
;
; JIFDEL sets the jiffy clock with the delay in
; .A (low) and .X (middle).
C015  18          JIFDEL  CLC
; add delay to current jiffy clock reading in
; zero page
; low byte first
C016  65  FB          ADC  ZP
C018  85  FB          STA  ZP
C01A  8A          TXA
; now middle byte
C01B  65  FC          ADC  ZP+1
; Determine whether DELAYJ has elapsed.
; check middle byte first
C01D  C5  A1          MIDBYT  CMP  TIME+1
C01F  D0  FC          BNE  MIDBYT
; wait for middle byte to agree
; now low byte
C021  A5  FB          LDA  ZP
C023  C5  A2          LOWBYT  CMP  TIME+2
C025  D0  FC          BNE  LOWBYT
; wait for low byte to agree
; previous time is equal to time plus delay
C027  60          RTS

```

See also BYT1DL, BYT2DL, INTDEL, KEYDEL, TOD1DL, JIFFRD, JIFPRT, JIFSET.

JIFFRD

Name

Read the jiffy clock

Description

JIFFRD does more than just read the three-byte jiffy clock. This routine is integrated into a program in which a pair of timers are updated based on the current jiffy clock reading.

Prototype

1. Disable IRQ interrupts to prevent the clock from advancing while it's being read.
2. In a loop, read three bytes from the jiffy clock, storing them to a memory buffer. (Here, we actually add them to the current timer value for player 1 or 2.)
3. Reenable IRQ interrupts to restart the jiffy clock.

Explanation

It's a relatively simple matter to read the three-byte jiffy clock at location 160. You first disable IRQ interrupts to stop the clock, read the three bytes into a memory buffer, and reenable IRQ interrupts to restart the clock.

This routine offers additional features. It is part of a simulation in which two 3-byte jiffy timers are maintained—one for each of two players. Let's say you've brought your computer to a hockey game and you want to keep track of time of possession. When one team has the puck, press the 0 key. When the other team gets it, press the 1 key. The jiffy clock is reset to zero at the beginning of each event.

When a change of possession occurs (when the other key is pressed), the current jiffy clock reading is added to the appropriate timer, and the program begins timing the other team's turn. This continues—teams alternating turns—until the space bar, which exits the program, is pressed.

At the start of the program, both timers are initialized to zero in INITLP. The clock then begins at START after 0 or 1 is pressed. Pressing one of these keys causes a branch to INITTM where the jiffy clock is reset. The value of the ASCII keypress is then used in SETUPZ to load the address of the current team's timer from TABTIM into zero page.

Once the current team's timer address is in zero page, we jump to MAINLP where the third key—the space bar—becomes an acceptable entry. The 0 and 1 keys, at this point, cause a switch to occur. The timer for the previous team is updated in JIFFRD.

Within JIFFRD, we momentarily stop the jiffy clock with an SEI, add the current reading to the last team's timer, reset the clock, and start it again with a CLI. From here, provided the space bar isn't pressed, we branch to SETUPZ—where the current team's timer address is stored in zero page—and again jump to MAINLP. Notice that the structure of the program allows a team to repeat without corrupting the timers.

Note: In adding the jiffy clock to the timer in \$C02F, the zero-page address for the jiffy clock must be expressed as a two-byte address (as \$00A0). That's because the opcode form ADC zero-page address,Y doesn't exist in 6502/8502 machine language.

Routine

C000			GETIN	=	65508	
C000			ZP	=	251	
C000			TIME	=	160	; three-byte jiffy clock
						; Add to each player's timer when player
						; switch occurs. Quit on space bar.
						; initialize players' timers to zero
C000	A0	05		LDY	#5	
C002	A9	00		LDA	#0	
C004	99	5A	C0	INITLP	STA	PLAYR1,Y
C007	88			DEY		
C008	10	FA		BPL	INITLP	; do all six bytes
						; set the jiffy clock to zero with the first valid
C00A	20	E4	FF	START	JSR	GETIN
						; keypress
C00D	C9	30		CMP	#48	; does player 1 start the jiffy clock first?
C00F	F0	27		BEQ	INITTM	; initialize jiffy clock and put PLAYR1 in ZP
C011	C9	31		CMP	#49	; or does player 2 start it first?
C013	F0	23		BEQ	INITTM	; initialize jiffy clock and put PLAYR2 in ZP
C015	D0	F3		BNE	START	; it's neither, so get another keypress
						; main GETIN loop
C017	20	E4	FF	MAINLP	JSR	GETIN
C01A	C9	30		CMP	#48	; is it player 1's turn?
C01C	F0	0A		BEQ	JIFFRD	; add in jiffy clock to PLAYR2
C01E	C9	31		CMP	#49	; is it player 2's turn?
C020	F0	06		BEQ	JIFFRD	; add in jiffy clock to PLAYR1
C022	C9	20		CMP	#32	; is it SPACE?
C024	F0	02		BEQ	JIFFRD	; add in the last player's time and quit
C026	D0	EF		BNE	MAINLP	; if not 0, 1, or space, wait for another
						; keypress
						; JIFFRD reads the jiffy clock, adds the
						; current value to PLAYR1 or
						; PLAYR2, depending on which one just
						; finished, and restarts the clock.
						; stop the clock
						; save the player number as ASCII 48 or 49
C028	78		JIFFRD	SEI		; for subsequent addition
C029	48			PHA		; add all three bytes of the jiffy clock to
C02A	18			CLC		; timer for PLAYR1 or PLAYR2
C02B	A0	02		LDY	#2	; get player's previous timer value
						; add current jiffy clock reading to it
C02D	B1	FB	RDLOOP	LDA	(ZP),Y	; and store it back to PLAYR1 or PLAYR2
C02F	79	A0	00	ADC	\$00A0,Y	; for next higher byte in the jiffy clock
C032	91	FB		STA	(ZP),Y	
C034	88			DEY		

JIFFRD

```

C035 10 F6          BPL  RDLOOP      ; do all three bytes
C037 68            PLA                      ; to properly maintain the stack with an
C038 48            INITIM PHA              ; even number of PHA/PLA instructions
C039 A9 00          LDA  #0                ; save the player's number as ASCII 48 or
C03B 85 A0          STA  TIME              ; 49
C03D 85 A1          STA  TIME+1            ; reset timer
C03F 85 A2          STA  TIME+2            ; do all three bytes
C041 68            PLA                      ; restore player number as ASCII 48 or 49
C042 58            CLI                      ; restart clock (only matters when SEI at
                                           ; beginning of JIFFRD executes)
C043 C9 20          CMP  #32               ;
                                           ; quit on space (we've added in the last time
C045 D0 01          BNE  SETUPZ            ; to PLAYR1 or PLAYR2)
C047 60            RTS                     ; if not space, set up ZP for next player
                                           ;
C048 29 01          SETUPZ AND #1          ; Point ZP to the next player's timer.
C04A 0A            ASL                      ; to convert the ASCII response of 48/49 to
                                           ; 0/1
C04B A8            TAY                      ; double the number since we're dealing with
C04C B9 60 C0      LDA  TABTIM.Y           ; two-byte addresses (.WORDS)
                                           ; index by .Y
C04F 85 FB          STA  ZP                ; load low-byte address of PLAYR1 or
C051 C8            INY                      ; PLAYR2
C052 B9 60 C0      LDA  TABTIM.Y           ; store in zero page
C055 85 FC          STA  ZP+1              ; for next byte
C057 4C 17 C0      JMP  MAINLP             ; load high-byte address of PLAYR1 or
                                           ; PLAYR2
C05A 00 00 00      PLAYR1 .BYTE 0,0,0     ; and store also
C05D 00 00 00      PLAYR2 .BYTE 0,0,0     ; and wait for another key
C060 5A C0 5D      TABTIM .WORD PLAYR1,PLAYR2
                                           ;
                                           ; three-byte timer for player 1
                                           ; three-byte timer for player 2
                                           ; address pointers to each player's timer

```

See also JIFDEL, JIFPRI, JIFSET.

Name

Print the jiffy clock reading

Description

This routine allows you to use the three-byte jiffy clock as a timepiece. **JIFPRT** displays the current jiffy clock reading on the screen in an hours/minutes/seconds/jiffies format.

Prototype

1. Initialize a place counter (CLKCTR) to zero for the ASCII clock frame (CLOCK).
2. Store the address of this clock frame into zero page (as ZT).
3. Disable IRQ interrupts to prevent the jiffy clock from advancing while it's being read.
4. Read the current three-byte jiffy clock reading and store it in zero page (ZP). Reenable IRQ interrupts.
5. Load .X with an index to the subtrahends table (TB3SUB) so that it initially points to the low byte of the largest subtrahend (the low byte \$80 of 2160000/\$20F580).
6. Perform a conversion of the jiffy clock reading to an hours/minutes/seconds/hundredths-of-seconds format by repeated subtraction. Store the ASCII equivalent of each digit into the clock frame.
7. After each digit has been converted to ASCII, a check of CLKCTR tells us whether the next digit's place in the clock frame is even or odd. On even-digit places, the zero-page pointer to the clock frame is incremented by one, which places us beyond the colons or the decimal in the frame.
8. When the ASCII clock has been completed, print it and return from the routine.

Explanation

In the following program, a formatted jiffy clock is continually printed at the home position with **JIFPRT** until a key is pressed.

The three-byte jiffy clock at 160–162 is a 24-hour cascade timer, updated by the operating system. Unlike most other pointers and values in memory, the high byte of the jiffy clock (160) is actually lowest in memory.

The jiffy clock increments every 1/60 second, a unit of time called a *jiffy*. The low byte at location 162 counts 256 jiffies (4.27 seconds) before the middle byte, location 161, increments. When the middle byte reaches 256 (after 18.2 min-

utes), the high byte at location 160 counts forward by one.

In **JIFPRT**, after storing the current jiffy clock reading in zero page (ZP), it's converted to an hours/minutes/seconds/hundredths-of-seconds format and stored as ASCII into **CLOCK**. This conversion is done by using a subtraction method much like the two-byte conversion routine discussed in **CNUMOT**, only in this case it's done for a three-byte number. In very general terms, the current three-byte jiffy clock reading is divided by the eight three-byte numbers in **TB3SUB**. Each division, following conversion to ASCII at **\$C05D**, yields another digit within **CLOCK**. We begin with the highest, or tens-of-hours place, and work down to the lowest, or sixtieths-of-seconds place.

Notice that, before running the program, **CLOCK** already contains the colons and the decimal used in the screen display. This setup is referred to as a *clock frame*. By prepositioning the colons and decimal point, we avoid having to write code to print them ourselves within **JIFPRT**. At the same time, however, we have to insure that we don't overwrite them when we store the ASCII digits to **CLOCK**. And this is where the **CLOCK** position counter, or **CLKCTR**, comes into play.

After storing each ASCII digit to **CLOCK**, we check to see whether the next position in clock, as maintained in **CLKCTR**, is even or odd (see **\$C05F-\$C071**). If **CLKCTR** tells us that the next position is even (the carry flag is clear after the LSR in **\$C069**), we increment by one the zero-page pointer to the clock frame (in **ZT**) so that we skip over the colon or decimal which follows.

Once the clock frame has been constructed, it's a simple matter to print its ASCII contents in **PRTCLK**.

Routine

C000			CHROUT	=	65490	
C000			GETIN	=	65508	
C000			ZP	=	251	
C000			ZT	=	155	; two zero-page locations, normally used in
						; tape loads
C000			TIME	=	160	; three-byte jiffy clock
						;
						; Print the current jiffy clock reading. Hit any
						; key to stop.
						; clear the screen
C000	A9	93	CLRCHR	LDA	#147	
C002	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	
C005	A9	13		LDA	#19	; HOME the cursor
C007	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	
C00A	20	13	C0	JSR	JIFPRT	; read and print the jiffy clock
C00D	20	E4	FF	JSR	GETIN	; get a keypress

```

C010 F0 F3          BEQ  JIFLOP      ; if no keypress, do it all again
C012 60             RTS

;
; JIFPRT reads and prints the jiffy clock.
C013 A9 00         JIFPRT LDA  #0          ; initialize a place counter within our
; ASCII clock frame
C015 8D A9 C0      STA  CLKCTR      ; Store the high and low bytes of our
; ASCII clock frame to zero page.
C018 A9 9D         LDA  #<CLOCK    ; low byte first
C01A 85 9B         STA  ZT
C01C A2 C0         LDX  #>CLOCK    ; then high byte
C01E 86 9C         STX  ZT+1

;
C020 78           JIFFRD  SEI          ; prevent the jiffy clock from advancing
; while it's being read
C021 A0 02         LDY  #2          ; as a index for LOOP
C023 B9 A0 00     LOOP  LDA  TIME,Y   ; store current jiffy clock reading in zero
; page
C026 99 FB 00     STA  ZP,Y
C029 88           DEY
C02A 10 F7        BPL  LOOP
C02C 58           CLI          ; we've got the reading, so reenable IRQ
; interrupts
;
; Now convert clock reading in ZP to ASCII
; and store it in the ASCII clock.
C02D A2 15        LDX  #21        ; index to TB3SUB table; initially points to
; low byte of 2160000
C02F A0 FF        INITCT LDY  #255  ; initialize counter for each digit's place
C031 C8          SUBTLP INY          ; begin subtraction loop, counter starts with
; zero
C032 A5 FD        LDA  ZP+2
C034 48          PHA          ; save the low byte of the current jiffy
; clock reading
C035 38          SEC
C036 FD 85 C0     SBC  TB3SUB,X    ; subtract low byte of subtrahend from low
; byte of clock value
C039 85 FD        STA  ZP+2        ; store result in zero page
C03B A5 FC        LDA  ZP+1        ; do the same with middle byte
C03D 48          PHA          ; save the middle byte of the current jiffy
; clock reading
C03E FD 86 C0     SBC  TB3SUB+1,X  ; subtract subtrahend's middle byte from
; clock's middle byte
C041 85 FC        STA  ZP+1        ; and store the result
C043 A5 FB        LDA  ZP          ; and once again with the high byte
C045 48          PHA          ; save the high byte of the current jiffy
; clock reading
C046 FD 87 C0     SBC  TB3SUB+2,X  ; subtract high byte of subtrahend from
; clock's high byte
C049 85 FB        STA  ZP          ; and store the result
C04B 90 06        BCC  DONE        ; subtraction gave number less than 0 so
; we're done
; restore the stack
C04D 68          PLA
C04E 68          PLA
C04F 68          PLA
C050 4C 31 C0     JMP  SUBTLP      ; and continue subtraction
; Restore high, middle, and low bytes to
; values before we dropped below zero.
C053 68          PLA
C054 85 FB        STA  ZP          ; pull high byte of clock reading
; and store it
C056 68          PLA
C057 85 FC        STA  ZP+1        ; pull middle byte of clock reading
; and store it also
C059 68          PLA          ; pull low byte of clock reading

```


JIFPRT

C05A	85	FD		STA	ZP+2		; and store it also
C05C	98			TYA			; put digit's place counter into .A
C05D	09	30		ORA	#48		; Convert digit's place counter to ASCII.
C05F	AC	A9	C0	LDY	CLKCTR		; effectively add 48 to get an ASCII digit
C062	EE	A9	C0	INC	CLKCTR		; get the current clock place counter
C065	91	9B		STA	(ZT),Y		; update it for the next place
							; store current ASCII digit into the clock
							; frame
C067	C8			INY			; determine whether the next place is even
							; or odd
C068	98			TYA			; shift the number right and check the
							; carry flag
C069	4A			LSR			
C06A	B0	06		BCS	DECRT		; branch occurs with odd numbers
							; If even, increment the clock frame pointer
							; beyond the colon or decimal.
C06C	E6	9B		INC	ZT		; increment low byte pointer
C06E	D0	02		BNE	DECRT		
C070	E6	9C		INC	ZT+1		; and the high byte if the low byte wraps
C072	CA		DECRT	DEX			; decrement .X three times since three-byte
							; entries in subtrahend table
C073	CA			DEX			
C074	CA			DEX			
C075	10	B8		BPL	INITCT		; handle the next digit's place
							;
							; Now print the clock frame.
C077	A0	00		LDY	#0		; as an index for PRTCLK
C079	B9	9D	C0	LDA	CLOCK,Y		; get each character from clock
C07C	F0	06		BEQ	EXIT		; if zero byte, we're done
C07E	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT		; print each character from clock
C081	C8			INY			; next character
C082	D0	F5		BNE	PRTCLK		; branch always
C084	60		EXIT	RTS			
							;
							; A table of three-byte subtrahends follows.
C085	01	00	00	TB3SUB	.BYTE	\$1,\$0,\$0,\$A,\$0,\$0,\$3C,\$0,\$0,\$58,\$2,\$0	
C091	10	0E	00		.BYTE	\$10,\$E,\$0,\$A0,\$8C,\$0,\$C0,\$4B,\$3,\$80,\$F5,\$20	
C09D	20	20	3A	CLOCK	.ASC	" : : "	; clock frame
C0A8	00				.BYTE	0	; terminator byte
C0A9	00		CLKCTR		.BYTE	0	; position counter within the clock frame

See also JIFDEL, JIFFRD, JIFSET.

Name

Set the jiffy clock

Description

Since time is never expressed in binary format in everyday usage, the jiffy clock—a three-byte, 24-hour cascade timer—is awkward for those of us who are accustomed to an hours/minutes/seconds decimal format. **JIFSET** allows you to set this clock to a particular time that is defined in this more conventional, decimal form.

Prototype

1. Before entering this routine, define the time for the jiffy clock in an hours/minutes/seconds/hundredths-of-seconds format (in **TIMSET**).
2. Initialize a digit's place counter (**CLRCTR**) to 7 for a 7-0 count (the jiffy clock reads to eight digits).
3. Disable IRQ interrupts to prevent the jiffy clock from advancing while it's being set.
4. Clear the jiffy clock by storing a zero to its three bytes.
5. Initialize the **X** register to zero so that it initially points to the low byte of the smallest addend (the low byte of \$000001) in a table of addends (**TB3ADD**).
6. In **RDSET**, perform a three-byte conversion of the intended time (**TIMSET**) to the format used by the jiffy clock, set the clock, then reenables interrupts and return to the calling program.

Explanation

JIFSET sets the jiffy clock time to the value in **TIMSET**. In the example, time is set to 18:02:45.00. (The equivalent BASIC statement would be `TI$ = "180245"`.)

The approach taken in converting **TIMSET** to a jiffy-clock format is the opposite of that used in **JIFPRT**, which converts the clock reading to an hours/minutes/seconds/hundredths-of-seconds format.

Instead of using a subtraction method to do this conversion, we use addition here. Roughly speaking, each digit within **TIMSET**—beginning with the most significant digit, or the tenths-of-hours' place—is multiplied by the corresponding three-byte number in **TB3ADD**. This process continues until all digits have been accounted for. Accomplish each so-called multiplication by first storing the current digit in a counter

JIFSET

(CLKCTR) and then repeatedly adding the respective three-byte addend until the counter decrements to zero.

The interim result of each three-byte addition can be stored into the three memory locations used by the jiffy clock. This is possible since we have earlier disabled the IRQ interrupts which would ordinarily update the jiffy clock.

Routine

```

C000          ZP      =    251
C000          TIME   =    160          ; three-byte jiffy clock
;
; Set the jiffy clock to TIMSET.
; initialize a place counter
C000 A9 07      JIFSET LDA #7
C002 8D 5C C0   STA CLKCTR
C005 78         JIFFRD SEI          ; prevent the jiffy clock from advancing
; while it's being set
; clear jiffy clock to zero and initialize .X
; for ADDLOP
C006 A2 00          LDX #0
;
C008 86 A0          STX TIME
C00A 86 A1          STX TIME+1
C00C 86 A2          STX TIME+2
C00E A0 00          LDY #0          ; as an index in TIMSET
C010 B9 54 C0 RDSET LDA TIMSET,Y  ; get a byte from TIMSET
C013 F0 1A          BEQ NEXTPL     ; if zero, skip ADDLOP
C015 A8             TAY           ; use .Y as an addition counter
C016 18             CLC           ; for addition
C017 A5 A2          LDA TIME+2     ; get the clock low byte
C019 7D 3C C0 ADC TB3ADD,X       ; add low byte of three-byte table entry
C01C 85 A2          STA TIME+2     ; store it in the clock
C01E A5 A1          LDA TIME+1     ; do the same for clock middle byte
C020 7D 3D C0 ADC TB3ADD+1,X
C023 85 A1          STA TIME+1
C025 A5 A0          LDA TIME       ; do the same for clock high byte
C027 7D 3E C0 ADC TB3ADD+2,X
C02A 85 A0          STA TIME
C02C 88             DEY           ; decrement addition counter
C02D D0 E7          BNE ADDLOP     ; repeat ADDLOP until respective TIMSET
; digit is zero
; for next three-byte entry in TB3ADD
C02F E8             NEXTPL INX
C030 E8             INX
C031 E8             INX
C032 CE 5C C0 DEC CLKCTR         ; for next digit in TIMSET
C035 AC 5C C0 LDY CLKCTR
C038 10 D6          BPL RDSET      ; have all digits been handled?
C03A 58             EXIT CLI       ; we've set the jiffy clock, so reenable IRQ
; interrupts
; we're done
C03B 60             RTS
;
; three-byte table of addends
C03C 01 00 00 TB3ADD .BYTE $1,$0,$0,$A,$0,$0,$3C,$0,$0,$58,$2,$0
C048 10 0E 00 .BYTE $10,$E,$0,$A0,$8C,$0,$C0,$4B,$3,$80,$F5,$20
C054 01 08 00 TIMSET .BYTE 1,8,0,2,4,5,0,0
;
C05C 00           CLKCTR .BYTE 0          ; jiffy clock setting
; position counter within TIMSET

```

See also JIFDEL, JIFFRD, JIFPRT.

Name

Read both joysticks separately

Description

This routine reads both joysticks and returns a total of four values: the position of each stick (up, down, left, or right) and the state of the fire button for each joystick. The example routine contains a complete two-player game.

Prototype

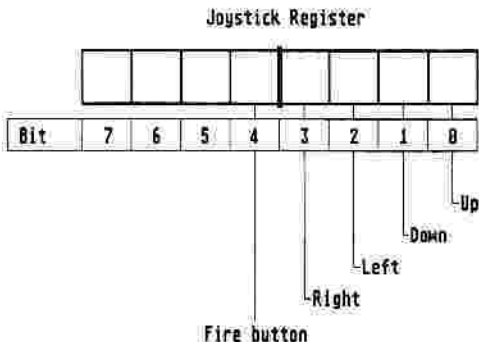
1. Load .Y with 1, as an index.
2. Load .A indexed by .Y from CIAPRA, the joystick register.
3. Exclusive-OR with %00010000 and then AND with %00010000, to isolate the bit that echoes the fire button.
4. Store this value in FIRE2, indexed by .Y.
5. LDA CIAPRA,Y again.
6. This time, EOR with %00001111 and then AND with %00001111.
7. Store the result in JOY2,Y.
8. Decrement .Y and branch back to step 2 while it's positive.

Explanation

There are two registers on the 64 and 128 that tell you the status of the joystick ports, locations 56320 and 56321 (\$DC00-\$DC01). These registers are called CIAPRA and CIAPRB—CIA data port A and port B. Unfortunately, the values you find here are doubly backwards.

The first way they're backwards is the labeling of the joystick port and the registers. Register B (\$DC01) is joystick port 1. Register A (\$DC00) is port 2. To read the first joystick, check the second register and vice versa.

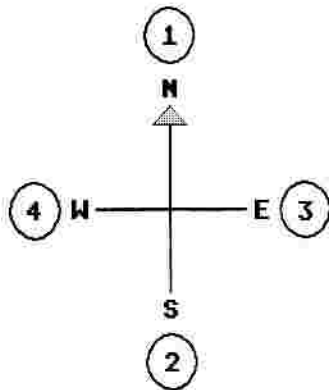
The second way they're backwards is the way the bits operate:



You might think that if the joystick is pushed to the left, bit 2 would be on and you'd see a value of \$04 in the register. What really happens is that a %1 means the switch is off and %0 means it's on. So %xxx11110 means the joystick is being pushed forward.

The **JOY2SE** subroutine allows for the first problem by putting the JOY2 byte before JOY1, and FIRE2 before FIRE1 in memory (see locations \$C0F7-\$C0FA below). It solves the second problem by EORing the value with 15 or 16, then ANDing with 15 or 16. The result is a 16 in FIRE2 or FIRE1 if the fire button is down and a 0 if it's not. The value in JOY2 or JOY1 is 1, 2, 4, 8, or some combination of the numbers for diagonals (up and right would be 1 plus 8, for example).

The example program is a classic computer game. There are two players, each of whom has a joystick for moving. If a player doesn't touch the joystick, that player's character continues moving in the same direction. If the joystick is moved, the character changes direction (north, south, east, or west):



Each player leaves behind a trail, which marks the spaces the character (the worm) has previously traveled over. You can move into new territory, but if you hit a trail (or the edge of the screen), your worm dies, and points are awarded to your opponent.

The game as it appears is complete. But it could be improved. For example, after a crash, you could add the **EXPLOD** routine for a sound effect. The hearts and exclamation points that make up the worms could be improved with custom characters (see **CHRDEF** for an example of redefined characters).

Note to 128 users: Pressing the fire button on the 128 makes the computer act as if the F8 key was pressed. Thus, you may find that when the game ends, you're in the ML monitor. To prevent this, enter the line KEY8,"" before you play the game (normally, F8 is predefined to print MONITOR).

Routine

```

C000          ZP      =   $FB
C000          JIF     =   $A2      ; low byte of jiffy clock
C000          NDX     =   198      ; index to keyboard buffer (use 208 on
                                ; the 128)
C000          CHCOLR  =   646      ; use 241 on the 128
C000          BGCOLR  =   53281
C000          CHROUT  =   $FFD2
C000          LINPRT  =   $BDCE    ; use $8E32 on the 128
C000          WM1     =   1040
C000          WM2     =   2000
C000          CIAPRA  =   56320

C000 20 FB C0      JSR  PREP      ; initial one-time setup for variables
C003 20 16 C1      JSR  START     ; setup for the beginning of a round
C006 20 B3 C1      JSR  PUTIT    ; POKE a character to the screen
C009 20 DD C0      JSR  JOY2SE   ; read the joysticks
C00C AD FA C0      LDA  FIRE1     ; wait for the fire button
C00F 0D F9 C0      ORA  FIRE2     ; either one can start the game
C012 F0 F5         BEQ  FLAG      ; keep looping until fire
C014 20 60 C0      JSR  SETDIR   ; set the direction
C017 20 B3 C1      JSR  PUTIT    ; put the character on the screen
C01A A5 A2         LDA  JIF
C01C 69 0A         ADC  #10       ; delay is jiffy clock + 10
C01E C5 A2         CMP  JIF       ; compare it
C020 D0 FC         BNE  DLAY      ; go back
C022 EE B1 C1      INC  POINTS    ; add one to the current round's points
C025 D0 03         BNE  LY
C027 EE B2 C1      INC  POINTS+1  ; INC the high byte, if necessary
C02A C0 00         CPY  #0        ; does Y hold a zero?
C02C F0 E6         BEQ  MAINLP    ; yes, keep going because neither player hit a
                                ; wall
                                ;
                                ; end of a round
C02E C0 02         CPY  #2        ; did both players crash?
C030 F0 D1         BEQ  ROUND    ; yes—no points, no penalty
C032 AD D9 C1      LDA  LOSER     ; either 0 or 2 for the loser
C035 49 02         EOR  #2        ; flip 0 and 2, now it's the winner
C037 A8           TAY            ; Y holds the winner
C038 18           CLC            ; get ready to add points
C039 AD B1 C1      LDA  POINTS    ; low byte of points
C03C 79 0D C1      ADC  P1SCOR,Y  ; add to the score
C03F 99 0D C1      STA  P1SCOR,Y  ; and store it
C042 AD B2 C1      LDA  POINTS+1  ; high byte
C045 79 0E C1      ADC  P1SCOR+1,Y ; add it
C048 99 0E C1      STA  P1SCOR+1,Y ; store it
                                ;
C04B AD D9 C1      LDA  LOSER     ; 0 or 2 again
C04E 4A           LSR            ; make it 0 or 1
C04F AA           TAX
C050 DE 11 C1      DEC  P1WORM,X  ; one less worm for the loser (P1 or P2)
C053 F0 03         BEQ  QUIT     ; if it's zero, quit
C055 4C 03 C0      JMP  ROUND    ; else, do another round
C058 20 16 C1      JSR  START     ; print the final score

```

JOY2SE

```

C05B A9 00          LDA #0           ; clear out
C05D 85 C6          STA NDX          ; the keyboard buffer
C05F 60             RTS              ; and quit
;
; SETDIR does two things—continue the
; current path and set a new one.
C060 A0 01          SETDIR  LDY #1           ; index to P1DIR/P2DIR
C062 A2 02          LDX #2           ; index to P1POS/P2POS
C064 B9 AF C1      CHKD   LDA P1DIR,Y      ; get the number (1-4, for north, south, east,
; west)
C067 C9 01          CHK1   CMP #1           ; north
C069 D0 10          BNE  CHK2          ; no, check south
C06B BD AB C1      C1     LDA P1POS,X      ; yes, it is north
C06E 38             SEC              ; so move up (-40 in screen memory)
C06F E9 28          SBC #40          ; subtract
C071 9D AB C1      C1     STA P1POS,X      ; store
C074 B0 34          BCS  TRYNEX
C076 DE AC C1      C1     DEC P1POS+1,X    ; if carry clear, DEC the high byte
C079 10 2F          BPL  TRYNEX
C07B C9 02          CHK2   CMP #2           ; check for south
C07D D0 10          BNE  CHK3          ; not south
C07F BD AB C1      C1     LDA P1POS,X
C082 18             CLC
C083 69 28          ADC #40          ; add 40
C085 9D AB C1      C1     STA P1POS,X
C088 90 20          BCC  TRYNEX
C08A FE AC C1      C1     INC P1POS+1,X
C08D 10 1B          BPL  TRYNEX      ; branch always
;
C08F C9 03          CHK3   CMP #3           ; east, perhaps
C091 D0 0A          BNE  WEST          ; definitely west
C093 FE AB C1      C1     INC P1POS,X      ; add one to head east
C096 D0 12          BNE  TRYNEX
C098 FE AC C1      C1     INC P1POS+1,X
C09B 10 0D          BPL  TRYNEX
C09D BD AB C1      C1     WEST  LDA P1POS,X
C0A0 E9 01          SBC #1           ; carry is always set if we get this far
C0A2 9D AB C1      C1     STA P1POS,X
C0A5 B0 03          BCS  TRYNEX
C0A7 DE AC C1      C1     DEC P1POS+1,X
;
C0AA CA            TRYNEX  DEX          ; .X counts down two
C0AB CA            DEX
C0AC 88            DEY
C0AD 10 B5          BPL  CHKD
;
C0AF 20 DD C0      C0     JSR  JOY2SE      ; check the joystick
C0B2 AE F8 C0      C0     LDX  JOY1       ; this will be a number 0-15
C0B5 F0 08          BEQ  SKIPIT
C0B7 BD CD C0      C0     LDA  NSEW,X     ; find north, south, east, west
C0BA F0 03          BEQ  SKIPIT
C0BC 8D AF C1      C1     STA  P1DIR
C0BF AE F7 C0      C0     SKIPIT  LDX  JOY2       ; direction for P1
C0C2 F0 08          BEQ  SKIP2          ; look at player 2
C0C4 BD CD C0      C0     LDA  NSEW,X     ; find north, south, east, west again
C0C7 F0 03          BEQ  SKIP2
C0C9 8D B0 C1      C1     STA  P2DIR
C0CC 60            RTS              ; direction for P2
C0CD 00 01 02      NSEW  .BYTE 0,1,2,0,4,0,0,0,3
C0D6 00 00 00      .BYTE 0,0,0,0,0,0,0
;
C0DD A0 01          JOY2SE  LDY #1           ; index for checking 0 and 1
C0DF B9 00 DC      JOYLP  LDA  CIAPRA,Y  ; joystick A (number 2) or B (number 1)

```

```

COE2 49 10
COE4 29 10
COE6 99 F9 C0
COE9 B9 00 DC
COEC 49 0F
COEE 29 0F
COF0 99 F7 C0
COF3 88
COF4 10 E9
COF6 60

EOR #16 ; flip bit 4
AND #16 ; and isolate it
STA FIRE2,Y ; store in the table
LDA CIAPRA,Y ; check the joystick again
EOR #15 ; flip bits 0-3
AND #15 ; and mask off the high nybble
STA JOY2,Y ; store the result
DEY ; count down
BPL JOYLP ; until .Y is -1
RTS

COF7 00 JOY2 .BYTE 0
COF8 00 JOY1 .BYTE 0
COF9 00 FIRE2 .BYTE 0
COFA 00 FIRE1 .BYTE 0

COFB A2 05 PREP LDX #PSIZ ; copy the table PTAB
COFD BD 07 C1 PLOOP LDA PTAB,X ; get the number
C100 9D 0D C1 STA P1SCOR,X ; store it
C103 CA DEX ; count down
C104 10 F7 BPL PLOOP ; to -1 before
C106 60 RTS ; returning
C107 00 00 00 PTAB .BYTE 0,0,0,5,5 ; two 2-byte scores, plus five worms each
C10D PSIZ = *-PTAB-1 ; the size of the table
; which is copied to the variables below
; score
C10D 00 00 P1SCOR .BYTE 0,0
C10F 00 00 P2SCOR .BYTE 0,0
C111 05 P1WORM .BYTE 5 ; number of worms left
C112 05 P2WORM .BYTE 5
C113 53 P1CH .BYTE 83 ; screen code for heart
C114 00 .BYTE 0 ; this byte is deliberately left blank
C115 21 P2CH .BYTE 33 ; screen code for exclamation point

C116 A2 07 START LDX #RSIZ ; copy the table RTAB
C118 BD A3 C1 RLOOP LDA RTAB,X ; get a number
C11B 9D AB C1 STA P1POS,X ; copy it
C11E CA DEX ; count down
C11F 10 F7 BPL RLOOP ; until .X is -1

C121 A9 01 LDA #1 ; color code for white
C123 8D 86 02 STA CHCOLR ; character color
C126 8D 21 D0 STA BGCOLR ; background color
C129 A9 93 LDA #$93 ; clear screen character
C12B 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT ; print it
C12E A9 0C LDA #12 ; medium gray
C130 8D 21 D0 STA BGCOLR ; background color (do this to allow for
; version 2.64s)
; purple
C133 A9 04 LDA #4
C135 8D 86 02 STA CHCOLR
C138 A9 0D LDA #13 ; <RETURN>
C13A 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C13D A9 DB LDA #219 ; picket-fence character
C13F A2 29 LDX #41
C141 20 9C C1 JSR PRLP ; print it .X number of times
C144 A2 15 LDX #21 ; repeat the next loop 21 times
C146 A9 9D EDGES LDA #157 ; cursor left
C148 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT ; backup twice
C14B 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C14E A9 11 LDA #17 ; cursor down
C150 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C153 A9 DB LDA #219 ; picket fence again
C155 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C158 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT

```


JOY2SE

```

C15B CA
C15C D0 E8
C15E A2 27
C160 20 9C C1
C163 A9 06
C165 8D 86 02
C168 AE 0F C1
C16B AD 10 C1
C16E 20 CD BD
C171 A9 13
C173 20 D2 FF
C176 AE 0D C1
C179 AD 0E C1
C17C 20 CD BD
C17F AD 13 C1
C182 AE 11 C1
C185 F0 06
C187 9D 10 04 POK1
C18A CA
C18B D0 FA
C18D AD 15 C1 OOPS1
C190 AE 12 C1
C193 F0 06
C195 9D D0 07 POK2
C198 CA
C199 D0 FA
C19B 60 OOPS2
C19C 20 D2 FF PRLP
C19F CA
C1A0 D0 FA
C1A2 60
C1A3 9A 05 D6 RTAB
C1A7 03 04
C1A9 00 00
C1AB
C1AB 00 00 P1POS
C1AD 00 00 P2POS
C1AF 00 P1DIR
C1B0 00 P2DIR
C1B1 00 00 POINTS
C1B3 A2 03 PUTIT
C1B5 BD AB C1 KELP
C1B8 95 FB
C1BA CA
C1BB 10 F8
C1BD A0 00
C1BE A2 02
C1C1 A1 FB LOOK
C1C3 C9 20
C1C5 F0 08
C1C7 C8
C1C8 A9 56
C1CA 8E D9 C1
C1CD D0 03
DEX
BNE EDGES ; print the edges
LDX #39 ; now finish the bottom row
JSR PRLP ; A still holds the T shape
;
LDA #6 ; blue
STA CHCOLR ; character color blue
LDX P2SCOR ; get ready to print
LDA P2SCOR+1 ; the score of player 2
JSR LINPRT ; print it
LDA #19 ; home (to print player 1's score)
JSR CHROUT
LDX P1SCOR ; low byte
LDA P1SCOR+1 ; high byte
JSR LINPRT
;
; Finish up by poking the number of
; remaining worms to the screen,
; the character
; number of worms left
LDA P1CH
LDX P1WORM
BEQ OOPS1
STA WM1,X
DEX
BNE POK1
LDA P2CH ; the character for P2
LDX P2WORM ; how many worms are left?
BEQ OOPS2
STA WM2,X
DEX ; count down
BNE POK2
RTS ; end
;
; this routine prints the character in .A
; counts down
; and repeats .X times
JSR CHROUT
DEX
BNE PRLP
RTS
.WORD 1434,1494 ; starting positions
.BYTE 3,4 ; directions
.BYTE 0,0 ; initial points
= *-RTAB-1
.WORD 0 ; position of player 1
.WORD 0 ; and player 2
.BYTE 0 ; direction of P1
.BYTE 0 ; and P2
.BYTE 0,0 ; points for a round
;
LDX #3 ; first get the addresses of the characters
LDA P1POS,X ; put the positions into ZP
STA ZP,X ; two pointers
DEX ; and loop
BPL KELP ; down to zero
;
LDY #0 ; .Y is going to indicate a winner if a collision
; occurs
LDX #2 ; offset for the characters
LDA (ZP,X) ; check the current location
CMP #32 ; if it's a space
BEQ WHEW ; we're safe
INY ; else, there's a problem
LDA #86 ; X-like character
STX LOSER ; X holds the loser
BNE STORIT ; branch always

```

```
C1CF BD 13 C1 WHEW LDA P1CH,X ; get one of the characters
C1D2 81 FB STORIT STA (ZP,X) ; and store it to the screen
C1D4 CA DEX
C1D5 CA DEX
C1D6 10 E9 BPL LOOK ; go back one more time
C1D8 60 RTS
C1D9 00 LOSER BYTE 0 ; this will hold a 0 or a 2
```

See also FIREBT, JOY2TO, JOYSTK.

JOY2TO

Name

Read the two joysticks together as one stick

Description

With this routine in your programs, the user needn't worry about which joystick to use. **JOY2TO** combines the responses from both joysticks, handling the result as if it were coming from one stick.

The routine returns directional information on a character that's moved around the screen by **POKE**ing. At the same time, it returns the status of the joystick fire buttons.

Prototype

1. AND the contents of the two joystick data registers together.
2. After performing an LSR, check the carry flag.
3. If carry is clear, decrement the row position for the character, provided you haven't reached the upper limit of the screen, and return to the main program. If the upper limit has been reached, simply exit the routine.
4. If carry was set in step 2, it indicates that neither joystick was moved in an upward direction. Repeat step 2 to check for downward, left, and right movement.
5. Check the fire buttons for both joysticks. If the fire-button bit (bit 4) is set, exit the routine.
6. Otherwise, store a zero to a fire-button flag (**FIREFL**) and **RTS** to the main program.

Explanation

Using **JOY2TO**, the program below draws with either joystick 1 or 2. By moving the joysticks in one of four directions, the ball character (**SCCODE**) "moves" across screen memory. Pressing a fire button clears the screen while the **E** key exits the program.

After initializing the row and column position of the ball, the corresponding screen memory location is calculated from **\$C017-\$C04A**. This series of instructions determines the screen position (**SP**) using the expression $SP = (ROW * 40 + COLUMN) + 1024$.

In order to multiply by numbers that aren't a power of 2 in machine language, such as 40, you have to break the multiplier down. In this case, first multiply the row by 4, then add the row once to this result: This is the same as multiplying the number by 5. Then multiply this by 8 (or $2 \uparrow 3$).

To multiply by 5, a single byte will suffice for the result. The screen row is never more than 24, so only a single byte is needed up to this point ($5 * 24 = 120$). But when you multiply this number by 8, since the result can exceed 255, two bytes are needed.

Once the screen location for the ball has been calculated and stored in zero page (ZP), the corresponding color memory location is determined and placed in $ZP+3$.

Following this is a delay of two jiffies. If this weren't included, joystick movement would be too rapid. If you add other routines to this code, a delay of one jiffy may be more suitable. But if you can't produce the effect you want, you may have to switch to a delay routine with more flexibility like **BYT2DL**.

Notice that within **JOYTO2**, we check the fire button at the end of the routine (in **FIRE**). In this case, we report its current status to the main program with the flag (**FIREFL**). When **FIREFL** is zero, a fire button is being pressed.

Routine

```

C000 SCREEN = 1024 ; starting screen location
C000 ZP = 251
C000 SCCODE = 81 ; screen code for ball character
C000 COLVAL = 3 ; color cyan
C000 TOPLIM = 0 ; top row of screen
C000 LEFLIM = 0 ; first column on left
C000 BOTLIM = 24 ; bottom row of screen
C000 RIGLIM = 39 ; last column on right
C000 XSTPOS = 19 ; column 20 starting position
C000 YSTPOS = 11 ; row 12 starting position
C000 CHROUT = 65490
C000 CIAPRA = 56320 ; data-port register A
C000 JIFFLO = 162 ; low byte of jiffy clock
C000 NDX = 198 ; NDX = 208 on the 128—number of
; characters in keyboard buffer
C000 LSTX = 197 ; LSTX = 213 on the 128—matrix coordinate
; for last key pressed
;
; Draw with joystick 1 or 2. Clear screen with
; fire button. Quit on E key.
; clear the screen
C000 A9 93 CLRCHR LDA #147
C002 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C005 A9 13 LDA #XSTPOS ; initialize starting position, column
C007 8D C3 C0 STA XPOS
C00A A9 0B LDA #YSTPOS ; and row
C00C 8D C4 C0 STA YPOS
C00F A9 01 LDA #1 ; also clear flag for fire buttons
C011 8D C5 C0 STA FIREFL
C014 AD C4 C0 MOVE LDA YPOS ; get row number
; And multiply it by 40.
C017 85 FB STA ZP ; save row temporarily
C019 0A ASL ; multiply row by 4
C01A 0A ASL
C01B 65 FB ADC ZP ; add to row (carry cleared here by last ASL)

```

JOY2TO

```

C01D 85 FB          STA  ZP          ; store result
                   ; Multiply ZP by 8 (two-byte multiplication).
C01F A9 00          LDA  #0          ; clear high byte of ZP
C021 85 FC          STA  ZP+1
C023 06 FB          ASL  ZP          ; double ZP, low byte first
C025 26 FC          ROL  ZP+1       ; then high byte
C027 06 FB          ASL  ZP          ; double ZP two more times
C029 26 FC          ROL  ZP+1
C02B 06 FB          ASL  ZP
C02D 26 FC          ROL  ZP+1
C02F A5 FB          LDA  ZP          ; now add column number
C031 6D C3          CO    ADC  XPOS       ; (carry cleared by last ROL ZP+1)
C034 85 FB          STA  ZP          ; store low byte of result
C036 A9 00          LDA  #0          ; add in carry to high byte
C038 65 FC          ADC  ZP+1
C03A 85 FC          STA  ZP+1       ; and store high byte
                   ; Add in start of the screen.
C03C 18             CLC          ; for addition
C03D A9 00          LDA  #<SCREEN    ; get low byte of screen offset
C03F 65 FB          ADC  ZP          ; add in current position, low byte
C041 85 FB          STA  ZP          ; store low-byte result for screen position
C043 85 FD          STA  ZP+2       ; it's also the low-byte result for color RAM
                   ; position
C045 A9 04          LDA  #>SCREEN    ; get high byte of screen offset
C047 65 FC          ADC  ZP+1       ; add in high byte of position
C049 85 FC          STA  ZP+1       ; and store high-byte result
C04B 49 DC          EOR  #$DC        ; effectively add $D4 for high-byte color
                   ; RAM offset
C04D 85 FE          STA  ZP+3       ; store high-byte result in zero page
C04F A0 00          LDY  #0          ; as an index
C051 A9 03          LDA  #COLVAL     ; get the character color
C053 91 FD          STA  (ZP+2),Y    ; store color for ball in color RAM
C055 A9 51          LDA  #SCCODE     ; get the screen code
C057 91 FB          STA  (ZP),Y     ; store the ball to the screen
C059 A9 02          LDA  #2          ; for delay of two jiffies
C05B 65 A2          ADC  JIFFLO      ; add two to low byte of jiffy clock
C05D C5 A2          DELAY CMP  JIFFLO ; wait for two jiffies
C05F D0 FC          BNE  DELAY
C061 20 74          CO    JSR  JOY2TO ; check both joysticks
C064 AD C5          CO    LDA  FIREFL ; check fire buttons
C067 F0 97          BEQ  CLRCHR      ; if either fire button pressed, clear the screen
C069 A9 00          BUFCLR LDA  #0   ; clear keyboard buffer
C06B 85 C6          STA  NDX
C06D A5 C5          MATGET LDA  LSTX ; get last key pressed
C06F C9 0E          CMP  #14        ; is it E for exit?
C071 D0 A1          BNE  MOVE        ; if not E, then go to MOVE
C073 60             EXIT  RTS       ; if E pressed, then exit the program
                   ;
                   ; Total joystick conditions.
C074 AD 01          DC    JOY2TO    LDA  CIAPRA+1 ; read joystick 1
C077 2D 00          DC    AND  CIAPRA ; AND in joystick 2 reading
C07A 4A             UP    LSR          ; check up move
C07B B0 0D          BCS  DOWN       ; not up
C07D AD C4          CO    LDA  YPOS   ; handle up, get row
C080 C9 00          CMP  #TOPLIM    ; compare to the top
C082 F0 3E          BEQ  EXITJS     ; top limit reached
C084 CE C4          CO    DEC  YPOS   ; move up 1
C087 4C C2          CO    JMP  EXITJS ; and leave
C08A 4A             DOWN LSR        ; check down move
C08B B0 0D          BCS  LEFT       ; not down
C08D AD C4          CO    LDA  YPOS   ; handle down, get row
C090 C9 18          CMP  #BOTLIM    ; compare to screen bottom
C092 F0 2E          BEQ  EXITJS     ; bottom limit reached
C094 EE C4          CO    INC  YPOS   ; move down 1

```

```

C097 4C C2 C0      JMP  EXITJS      ; and leave
C09A 4A          LEFT  LSR              ; check left move
C09B B0 0D          BCS  RIGHT      ; not left
C09D AD C3 C0      LDA  XPOS        ; handle left, get column
C0A0 C9 00          CMP  #LEFLIM     ; compare to left limit
C0A2 F0 1E          BEQ  EXITJS      ; left limit reached
C0A4 CE C3 C0      DEC  XPOS        ; move left 1
C0A7 4C C2 C0      JMP  EXITJS      ; and leave
C0AA 4A          RIGHT LSR              ; check right move
C0AB B0 0D          BCS  FIRE        ; not right
C0AD AD C3 C0      LDA  XPOS        ; handle right, get column
C0B0 C9 27          CMP  #RIGLIM     ; compare to right limit
C0B2 F0 0E          BEQ  EXITJS      ; right limit reached
C0B4 EE C3 C0      INC  XPOS        ; move right 1
C0B7 4C C2 C0      JMP  EXITJS      ; and leave
C0BA 4A          FIRE  LSR              ; check fire buttons
C0BB B0 05          BCS  EXITJS      ; not up, down, left, right, or fire
C0BD A9 00          LDA  #0          ; a fire button pressed, so set flag
C0BF 8D C5 C0      STA  FIREFL
C0C2 60          EXITJS  RTS          ; we're finished
;
; Starting positions follow.
C0C3 00          XPOS  .BYTE 0      ; current column number
C0C4 00          YPOS  .BYTE 0      ; current row
C0C5 01          FIREFL .BYTE 1     ; neither fire button pushed if equal to one,
; pushed if zero

```

See also FIREBT, JOY2SE, JOYSTK.

JOYSTK

Name

Read a joystick

Description

You can add this routine to a program whenever you need to move a character about the screen with one of the joysticks. Before calling **JOYSTK**, define the border limits for the character in the equates and load the accumulator with the joystick number (1 or 2).

The routines return directional information as well as the status of the joystick fire button.

Prototype

1. Read the contents of the appropriate joystick data register into the accumulator.
2. After performing an LSR, check the carry flag.
3. If carry is clear, decrement the row position for the character, provided that you haven't reached the upper limit of the screen, and return to the main program. If the upper limit has been reached, simply exit the routine.
4. If carry is set in step 2, it indicates that the joystick is not moved in an upward direction. Repeat step 2 to check for downward, then left, and then right movement.
5. Finally, check the fire button bit. If it is set, exit the routine.
6. Otherwise, store a zero to a fire button flag (**FIREFL**) and **RTS** to the main program.

Explanation

The example program is almost identical to the program found under **JOY2TO**. Likewise, the two joystick routines themselves are quite similar.

The **JOY2TO** program **POKEs** the character moved around the screen along with its color byte. This one prints it with **CHROUT** after it has been positioned with **PLOTCR**. **TXTCOL** is used to color it. In the example program, the character moved by joystick 2 is the checked block—**CHR\$(166)**.

Since printing to the last screen position causes the screen to scroll, we limit the row position here to the first 24 rows (0-23).

The status of the fire button is returned to the calling program by using the flag **FIREFL**. **FIREFL** is zero when the fire button is being held down; otherwise, it's one.

Note: In using PLOT, remember that the row position loads into .X and the column into .Y. Also, be sure to clear the carry flag before you JSR to PLOT.

Routine

C000		CHAR	=	166		; checkered block character
C000		COLVAL	=	4		; color purple
C000		TOPLIM	=	0		; top row of screen
C000		LEFLIM	=	0		; first column on left
C000		BOTLIM	=	23		; one row up from bottom of screen
C000		RIGLIM	=	39		; last column on right
C000		XSTPOS	=	19		; column 20 (starting position)
C000		YSTPOS	=	11		; row 12 (starting position)
C000		CHROUT	=	65490		
C000		PLOT	=	65520		
C000		CIAPRA	=	56320		; data port register A
C000		JIFFLO	=	162		; low byte of jiffy clock
C000		NDX	=	198		; NDX = 208 on the 128—number of
						; characters in keyboard buffer
C000		LSTX	=	197		; LSTX = 213 on the 128—matrix coordinate
						; for last key pressed
C000		COLOR	=	646		; COLOR = 241 on the 128—current text
						; foreground color
						; Draw with joystick 2. Clear screen when
						; fire button pressed. Quit on E key.
						; clear the screen
C000	A9	93	CLRCHR	LDA	#147	
C002	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	
C005	A9	13		LDA	#XSTPOS	; initialize starting position, column,
C007	8D	94	C0	STA	XPOS	
C00A	A9	0B		LDA	#YSTPOS	; and row
C00C	8D	95	C0	STA	YPOS	
C00F	A9	01		LDA	#1	; also clear fire button flag
C011	8D	96	C0	STA	FIREFL	
C014	A9	04		LDA	#COLVAL	; store cursor color value
C016	8D	86	02	TXTCOL	STA	COLOR
C019	AC	94	C0	MOVE	LDY	XPOS
C01C	AE	95	C0		LDX	YPOS
C01F	18			PLOTCR	CLC	
C020	20	F0	FF	JSR	PLOT	; position the cursor at (.Y,.X)
C023	A9	A6		LDA	#CHAR	; position cursor
C025	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	; get the character to print
C028	A9	02		LDA	#2	; and print it
C02A	65	A2		ADC	JIFFLO	; for delay of two jiffies
C02C	C5	A2		CMP	JIFFLO	; add 2 to low byte of jiffy clock
C02E	D0	FC		BNE	DELAY	; wait for two jiffies
C030	A9	02		LDA	#2	
C032	20	45	C0	JSR	JOYSTK	; joystick number
C035	AD	96	C0	LDA	FIREFL	; read joystick 2
C038	F0	C6		BEQ	CLRCHR	; check fire button
C03A	A9	00	BUFCLR	LDA	#0	; if fire button pressed, clear the screen
						; clear the keyboard buffer (if joystick 1 is
						; used)
C03C	85	C6		STA	NDX	
C03E	A5	C5	MATGET	LDA	LSTX	; get last key pressed
C040	C9	0E		CMP	#14	; is it E for exit?
C042	D0	D5		BNE	MOVE	; if not E, go to MOVE.
C044	60		EXIT	RTS		; if E pressed, exit the program
C045	29	01	JOYSTK	AND	#1	; Enter with the joystick number in .A.
C047	AA			TAX		; determine joystick offset
C048	BD	00	DC	LDA	CIAPRA,X	; put offset in .X
						; read joystick 1 (.X = 1) or 2 (.X = 0)

JOYSTK

```

C04B 4A          UP          LSR                ; check up move
C04C B0 0D          BCS DOWN          ; not up
C04E AD 95 C0      LDA YPOS          ; handle up, get row
C051 C9 00          CMP #TOPLIM       ; compare to the top
C053 F0 3E          BEQ EXITJS       ; top limit reached
C055 CE 95 C0      DEC YPOS          ; move up one
C058 4C 93 C0      JMP EXITJS       ; and leave
C05B 4A          DOWN        LSR                ; check down move
C05C B0 0D          BCS LEFT          ; not down
C05E AD 95 C0      LDA YPOS          ; handle down, get row
C061 C9 17          CMP #BOTLIM       ; compare to screen bottom
C063 F0 2E          BEQ EXITJS       ; bottom limit reached
C065 EE 95 C0      INC YPOS          ; move down one
C068 4C 93 C0      JMP EXITJS       ; and leave
C06B 4A          LEFT        LSR                ; check left move
C06C B0 0D          BCS RIGHT         ; not left
C06E AD 94 C0      LDA XPOS          ; handle left, get column
C071 C9 00          CMP #LEFLIM       ; compare to left limit
C073 F0 1E          BEQ EXITJS       ; left limit reached
C075 CE 94 C0      DEC XPOS          ; move left one
C078 4C 93 C0      JMP EXITJS       ; and leave
C07B 4A          RIGHT       LSR                ; check right move
C07C B0 0D          BCS FIRE          ; not right
C07E AD 94 C0      LDA XPOS          ; handle right, get column
C081 C9 27          CMP #RIGLIM       ; compare to right limit
C083 F0 0E          BEQ EXITJS       ; right limit reached
C085 EE 94 C0      INC XPOS          ; move right one
C088 4C 93 C0      JMP EXITJS       ; and leave
C08B 4A          FIRE        LSR                ; check fire button
C08C B0 05          BCS EXITJS       ; not up, down, left, right, or fire
C08E A9 00          LDA #0            ; fire button pressed, so set flag
C090 8D 96 C0      STA FIREFL
C093 60          EXITJS     RTS                ; we're finished
;
C094 00          XPOS       .BYTE 0          ; current column position
C095 00          YPOS       .BYTE 0          ; current row
C096 01          FIREFL     .BYTE 1          ; fire button not pushed if equal to 1, pushed
; if 0

```

See also FIREBT, JOY2TO, JOY2SE.

Name

Wait for a keypress

Description

KEYDEL causes a program to pause until a key is pressed.

Prototype

1. Clear the keyboard buffer by storing a zero in NDX.
2. Repeatedly JSR GETIN until the accumulator contains a nonzero value, indicating a key has been pressed.
3. When this happens, return to the main program.

Explanation

This routine is quite simple. KEYDEL clears the keyboard buffer and then, using the Kernal routine GETIN, fetches a keypress.

In the example program, we clear the screen, print a message, and then call KEYDEL. Pressing a key allows the program to continue. At this point, the screen is cleared again.

Note: If you need to know the actual key that was pressed while in KEYDEL, the accumulator will contain its ASCII value upon returning from the routine.

Routine

C000			NDX	=	198		; NDX = 208 on the 128—number of
							; characters in keyboard buffer
C000			GETIN	=	65508		
C000			PLOT	=	65520		
C000			CHROUT	=	65490		
							; Print a message and wait for a response.
							; Then clear the screen.
C000	20	28	C0		JSR	CLRCHR	; clear the screen
C003	A2	17			LDX	#23	; twenty-fourth row
C005	A0	07			LDY	#7	; eighth column
C007	18		PLOTCR		CLC		; to position cursor at (7,23)
C008	20	F0	FF		JSR	PLOT	; position cursor
C00B	A0	00			LDY	#0	; as an index in PRTLOP
C00D	B9	2D	C0	PRTLOP	LDA	MSGSTR,Y	; get a character from the message string
C010	F0	06			BEQ	PRTEND	; quit printing on zero byte
C012	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHROUT	; and print it
C015	C8				INY		; for next character
C016	D0	F5			BNE	PRTLOP	; and continue printing
C018	20	1E	C0	PRTEND	JSR	KEYDEL	; wait for a keypress
C01B	4C	28	C0		JMP	CLRCHR	; clear the screen and RTS
							; Clear the keyboard buffer and wait for a
							; keypress.

KEYDEL

```
C01E A9 00      KEYDEL  LDA  #0           ; clear the keyboard buffer (see BUFCLR)
C020 85 C6      KEYDEL  STA  NDX
C022 20 E4 FF  KEYLOP  JSR  GETIN        ; get a keypress
C025 F0 FB      KEYLOP  BEQ  KEYLOP       ; if no keypress
C027 60         KEYLOP  RTS          ; we've got a key
;
C028 A9 93      CLRCHR  LDA  #147        ; clear the screen
C02A 4C D2 FF  CLRCHR  JMP  CHROUT       ; and RTS
;
C02D 50 52 45  MSGSTR  .ASC  'PRESS ANY KEY TO CONTINUE'
C046 00         MSGSTR  .BYTE 0           ; terminator byte
```

See also BYT1DL, BYT2DL, INTDEL, JIFDEL, TOD1DL.

Name

Load a program (ML or BASIC) to the location from which it was saved

Description

LOADAB performs an absolute load of an ML or BASIC program from disk. Thus, a program will be loaded into memory at the same address from which you saved it. If you wish to relocate the program as you load it, use **LOADBS** or **LOADRL**.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. Set up the parameters as 1,8,1 for an absolute load of the file (SETLFS, SETNAM).
3. On the 128, call SETBNK to specify the bank where the program is to be loaded and the bank containing its filename.
4. Load .A with zero to specify a load.
5. JSR to the Kernal LOAD routine.
6. If the program being loaded is in BASIC, store .X and .Y in the end-of-BASIC text pointer (VARTAB on the 64, TEXTTP on the 128).

Explanation

This routine, as written, relies on the file header information on the disk to load the program named PROGRAM. A secondary address of 1 causes the load to be absolute—that is, to the address specified in the program file itself.

Before calling the Kernal LOAD routine, place a zero in the accumulator. This tells the Kernal LOAD routine to load rather than to verify the program. Upon returning from LOAD, .X and .Y contain the low and high bytes, respectively, of the ending address of the file. For a 64 BASIC program, these should be placed in VARTAB, the two-byte end-of-BASIC text pointer at 45 (the equivalent pointer on the 128 is TEXTTP at 4624).

To use this routine to load your own BASIC programs, substitute for PROGRAM the name of the program you want to load. If you need to use the routine to load an ML program where it was saved, substitute the ML program name for PROGRAM. And since the program is not in BASIC, you can remove the STX VARTAB (STX TEXTTP on the 128) and STY VARTAB+1 (STY TEXTTP+1 on the 128) instructions following the JSR LOAD.

LOADAB

Note: **LOADAB** as presented lacks disk error checking. You can easily add this feature if you like by incorporating the subroutine **DERRCK** into the code. Place **DERRCK** just before **FILENM** as noted in the source listing. Jump to **DERRCK** immediately after the **JSR LOAD** instruction. Furthermore, be sure to open the error channel (15) at the beginning of the program (also noted in the source listing).

On the 128, you must define and include **BNKNUM** and **BNKFNM** at the end of the program.

Routine

```
C000          SETLFS    =    65466
C000          SETNAM   =    65469
C000          LOAD     =    65493
C000          VARTAB   =    45          ; end-of-BASIC pointer—substitute
                                           ; TEXTIP = 4624 for the 128
C000                                           ; SETBNK = 65384; Kernal bank number for
                                           ; data and filename (128 only)
C000                                           ; MMUREG = 65280; MMU configuration
                                           ; register (128 only)
                                           ;
                                           ; Load BASIC (or ML) program into memory
                                           ; where it was saved.
                                           ;
                                           ; Open channel 15 here if you include error
                                           ; checking (DERRCK).
                                           ;
C000          LOADAB   =    *          ; LDA #0; set bank 15 (128 only)
                                           ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
C000 A9 01          LDA   #1          ; logical file 1
C002 A2 08          LDX   #8          ; device number for disk drive
C004 A0 01          LDY   #1          ; secondary address of 1 causes absolute
                                           ; load
C006 20 BA FF      JSR   SETLFS      ; set for absolute load
                                           ; Include the following three instructions
                                           ; for the 128 only.
                                           ; LDA BNKNUM; bank for program
                                           ; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing filename
                                           ; JSR SETBNK
C009 A9 09          LDA   #FNLENG    ; length of filename
C00B A2 1C          LDX   #<ILENM    ; address of filename
C00D A0 C0          LDY   #>ILENM
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR   SETNAM      ; set up filename
C012 A9 00          LDA   #0          ; flag for load
C014 20 D5 FF      JSR   LOAD        ; load the file
                                           ;
                                           ; JSR DERRCK; insert for disk error
                                           ; checking
                                           ;
                                           ; For the 128, change VARTAB in next two
                                           ; instructions to TEXTIP.
C017 86 2D          STX   VARTAB     ; store end-of-BASIC program address into
                                           ; pointer
```

```

C019 84 2E          STY  VARTAB+  ; (these two instructions can be deleted for
C01B 60            RTS                    ; ML program loads)
;
; Insert DERRCK here if including error
; checking.
;
C01C 30 3A 50 FILENM .ASC "0:PROGRAM" ; insert your filename here (<= 16 characters)
C025          FNLENG =  *-FILENM      ; length of filename
; Include the next two variables for the
; 128 only.
; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number to load
; program into
; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; filename is located

```

See also LOADBS, LOADRL.

LOADBS

Name

Load a BASIC program into the current BASIC text area

Description

LOADBS performs a relative load of a BASIC program from disk. During this process, the load address in the file header on the disk is ignored. Instead, the program loads into the area of memory currently set aside for BASIC text.

If you want to relocate BASIC prior to loading the program, or if you need to load an ML program in this way, see **LOADRL**.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. Set up the parameters as 1,8,0 for a relative load of the file (SETLFS, SETNAM).
3. On the 128, call SETBNK to specify the bank in which to load the program and the bank containing the program filename.
4. Store zero in .A to specify a load.
5. Load .X and .Y with the starting address of BASIC from TXTTAB .
6. JSR to LOAD.
7. Store .X and .Y into the end-of-BASIC text pointer.
8. Relink the tokenized BASIC program text.

Explanation

This routine, as written, loads the BASIC program named "BASIC PROGRAM" into the BASIC text area. A secondary address of zero insures that the address in the file header will be overlooked when the program is positioned in memory.

Before JSR'ing to LOAD, the accumulator should be set to zero to load rather than to verify the file. The X and Y registers must contain the load address of the program. Since we're loading the program in the BASIC workspace, we can take this address from the two-byte pointer for the start-of-BASIC text area, TXTTAB.

Upon returning from the Kernal LOAD, .X and .Y contain the ending address of the program (plus 1). Complete the routine by storing these in the end-of-BASIC text pointer, VARTAB (TEXTTP for the 128), and relinking all program lines with the BASIC ROM routine LINKPG.

Note: **LOADBS** currently lacks disk error checking. You can add this feature if you like by incorporating the subroutine

DERRCK into the code. Place **DERRCK** just before **FILENM** as noted in the source listing. Jump to **DERRCK** immediately after the **JSR LOAD** instruction. Be sure to open the error channel (15) at the beginning of the program (also noted in the source listing).

On the 128, you must define and include **BNKNUM** and **BNKFNM** at the end of the program.

Routine

```

C000      SETLFS    =    65466
C000      SETNAM   =    65469
C000      LOAD     =    65493
C000      TXTTAB   =    43          ; TXTTAB = 45 for the 128—start-of-BASIC
                                       ; pointer
C000      VARTAB   =    45          ; end-of-BASIC pointer—substitute
                                       ; TEXTTP = 4624 on the 128
C000      LINKPG   =    42291      ; LINKPG = 20303 for the 128
C000                                       ; SETBNK = 65384; Kernal bank number for
                                       ; data and filename (128 only)
C000                                       ; MMUREG = 65280; MMU configuration
                                       ; register (128 only)
                                       ;
                                       ; Load BASIC program into normal BASIC
                                       ; memory.
                                       ;
                                       ; Open channel 15 here if you include disk
                                       ; error checking (DERRCK).
                                       ;

C000      LOADBS   -    *          ; LDA #0; set bank 15 (128 only)
                                       ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
                                       ; logical file 1
C000 A9 01          LDA    #1      ; device number for disk drive
C002 A2 08          LDX    #8
C004 A0 00          LDY    #0      ; secondary address of zero causes relative
                                       ; load
C006 20 BA FF      JSR    SETLFS   ; set for relative load
                                       ; Include the following three instructions
                                       ; for the 128 only.
                                       ; LDA BNKNUM; bank for program
                                       ; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing filename
                                       ; JSR SETBNK
C009 A9 0F          LDA    #FNLENG ; length of filename
C00B A2 23          LDX    #<ILENM ; address of filename
C00D A0 C0          LDY    #>ILENM
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR    SETNAM   ; set up filename
C012 A9 00          LDA    #0      ; flag for load
C014 A6 2B          LDX    TXTTAB  ; low byte of start-of-BASIC address
C016 A4 2C          LDY    TXTTAB+ ; high byte of start-of-BASIC address
C018 20 D5 FF      JSR    LOAD     ; load program at the start of BASIC
                                       ;
                                       ; JSR DERRCK; insert for disk error
                                       ; checking
                                       ;
                                       ; For the 128, change VARTAB in next two
                                       ; instructions to TEXTTP.
C01B 86 2D          STX    VARTAB  ; store end-of-BASIC program address into
                                       ; pointer
C01D 84 2E          STY    VARTAB+

```


LOADBS

```
C01F 20 33 A5      JSR  LINKPG      ; relink lines of tokenized BASIC program
C022 60           RTS      ; text
;
; Insert DERRCK here if you are including
; error checking.
;
C023 30 3A 42 FILENM .ASC "0:BASIC PROGRAM"
; substitute your filename here (<=16
; characters)
C032           ENLENG = *-FILENAME ; length of filename
; Include the next two variables for the
; 128 only.
; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number to which
; program is to be loaded
; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; filename is located
```

See also LOADAB, LOADRL.

Name

Load a BASIC or ML program at a designated memory address

Description

LOADRL is quite versatile. With it, you can load a BASIC or ML program from disk to any memory location specified. During this process, known as a *relative load*, the computer takes the load address from the X and Y registers rather than from the file (as is the case with absolute loads). Furthermore, if it's a BASIC program you're loading, **LOADRL** will even set the start-of-BASIC and end-of-BASIC pointers for you.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. Set up the parameters as 1,8,0 for a relocating load of the file (SETLFS, SETNAM).
3. On the 128, call SETBNK to specify the bank where the program is to be loaded and the bank containing its filename.
4. Store zero in .A to specify a load.
5. Store zero at the start-of-BASIC address (skip this step for ML loads).
6. Load .X and .Y with the load address (LOADAD).
7. Store this address in the start-of-BASIC pointer, TXTTAB (skip this step for ML loads).
8. JSR to the Kernal LOAD routine.
9. Store the contents of .X and .Y in the end-of-BASIC text pointer (skip this step for ML loads).
10. Relink the tokenized BASIC program text (skip this step for ML loads).

Explanation

The example routine is currently set up to load a BASIC program named "BASIC PROGRAM" at 16385 (LOADAD). To load your own BASIC program, just substitute its filename for "BASIC PROGRAM" and specify its load address as LOADAD in the equates. With the few additional changes given below, this same routine will just as easily perform an ML program load.

For all loads, whether BASIC or ML, a zero must be placed in the accumulator prior to JSR'ing to LOAD. This instructs the Kernal LOAD routine to load, rather than to verify, the program specified. If we're doing a BASIC program load, as in the example below, a zero must be placed in the byte

LOADRL

preceding the load address (or START, calculated in the equates). Since .A already contains a zero, we simply store this to START.

Furthermore, with a BASIC load, the start-of-BASIC text pointer (TXTTAB) must be set. Since the X and Y registers contain the load address (LOADAD) for the program prior to JSR LOAD, we can store these to TXTTAB at this time. This step is unnecessary with ML loads.

After executing the Kernal LOAD routine, you're finished if it's an ML program you're loading. But if you're doing a BASIC load (as in the example routine), you must store .X and .Y—which contain the ending address of the program (plus 1)—into VARTAB (the two-byte, end-of-BASIC text pointer) and relink all program lines with LINKPR. If you're working on a 128, change VARTAB to TEXTTP.

Note: **LOADRL** currently lacks disk error checking. You can easily add this if you like by incorporating the subroutine **DERRCK** into the code. Place **DERRCK** just before **FILENM** as noted in the source listing. Jump to **DERRCK** immediately after the JSR LOAD instruction. Be sure to open the error channel (15) at the beginning of the program, as noted in the listing.

On the 128, you must define and include **BNKNUM** and **BNKFNM** at the end of the program.

Routine

```
C000      SETLFS   =    65466
C000      SETNAM  =    65469
C000      LOAD    =    65493
C000      LOADAD  =    16385      ; memory location where we want to put the
                                ; program
C000      START  =    LOADAD-1   ; byte just prior to the start-of-BASIC text
C000      TXTTAB =    43         ; TXTTAB = 45 on the 128—start-of-BASIC
                                ; pointer
C000      VARTAB =    45         ; end-of-BASIC pointer—substitute
                                ; TEXTTP = 4624 for the 128
C000      LINKPG =    42291      ; LINKPG = 20303 on the 128
C000      ; SETBNK = 65384; Kernal bank number for
C000      ; data and filename (128 only)
C000      ; MMUREG = 65280; MMU configuration
                                ; register (128 only)
                                ;
                                ; Load the program "BASIC PROGRAM" at
                                ; 16385.
                                ;
                                ; Open channel 15 here if you include disk
                                ; error checking (DERRCK).
                                ;
C000      LOADRL =    *         ; LDA #0; set bank 15 (128 only)
                                ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
```

```

C000 A9 01          LDA #1          ; logical file 1
C002 A2 08          LDX #8          ; device number for disk drive
C004 A0 00          LDY #0          ; secondary address of zero causes
                                ; relocating load
C006 20 BA FF      JSR SETLFS      ; set for relocating load
                                ; Include the following three instructions
                                ; on the 128 only.
                                ; LDA BNKNUM; bank for program
                                ; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing filename
                                ; JSR SETBNK
                                ; length of filename
C009 A9 0F          LDA #FNLENG      ; length of filename
C00B A2 2A          LDX #<FILENM    ; address of filename
C00D A0 C0          LDY #>FILENM
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR SETNAM      ; set up filename
C012 A9 00          LDA #0          ; flag for load
C014 8D 00 40      STA $START      ; store a zero at the start of BASIC (delete
                                ; if loading ML)
C017 A2 01          LDX #<LOADAD    ; set the load address
C019 86 2B          STX $TXTTAB    ; set start-of-BASIC pointer (delete if
                                ; loading ML)
C01B A0 40          LDY #>LOADAD    ;
C01D 84 2C          STY $TXTTAB+1  ; (also delete if loading ML)
C01F 20 D5 FF      JSR LOAD        ; load the file at LOADAD
                                ;
                                ; JSR DERRCK; insert for disk error
                                ; checking
                                ;
                                ; For the 128, change VARTAB in the next
                                ; two instructions to TEXTTP.
C022 86 2D          STX $VARTAB    ; store end-of-BASIC program address into
                                ; pointer
C024 84 2E          STY $VARTAB+1  ; (delete for ML loads)
C026 20 33 A5      JSR LINKPG      ; relink lines of tokenized BASIC program
                                ; text (delete if loading ML)
C029 60            RTS
                                ;
                                ; Insert DERRCK here if you're including
                                ; error checking.
                                ;
C02A 30 3A 42 FILENM .ASC "0:BASIC PROGRAM"
                                ; substitute your filename here (<=16
                                ; characters)
C039          FNLENG = *FILENM    ; length of filename
                                ; Include the next two variables on the 128
                                ; only.
                                ; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number to which
                                ; program is to be loaded
                                ; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
                                ; ASCII filename is located

```

See also LOADAB, LOADBS.

MATGET

Name

Get a character using the keyboard matrix

Description

At times you may want to get a keypress while ignoring the position of the shift keys (SHIFT, CTRL, and Commodore keys). For instance, suppose you wish to receive a yes/no (Y/N) response at some point in your program. If the user happens to have SHIFT LOCK down while responding, the input will be a graphics character. With **MATGET** this won't happen.

Prototype

1. Get the keyboard matrix value of the last key pressed from the register at 197 (213 on the 128).
2. Compare the value with the keycode for no key pressed (64 on the 64; 88 on the 128).
3. If no key has been pressed, get another value from the register.
4. Otherwise, compare the value in the register with the keycode for a specified key.
5. If this key has not been pressed, check the register again.

Explanation

This routine relies on memory location 197 (213 on the 128) to provide a keycode for the last key pressed. This location takes its values from the I/O register at 56321 during every normal interrupt.

The keycodes for each key on the 64 and 128 are given in the table. The first 64 (0-63) keycodes are identical on the two machines. Additional keycodes have been assigned to the extra keys on the 128, including the numeric keypad. This lets you distinguish between an upper-row number key and a numeric-keypad number key on this machine.

Keycodes for the 64 and 128

0 = INST/DEL	33 = I
1 = RETURN	34 = J
2 = CRSR right/left	35 = 0
3 = f7	36 = M
4 = f1	37 = K
5 = f3	38 = O
6 = f5	39 = N
7 = CRSR down/up	40 = +
8 = 3	41 = P
9 = W	42 = L
10 = A	43 = -
11 = 4	44 = .
12 = Z	45 = :
13 = S	46 = @
14 = E	47 = ,
15 = Not used	48 = £
16 = 5	49 = *
17 = R	50 = ;
18 = D	51 = CLR/HOME
19 = 6	52 = Not used
20 = C	53 = =
21 = F	54 = ↑
22 = T	55 = /
23 = X	56 = 1
24 = 7	57 = +
25 = Y	58 = Not used
26 = G	59 = 2
27 = 8	60 = Space
28 = B	61 = Not used
29 = H	62 = Q
30 = U	63 = RUN/STOP
31 = V	64 = No key pressed (64)
32 = 9	HELP (128)

Additional 128 Keycodes

65 = 8 (keypad)	77 = 6 (keypad)
66 = 5 (keypad)	78 = 9 (keypad)
67 = TAB	79 = 3 (keypad)
68 = 2 (keypad)	80 = Not used
69 = 4 (keypad)	81 = 0 (keypad)
70 = 7 (keypad)	82 = . (keypad)
71 = 1 (keypad)	83 = ↑ (top)
72 = ESC	84 = ↓ (top)
73 = + (keypad)	85 = + (top)
74 = - (keypad)	86 = + (top)
75 = LINE FEED	87 = NO SCROLL
76 = ENTER (keypad)	88 = No key pressed

MATGET

In the example below, when an E has been pressed, we print it. This is to show that the E key has been pressed, either with or without any shift keys (SHIFT, CTRL, and Commodore keys) being held down.

Note: LSTX is updated during normal IRQ interrupts. If you write your own interrupt routine or perform an SEI to turn off interrupts, this routine will not work correctly (if at all). In such circumstances, you should call the Kernal routine SCNKEY (65439) to update LSTX before using this routine.

Routine

```
C000          LSTX    =    197          ; LSTX = 213 on the 128
C000          NOKEY   =    64          ; NOKEY = 88 on the 128
C000          CHROUT =    65490

;
; Accept only E as input regardless of the
; positions of the shift keys.

C000          MATGET =    *
C000 A5 C5      WAIT   LDA   LSTX      ; get the last keypress
C002 C9 40      WAIT   CMP   #NOKEY   ; compare to keycode for no key pressed
C004 F0 FA      WAIT   BEQ   WAIT     ; if no keypress, then wait
C006 C9 0E      WAIT   CMP   #14     ; keycode for E
C008 D0 F6      WAIT   BNE   WAIT     ; no E, so get another keypress
C00A A9 45      WAIT   LDA   #69     ; character code for E (E key was pressed)
C00C 20 D2 FF   WAIT   JSR   CHROUT   ; print it
C00F 60                WAIT   RTS
```

See also BUFCLR, CHRGR, CHRGRS, CHRKR.

Name

Move BASIC text area above an ML program

Description

The 4K block of memory at 49152 on the 64 is the most popular area for storing machine language programs. If your program calls for more than one ML routine, you may be forced to position one of the routines elsewhere in memory.

Two alternative regions for locating ML routines are at the top or bottom of the BASIC text area. Assuming you choose one of these options, you often must protect your ML code from being overwritten by a coresident BASIC program. This particular routine shows how to position your ML programs below BASIC.

Prototype

1. Move the address of the end of the BASIC text area (in VARTAB) up by one page beyond the end of this program (MBU64 plus your ML program). Also, change the pointer to the start of BASIC array space (ARYTAB) and the pointer to the top of string space (STREND) so they contain this address.
2. Store a zero to the low byte of TXTTAB to make the BASIC program start on an even-page boundary.
3. Store three zeros sequentially beginning at the address pointed to by TXTTAB.
4. Increment TXTTAB by 1.
5. Set the variable pointers (VARTAB, ARYTAB, and STREND) to point to an address two bytes beyond the start of BASIC text space (in TXTTAB) and return.

Explanation

To use MBU64, place your ML program at the end of this routine and then assemble both. The code at MLBAS (\$801-\$80C) provides you with a one-line BASIC program which SYSes to the start of MBU64 at 2061. This line reads:

```
10 SYS2061
```

When you run this BASIC program and the SYS executes, MBU64 moves the pointer to the start of BASIC program space (TXTTAB) above the end of your ML program (anywhere from 1 to 255 bytes above).

At the same time, several other BASIC pointers are altered, reflecting the fact that the BASIC program has been

NEWed. Among these are the end-of-BASIC pointer (VARTAB), the pointer to the start of BASIC array space (ARYTAB), and the pointer to the start of free RAM (STREND).

When moving BASIC up, remember that the location preceding the BASIC program text must contain a zero. For instance, suppose your BASIC program called for a hi-res screen at 8192. Since this screen occupies 8K of memory, you'll probably want to locate your BASIC program at 16384 or above.

If you choose to place it at 16384, a zero must be stored in this first location to mark the beginning of the BASIC program. TXTTAB, the start-of-BASIC pointer, in this instance, would point to 16385.

A BASIC program always ends with three zeros. The first one designates the end of the last program line, while the next two are the line link bytes. You can merge two BASIC programs by removing these last two zeros and storing a second BASIC program at this point in memory. If you attempt this, remember to relink the program lines for the two programs (by JSR'ing to LINKPRG at 42291) and adjust VARTAB, ARYTAB, and STREND to the end of the second program.

Routine

0801			TXTTAB	=	43				; pointer to start of BASIC program
0801			VARTAB	=	45				; pointer to end of BASIC program
0801			ARYTAB	=	47				; pointer to start of BASIC array storage area
0801			STREND	=	49				; pointer to end of string storage and start of ; free RAM
									; Move the start of BASIC above your ML ; program. Program runs from BASIC.
0801	0B	08	MLBAS	.BYTE	11,8				; line link to 2059
0803	0A	00		.BYTE	10,0				; line number
0805	9E			.BYTE	158				; token for SYS
0806	32	30 36		.ASC	"2061"				; SYS address
080A	00	00 00		.BYTE	0,0,0				; end of current line (0) and end of BASIC ; text (0,0)
									; Move BASIC up.
080D	A6	2E	MBU64	LDX	VARTAB+1				; load the high byte for the end of BASIC ; text
080F	E8			INX					; add one to move BASIC up by one page ; beyond this program
									; and reset all pointers to this address
0810	86	2C		STX	TXTTAB+1				
0812	86	2E		STX	VARTAB+1				
0814	86	30		STX	ARYTAB+1				
0816	86	32		STX	STREND+1				
0818	A9	00		LDA	#0				
081A	85	2B		STA	TXTTAB				; Set low byte of TXTTAB so it points to ; \$XX00 (start of BASIC ; is now 1-255 bytes beyond the end of this ; program).

```

081C A0 02          LDY #2          ; as an index in ZERLOP
081E 91 2B          ZERLOP STA (TXTTAB),Y ; put three zeros in memory pointed to by
                                ; TXTTAB
0820 88             DEY
0821 10 FB          BPL ZERLOP      ; do three zeros
0823 A2 01          LDX #1          ; TXTTAB increases by one to $XX01
0825 86 2B          STX TXTTAB      ; so address pointed to by TXTTAB, and on
                                ; either side are zeros
0827 E8             INX
                                ; increment .X twice since variables start
                                ; two bytes beyond start of BASIC
0828 E8             INX
0829 86 2D          STX VARTAB      ; and reset low byte of all variable pointers
082B 86 2F          STX ARYTAB
082D 86 31          STX STREND
082F 60             RTS
                                ; end of the routine to move BASIC up
                                ;
                                ; Put the ML routine you want below BASIC
                                ; here.

```

See also MBU128.

MBU128 (128 only)

Name

Move BASIC text area above an ML program on the 128

Description

If you're using many ML routines simultaneously on the 128, you may be forced to position one or more of these in the normal BASIC text area beginning at 7169. Of course, any ML routines placed in this area of memory must be protected from being overwritten by the BASIC program.

One solution is to move the BASIC text up. This is the approach used here. By altering the start-of-BASIC pointer, **MBU128** lets you insert your ML routines below a coresident BASIC program.

Prototype

Before entering the routine (specifically in **MLBAS**), set up a BASIC line that will jump to the beginning of **MBU128**. This line should read as follows:

```
BANK0:SYS(PEEK(45)+PEEK(46)+32)
```

Do not insert any extra spaces in this line.

1. Within **MLB128**, move the start of BASIC up by one page beyond the end of the current BASIC program.
2. Adjust the end-of-BASIC pointer (**TEXTTP**) to point to this address.
3. Store a zero to the low byte of **TXTTAB** (start-of-BASIC pointer) so that BASIC starts on an even-page boundary.
4. Store three zeros sequentially beginning at the address pointed to by **TXTTAB**.
5. Increment **TXTTAB** by one.
6. Store a 3 into the low byte of **TEXTTP** since the end of BASIC is two bytes beyond the start of BASIC (with no BASIC program in memory) and **RTS**.

Explanation

To use **MBU128**, place your ML program at the end of this routine and then assemble both. The code at **MLBAS** (**\$1C01-\$1C1D**) provides you with a one-line BASIC program which **SYS**es to the start of **MBU128** at 7201 in bank 0. This line reads

```
10 BANK0:SYS(PEEK(45)+256*PEEK(46)+32)
```

If you've previously used the **GRAPHIC** command, BASIC will relocate to **\$4000**. If this is the case, you'll need to

adjust the high byte for the line link (currently at \$1C02) to 64.

When you run this BASIC program and the SYS executes, **MBU128** moves the start-of-BASIC pointer (TXTTAB) above the end of your ML program (anywhere from 1 to 255 bytes above). At the same time, the end-of-BASIC pointer in TEXTTP is adjusted to point two bytes beyond this. The start of BASIC moves up and, in the process, the one-line BASIC program is NEWed.

The memory location preceding the BASIC program text must contain a zero. For instance, suppose you moved the start of a BASIC program to the address 8192. You'd place a zero in 8192, and TXTTAB, or the start-of-BASIC pointer, would have to point to 8193.

A BASIC program always ends with three zeros. The first one designates the end of the last program line, while the next two are the line link bytes. You can merge two BASIC programs together by removing these last two zeros and storing a second BASIC program at this point. If you do this, be sure to relink the lines for the two programs by JSRING to LINKPRG at 20303 and point TEXTTP to the end of the newly merged program.

Routine

1C01				TXTTAB	=	45		; start-of-BASIC program pointer
1C01				TEXTTP	=	4624		; end-of-BASIC program pointer
								; Move the start of BASIC above your ML
								; program—program runs from BASIC.
1C01	1F	1C		MLBAS	.BYTE	31,28		; line link to 7199
1C03	0A	00			.BYTE	10,0		; line number
1C05	FE	02			.BYTE	254,2		; two-byte token for BANK
1C07	30	3A			.BYTE	48,58		; zero and colon
1C09	9E	28	C2		.BYTE	\$9E,\$28,\$C2,\$28,\$34,\$35,\$29,\$AA		; SYS(PEEK(45)+
								; 256*PEEK(46)+
1C11	32	35	36		.BYTE	\$32,\$35,\$36,\$AC,\$C2,\$28,\$34,\$36,\$29,\$AA		; offset of 32 from start of BASIC text)
1C1B	33	32			.BYTE	51,50		; and three zeros for end of BASIC text
1C1D	29	00	00		.BYTE	\$29,0,0,0		; Move BASIC up.
								; load the high byte for the end of BASIC
1C21	AE	11	12	MBU128	LDX	TEXTTP+1		; text
								; add one to move BASIC up by one page
1C24	E6				INX			; beyond this program
								; now reset the start-
1C25	86	2E			STX	TXTTAB+1		; and end-of-BASIC pointers to this address
1C27	8E	11	12		STX	TEXTTP+1		
1C2A	A9	00			LDA	#0		
1C2C	85	2D			STA	TXTTAB		; set low byte of TXTTAB so that it points
								; to \$XX00 (start of BASIC
								; is now 1-255 bytes beyond the end of this
								; program)
1C2E	A0	02			LDY	#2		; as an index in ZERLOP

MBU128

```
1C30 91 2D      ZERLOP  STA  (TXTTAB),Y ; put three zeros in memory pointed to by
; TXTTAB
1C32 88          DEY
1C33 10 FB      BPL  ZERLOP ; do all three
1C35 A2 01      LDX  #1 ; TXTTAB increased by one to $XX01
1C37 86 2D      STX  TXTTAB ; so address at TXTTAB and on either side
; contains a zero
1C39 A2 03      LDX  #3 ; end of BASIC text is two bytes beyond
; start of BASIC
1C3B 8E 10 12   STX  TEXTTP ; end of the routine to move memory
1C3E 60          RTS ;
; Put the ML routine you want below BASIC
; here.
```

See also MBU64.

Name

Tune player

Description

MELODY provides a general framework for playing music. By changing certain parameters within this routine, you can adapt it to play any number of simple tunes.

Prototype

1. Before entering this routine, set up a table of notes which index values from a two-byte frequency table (NOTES), a table containing the relative durations for each note in NOTES (NDURTB), and a table of the two-byte frequencies needed for the tune (FREQTB).
2. Set a note counter (NOTENM) to zero.
3. Clear the SID chip with **SIDCLR** and select the necessary SID chip parameters (volume, attack/decay, and sustain/release).
4. In a loop (NOTELP), load the frequency for each note and store it in the frequency registers for voice 1.
5. Select a waveform (sawtooth in the example) and gate it.
6. Load the note's duration and cause a delay based on it.
7. Start the release cycle by ungating the waveform.
8. Increment the note counter and determine if all notes have played. If so, RTS. Otherwise, continue NOTELP to play the next note.

Explanation

MELODY plays a song by picking out notes from a table containing two-byte frequencies (FREQTB). These frequency values are the same ones given in the table of standard notes in your programmer's reference guide.

Currently, the values in FREQTB represent all the notes from G-4 (6430) through A-5 (14335). Alter this table depending upon which notes are used in your song. For instance, if your song ranged from G-2 to F-3, the frequencies in FREQTB would run from 1607 to 2864.

In building FREQTB, you really only need to list the actual note frequencies used in your song. But it generally appears less confusing if you include the entire range in the song, as we've done here. Furthermore, if the notes used are many or are selected from a wide range, you might let **NOTETB** generate a complete note table (all eight octaves) for you.

In order to get notes from FREQTB, a second table of in-

MELODY

dex numbers (NOTES) is required. Each note selected plays for a period of time based on a duration value given in yet another table, NDURTB. The actual duration of each note is the number taken from NDURTB times eight jiffies, or 8/60 second.

In the example below then, the first note in NOTES, or G-4 with a frequency of 6430, plays for 8 jiffies; the second note, a C-5 with a frequency of 8583 plays for 16 jiffies; and so on.

This song plays in voice 1 using a sawtooth waveform. But other voices or waveforms may be more suitable for the song you're playing. In addition, you may want to change the other SID chip parameters such as the volume level, or the attack/decay and sustain/release rates.

For each song played with this routine, you need to work out not only the relative time each note plays (in NDURTB), but also the overall tempo of the song. The number of jiffies specified in the delay loop at \$C036 determines a song's tempo. You may need to adjust this number, currently 8, up or down before the song sounds right.

Routine

```

C000      FRELO1  =    54272      ; starting address for the SID chip
C000      FREHI1  =    54273      ; voice 1 high frequency
C000      VCREG1  =    54276      ; voice 1 control register
C000      ATDCY1  =    54277      ; voice 1 attack/decay register
C000      SUREL1  =    54278      ; voice 1 sustain/release register
C000      SIGVOL  =    54296      ; SID chip volume register
C000      JIFFLO  =     162       ; low byte of jiffy clock
;
; Play song.
C000 A9 00      MELODY LDA #0
C002 8D AB C0    STA NOTENM      ; set pointer to first note in table
C005 20 AC C0    JSR SIDCLR      ; clear the SID chip
C008 A9 0F      LDA #15         ; set the volume to maximum
C00A 8D 18 D4    STA SIGVOL
C00D A9 1A      LDA #$1A        ; set attack/decay
C00F 8D 05 D4    STA ATDCY1
C012 A9 1B      LDA #$1B        ; set sustain/release
C014 8D 06 D4    STA SUREL1
C017 AE AB C0    NOTELP LDX NOTENM      ; get the note number
C01A BD 51 C0    LDA NOTES,X      ; get index for FREQTB
C01D 0A          ASL             ; double it since FREQTB contains two-
; byte addresses
; to index FREQTB
C01E AA          TAX
C01F BD 8D C0    LDA FREQTB,X      ; get low byte of note's frequency
C022 8D 00 D4    STA FRELO1      ; store it in voice 1
C025 BD 8E C0    LDA FREQTB+1,X    ; get high byte of note's frequency
C028 8D 01 D4    STA FREHI1      ; store it in voice 1
C02B A9 21      LDA #%00100001 ; gate sawtooth waveform
C02D 8D 04 D4    STA VCREG1
C030 AE AB C0    LDX NOTENM      ; put the note number in .X
C033 BC 6F C0    LDY NDURTB,X     ; get the note's duration from a table
C036 A9 08      REPEAT LDA #8           ; delay for number of jiffies in .A
C038 65 A2      ADC JIFFLO
C03A C5 A2      DELAY  CMP JIFFLO      ; has the time elapsed?

```

```

C03C D0 FC          BNE DELAY      ; if not, continue the delay
C03E 88            DEY
C03F D0 F5          BNE REPEAT    ; repeat the jiffy delay if necessary
C041 A9 20          LDA #00100000 ; ungate waveform
C043 8D 04 D4       STA VCREG1
C046 EE AB C0       INC NOTENM    ; increase note counter
C049 AD AB C0       LDA NOTENM
C04C C9 1E          CMP #NMNOTE   ; see if all notes have played
C04E 90 C7          BCC NOTELP   ; if not, then continue
C050 60            RTS                ; that's all
;
C051 00 05 05 NOTES .BYTE 0,5,5,7,7,9,12,9,5,0,5,5,7,7,9,5
; table of notes
C061 00 05 05       .BYTE 0,5,5,7,7,9,12,9,5,14,7,10,9,5
C06F                = * - NOTES ; number of notes
C06E 01 02 01 NDURTB .BYTE 1,2,1,2,1,1,1,1,1,2,1,2,1,2,1,3,3
; table of note durations
C07F 01 02 01       .BYTE 1,2,1,2,1,1,1,1,1,3,3,2,1,3,3
C08D 1E 19 9C FREQTB .WORD 6430,6812,7217,7647,8101,8583,9094
; table of 2-byte frequency values
C09B A2 25 DF       .WORD 9634,10207,10814,11457,12139,12860,13625,14435
C0AB 00            NOTENM .BYTE 0 ; note number counter
;
; Clear the SID chip.
C0AC A9 00          SIDCLR LDA #0 ; fill with zeros
C0AE A0 18          LDY #24 ; as the offset from FRELO1
C0B0 99 00 D4 SIDLOP STA FRELO1,Y ; store zero in each SID chip address
C0B3 88            DEY ; for next lower address
C0B4 10 FA          BPL SIDLOP ; fill 25 bytes
C0B6 60            RTS ; we're done

```

See also BEEPER, BELLRG, EXPLOD, INTMUS, NOTETB, SIDCLR, SIDVOL, SIRENS.

MIXLOW

Name

Change mixed-case characters to all lowercase

Description

MIXLOW takes a letter in the accumulator and returns it as lowercase in .A. The X and Y registers are unaffected by the routine. So, you can access **MIXLOW** from within a loop indexed by .X or .Y without needing to save and restore the index register.

In a word processor, this routine would be practical for setting up a search function. Let's say you want to find all occurrences of the word *computer*, whether the lettering is uppercase, lowercase, or a combination of the two. **MIXLOW** will help you with this process, converting each character of the specified word to lowercase. So, if *Computer* and *COMPUTER* appear in your document, both will be found.

Prototype

1. Determine whether the character in .A is less than the uppercase range.
2. If so, then RTS.
3. Determine whether the character is less than CHR\$(123), putting it in the first uppercase range, 97-122.
4. If it is, subtract 32 to put it in the lowercase range and RTS.
5. If the character value exceeds 122, check to see whether it's in the second uppercase range of 193-218.
6. If it is, convert it to lowercase by ANDing with 127 and RTS.

Explanation

The example routine first switches in lowercase/uppercase mode. An ASCII string (STRING) in mixed case is read in. Each letter of the string is converted to lowercase and printed with CHROUT. Before exiting the routine, the SHIFT/Commodore key combination is reenabled to allow case switching.

Note: When converting characters in the range 193-218 to lowercase, we AND with 127. This effectively subtracts 128, but saves a byte in the code (as opposed to using SEC: SBC #128).

Routine

```
C000      CHROUT  =    65490
C000      DSFTCM  =     8      ; DSFTCM = 11 on the 128
C000      ESFTCM  =     9      ; ESFTCM = 12 on the 128
;
```

```

; Convert an upper/lowercase string to all
; lowercase.
C000 A9 0E          LDA #14
C002 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C005 A9 08          LDA #DSFTCM ; disable case switching with
; SHIFT/Commodore key

C007 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
; Print string as all lowercase.
; as an index
C00A A0 00          LDY #0
C00C B9 37 C0      LDA STRING,Y ; get a character from string
C00F F0 09          BEQ FINISH ; is it a zero byte?
C011 20 20 C0      JSR MIXLOW ; convert to lowercase
C014 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT ; print it
C017 C8            INY ; next character
C018 D0 F2          BNE LOOP ; continue printing
C01A A9 09          LDA #ESFTCM ; enable SHIFT/Commodore key case
; switching

C01C 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C01F 60            RTS

;
; Convert mixed case in .A to all lowercase.
; Return in .A.
; is it less than uppercase A?
C020 C9 61          MIXLOW CMP #97
C022 90 12          BCC EXIT ; yes, so exit
C024 C9 7B          CMP #123 ; is it greater than uppercase Z?
C026 B0 04          BCS SECSET ; yes, so check for second uppercase set
; Character is in ASCII range 97-122.

C028 38            SEC
C029 E9 20          SBC #32 ; so subtract 32 to put it in range 65-90
C02B 60            RTS ; and exit
C02C C9 C1          SECSET CMP #193 ; is it less than second uppercase A?
C02E 90 06          BCC EXIT ; yes, so exit
C030 C9 DB          CMP #219 ; is it greater than second uppercase Z?
C032 B0 02          BCS EXIT ; yes, so exit
; character is in ASCII range 193-218
; so effectively subtract 128 to put in range
; 65-90

C034 29 7F          AND #127

C036 60            EXIT RTS

;
; ChAnGe MiXeD cAsE tO aLl LoWeRcAsE"
C037 C3 48 C1      STRING .ASC "ChAnGe MiXeD cAsE tO aLl LoWeRcAsE"
C059 00            .BYTE0

```

See also CNVERT, MIXUPP, SWITCH.

MIXUPP

Name

Convert mixed case characters to all uppercase

Description

MIXUPP takes the letter in the accumulator and returns it as uppercase in .A. In the process, .X and .Y are left intact. This routine is handy anytime you want only uppercase input—for instance, when filenames are requested or when a letter response is sought (Y/N).

Prototype

1. Determine whether the character in .A is in the lowercase range, 65–90.
2. If not, RTS.
3. Otherwise, add 32 to put it in the uppercase range, 97–122, and RTS.

Explanation

The example routine switches in the lowercase/uppercase character set, accepts individual characters with GETIN, converts them to uppercase with **MIXUPP**, and finally prints them with CHROUT. Pressing RETURN exits the routine. In the process, case switching with SHIFT/Commodore key is reenabled.

Note: A CLC is not required before 32 is added in **MIXUPP**. If the program falls through BCS, carry will already have been cleared.

Routine

```
C000          CHROUT  =    65490
C000          GETIN   =    65508
C000          DSFTCM  =      8      ; DSFTCM = 11 on the 128
C000          ESFTCM  =      9      ; ESFTCM = 12 on the 128
;
; Convert uppercase/lowercase input to all
; uppercase; quit on RETURN.
; switch to lowercase/uppercase mode

C000 A9 0E          LDA   #14
C002 20 D2 FF      JSR   CHROUT
C005 A9 08          LDA   #DSFTCM      ; disable SHIFT/Commodore key case
; switching

C007 20 D2 FF      JSR   CHROUT
C00A 20 E4 FF      JSR   GETIN      ; get a character
C00D F0 FB          BEQ   LOOP      ; if no input, wait
C00F C9 0D          CMP   #13      ; is it RETURN?
C011 F0 08          BEQ   QUIT      ; yes, so leave
C013 20 21 C0      JSR   MIXUPP     ; convert to all uppercase
C016 20 D2 FF      JSR   CHROUT     ; and print it
C019 D0 EF          BNE   LOOP      ; get another character
C01B A9 09          LDA   #ESFTCM     ; enable SHIFT/Commodore key case
; switching
```

```

C01D 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C020 60              RTS

;
; Convert ASCII input in .A to all uppercase.
; Return value in .A.
; is it less than lowercase a?
C021 C9 41      MIXUPP  CMP  #65
C023 90 06              BCC  EXIT
; yes, so exit
C025 C9 5B              CMP  #91
C027 B0 02              BCS  EXIT
; is it greater than lowercase z?
; yes, so exit
; Add 32 to put in ASCII range 97-122.
C029 69 20              ADC  #32
; note that carry is already clear if we fall
; through prior instruction
C02B 60              EXIT  RTS

```

See also CNVERT, MIXLOW, SWITCH.

MOVEDN

Name

Move a block of data downward in memory

Description

Specifically designed to move blocks of data down in memory, this routine can be used to move other machine language routines, or text and numeric data tables. Provided the source and destination blocks don't overlap, **MOVEDN** will also move memory up.

Prototype

In the initialization routine (MDINIT):

1. Store the two-byte origin address (here, BLOCK1) in ZP and the two-byte target, or destination, address (here, BLOCK2) in ZP+2.
2. Store the number of bytes to move down (NUMBER in the equates) in .X (low byte) and .Y (high byte).

In **MOVEDN**:

1. Store the number of bytes to move, currently in .X and .Y, into a two-byte counter (COUNTR).
2. Using indirect addressing in DOWNLP, transfer bytes from the source memory block (at ZP) to the target memory block (at ZP+2).
3. On the 128, you can move memory from one bank to another. Define BNKSRC (source bank number) and BNKTAR (target bank number) at the end of the program with the appropriate banks. Replace the LDA (ZP),Y at DOWNLP with the three instructions that follow it in the listing and the STA (ZP+2),Y just below this with the next four instructions (labeled 128 only).
4. Increase both zero-page pointers by one with the subroutine ADDONE.
5. Decrement the bytes counter (COUNTR), continuing DOWNLP until all bytes from the source block have been moved. Then RTS.

Explanation

The following program shows how **MOVEDN** might be used in a word processor to delete text from the screen.

After printing a message to the screen, the program waits for a keypress. If D is pressed, a portion of the message is deleted, and the program ends.

When you press D, the program calls the subroutine MDINIT, then **MOVEDN**. MDINIT tells **MOVEDN** where the source and target blocks begin (in ZP and ZP+2), and also how many bytes to move. Upon entering **MOVEDN**, the number of bytes to move is stored to a two-byte counter (COUNTR) which decrements during the memory transfer process. At the same time, the zero-page pointers to the source and target blocks are incremented. When COUNTR reaches zero, the transfer is complete.

Because it relies on zero-page addressing, on the 128, **MOVEDN** can be readily modified to move memory from bank to bank. To accomplish this, you need two Kernal routines: **INDFET**, which performs an indirect load into the accumulator from the bank in .X, and **INDSTA**, which stores .A indirectly into the bank in .X. To implement these routines, replace the LDA (ZP),Y at \$C046 with the commented instructions that follow (DOWNLP LDA #ZP:LDX BNKSRC:JSR INDFET) and replace the STA (ZP+2),Y at \$C048 with LDX #ZP+2:STX 697:LDX BNKTAR:JSR INDSTA. Also include the bank numbers for the source (BNKSRC) and target (BNKTAR) blocks, defined at the end of the program.

If you want to use **MOVEDN** to move memory up, before assembling the routine, switch the definitions of **BLOCK1** and **BLOCK2** so that **BLOCK1** is lower in memory. Of course, in order for this method to succeed, the two memory blocks must not overlap.

Note: Unlike some memory move routines (such as **SWAPIT**), **MOVEDN** has no error checking. It's up to you to make sure the memory blocks you've defined in the equates are in the proper relative position in memory.

Routine

C000	ZP	=	251	
C000	CHROUT	=	65490	
C000	PLOT	=	65520	
C000	GETIN	=	65508	
C000	BLOCK1	=	1267	; memory block 1 (source)
C000	BLOCK2	=	1262	; memory block 2 (target)
C000	NUMBER	=	757	; number of bytes to move down
C000	INDFET	=	65396	; Kernal routine to load indirectly from any
				; bank (128 only)
C000	INDSTA	=	65399	; Kernal routine to store indirectly to any
				; bank (128 only)
				;
				; Print a message to the screen. Delete a word
				; on D.
				; clear the screen
C000	A9 93	CLRCHR	LDA #147	
C002	20 D2 FF		JSR CHROUT	

MOVEDN

```

C005 A2 05          LDX #5          ; row number (sixth row)
C007 A0 1E          LDY #30         ; column number (thirty-first column)
C009 18             PLOTCLR      CLC          ; clear carry to set position
C00A 20 F0 FF          JSR PLOT        ; position cursor at (.Y,X)
C00D A0 00          LDY #0         ; as an index in PRTLOP
C00F B9 6D C0        PRTLOP     LDA TXTSTR,Y     ; get a character from TXTSTR
C012 F0 06          BEQ GETKEY    ; exit PRTLOP on zero byte
C014 20 D2 FF          JSR CHROUT    ; print the character
C017 C8             INY          ; for next character
C018 D0 F5          BNE PRTLOP   ; branch always
C01A 20 E4 FF          JSR GETIN     ; look for D
C01D F0 FB          BEQ GETKEY    ; if no keypress
C01F C9 44          CMP #68        ; is it D?
C021 D0 F7          BNE GETKEY    ; if not D, get another keypress
C023 20 2A C0        JSR MDINIT   ; initialize zero-page pointers and get number
                                ; of bytes to move
C026 20 3F C0        JSR MOVEDN   ; move bytes down
C029 60             RTS

;
; Initialize zero-page pointers to BLOCK1 and
; BLOCK2. Two bytes at ZP point
; to source, and two at ZP+2 point to target.
; Also put NUMBER in .X and .Y.
; low byte of BLOCK1 first
C02A A9 F3          MDINIT     LDA #<BLOCK1
C02C 85 FB          STA ZP
C02E A2 04          LDX #>BLOCK1 ; then high byte
C030 86 FC          STX ZP+1
C032 A9 EE          LDA #<BLOCK2 ; and again for BLOCK2
C034 85 FD          STA ZP+2
C036 A2 04          LDX #>BLOCK2
C038 86 FE          STX ZP+3
C03A A2 F5          LDX #<NUMBER ; then put low byte of number of bytes to
                                ; move down in .X
C03C A0 02          LDY #>NUMBER ; and high byte in .Y
C03E 60             RTS

;
; Move bytes down. Enter with the number
; of bytes to move in .X (low)
; and .Y (high). Source block is in two bytes
; at ZP, and target block at ZP+2.
; store number to COUNTR, low byte first
; then high byte
; index for DOWNLFP
; get a byte from source block
;
; On the 128, substitute the next three lines
; for the previous line
; to move memory from bank to bank.
; DOWNLFP LDA #ZP; put zero-page
; pointer to source block in .A
; LDX BNKSRC; bank number for source
; block
; JSR INDFET; load indirectly from bank .X
; beginning at source
;
C049 91 FD          STA (ZP+2),Y ; store it in target block
;
; Again, on the 128, substitute the next four
; lines for the previous line
; to move from bank to bank.
; LDX #ZP+2; put zero-page pointer to
; target block in 697
; STX 697
; LDX BNKTAR; bank number for target

```

```

; block
; JSR INDSTA; store indirectly from bank
; .X beginning at target
;
C04B 20 5E C0      JSR  ADDONE      ; increase ZP pointers by one
C04E CE 6B C0      DEC  COUNTR      ; decrement counter low byte
C051 D0 F4         BNE  DOWNLP      ; if low byte hasn't turned over, continue
; moving memory down
C053 CE 6C C0      DEC  COUNTR+1    ; otherwise, decrement the high byte
C056 AD 6C C0      LDA  COUNTR+1    ; determine whether we've moved the last
; page
C059 C9 FF         CMP  #255        ; on the last page, high byte of counter goes
; from 0 through 255
C05B D0 EA         BNE  DOWNLP      ; if not on the last page, continue
C05D 60           RTS

;
; Increment zero-page pointers by one.
; increment low byte of source
; if it hasn't turned over, handle target
; pointers
; increment high byte of source block
; do the same for target pointers
; increment low byte first
; if it hasn't turned over, exit ADDONE
; and increment high byte, if necessary
C05E E6 FB         ADDONE INC  ZP
C060 D0 02         BNE  INCTAR
;
C062 E6 FC         INCTAR INC  ZP+1
C064 E6 FD         INCTAR INC  ZP+2
;
C066 D0 02         BNE  ADEXIT
C068 E6 FE         INCTAR INC  ZP+3
C06A 60           ADEXIT RTS
;
C06B 00 00         COUNTR .WORD0      ; two-byte counter for remaining number of
; bytes to move down
C06D 54 4B 49     TXTSTR .ASC "THIS IS LINE 6 AND 7. DELETE 'LINE ' ON D."
C097 00           .BYTE 0          ; terminator byte
; BNKSRC .BYTE 0; the bank number where
; source is (128 only)
; BNKTAR .BYTE 0; the bank number where
; target is (128 only)

```

See also MVU128, MVU64, SWAPIT.

MOVSA B

Name

Move sprite to an absolute (predetermined) screen location

Description

In some situations—board games or menu programs, for example—you may want to position sprites at certain fixed locations. When the sprite moves, it doesn't glide smoothly from one spot to another; it jumps directly to the new place. This routine uses a lookup table to put a sprite into position.

Prototype

1. Enter the routine with *.X* holding low byte of the *x* coordinate, *.A* holding the high byte of the *x* coordinate (1 or 0), and *.Y* holding the *y* coordinate.
2. Store the values in the appropriate VIC registers.

Explanation

The framing program prints a numeric grid on the screen, with the numbers 1–9 in a 3 × 3 square. It checks for a keypress, and when any of the numbers 1–9 is pressed, a box-shaped sprite is moved to the appropriate position on the grid. Press the zero key to exit.

The **MOVSA B** routine is very simple—three lines plus an RTS. Most of the example program is spent setting up the screen and creating the sprite shape. Note the message at the bottom. The 17s and 157s are cursor-down and cursor-left characters used to print the screen grid.

Note: This routine moves only one sprite. If you want to handle several, you'll need an additional variable that indicates which sprite should be moved.

The 128's BASIC 7.0 has a variety of very useful commands for controlling sprites. Unfortunately, when you're trying to control sprites from ML, BASIC tends to get in the way. To disable the 128's various sprite commands, enter POKE 4861,1 (or any other non-zero value) before you SYS to this routine.

Routine

C000	SPCOLR	=	53287	; sprite 0 color
C000	SPX	=	53248	; x position
C000	SPY	=	53249	; y position
C000	SPXM	=	53264	; MSB bit of x position
C000	SPE	=	53269	; sprite enable
C000	SPP	=	2040	; pointer to sprite zero
C000	SPSHAPE	=	832	; SPSHAPE = 3584 on the 128—address of ; shape data
C000	POINTR	=	13	; POINTR = 56 on the 128 (56*64)—pointer

C000			PLOT	=	\$FFF0	; to shape data
C000			CHROUT	=	\$FFD2	; Kernal plot routine
C000			GETIN	=	\$FEE4	; Kernal print routine
C000	20	3F	C0	JSR	SETSPR	; get a key
C003	20	78	C0	JSR	SCREEN	; set up sprite
C006	20	93	C0	JSR	GETKEY	; print numbers 1-9 on screen
C009	E0	00		CPX	#0	; get a key 1-9—the number 1-9 is in .X
C00B	D0	01		BNE	MOVEIT	; is it a zero?
C00D	60			RTS		; no, move the sprite
C00E	CA			DEX		; yes, quit this program
C00F	BD	2D	C0	LDA	XLO,X	; subtract one, so it works right
C012	8D	CC	C0	STA	TEMP	; get the low byte of the x position
C015	BC	36	C0	LDY	YLO,X	; save it temporarily
C018	BD	24	C0	LDA	XHI,X	; get the y position
C01B	AE	CC	C0	LDX	TEMP	; and the high byte of x
C01E	20	A4	C0	JSR	MOVSAB	; now the real x position
C021	4C	06	C0	JMP	MAIN	; call the move absolute routine
C024	00	01	01	XHI	.BYTE 0,1,1,0,1,1,0,1,1	; go back for more
C02D	F6	06	16	XLO	.BYTE 246,6,22,246,6,22,246,6,22	
C036	40	40	40	YLO	.BYTE 64,64,64,80,80,80,96,96,96	
C03F	A9	01		SETSPR	LDA #00000001	; turn on sprite 0
C041	8D	15	D0		STA SPE	; setting bit 0 in sprite-enable
C044	A9	07			LDA #7	; color yellow
C046	8D	27	D0		STA SPCOLR	; into the color register
C049	A9	00			LDA #0	; position zero
C04B	8D	00	D0		STA SPX	; in x low byte
C04E	8D	10	D0		STA SPXM	; in x high byte
C051	8D	01	D0		STA SPY	; and y location
C054	A9	00			LDA #0	; zero to clear out the shape
C056	A0	40			LDY #64	
C058	99	40	03	CLSP	STA SPSHAPE,Y	; clear it out
C05B	88				DEY	
C05C	10	FA			BPL CLSP	; all 63 bytes
C05E	A2	0A			LDX #10	; ten lines
C060	A0	00			LDY #0	; start at zero
C062	A9	FF		CREATE	LDA #255	
C064	99	40	03		STA SPSHAPE,Y	
C067	C8				INY	
C068	A9	C0			LDA #192	
C06A	99	40	03		STA SPSHAPE,Y	
C06D	C8				INY	
C06E	C8				INY	
C06F	CA				DEX	
C070	D0	F0			BNE CREATE	
C072	A9	0D			LDA #POINTR	; set the pointer
C074	8D	F8	07		STA SPP	
C077	60				RTS	
C078	A9	93		SCREEN	LDA #147	; clear screen character
C07A	20	D2	FF		JSR CHROUT	; print it
C07D	A0	1C			LDY #28	; getting ready to plot—twenty-eighth
C07F	A2	02			LDX #2	; column
C081	18				CLC	; second row
C082	20	F0	FF		JSR PLOT	; clear carry to plot
C085	A0	00			LDY #0	; now the cursor is ready
C087	B9	AE	C0	PLOOP	LDA MESSAGE,Y	; print the screen
C08A	F0	06			BEQ QPLP	; if it's zero, quit
C08C	20	D2	FF		JSR CHROUT	; else print it

MOV SAB

```
C08F C8          INY
C090 D0 F5      BNE PLOOP ; (branch always)
C092 60          QPLP     RTS
;
C093 20 E4 FF   GETKEY JSR  GETIN ; get a key
C096 F0 FB      BEQ  GETKEY ; no key pressed, go back
C098 C9 30      CMP  #48 ; lower than ASCII 0?
C09A 90 F7      BCC  GETKEY ; yes, go back
C09C C9 3A      CMP  #58 ; higher than ASCII 9?
C09E B0 F3      BCS  GETKEY ; yes, try again
C0A0 29 0F      AND  #15 ; strip off the extra stuff
C0A2 AA         TAX ; and transfer from .A to .X
C0A3 60          RTS ; we're done here
;
C0A4           MOV SAB  - * ; the main routine
C0A4 8D 10 D0    STA  SPXM ; most significant bit
C0A7 8E 00 D0    STX  SPX  ; the x position
C0AA 8C 01 D0    STY  SPY  ; the y position
C0AD 60          RTS ; all done
;
C0AE 31 20 32 MESSAGE .ASC "1 2 3"
C0B3 11 11 9D     .BYTE 17,17,157,157,157,157,157
C0BA 34 20 35     .ASC "4 5 6"
C0BF 11 11 9D     .BYTE 17,17,157,157,157,157,157
C0C6 37 20 38     .ASC "7 8 9"
C0CB 00           .BYTE 0
C0CC 00          TEMP  .BYTE 0
```

See also SPRINT.

Name

Set the colors for multicolor mode

Description

In multicolor mode, you're allowed to have the background color plus three foreground colors (instead of one). This routine sets up the additional colors.

Prototype

In a loop, read the three color values from MTCOLS and store them beginning at location 53281 (BGCOLOR).

Explanation

To set multicolor-mode colors, choose three color values for the background color registers (53281–53283) and define them in MTCOLS at the end of the program. The program below is just a program fragment. For a complete example routine, see **MTCMOD**.

Routine

```

C000          BGCOLOR = 53281      ; text background color register 0
C000 A2 02    MTCCOL LDX #2        ; as an index
C002 BD 10 C0 COLOOP LDA MTCOLS,X  ; get each color value
C005 9D 21 D0      STA BGCOLOR,X   ; assign it to a register
C008 CA       DEX                 ; for next register
C009 10 F7       BPL COLOOP        ; do all three
C00B 60       RTS

;
C00C 08 09 0A COLORS .BYTE 8,9,10,14 ; color orange, brown, light red, light blue
C010 0F 05 03 MTCOLS .BYTE 15,5,3   ; color light gray, green, cyan
    
```

See also XBCCOL, XBCMOD, MTCMOD.

MTCMOD

Name

Turn multicolor mode on or off

Description

Setting bit 4 in location 53270 (SCROLX) enables multicolor mode, which applies in both text or bitmap mode. The program below uses **MTCMOD** and **MTCCOL** to select multicolor text mode and set character colors for this mode.

Prototype

1. Load the contents of the horizontal fine-scrolling/control register at 53270 (SCROLX) into the accumulator.
2. ORA with %00010000 to turn on bit 4 and store the result back into the register. (To turn off multicolor mode, AND the contents of SCROLX with %11101111.)

Explanation

It's true that bit 4 of SCROLX enables multicolor mode. But in text mode, each individual character must have a value greater than 7 in its color RAM nybble before the character actually displays in multicolor. When this occurs, the horizontal resolution of each character is cut in half. Instead of having eight separate pixels across that can be one of two colors, the character is represented horizontally by four groups of double-width pixels. And the color of each double-width pixel is taken from one of four locations, depending on its bit pattern:

- 00 Background color register 0 at 53281
- 01 Background color register 1 at 53282
- 10 Background color register 2 at 53283
- 11 Bits 0-2 of corresponding color RAM nybble (55296-56319)

To see this effect, run the example program below. This program prints the characters A-Z four times in multicolor mode, varying color RAM on each pass. Looking at the results should convince you that the built-in character set was not intended to be used with multicolor mode. To take advantage of this feature in text mode, you'll need to design your own four-color characters with a routine such as **CHRDEF**.

If you turn on bitmapping (see **BITMAP**) at the same time multicolor mode is active, again double-width pixels will have the effect of halving horizontal screen resolution. But in bitmap mode, the color sources for the double-width pixels differ from text mode. Color sources for the four possible bit patterns are as follows:

- 00 Background color register 0 at 53281
- 01 High nybble of corresponding color byte
- 10 Low nybble of corresponding color byte
- 11 Bits 0-3 of corresponding color RAM nybble (55296-56319)

Note: On the 128, location 216, or GRAPHM, is copied into SCROLX during the screen-setup portion of the IRQ interrupt routine. You can prevent this altogether by storing a 255 in GRAPHM. If you allow the IRQ routine to copy GRAPHM, select multicolor mode from this register by setting bit 7.

The program below uses the first approach. So, 128 users should include the instructions LDA #\$\$F:STA GRAPHM just prior to activating multicolor mode in \$C005.

Routine

```

C000          BGCOLOR = 53281      ; text background color register 0
C000          SCROLX  = 53270      ; scroll/control register
C000          CHROUT  = 65490
C000          GETIN   = 65508
C000          COLOR   = 646        ; COLOR = 241 on the 128—text foreground
                                       ; color register
C000          GRAPHM  = 216        ; mode flag for 40-column screen (128 only)
                                       ;
                                       ; Display characters A-Z four times in
                                       ; multicolor mode. Change foreground
                                       ; text color each time. Exit on keypress.
                                       ; clear the screen
C000 A9 93      CHRCLR LDA #147
C002 20 D2 FF    JSR  CHROUT
                                       ; LDA #$$F; disable screen-setup portion of
                                       ; IRQ routine (add for 128 only)
                                       ; STA GRAPHM; (128 only)
C005 20 38 C0    JSR  MTCMOD      ; turn on multicolor mode
C008 20 41 C0    JSR  MTCCOL      ; assign multicolor mode colors
C00B A2 03      LDX  #3          ; print A-Z four times
C00D BD 4D C0   AZLOOP LDA COLORS,X ; get each text foreground color
C010 8D 86 02   STA  COLOR       ; store in the register
C013 A9 41      LDA  #65         ; begin with A
C015 20 D2 FF   PRTLOP JSR  CHROUT ; display characters A-Z
C018 18        CLC              ; for next character code
C019 69 01      ADC  #1
C01B C9 5B      CMP  #91         ; is it Z plus 1?
C01D D0 F6      BNE  PRTLOP      ; and continue
C01F A9 0D      LDA  #13        ; carriage return
C021 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT      ; print it twice
C024 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C027 CA        DEX              ; for next A-Z printing
C028 10 E3      BPL  AZLOOP
C02A 20 E4 FF   GETKEY JSR  GETIN  ; wait for a keypress
C02D F0 FB      BEQ  GETKEY      ; if no keypress, then wait
C02F AD 16 D0   LDA  SCROLX     ; turn off multicolor mode
C032 29 EF      AND  #%11101111
C034 8D 16 D0   STA  SCROLX     ; reset register
C037 60        RTS
;
; Turn on (or off) multicolor mode.

```

MTCMOD

```
C038 AD 16 D0 MTCMOD LDA SCROLX ; get current register value
C03B 09 10 ORA #00010000 ; turn on bit 4 (turn off with AND
; %11101111)
C03D 8D 16 D0 STA SCROLX ; and set the register
C040 60 RTS
;
; Assign colors to multicolor color registers
; 53281-53283.
C041 A2 02 MTCOL LDX #2 ; as an index
C043 BD 51 C0 COLOOP LDA MTCOL,X ; get each color value
C046 9D 21 D0 STA BGCOL0,X ; assign it to a register
C049 CA DEX ; for next register
C04A 10 F7 BPL COLOOP ; do all three
C04C 60 RTS
;
C04D 08 09 0A COLORS .BYTE 8,9,10,14 ; colors—orange, brown, light red, light blue
C051 0F 05 03 MTCOLS .BYTE 15,5,3 ; colors—light gray, green, cyan
```

See also XBCCOL, XBCMOD, MTCCOL.

Name

Multiply two numbers with successive adds

Description

One way to multiply two numbers is to add one number to itself over and over. This technique works best on single bytes. As the numbers get larger, the time used by the routine increases to the point where it becomes very slow.

Prototype

1. Before calling the routine, store in memory the numbers to be multiplied.
2. Zero out the two-byte total.
3. Load the two numbers into .A and .X.
4. If either number is zero, exit the routine.
5. Decrement .X and exit when it hits zero.
6. Add the accumulator to the first number.
7. If the carry flag is set, indicating that the low byte overflowed, increment the high byte.
8. Loop back to step 5.

Explanation

The framing routine just gets two keypresses and stores the ASCII values of the characters in B1 and B2. Press Q to quit.

Within **MULAD1**, the two bytes of TOTAL are zeroed out; then the numbers in B1 and B2 are multiplied. If either number equals zero, the routine ends (with zeros still in TOTAL), because zero times any number is zero. As .X counts down to zero, the accumulator is repeatedly added to the number in B2.

Note: This approach to multiplying works reasonably well when the two numbers are byte-sized (0–255). If you need to multiply larger numbers, repeated addition becomes very slow. For example, multiplying 20,000 by 20,000 would require 20,000 iterations. Even at machine language speeds, this would take some time. For multiplying larger numbers, see **MULSHF**.

Routine

```

C000          LINPRT  =   $BDCD      ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128-ROM
                                     ; routine to print a number
C000          GETIN   =   $FFE4
C000          CHROUT  =   $FFD2
                                     ;
C000 20 E4 FF MAIN   JSR   GETIN     ; get a key
C003 F0 FB          BEQ   MAIN       ; wait until there's one there
C005 C9 51          CMP   #81        ; check for Q (quit)
C007 F0 3D          BEQ   QUIT
C009 8D 6D C0       STA   B1         ; store it in byte 1

```


MULAD1

```

C00C 20 E4 FF M2      JSR  GETIN      ; get another key
C00F F0 FB           BEQ  M2
C011 C9 51           CMP  #81        ; check Q again
C013 F0 31           BEQ  QUIT
C015 8D 6E C0       STA  B2        ; store in byte 2
C018 AE 6D C0       LDX  B1
C01B A9 00           LDA  #0
C01D 20 CD BD       JSR  LINPRT     ; print number 1
C020 A9 2A           LDA  #42       ; the * character
C022 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT    ; print it
C025 AE 6E C0       LDX  B2        ; second number
C028 A9 00           LDA  #0
C02A 20 CD BD       JSR  LINPRT     ; print it, also
C02D A9 3D           LDA  #61       ; equal sign
C02F 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT    ; print it
C032 20 47 C0       JSR  MULAD1    ; multiply the numbers
C035 AE 6F C0       LDX  TOTAL     ; low byte
C038 AD 70 C0       LDA  TOTAL+1   ; high byte
C03B 20 CD BD       JSR  LINPRT     ; print it
C03E A9 0D           LDA  #13       ; <RETURN>
C040 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT    ; print and
C043 4C 00 C0       JMP  MAIN      ; go back
C046 60             QUIT      RTS

C047 A9 00           MULAD1 LDA  #0      ; clear out
C049 8D 6F C0       STA  TOTAL     ; low byte of total
C04C 8D 70 C0       STA  TOTAL+1   ; and high byte
;
C04F AE 6D C0       LDX  B1        ; the counter for repeated adds
C052 F0 18           BEQ  MULEND    ; if zero, no addition
C054 18             CLC
C055 AD 6E C0       LDA  B2        ; second number (which will be added)
C058 F0 12           BEQ  MULEND    ; if zero, no operation is necessary
C05A CA             MULLOP DEX      ; decrement .X first, in case it's a 1
C05B F0 0C           BEQ  MULSTR    ; if zero, store the result in total (low byte)
C05D 18             CLC          ; get ready
C05E 6D 6E C0       ADC  B2        ; and add .A to B2
C061 90 F7           BCC  MULLOP    ; if carry is clear, no overflow to the high
; byte
C063 EE 70 C0       INC  TOTAL+1   ; else add one to high byte
C066 4C 5A C0       JMP  MULLOP    ; and go back
;
C069 8D 6F C0       MULSTR STA  TOTAL     ; store the low byte (high byte is OK)
C06C 60             MULEND RTS      ; and leave the routine
;
C06D 00             B1      .BYTE 0
C06E 00             B2      .BYTE 0
C06F 00 00          TOTAL .BYTE 0,0

```

See also MULAD2, MULFP, MULSHF.

Name

Multiply two numbers with repeated addition (optimized version)

Description

This routine is basically the same as **MULAD1**, but the smaller number is placed in the *X* register to speed up the DEX loop. The larger number is repeatedly added to itself, and the result is stored in memory.

Prototype

1. Start by storing the two numbers in memory.
2. Store zeros in the two bytes of TOTAL.
3. Initialize .Y to zero on the assumption that the first number is larger.
4. Load *X* with B2 and compare it with B1.
5. If B2 is smaller, branch forward to step 7.
6. Otherwise, load *X* with B1 and change .Y to 1.
7. Load .A from B1, indexed by .Y.
8. Decrement *X* and branch out of the routine when it's zero.
9. Add the accumulator to B1,Y.
10. Increment the high byte of TOTAL whenever the carry flag is set.

Explanation

The routine **MULAD1** is simpler than this one, but **MULAD2** is faster in certain situations. Take the example of 252×3 . The simpler version of MULAD might calculate it by adding 252 to itself 3 times. Or it might add 3 to itself 252 times. Obviously, 3 additions execute faster than 252.

MULAD2 checks the size of the two numbers and puts the smaller into *X* for the main loop. The *Y* register is used as an offset into the table of numbers; its value is either zero or one.

Note: As with **MULAD1**, the larger the values, the longer the time needed to repeatedly add the two numbers. For values larger than 255, **MULSHF** is preferable.

Routine

```

C000          LINPRT  =   $BDCD          ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128-ROM
                                           ; routine to print a number
C000          GETIN   =   $FFE4
C000          CHROUT  =   $FFD2
                                           ;
C000 20 E4 FF  MAIN   JSR   GETIN        ; get a key
C003 F0 FB          BEQ   MAIN          ; wait until there's one there
C005 C9 51          CMP   #81          ; check for Q (quit)
    
```

MULAD2

```

C007 F0 3D          BEQ  QUIT
C009 8D 77 C0      STA  B1          ; store it in byte 1
C00C 20 E4 FF M2   JSR  GETIN        ; get another key
C00F F0 FB          BEQ  M2
C011 C9 51          CMP  #81          ; check Q again
C013 F0 31          BEQ  QUIT
C015 8D 78 C0      STA  B2          ; store in byte 2
C018 AE 77 C0      LDX  B1
C01B A9 00          LDA  #0
C01D 20 CD BD      JSR  LINPRT        ; print number 1
C020 A9 2A          LDA  #42          ; the * character
C022 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT        ; print it
C025 AE 78 C0      LDX  B2          ; second number
C028 A9 00          LDA  #0
C02A 20 CD BD      JSR  LINPRT        ; print it also
C02D A9 3D          LDA  #61          ; equal sign
C02F 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT        ; print it
C032 20 47 C0      JSR  MULAD2        ; multiply the numbers
C035 AE 79 C0      LDX  TOTAL        ; low byte
C038 AD 7A C0      LDA  TOTAL+1      ; high byte
C03B 20 CD BD      JSR  LINPRT        ; print it
C03E A9 0D          LDA  #13          ; <RETURN>
C040 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT        ; print and
C043 4C 00 C0      JMP  MAIN          ; go back
C046 60            QUIT  RTS

C047 A9 00          MULAD2 LDA  #0          ; clear out
C049 8D 79 C0      STA  TOTAL        ; low byte of TOTAL
C04C 8D 7A C0      STA  TOTAL+1      ; and high byte
;
C04F A8            TAY          ; zero into .Y also
C050 AE 78 C0      LDX  B2          ; check B2
C053 F0 21          BEQ  MULEND        ; if zero, quit
C055 EC 77 C0      CPX  B1          ; is it smaller than B1?
C058 90 07          BCC  GOAHEAD      ; yes, continue
C05A AE 77 C0      LDX  B1          ; else, B1 is the counter
C05D F0 17          BEQ  MULEND        ; if zero, no need to multiply
C05F A0 01          LDY  #1          ; and .Y is one instead of zero
;
C061 B9 77 C0      GOAHEAD LDA  B1,Y        ; get the bigger number for adding
C064 CA            LOOP  DEX          ; check for possibility .X is one
C065 F0 0C          BEQ  MULSTR        ; if zero, store the low byte
C067 18            CLC          ; else
C068 79 77 C0      ADC  B1,Y        ; add .A to B1
C06B 90 F7          BCC  LOOP        ; if carry clear, OK
C06D EE 7A C0      INC  TOTAL+1      ; or add to the high byte
C070 4C 64 C0      JMP  LOOP
C073 8D 79 C0      MULSTR STA  TOTAL        ; store the low byte
C076 60            MULEND RTS          ; and return
;
C077 00            B1      .BYTE 0
C078 00            B2      .BYTE 0
C079 00 00          TOTAL  .BYTE 0,0

```

See also MULAD1, MULFP, MULSHF.

Name

Multiply two floating-point numbers

Description

The example program multiplies two numbers in floating-point format. It relies heavily on ROM routines.

Prototype

1. Put one number in floating-point accumulator 1 (FAC1).
2. Put the other in FAC2.
3. Call the FMULT routine. The result is in FAC1.

Explanation

The framing program sets up the numbers 10,000 and 11,111 in the two floating-point accumulators and multiplies them. The answer is printed to the screen.

The various ROM routines include GIVAYF (translate an integer from .A and .Y to a floating-point number in FAC1), MOVEF (move the contents of FAC1 to FAC2), FMULT (multiply FAC1 by FAC2), and FOUT (convert FAC1 to ASCII numbers).

Most of the time, you can write programs using integer values only. But if you find the need for floating-point numbers, it's generally easier to use the built-in ROM routines instead of writing your own. For a complete list of ROM routines and documentation on how they work, see *Mapping the Commodore 64* and *Mapping the Commodore 128* (both from COMPUTE! Publications).

Routine

C000		ZP	=	\$FB	
C000		CHROUT	=	\$FFD2	
C000		FMULT	=	\$BA30	; FMULT = \$8A0B on the 128—multiply ; FAC2 and FAC1; result in FAC1
C000		MOVEF	=	\$BC0F	; MOVEF = \$8C3B on the 128—move FAC1 ; to FAC2
C000		GIVAYF	=	\$B391	; GIVAYF = \$AF03 on the 128—convert ; integer to floating point
C000		FOUT	=	\$BDDD	; FOUT = \$8E42 on the 128—convert FAC1 ; to ASCII string
					;
					; Convert the numbers 10000 and 11111 to ; floating point and multiply.
C000	A9	27	LDA	#>10000	; high byte of 10000
C002	A0	10	LDY	#<10000	; low byte
C004	20	91	B3	JSR	GIVAYF ; convert it; now it's in FAC1
C007	20	0F	BC	JSR	MOVEF ; move FAC1 to FAC2
C00A	A9	2B	LDA	#>11111	; high byte of 11111
C00C	A0	67	LDY	#<11111	; low byte

MULFP

```
C00E 20 91 B3      JSR  GIVAYF      ; convert it
                                     ; FAC2 now holds 10000, and FAC1 holds
                                     ; 11111.
C011 20 29 C0      JSR  MULFP       ; multiply them, with the result in FAC1
C014 20 DD BD      JSR  FOUT        ; convert to ASCII
C017 85 FB          STA  ZP          ; pointer
C019 84 FC          STY  ZP+1      ; to the string
C01B A0 00          LDY  #0
C01D B1 FB          LDA  (ZP),Y
C01F D0 01          BNE  PRNIT
C021 60            RTS
C022 20 D2 FF PRNIT JSR  CHROUT
C025 C8            INY
C026 D0 F5          BNE  PRTLOP
C028 60            RTS

C029 20 30 BA MULFP JSR  FMULT      ;
C02C 60            RTS              ; multiply FAC2 by FAC1
                                     ; the result is in FAC1
```

See also MULAD1, MULAD2, MULSHF.

Name

Multiply two unsigned integer values using bit shifts

Description

MULSHF is a little more complex—and more difficult to understand—than the routines that multiply with successive additions (**MULAD1** and **MULAD2**), but it's much faster if you have large numbers to multiply.

Prototype

1. Start with the two numbers to be multiplied in B1 and B2 (16 bits each).
2. Store zeros in the 32 bits of TOTAL.
3. Copy B2 to WORK, a temporary storage area.
4. Store the number of bits to shift in COUNTR.
5. Shift WORK to the left.
6. If the carry flag is clear, skip step 7.
7. If it's set, add B1 to TOTAL.
8. Decrement the counter. If not zero, multiply TOTAL by two with right shifts.
9. If it is zero, exit. Otherwise, branch back to step 5.

Explanation

An expanded diagram of multiplying two four-bit numbers may be helpful:

1	1110	
B2	<u>1011</u>	
S4	1110	
S3	1110	
S2	0000	
S1	<u>1110</u>	
TOTAL	10011010	

Start with the TOTAL equal to zero. Shift B2 to the left, and a one appears in the carry flag. That means it's time to add B1 to the total, which becomes S1 (00001110). There's more, so shift the total to the left (00011100). Shift B2 left again. This time there's a zero, so skip the addition, but shift TOTAL left again to become subtotal 2—S2 (00111000). Shift B2 left again, and carry is set; so add 1110 (01000110) and shift it left (10001100). Finally, shift B2 the final time, and carry is set, so add one more time (10011010), but don't shift the total to the left because it's the last addition.

By the same logic, multiplying 16-bit numbers requires 16

MULSHF

shifts. B1 and B2 each have 16 bits, so the total needs 32 bits. Note in the example above that multiplying two 4-bit numbers yields an 8-bit result. In general, when you multiply two numbers of a given size, the largest possible result will need double the number of bits. (Multiplying two 8-bit numbers results in a number that may be as large as 16 bits.)

Routine

```

C000 A0 03      MULSHF  LDY  #3          ; four bytes
C002 A9 00      LDA  #0          ; zero out TOTAL
C004 99 5C C0   ZOUT    STA  TOTAL,Y       ; store it
C007 88                DEY                ; count down
C008 10 FA      BPL  ZOUT       ; and loop back
C00A AD 58 C0   LDA  B2          ; copy B2 to WORK
C00D 8D 5A C0   STA  WORK
C010 AD 59 C0   LDA  B2+1
C013 8D 5B C0   STA  WORK+1

C016 A9 10      LDA  #16         ; there are 16 shifts, so
C018 8D 55 C0   STA  COUNTR      ; set up a counter

C01B 0E 5A C0   MULLP  ASL  WORK          ; shift the low byte
C01E 2E 5B C0   ROL  WORK+1      ; into the high byte
C021 90 1D      BCC  BIGSHF     ; if the bit is off, skip the add
C023 18                CLC                ; clear carry before add
C024 AD 56 C0   LDA  B1          ; low byte
C027 6D 5C C0   ADC  TOTAL       ; add to TOTAL (low)
C02A 8D 5C C0   STA  TOTAL       ; store it
C02D AD 57 C0   LDA  B1+1        ; second byte of four
C030 6D 5D C0   ADC  TOTAL+1     ; add it
C033 8D 5D C0   STA  TOTAL+1     ; store it
C036 90 08      BCC  BIGSHF     ; if carry clear, branch forward
C038 EE 5E C0   INC  TOTAL+2     ; else add 1 to third byte
C03B D0 03      BNE  BIGSHF     ; if not zero, skip the fourth
C03D EE 5F C0   INC  TOTAL+3     ; else, get the fourth

C040 CE 55 C0   BIGSHF  DEC  COUNTR     ; count down
C043 D0 01      BNE  SHIFIT     ; shift it if there's more
C045 60                RTS                ; else, quit
C046 0E 5C C0   SHIFIT  ASL  TOTAL       ; multiply by 2
C049 2E 5D C0   ROL  TOTAL+1     ; all...
C04C 2E 5E C0   ROL  TOTAL+2     ; four...
C04F 2E 5F C0   ROL  TOTAL+3     ; bytes
C052 4C 1B C0   JMP  MULLP     ; repeat it again

C055 00                COUNTR  .BYTE  0
C056 7D 00      B1      .BYTE  125,0   ; value of 125
C058 58 02      B2      .BYTE  88,2    ; value of 600
C05A 00 00      WORK    .BYTE  0,0
C05C 00 00 00   TOTAL   .BYTE  0,0,0,0

```

See also MULAD1, MULAD2, MULFP.

Name

Move a block of data upward in memory

Description

MVU64 moves a block of data in memory from a lower to a higher address on the 64, even if the two blocks overlap. This routine can be used to relocate other machine language routines, as in the program below, or to move text and numerical-data tables. Assuming your source and destination blocks don't overlap, you could also move memory down with this routine.

Prototype

1. Store the ending address for the source block (BLOCK1) in ZP and the ending address for the target block (MEMSIZ-1) in ZP+2.
2. Store the number of bytes to move down (NUMBER, as calculated by the assembler) in .X (low byte) and .Y (high byte).
3. Store the number of bytes to move, currently in .X and .Y, into a two-byte counter (COUNTR).
4. Using indirect addressing in UPLOOP, transfer bytes from the source memory block (at ZP) to the target memory block (at ZP+2).
5. Decrease both zero-page pointers by one with the sub-routine SUBONE.
6. Decrement the bytes counter (COUNTR) continuing UPLOOP until all bytes from the source block have been moved. Then RTS.

Explanation

In the program below, **MVU64** moves a relocatable ML program (the 16-byte CYCLE) to the top of BASIC. To guarantee that CYCLE moves up in memory, assemble this program in the cassette buffer at 828.

In moving memory, **MVU64** works backwards in memory from the end of the source block, transferring a byte at a time. Each byte, loaded from the source block, is in turn stored in the next-lowest position in the target block, until the entire block has been transferred.

In this program, we're locating CYCLE at the top of BASIC memory, so we use the top-of-BASIC pointer, or MEMSIZ, to determine the end of the target block. Since MEMSIZ actually points to the byte beyond the highest free

MVU64 (64 only)

byte in the BASIC text area (normally, 40960), we subtract one before storing it to ZP+2.

Once CYCLE is positioned at the top of BASIC, MEMSIZ is adjusted to protect the relocated program from BASIC. At the same time, its SYS address is printed. To satisfy yourself that CYCLE has properly relocated, look at the 16 bytes of memory beginning with the SYS address, or simply SYS to it.

If you want to use MVU64 to move memory down, switch the source and target block addresses stored in zero page. In other words, store the ending address for the source block in ZP+2, and the ending address for the target block in ZP. For this approach to be successful, the two memory blocks must not overlap.

NOTE: Unlike some memory-move routines (see SWAPIT), MVU64 lacks error checking. So it's up to you to make sure the relative positions of the two memory blocks fulfill the requirements of the routine.

There is a BASIC ROM routine at \$A3BF (about 50 bytes in length) on the 64 which will move memory up. Much like MVU64, if the source and destination blocks don't overlap, it also can move memory down. To implement it, load \$5F-\$60 with the starting address of the source block, load \$5A-\$5B with the source block's ending address plus 1, and load \$58-\$59 with the destination block's ending address plus 1. Then JSR to \$A3BF.

Routine

033C			ZP	=	251	
033C			GETIN	=	65508	
033C			CHROUT	=	65490	
033C			LINPRT	=	48589	; BASIC two-byte number output
033C			EXTCOL	=	53280	; border-color register
033C			MEMSIZ	=	55	; top-of-BASIC pointer
						; Move a relocatable ML program to the top
						; of BASIC memory.
033C	20	60	03	JSR	MUNIT	; initialize zero-page pointers and get number
						; of bytes to move
033F	20	7A	03	JSR	MVU64	; move the program up
0342	A0	00		LDY	#0	; as an index in PRTLOP
0344	B9	A8	03	LDY	SYSMSG,Y	; get a character from SYSMSG
0347	F0	06		BEQ	EXITPR	; if a zero byte, then exit PRTLOP
0349	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	; print the character
034C	C8			INY		; for next character
034D	D0	F5		BNE	SYSLOP	; branch always
034F	18			CLC		; for addition
0350	A5	FD		LDA	ZP+2	; get the low byte of relocated ML program
0352	69	01		ADC	#1	; add one since decremented in SUBONE one
						; time too many
0354	85	37		STA	MEMSIZ	; at the same time, protect the ML program
						; from BASIC

0356	AA			TAX		; for low byte of LINPRT
0357	A5	FE		LDA	ZP+3	; get the high byte of relocated program
0359	69	00		ADC	#0	; add the carry flag value
035B	85	38		STA	MEMSIZ+1	
035D	4C	CD	BD	NUMOUT	JMP	LINPRT ; print the SYS address and RTS
						; Initialize ZP pointers to end of BLOCK1 and
						; top of BASIC. Two bytes at
						; ZP point to source, and two at ZP+2 point
						; to target. Also, put number of
						; bytes to move in .X and .Y,
						; low byte of BLOCK1 first
0360	A9	D6		MUINIT	LDA	#<BLOCK1
0362	85	FB			STA	ZP
0364	A2	03			LDX	#>BLOCK1
0366	86	FC			STX	ZP+1 ; then high byte
						; Now store ending address of target block in
						; ZP+2, ZP+3.
						; Subtract one from top-of-BASIC pointer so
						; it points to available storage.
						; for subtraction
0368	38			SEC		
0369	A5	37		LDA	MEMSIZ	
036B	E9	01		SBC	#1	; subtract one from low byte
036D	85	FD		STA	ZP+2	; and store result in zero page
036F	A5	38		LDA	MEMSIZ+1	; get the high byte for top-of-BASIC pointer
0371	E9	00		SBC	#0	; to subtract carry
0373	85	FE		STA	ZP+3	; and store the result
0375	A2	10		LDX	#<NUMBER	; put low byte of number of bytes to move up
						; in .X
0377	A0	00		LDY	#>NUMBER	; and high byte in .Y
0379	60			RTS		
						; Move bytes up. Enter with the number of
						; bytes to move in .X (low) and
						; .Y (high). End of source block is in two
						; bytes at ZP, and target in ZP+2.
						; First store number to COUNTR.
037A	8E	A6	03	MVU64	STX	COUNTR ; store number to COUNTR, low byte first
037D	8C	A7	03		STY	COUNTR+1 ; high byte's in .Y
0380	A0	00			LDY	#0 ; as an index in UPLOOP
0382	B1	FB		UPLOOP	LDA	(ZP),Y ; get a byte from end of source block
0384	91	FD			STA	(ZP+2),Y ; store it at the end of target block (top of
						; BASIC)
0386	20	99	03		JSR	SUBONE ; decrease ZP pointers by one
0389	CE	A6	03		DEC	COUNTR ; decrement counter low byte
038C	D0	F4			BNE	UPLOOP ; if low byte hasn't turned over, continue
						; moving memory up
038E	CE	A7	03		DEC	COUNTR+1 ; otherwise, decrement the high byte
0391	AD	A7	03		LDA	COUNTR+1 ; check the high byte to see if we've
						; reached the last page
0394	C9	FF			CMP	#255 ; on the last page, high byte goes 0-255
0396	D0	EA			BNE	UPLOOP ; if not last page, continue
0398	60			RTS		
						; Decrement zero-page pointers by one.
0399	C6	FB		SUBONE	DEC	ZP ; decrement low byte of source
039B	D0	02			BNE	DECTAR ; if it hasn't turned over, handle target
						; pointers
039D	C6	FC			DEC	ZP+1 ; decrement high byte
039F	C6	FD		DECTAR	DEC	ZP+2 ; do the same for target pointers
03A1	D0	02			BNE	SBEXIT ; if hasn't turned over, exit SUBONE
03A3	C6	FE			DEC	ZP+3 ; decrement high byte, if necessary
03A5	60			SBEXIT	RTS	

MVU64 (64 only)

```
03A6 00 00      COUNTR .WORD 0          ; two-byte counter for remaining # of bytes
                                           ; to move down
03A8 54 4F 20  SYMSG  .ASC "TO RUN RELOCATED PROGRAM, SYS "
                                           ; SYS message
03C6 00          .BYTE 0          ; terminator byte
                                           ;
                                           ; Relocatable program to cycle border color
                                           ; on a keypress. Quit on RETURN.
03C7 20 E4 FF  CYCLE  JSR  GETIN      ; check for a keypress
03CA F0 FB          BEQ  CYCLE      ; no keypress
03CC C9 0D          CMP  #13        ; quit on RETURN
03CE F0 06          BEQ  BLOCK1
03D0 EE 20 D0      INC  EXTCOL     ; otherwise, cycle border color
03D3 38            SEC          ; to always cause a branch
03D4 B0 F1          BCS  CYCLE
03D6 60            BLOCK1 RTS          ; last byte of cycle routine is BLOCK1
                                           ;
03D7          NUMBER =  BLOCK1 - CYCLE + 1
                                           ; let assembler calculate number of bytes in
                                           ; cycle
```

See also MOVEDN, MVU128, SWAPIT.

Name

Move a block of data upward in memory

Description

MVU128 is practically identical to the routine **MVU64** in form and in function. Both routines move a chunk of memory from a lower address to a higher address. And both can be used to move memory down, provided the two memory blocks—source and destination—don't overlap.

Prototype

This is a two-part routine. In the initialization routine **MUINIT**:

1. Store the ending address for the source block (**BLOCK1**) in **ZP** and the ending address for the target block (**FRERAM**) in **ZP + 2**.
2. Store the number of bytes to move down (**NUMBER**, as calculated by the assembler) in **.X** (low byte) and **.Y** (high byte).

In **MVU128**:

1. Store the number of bytes to move, currently in **.X** and **.Y**, into a two-byte counter (**COUNTR**).
2. Using indirect addressing in **UPLOOP**, transfer bytes from the source memory block (at **ZP**) to the target memory block (at **ZP + 2**).
3. You can move memory up from one bank to another by defining **BNKSRC** (source bank number) and **BNKTAR** (target bank number) at the end of the program. Replace the **LDA (ZP),Y** at **UPLOOP** with the three instructions that follow it in the listing (currently in the form of comments) and the **STA (ZP + 2),Y** just below this with the next four instructions (also given as comments).
4. Decrease both zero-page pointers by one with the subroutine **SUBONE**.
5. Decrement the bytes counter (**COUNTR**), continuing **UPLOOP** until all bytes from the source block have been moved. Then **RTS**.

Explanation

The example program is much like the one that illustrates **MVU64**. In both cases, we're moving the relocatable **ML** routine, **CYCLE**, higher in memory. The only difference is that in this case we're moving it to the top of a protected **RAM** area,

MVU128 (128 only)

which begins at \$1300 (normally, just below BASIC), whereas with MVU64, CYCLE was moved to the top of BASIC RAM. Rather than storing the end of BASIC pointer (minus 1) in ZP+2, here we load ZP+2 with FRERAM (7167).

In both programs, the basic description of the two routines themselves is the same. MVU64 has a more thorough explanation.

Since MVU128 also uses zero-page addressing, the routine can be adapted to move memory from bank to bank. This requires the Kernal routines INDFET and INDSTA. INDFET performs an indirect load into the accumulator from the bank in .X, while INDSTA stores .A indirectly into the bank in .X. To implement these routines, replace the LDA (ZP),Y at \$0C3D with the commented instructions that follow (UPLOOP LDA #ZP:LDX BNKSRC:JSR INDFET) and replace the STA (ZP+2),Y at \$0C3F with LDX #ZP+2:STX 697:LDX BNKTAR:JSR INDSTA. Also include the bank numbers for the source (BNKSRC) and target block (BNKTAR), defined at the end of the program.

Note: Because this routine doesn't check to see whether the two memory blocks are positioned properly in memory, be sure the memory block in ZP is lower in memory than the block addressed by ZP+2.

Routine

```
0C00          ZP          =      251
0C00          GETIN      =     65508
0C00          INDFET     =     65396      ; Kernal routine to load indirectly from any
                                         ; bank
0C00          INDSTA     =     65399      ; Kernal routine to store indirectly to any
                                         ; bank
0C00          CHROUT     =     65490
0C00          EXTCOL     =     53280      ; border color register
0C00          LINPRT     =     36402
0C00          FRERAM     =     7167       ; top of a free memory area protected from
                                         ; BASIC
                                         ;
                                         ; Move a relocatable ML program up to the
                                         ; top of free RAM area at $1300.
0C00 20 20 0C          JSR   MUINIT      ; initialize zero-page pointers and get number
                                         ; of bytes to move
0C03 20 35 0C          JSR   MVU128     ; move the program up
0C06 A0 00             LDY   #0         ; as an index in PRTLOP
0C08 B9 63 0C  SYSLOP LDA   SYMSG,Y    ; get a character from SYMSG
0C0B F0 06             BEQ   EXITPR     ; if a zero byte, then exit PRTLOP
0C0D 20 D2 FF          JSR   CHROUT     ; print the character
0C10 C8               INY             ; for next character
0C11 D0 F5             BNE   SYSLOP     ; branch always
0C13 18               CLC             ; for addition
0C14 A5 FD             LDA   ZP+2      ; get the low byte of relocated ML program
0C16 69 01             ADC   #1        ; add 1 since decremented in SUBONE one
                                         ; time too many
0C18 AA               TAX             ; for low byte of LINPRT
```

MVU128 (128 only)

```

0C19 A5 FE          LDA ZP+3      ; get the high byte of relocated program
0C1B 69 00          ADC #0        ; add the carry flag value
0C1D 4C 32 8E NUMOUT JMP LINPRT    ; print the SYS address and RTS
;
; Initialize ZP pointers to end of BLOCK1 and
; FRERAM. Two bytes at
; ZP point to source, and two at ZP+2 point
; to target. Also, put number of
; bytes to move in .X and .Y.
0C20 A9 91          MUNIT    LDA #<BLOCK1   ; low byte of BLOCK1 first
0C22 85 FB          STA ZP
0C24 A2 0C          LDX #>BLOCK1 ; then high byte
0C26 86 FC          STX ZP+1
;
; Now store ending address of target block
; in ZP+2, ZP+3.
0C28 A9 FF          LDA #<FRERAM  ; get low byte of top of free RAM
0C2A 85 FD          STA ZP+2      ; and store it
0C2C A9 1B          LDA #>FRERAM  ; get high byte of top of free RAM
0C2E 85 FE          STA ZP+3      ; and store it
0C30 A2 10          LDX #<NUMBER  ; put low byte of number of bytes to move
; up in .X
0C32 A0 00          LDY #>NUMBER ; and high byte in .Y
0C34 60             RTS
;
; Move bytes up. Enter with the number of
; bytes to move in .X (low) and
; .Y (high). End of source block is in two
; bytes at ZP, and target in ZP+2.
; First store number to COUNTR.
0C35 8E 61 0C MVU128 STX COUNTR   ; store number to COUNTR, low byte first
0C38 8C 62 0C      STY COUNTR+1 ; high byte's in .Y
;
; as an index in UPLOOP
0C3B A0 00          LDY #0
0C3D B1 FB          UPLOOP  LDA (ZP),Y
;
; Substitute the next three lines for the
; previous line
; to move memory from bank to bank.
; UPLOOP LDA #ZP; put zero page pointer
; to end of source in .A
; LDX BNKSRC; bank number for source
; JSR INDRET; load indirectly from bank .X
; at the end of source
;
0C3F 91 FD          STA (ZP+2),Y ; store it at the end of target block (top of
; BASIC)
;
; Again, substitute the next four lines for
; the previous line
; to move from bank to bank.
; LDX #ZP+2; put zero-page pointer to
; target address in 697
; STX 697
; LDX BNKTAR; bank number for target
; JSR INDSTA; store indirectly from bank
; .X at end of target
;
0C41 20 54 0C          JSR SUBONE   ; decrease ZP pointers by one
0C44 CE 61 0C          DEC COUNTR    ; decrement counter low byte
0C47 D0 F4          BNE UPLOOP    ; if low byte hasn't turned over, continue
; moving memory up
0C49 CE 62 0C          DEC COUNTR+1 ; otherwise, decrement the high byte
0C4C AD 62 0C          LDA COUNTR+1 ; check the high byte to see whether we've

```

MVU128 (128 only)

```

0C4F C9 FF          CMP #255          ; reached the last page
                                ; on the last page, high byte goes from 0 to
0C51 D0 EA          BNE ULOOP          ; 255
0C53 60             RTS              ; if not last page, continue

                                ;
0C54 C6 FB          SUBONE DEC ZP          ; Decrement zero-page pointers by one.
0C56 D0 02          BNE DECTAR        ; decrement low byte of source
                                ; if it hasn't turned over, handle target
                                ; pointers
0C58 C6 FC          DECTAR DEC ZP+1        ; decrement high byte
0C5A C6 FD          DEC ZP+2          ; do the same for target pointers
0C5C D0 02          BNE SBEXIT        ; if hasn't turned over, exit SUBONE
0C5E C6 FE          DEC ZP+3          ; decrement high byte, if necessary
0C60 60             SBEXIT RTS

0C61 00 00          COUNTR .WORD0       ;
                                ; two-byte counter for remaining number of
0C63 54 4F 20      SYMSG .ASC "TO RUN RELOCATED PROGRAM, SYS " ;
                                ; bytes to move down
0C81 00             .BYTE 0           ; SYS message
                                ; terminator byte
                                ; BNKSRC .BYTE 0; the bank number where
                                ; source is
                                ; BNKTAR .BYTE 0; the bank number where
                                ; target is
                                ;
                                ; Relocatable program to cycle border color
0C82 20 E4 FF      CYCLE JSR GETIN        ; on a keypress. Quit on RETURN.
0C85 F0 FB          BEQ CYCLE          ; check for a keypress
0C87 C9 0D          CMP #13           ; no keypress
0C89 F0 06          BEQ BLOCK1        ; quit on RETURN
0C8B EE 20 D0      INC EXTCOL         ; otherwise, cycle border color
0C8E 38             SEC              ; to always cause a branch
0C8F B0 F1          BCS CYCLE
0C91 60             BLOCK1 RTS        ; last byte of cycle routine is BLOCK1

0C92              NUMBER = BLOCK1 - CYCLE + 1 ;
                                ; let assembler calculate number of bytes in
                                ; cycle

```

See also MOVEDN, MVU64, SWAPIT.

Name

Set up an NMI interrupt routine

Description

NMIINT redirects the NMI interrupt vector to your own routine. This lets you wedge a custom routine into the normal NMI interrupt handler.

Prototype

Store the address of your custom NMI routine into the NMI interrupt vector and return to the calling program.

Explanation

The following program shows how to insert your own NMI interrupt routine (here, WEDGE). Once NMIINT has stored the address of your routine into the NMI interrupt vector at 792, anytime an NMI interrupt occurs—for instance, when you press RESTORE—your routine will execute before the normal interrupt handler is serviced.

In this case, within WEDGE, the cursor, border, and background colors for the screen are reset to the default values defined at the end of the program (in DCOLOR, DEXTCL, and DBGCOL). Currently, the background and border colors default to black while the cursor becomes light blue. If you'd prefer different colors, substitute the appropriate color values found in the table under COLFIL.

The 64 requires that certain registers—specifically, the A, X, and Y registers—be maintained while the NMI interrupt is being serviced. At the outset of WEDGE, then, these registers are saved on the stack. And at the end of the routine, they're restored.

The 128 also maintains these registers, along with the current bank configuration, while the NMI interrupt is serviced. But on the 128, these registers are actually saved prior to jumping through the NMI interrupt vector. Consequently, you don't have to worry about maintaining them yourself during the custom interrupt routine.

Routine

C000	NMIVFC	=	792	; vector to nonmaskable interrupt routine
C000	NMINOR	=	65095	; NMINOR = 64064 on the 128—normal ; NMI handler routine
C000	COLOR	=	646	; COLOR = 241 on the 128—current text ; foreground color
C000	EXTCOL	=	53280	; border color register
C000	BGCOL0	=	53281	; screen background color register ;

NMIINT

```

; Set default screen, border, cursor color on
; RESTORE key.
; redirect NMI vector to our routine, low
; byte first
C000 A9 0B      NMIINT  LDA  #<WEDGE
C002 8D 18 03   STA  NMIVEC
C005 A9 C0      LDA  #>WEDGE ; then high byte
C007 8D 19 03   STA  NMIVEC+1
C00A 60         RTS    ; we're done
;
; Restore default colors.
; push .A, .X, and .Y onto the stack (not
; necessary on the 128)
; push .X
C00B 48         WEDGE  PHA
C00C 8A         TXA
C00D 48         PHA
C00E 98         TYA ; push .Y
C00F 48         PHA
; Now restore colors.
; cursor first
C010 AD 2A C0   LDA  DCOLOR
C013 8D 86 02   STA  COLOR
C016 AD 2B C0   LDA  DEXTCL ; then border color
C019 8D 20 D0   STA  EXTCOL
C01C AD 2C C0   LDA  DBGCOL ; and lastly, screen color
C01F 8D 21 D0   STA  BGCOLOR
C022 68         PLA
; restore the registers Y, X, and A (not
; necessary on the 128)
; .Y first
; then .X
C023 A8         TAY
C024 68         PLA
C025 AA         TAX
C026 68         PLA ; and finally .A
C027 4C 47 FE   JMP  NMINOR ; go to normal NMI handler
;
; default cursor color of light blue
; default border color of black
; default screen color of black
C02A 0E         DCOLOR .BYTE 14
C02B 00         DEXTCL .BYTE 0
C02C 00         DBGCOL .BYTE 0

```

See also IRQINT, RAS64, RAS128.

Name

Create a table of standard frequencies (eight octaves of 12 notes each)

Description

NOTETB generates a full table of two-byte frequencies representing the range of notes played by the SID chip. Once this table has been created, you can play musical tunes using notes from the table.

Prototype

1. Set up a frequency table (OCT7TB) containing the 12 standard notes in the highest octave (octave 7) and set aside 168 bytes below this for octaves 0–6 (FREQTB).
2. Position ZP at the beginning of OCT7TB, and ZP+2 at the start of what will be the sixth octave in FREQTB (24 bytes below OCT7TB).
3. Divide each two-byte note in OCT7TB by 2 and store the result in FREQTB as the corresponding note in the next lower octave.
4. Repeat Step 3, beginning with notes from the next lower octave each time, until FREQTB is complete.
5. Return from the routine.

Explanation

Each time you drop down an octave, the frequency for each note within that octave is half the value of the corresponding note in the octave above it. **NOTETB** uses this fact to generate the standard note table (FREQTB). Starting with notes from the highest octave, or octave 7, two-byte frequencies for each note in the octave below are calculated based on the preceding octave. This continues until the entire table—eight octaves of 12 notes each—is constructed.

When **NOTETB** is added to your music-playing routines, you can index frequencies from the table it generates by note number without having to type in all the frequencies yourself.

For instance, if you look at the program for **MELODY**, you'll see it uses a frequency table containing 15 notes (also labeled FREQTB). Frequencies within this table include all the notes from G-4 through A-5. In order to reference the frequencies in this table, a second table of note numbers (**NOTES**) is required.

In this case, 15 frequency values is not many to type yourself. But if you were playing more than one song or music

NOTETB

which had a wider range of notes, you'd be better off allowing **NOTETB** to build the frequency table for you.

The frequencies in the note table created by **NOTETB** are the same as those in the note table provided in the 64 and 128 *Programmer's Reference Guides*. Both tables contain 96 notes. As a result, you can use the tables in these reference guides to choose the appropriate note numbers for your music.

The only difference in the tables in the reference guides and the one created by **NOTETB** (**FREQTB**) is in the note-numbering system used to index the various frequencies. In **FREQTB**, the note numbers run continuously from 0-95. The note numbers in the reference guide tables, on the other hand, jump by 5 after each octave. Consequently, the numbers range from 0-123. To convert a note number from the reference guide tables to the number indexing the equivalent note in **FREQTB**, use the following formula:

$$NN = PRGNN - OCTAVE * 5$$

In this formula, **PRGNN** represents the note number taken from the table in the reference guide; **OCTAVE**, the octave number for the note (0-7); and **NN**, the number for the same note in **FREQTB**.

For example, middle C (C-4) in the reference guide tables is note number 64. To index this same note in **FREQTB**, use the number $64 - 4 * 5$, or 44.

Routine

```
C000          ZP          =      251
;
; Create FREQTB by dividing each note in
; next higher octave by 2.
C000  A9  E8      NOTETB  LDA  #<OCT7TB ; position ZP at beginning of seventh
; octave (OCT7TB)
C002  85  FB          STA  ZP
C004  A9  C0          LDA  #>OCT7TB
C006  85  FC          STA  ZP+1
C008  A9  D0          LDA  #<OCT7TB-24 ; position ZP+2 at beginning of sixth
; octave
C00A  85  FD          STA  ZP+2
C00C  A9  C0          LDA  #>OCT7TB-24
C00E  85  FE          STA  ZP+3
C010  A2  07          LDX  #7 ; index for the octaves 0-6
C012  A0  17      OCTLOP  LDY  #23 ; position pointer on high byte of highest
; note in octave
C014  B1  FB      INLOOP  LDA  (ZP),Y ; get the high byte of each note in octave
C016  4A          LSR ; divide it by 2
C017  91  FD          STA  (ZP+2),Y ; store as the high byte of the note in the
; next lower octave
C019  88          DEY ; decrement pointer so it addresses the low
; byte of the note
```

```

C01A B1 FB LDA (ZP),Y ; get the low byte of each note in the
; octave
C01C 6A ROR ; divide it by 2, handling carry from LSR
C01D 91 FD STA (ZP+2),Y ; store as the low byte of the note in the
; next lower octave
C01F 88 DEY ; so pointer addresses high byte on the next
; pass
C020 10 F2 BPL INLOOP ; do until all 12 two-byte notes are handled
; Now subtract 24 so ZP and ZP+2 point to
; next-lower octaves,
; subtract 24 from ZP
; low byte first
C022 38 SEC
C023 A5 FB LDA ZP
C025 E9 18 SBC #24
C027 85 FB STA ZP
C029 A5 FC LDA ZP+1 ; then high byte
C02B E9 00 SBC #0
C02D 85 FC STA ZP+1
C02F 38 SEC ; now subtract 24 from ZP+2
C030 A5 FD LDA ZP+2 ; low byte first
C032 E9 18 SBC #24
C034 85 FD STA ZP+2
C036 A5 FE LDA ZP+3 ; then high byte
C038 E9 00 SBC #0
C03A 85 FE STA ZP+3
C03C CA DEX ; for next lower octave
C03D D0 D3 BNE OCTLOP ; seven octaves complete frequency table
C03F 60 RTS
;
C040 FREQTb = * ; reserve room for lower seven octaves
C0E8 ** **+168 ; seven octaves of 12 two-byte notes
; OCT7TB is table of standard two-byte
; frequencies from the seventh octave.
C0E8 1E 86 18 OCT7TB .WORD 34334,36376,38539,40830,43258,45830
C0F4 AC BD F3 .WORD 48556,51443,54502,57743,61176,64814

```

See also BEEPER, BELLRG, EXPLOD, INTMUS, MELODY, SIDCLR, SIDVOL, SIRENS.

NUMOUT

Name

Print two-byte integer values

Description

NUMOUT prints a two-byte integer value in the range 0–65535 to the screen (or to the current output device). This general integer-printing routine is good for printing scores in games. It can also be useful for debugging programs. Suppose you want to know the effect your program is having on a two-byte address while the program is running. **NUMOUT** makes monitoring these locations a snap.

Prototype

1. Enter with *.X* containing the low byte and *.A*, the high byte of the two-byte integer value to be printed.
2. **JMP** to **LINPRT** to print the number and return.

Explanation

Relying on the BASIC ROM routine **LINPRT** keeps **NUMOUT** short and simple. If you're working on a 128, be sure to change the address of **LINPRT** to 36402.

Warning: If you use **NUMOUT** in a loop, index the loop by *.Y* rather than by *.X*, since its setup necessarily changes the contents of the *X* register.

Routine

```
C000          LINPRT  =    48589          ; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
;
C000 AE 0C C0          LDX  INTGER        ; low byte of integer 85
C003 AD 0D C0          LDA  INTGER+1      ; high byte of 85
C006 4C 09 C0          JMP   NUMOUT      ; print the number and RTS
;
; Print the two-byte integer in .X (low byte)
; and .A (high byte).
C009 4C CD BD NUMOUT  JMP   LINPRT      ; print the number and RTS
;
C00C 55 00          INTGER  .WORD85      ; integer 85
```

See also **BYTASC**, **CNUMOT**, **FACPRD**, **FACPRT**.

Name

Open a sequential/program file

Description

Anytime you want to read or write data to the disk in the form of either a sequential or a program file, this is the first routine you'll need. **OPENFL** opens a designated channel to the disk for data transfer.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15 in the program which calls **OPENFL** (see **READBF** or **WRITBF**).
2. **OPEN 1,8,2** with a sequential or program filename (**SETLFS**, **SETNAM**, **OPEN**). Then return to the calling program.
3. On the 128, prior to **SETNAM**, load the accumulator with the bank for the opened file and load the X register with the bank containing the program filename. Then **JSR** to **SETBNK**.

Explanation

In the example routine as it's given, we've opened the *sequential* file **SEQUENTIAL** for reading (*,S,R*). To open a *program* file for reading, add the suffix *,P,R* to the filename. If the file that you open is to be written to, add the suffix *,S,W* or *,P,W* to the filename, depending on whether it's a sequential file or program file.

The logical file number assigned to the open channel below is 1. Any number from 1 through 255 will suffice, but it's best to use numbers less than 128. File numbers above 127 may cause line feed characters to be sent with each carriage return when performing a write operation.

For data transfers, any secondary address in the range 2-14 can be used. The device number value depends on how your drive is configured, but usually it's device 8 unless you have more than one drive.

On the 128, the program calling **OPENFL** must set the computer to bank 15 since Kernal routines are being used by this routine. Also be sure to set the bank number where the file is opened with **BNKNUM** and indicate to the routine the bank containing the filename by defining **BNKFNM**.

Note: Disk error checking can be incorporated into this routine, if needed. At the outset, **OPEN** the error channel.

OPENFL

Add **DERRCK** to the end of the program and **JSR** to it just after the **JSR OPEN** instruction.

Warning: Using **OPENFL** just opens a file, either sequential or program, for a read or write operation—no data is actually transferred. Complete example programs that read or write data to disk are offered elsewhere (see **READBF** to read a file, **WRITBF** to write one).

Routine

```
C000      SETLFS    =    65466
C000      SETNAM    =    65469
C000      OPEN      =    65472
C000      SETBNK    =    65384      ; Kernal bank number for OPEN and
                                   ; filename (128 only)
C000      MMUREG    =    65280      ; MMU configuration register (128 only)
                                   ;
                                   ; OPENFL opens a sequential or program file
                                   ; for reading or writing.
C000      OPENFL    =    *
                                   ; Set the 128 to bank 15 in the main
                                   ; program (see READBF or WRITBF).
                                   ;
                                   ; Open channel 15 here if you include error
                                   ; checking (DERRCK).
                                   ;
                                   ; logical file 1
C002      LDA      #1              ; disk drive device number
C004      LDX      #8              ; secondary address (2-14 are OK)
C006      JSR      SETLFS          ; set file parameters
                                   ;
                                   ; Include the following three instructions
                                   ; on the 128.
                                   ; LDA BNKNUM; bank number for data
                                   ; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing the
                                   ; ASCII filename
                                   ; JSR SETBNK
C009      LDA      #FNLENG         ; length of filename
C00B      LDX      #<FILENM       ; address of filename
C00D      LDY      #>FILENM
C00F      JSR      SETNAM          ; set up filename
                                   ;
C012      JSR      OPEN            ; open the file for data transfer
                                   ;
                                   ; Insert JSR DERRCK here for disk error
                                   ; checking.
                                   ;
C015      RTS                    ; return to main program
                                   ;
                                   ; JSR DERRCK; Insert if including error
                                   ; checking.
                                   ;
```

```
C016 30 3A 53 FILENM .ASC "0:SEQUENTIAL,S,R"
; sequential filename to open for a read
; ,S,R is optional with sequential file reads.
; Change to "0:PROGRAM,P,R" to open a
; program file for reading.
C01F          FNLENG  -    *-FILENM
; length of filename
;
; Include the next two variables on the 128.
; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; data is found
; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; ASCII filename is located
```

See also READBF, READFL.

OPENPR

Name

Open a printer channel

Description

OPENPR opens a channel to the printer for subsequent output.

Prototype

1. **OPEN** the printer channel with the parameters 4,4,0 (SETLFS and **OPEN**).
2. Direct output to channel 4—load .X with the printer file number and **JMP** to **CHKOUT**.

Explanation

In the example program, the printer is opened as channel 4.

For an entire printer program, see **PRTOUT** for printing individual characters or **PRTSTR** for printing strings.

Note: For most printers, the logical file number for the output can be any integer in the range 0–255, while the device number is usually 4 (all Commodore printers are normally device 4). Some printers can also use 5 as a device number. The Commodore 1520 printer/plotter is device 6.

For Commodore printers, the secondary address sends information about the character set. A value of 0 causes Commodore printers to print in uppercase and graphics. A value of 7, on the other hand, causes them to print in uppercase and lowercase. Some printers require a value of 255 (for no secondary address) here. It is best to consult your printer manual and interface manual to determine the exact significance this parameter will have with your printer.

Routine

```
C000      SETLFS  = 65466
C000      OPEN   = 65472
C000      CHKOUT = 65481
```

```
C000  A9 04  OPENPR  LDA  #4
C002  A2 04          LDX  #4
C004  A0 00          LDY  #0
```

```

;
; Open a file to the printer as 4,4,0.
; logical file 4
; device number for printer (change if
; printer uses another number)
; secondary address
; A value of 0 here causes Commodore
; printers to print in uppercase/graphics.
; A value of 7 here causes Commodore
; printers to print in uppercase/lowercase.
; A value of 255 is required by some
; printers (meaning no secondary address).
;
```

```
C006 20 BA FF      JSR  SETLFS      ; set values
C009 20 C0 FF      JSR  OPEN        ; open a file to printer
C00C A2 04          LDX  #4
C00E 4C C9 FF      JMP  CHKOUT      ; direct output to file 4 and RTS
```

See also CLOSEL, PRTOUT, PRTSTR.

PAINT

Name

Fill an irregular hi-res enclosed outline with a solid color

Description

If you've drawn a series of lines or shapes on the hi-res screen, you can call this routine and fill in an enclosed shape with a solid color.

Prototype

1. Enter with a hi-res location specified in STARTX and STARTY.
2. Convert STARTX/STARTY to a memory location on the hi-res screen and a bitmask. Push the three bytes on the pseudostack.
3. Begin the fill: Pull a bitmask and memory location from the pseudostack. If the stack is empty, exit the routine.
4. Move to the left, looking for an edge of the enclosing shape.
5. Begin setting bits, moving to the right until a right-hand edge (or the edge of the screen) is discovered.
6. While the fill is proceeding, PEEK the bitmap locations above and below. Look first for an open (zero) bit.
7. When a zero is found, push that location and the bitmask on the pseudotack and set the FINDUP or FINDDN flag to search for ones.
8. If searching for a one, flip the FIND flag again (but don't save the address). Continue flipping the flag as you check the bits above and below.
9. When the main line is filled, go back to step 3.

Explanation

The routine, as it's written, uses no Kernal or ROM routines, so it will work on both 64s and 128s without modification. A note of interest to 128 owners: In a test of this machine language fill routine against the 128's BASIC 7.0 PAINT command, the BASIC command took an average of 70 seconds to fill most of the screen, while the routine below took only 10 seconds.

Drawing a straight line from left to right isn't difficult. The heart of the **PAINT** routine moves to the left until it finds an edge. Then it turns on pixels until it finds a right-hand edge of the outline being filled.

Simultaneously with the fill, the routine checks the pixels above and below, using two zero-page locations (ZU and ZD) that move in step with the fill. Consider just the pixel above.

We begin by looking for a zero. If ZU (plus the bitmask) points to a one (a pixel that's turned on), it's either the top edge of the figure or it's a previously filled line. We ignore all pixels that are on, at least at the beginning.

But if ZU points to a zero, then it will eventually have to be filled. So the address from ZU and the current bitmask (which rotates from right to left, from %10000000 to %00000001) are saved on the pseudostack. Now that we've found a zero, we can ignore any more zeros that pop up. The FINDUP flag is switched. Now we're searching for a one, because the fill routine will stop at an edge.

While we're looking for ones, we ignore zeros. When we find a pixel that is on, we have to flip the FINDUP flag again, to start looking for zeros. When a zero is discovered, save the address and mask, and flip the flag again. The process continues until the primary line runs up against an edge. At that point, we go back to the stack and start another fill. As long as there are more addresses, the paint routine is active.

The pseudostack is just an empty area of memory used to save the addresses. It follows the program, but you can change its location easily enough. For most shapes, a stack of two pages (512 bytes) should suffice.

To use this routine in your own programs, you'll need to change the variables at the end of the program. Store the first and last bytes of the bitmap area in BITMAP and BITMAX. The example assumes the hi-res screen runs from 8192 to 16191. Store a zero into FINDL if you're changing zeros to ones. Put a 255 there to clear bits from one to zero. And store a two-byte *x* location in STARTX (0-319) and a one-byte *y* location in STARTY (0-199) before you JSR to PAINT.

Routine

```

C000          SP      =      3
C000          ZU      =      $F9
C000          ZL      =      $FB
C000          ZD      =      $FD

C000 A9 F8          LDA  #<STACK      ; copy the stack address
C002 85 03          STA  SP           ; to SP (stack pointer)
C004 A9 C1          LDA  #>STACK
C006 85 04          STA  SP+1        ; high byte
C008 20 79 C0      JSR  CONVERT      ; change STARTX and STARTY to memory
                                       ; location in the bitmap

C00B AD F4 C1      BIGLOOP LDA  FINDL      ; copy the FINDL mask to
C00E 8D F5 C1      STA  FINDUP      ; the up mask
C011 8D F6 C1      STA  FINDDN      ; and the down mask

```

PAINT

```

C014 20 E8 C0      JSR  PULLZL      ; pull ZL from the stack
C017 90 01        BCC  NOTDONE    ; carry clear means there is more
C019 60           RTS                    ; if carry set, quit and RTS
C01A 20 16 C1     NOTDONE JSR  LEFTZL      ; move left to find an edge
C01D 20 9A C1     JSR  SETZUZD     ; set values for ZU and ZD (up and down)
;
C020           PAINT  =      *
C020 A0 00      LDY  #0          ; set the index to zero
C022 B1 FB      LDA  (ZL),Y      ; get the byte
C024 AA         TAX                    ; save in .X
C025 4D F4 C1   EOR  FINDL      ; fix zeros or ones
C028 2D EC C1   AND  MASK       ; look at the bit
C02B D0 49      BNE  ENDPNT     ; we hit an edge, so quit
C02D 8A         TXA                    ; get the byte back
C02E 4D EC C1   EOR  MASK       ; and flip the bit
C031 91 FB      STA  (ZL),Y      ; which is stored on the bitmap
;
; Now check the pixels above and below.
C033 AD F5 C1   CKUP   LDA  FINDUP    ; get the search pattern
C036 AA         TAX                    ; put it into .X
C037 51 F9      EOR  (ZU),Y      ; fix zeros or ones
C039 2D EC C1   AND  MASK       ; is it what we want?
C03C D0 10      BNE  CKDOWN     ; no, check the ZD pixel
; Found one, but is it off or on?
C03E EC F4 C1   CPX  FINDL      ; if it's not the same
C041 D0 03      BNE  XORUP      ; move forward
C043 20 C4 C0   JSR  PUSHZU     ; else, push ZU on the pseudostack to
; handle later
C046 AD F5 C1   XORUP  LDA  FINDUP    ; the FINDUP flag
C049 49 FF      EOR  #$FF       ; gets flipped
C04B 8D F5 C1   STA  FINDUP    ; and stored
;
C04E AD F6 C1   CKDOWN LDA  FINDDN   ; check the down flag
C051 AA         TAX                    ; save it
C052 A0 00      LDY  #0          ; .Y was altered by CKUP
C054 51 FD      EOR  (ZD),Y      ;
C056 2D EC C1   AND  MASK       ; same as above
C059 D0 10      BNE  ZIBBL     ; it's OK
; Check the down bit. Off or on?
C05B EC F4 C1   CPX  FINDL      ; is it the same?
C05E D0 03      BNE  XORDN     ; no, skip it
C060 20 CA C0   JSR  PUSHZD     ; yes, save the address
C063 AD F6 C1   XORDN  LDA  FINDDN   ;
C066 49 FF      EOR  #$FF       ; switch FINDDN to its opposite
C068 8D F6 C1   STA  FINDDN   ;
;
C06B 20 6B C1   ZIBBL JSR  RIGHTZL   ; move ZL right a pixel
C06E B0 06      BCS  ENDPNT     ; CS means the line is done
C070 20 9A C1   JSR  SETZUZD     ; we're OK, so do more
C073 4C 20 C0   JMP  PAINT      ; and go back
C076 4C 0B C0   ENDPNT JMP  BIGLOOP ;
;
C079           CONVERT =      *
C079 AD F1 C1   LDA  BITMAP+1    ; high byte of BITMAP address
C07C 85 FC      STA  ZL+1        ; goes into high-byte of ZL pointer
C07E AD EF C1   LDA  STARTY     ; y-position (0-199)
C081 A8         TAY                    ; stash into .Y
C082 29 07      AND  #7          ; get the bottom three bits
C084 85 FB      STA  ZL         ; store in low-byte of ZL
C086 98         TYA                    ; get it back
C087 4A         LSR                    ; shift right
C088 4A         LSR                    ; three times
C089 4A         LSR                    ;
C08A A8         TAY                    ; back into .Y

```

C08B	F0	10		BEQ	CONVX		; if zero, skip ahead to do .X and ; x-coordinate
C08D	18		Y320	CLC			
C08E	A9	40		LDA	#<320		; else add 320
C090	65	FB		ADC	ZL		; to ZL
C092	85	FB		STA	ZL		; store it
C094	A9	01		LDA	#>320		
C096	65	FC		ADC	ZL+1		; high-byte, too
C098	85	FC		STA	ZL+1		
C09A	88			DEY			; count down
C09B	D0	F0		BNE	Y320		; and branch back
C09D	AD	ED	C1	CONVX	LDA	STARTX	
C0A0	AA			TAX			; low byte of x-position
C0A1	29	F8		AND	##11111000		; save in .X for a moment
C0A3	18			CLC			; strip the three low bits
C0A4	65	FB		ADC	ZL		; add to ZL
C0A6	85	FB		STA	ZL		; store
C0A8	AD	EE	C1	LDA	STARTX+1		; get the high-byte
C0AB	65	FC		ADC	ZL+1		; add to the high-byte
C0AD	85	FC		STA	ZL+1		; save it
C0AF	A9	80		LDA	##10000000		; prepare mask
C0B1	8D	EC	C1	STA	MASK		
C0B4	8A			TXA			; get .X back
C0B5	29	07		AND	##00000111		; positions 0-7
C0B7	F0	07		BEQ	CONEXIT		; if 0, skip it
C0B9	AA			TAX			; else count down
C0BA	4E	EC	C1	CMASKL	LSR	MASK	; move MASK right
C0BD	CA			DEX			; .X minus 1
C0BE	D0	FA		BNE	CMASKL		; branch back
C0C0	20	C7	C0	CONEXIT	JSR	PUSHZL	; push the ZL and MASK bytes on the ; pseudostack
C0C3	60			RTS			; and we're done ; As we leave, the location and the mask ; of the STARTX and STARTY points are ; on the stack.
C0C4	A2	01		PUSHZU	LDX	#1	
C0C6	2C			.BYTE	\$2C		; BIT hides next instruction
C0C7	A2	03		PUSHZL	LDX	#3	
C0C9	2C			.BYTE	\$2C		
C0CA	A2	05		PUSHZD	LDX	#5	
C0CC	A0	02		LDY	#2		; three bytes (0-2)
C0CE	AD	EC	C1	LDA	MASK		; get the mask
C0D1	91	03		STA	(SP),Y		; store indirect to SP, which points to stack
C0D3	88			DEY			; .Y is now 1
C0D4	B5	F9		PSHLP	LDA	ZU,X	; get a byte from ZU, ZL, or ZD
C0D6	91	03		STA	(SP),Y		
C0D8	CA			DEX			
C0D9	88			DEY			
C0DA	10	F8		BPL	PSHLP		; count 1 to 0 to minus ; Now adjust the stack pointer SP.
C0DC	18			CLC			
C0DD	A9	03		LDA	#3		; add 3
C0DF	65	03		ADC	SP		; add to SP
C0E1	85	03		STA	SP		; store it
C0E3	90	02		BCC	PSHOUT		; carry clear, we're done
C0E5	E6	04		INC	SP+1		
C0E7	60			PSHOUT	RTS		; Finished. Quit this routine.
C0E8	38			PULLZL	SEC		; first count SP down by 3
C0E9	A5	03		LDA	SP		; low byte
C0EB	E9	03		SBC	#3		; minus 3
C0ED	85	03		STA	SP		; store it

PAINT

C0EF	A5	04		LDA	SP+1		; high byte
C0F1	E9	00		SBC	#0		; minus zero (or one if carry clear)
C0F3	85	04		STA	SP+1		; remember it
C0F5	C9	C1		CMP	#>STACK		; check the high byte
C0F7	90	1B		BCC	ABORT		; branch if the stack is empty
C0F9	D0	06		BNE	NOABORT		; if not equal, keep going
C0FB	A5	03		LDA	SP		; SP-high and STACK-high are equal, so
							; check low byte
C0FD	C9	F8		CMP	#<STACK		; against STACK
C0FF	90	13		BCC	ABORT		; abort if STACK is higher (equal is OK)
C101	A0	02	NOABORT	LDY	#2		
C103	B1	03		LDA	(SP),Y		; get the mask
C105	8D	EC	C1	STA	MASK		; store it
C108	88			DEY			; count down
C109	B1	03		LDA	(SP),Y		
C10B	85	FC		STA	ZL+1		; high byte of screen address
C10D	88			DEY			
C10E	B1	03		LDA	(SP),Y		; low byte
C110	85	FB		STA	ZL		
C112	18			CLC			; clear carry means OK
C113	60			RTS			
C114	38		ABORT	SEC			; set carry means not OK
C115	60			RTS			
C116	0E	EC	C1	LEFTZL	ASL	MASK	; move the bit in MASK to the left
C119	90	1A		BCC	LEFTOK		; within the byte, it's OK
C11B	6E	EC	C1	ROR	MASK		; put the bit back in position 7, just in case
							; Better check for a left edge.
C11E	20	45	C1	JSR	CHECKEDGE		
C121	90	01		BCC	DECZL		; carry clear means OK
C123	60			RTS			; else, return because we've hit the left
							; edge of the screen
							; subtract
C124	A5	FB	DECZL	LDA	ZL		; 7 (really subtract 8, because carry is clear)
C126	E9	07		SBC	#7		; store it
C128	85	FB		STA	ZL		; high byte
C12A	A5	FC		LDA	ZL+1		; adjust
C12C	E9	00		SBC	#0		; and store
C12E	85	FC		STA	ZL+1		; and put a %00000001
C130	A9	01		LDA	#1		; into mask
C132	8D	EC	C1	STA	MASK		; now check the bit
C135			LEFTOK	-	*		
C135	A0	00		LDY	#0		
C137	B1	FB		LDA	(ZL),Y		; get the byte
C139	4D	F4	C1	EOR	FINDL		; flip the bits to get what we're looking for
C13C	2D	EC	C1	AND	MASK		; check the bitmap bit
C13F	F0	D5		BEQ	LEFTZL		; if zero, do more
C141	20	6B	C1	JSR	RIGHTZL		; else move ZL to the right
C144	60			RTS			; and quit
C145	A5	FB	CHECKEDGE	LDA	ZL		; low byte
C147	AA			TAX			; save it
C148	29	38		AND	##%00111000		; check bits 3-5
C14A	D0	1B		BNE	NOPROB		; no problem, we're done
C14C	8A			TXA			; check more
C14D	29	C0		AND	##%11000000		; get the two high bits
C14F	8D	F7	C1	STA	TEMP		; and save in temp
C152	A5	FC		LDA	ZL+1		; high byte
C154	29	1F		AND	##%00011111		; mask off the three high bits
C156	2E	F7	C1	ROL	TEMP		; move into .A
C159	2A			ROL			
C15A	2E	F7	C1	ROL	TEMP		; two bits
C15D	2A			ROL			
C15E	F0	09		BEQ	PROB		; see if it's divisible by five
C160	38			SEC			

```

C161 E9 05      DUNNO   SBC   #5           ; subtract 5
C163 F0 04      BEQ   PROB          ; zero means a problem
C165 B0 FA      BCS   DUNNO        ; carry set means more
C167 18         NOPROB  CLC           ; no problem
C168 60         RTS
C169 38         PROB    SEC           ; problem/left edge
C16A 60         RTS

C16B           RIGHTZL = *           ; this routine moves ZL right one pixel
C16B 4E EC C1   LSR   MASK          ; for the edge
C16E B0 01     BCS   RTEDGE        ; if the bit rotated into the carry flag, check
                                       ; for the edge
C170 60         RTS              ; else, it's OK
C171 A5 FB     RTEDGE LDA   ZL           ; low byte
C173 69 07     ADC   #7           ; really add 8—carry is set
C175 85 FB     STA   ZL           ; store it
C177 90 02     BCC  SKPHI         ; skip the high byte
C179 E6 FC     INC  ZL+1         ; unless ZL has overflowed
C17B 20 45 C1  SKPHI JSR   CHECKEDGE ; see if we're at an edge
C17E 90 13     BCC  RTOK          ; it's OK
C180 A5 FB     LDA   ZL           ; or not OK
C182 E9 08     SBC   #8           ; implied carry set
C184 85 FB     STA   ZL           ; subtract 8 from low byte
C186 A5 FC     LDA   ZL+1        ; plus
C188 E9 00     SBC   #0           ; maybe
C18A 85 FC     STA   ZL+1        ; the high byte
C18C A9 01     LDA   #%00000001 ; and put the one bit
C18E 8D EC C1  STA   MASK         ; at the edge of mask
C191 38         SEC              ; set carry means finish
C192 60         RTS              ; this ends the RIGHTZL routine
C193 A9 80     RTOK  LDA   #%10000000 ; set up mask
C195 8D EC C1  STA   MASK         ;
C198 18         CLC              ; clear carry signals all is well
C199 60         RTS              ; end on a positive note
                                       ;
C19A           SETZUZD = *           ; first set ZU (the pointer to the pixel
                                       ; above ZL)
C19A A5 FC     LDA   ZL+1        ; high byte
C19C A8         TAY
C19D 85 FA     STA   ZU+1
C19F 85 FE     STA   ZD+1        ; and ZD
C1A1 A5 FB     LDA   ZL           ; low byte
C1A3 AA         TAX              ; save in .X
C1A4 85 F9     STA   ZU
C1A6 85 FD     STA   ZD
C1A8 29 07     AND   #7           ; check for eight-byte edge, top or bottom
C1AA F0 09     BEQ  FIXZU        ; if ZL is divisible by 8
C1AC C9 07     CMP   #7
C1AE F0 1C     BEQ  FIXZD        ; or one less than 8
C1B0 C6 F9     DEC  ZU           ; else ZU is one less
C1B2 E6 FD     INC  ZD           ; and ZD is one more
C1B4 60         RTS
C1B5 E6 FD     FIXZU INC  ZD           ; ZD is OK. INC it.
C1B7 8A         TXA
C1B8 38         SEC
C1B9 E9 39     SBC   #<313       ; move back a line
C1BB 85 F9     STA   ZU
C1BD 98         TYA              ; high byte
C1BE E9 01     SBC   #>313
C1C0 85 FA     STA   ZU+1
C1C2 CD F1 C1  CMP   BITMAP+1    ; check if it's too low
C1C5 B0 04     BCS  FXZOK        ; no, go to the end

```


PAINT

```

C1C7 86 F9          STX  ZU          ; too low, put ZL into ZU
C1C9 84 FA          STY  ZU+1
C1CB 60             FXZOK  RTS

;
C1CC C6 F9          FIXZD  DEC  ZU          ; ZU is OK. DEC it.
C1CE 8A             TXA          ; low byte of ZL/ZD
C1CF 18             CLC
C1D0 69 39          ADC  #<313        ; move up a line
C1D2 85 FD          STA  ZD
C1D4 98             TYA          ; high byte
C1D5 69 01          ADC  #>313
C1D7 85 FE          STA  ZD+1
C1D9 CD F3 C1      CMP  BITMAX+1        ; check if it's too high
C1DC 90 0D          BCC  FXDOK        ; no, go to the end
C1DE D0 07          BNE  TOOHI        ; if carry is set and it's not equal, it's too
; high
; It's equal, so check the low byte.

C1E0 AD F2 C1      LDA  BITMAX
C1E3 C5 FD          CMP  ZD
C1E5 B0 04          BCS  FXDOK        ; if BITMAX >= ZD, don't worry, else drop
; through
; too high, put ZL into ZU
C1E7 86 FD          STX  ZD
C1E9 84 FE          STY  ZD+1
C1EB 60             FXDOK  RTS

;
C1EC 00            MASK     .BYTE  0        ; mask for turning bits on/off
C1ED A0 00          STARTX  .WORD 160       ; starting location for fill (x-position =
; 0-319)
C1EF 65            STARTY  .BYTE 101       ; starting location (y-position = 0-199)
C1F0 00 20          BITMAP  .WORD 8192     ; start of the bitmap, $2000
C1F2 3F 3F          BITMAX  .WORD 16191
C1F4 00            FINDL   .BYTE  0        ; set to zero if changing zeros to ones, or 255
; if 1 to 0
C1F5 00            FINDUP  .BYTE  0
C1F6 00            FINDDN  .BYTE  0
C1F7 00            TEMP    .BYTE  0
C1F8                STACK  = *

```

See also BITMAP, CLRHRF, CLRHRS, HRCOLF, HRPOLR, HRSETP.

PASFMV (64 only)

C022	8D	32	C0	STA	TOTAL	
C025	AA			TAX		
C026	A5	64		LDA	HI	; place it in .X
C028	6D	33	C0	ADC	TOTAL+1	; add in
C02B	8D	33	C0	STA	TOTAL+1	; the high byte, also
C02E	20	CD	BD	JSR	LINPRT	
C031	60			RTS		; print the number
C032	00	00	TOTAL	.BYTE	0,0	

See also GOTOBL, PASMEN, PASREG, PASUSR.

Name

Pass values from BASIC to ML by POKEing to free memory

Description

Although this technique limits the values you can pass to numbers in the range 0–255, it's one of the simplest ways to pass numbers back and forth from BASIC to ML. Use PEEK and POKE in BASIC, LDA and STA in ML.

Prototype

1. In BASIC, POKE a value to a free memory location. Then SYS to the machine language routine.
2. In the ML program, LDA (or LDX or LDY) the number and handle it as you wish.

Explanation

The example is relatively simple. In BASIC, POKE 828 with a number 0–255, then SYS 49152. A delay loop, based on the number in location 828, will execute (MEM, in the example). The maximum delay is 255 jiffies, or about four seconds. While the delay loop is running, the border color flashes very quickly.

Routine

```

C000          JIF      =   $A2      ; low byte of jifty clock (both 64 and 128)
C000          MEM      =   828      ; free RAM in the cassette buffer for the 64;
                                   ; use another free memory location on the
                                   ; 128
C000          BORCOL   =   53280    ; border color register
C000  78          PASMEM SEI          ; turn off interrupts while the routine is set
                                   ; up
C001  AD 20 D0          LDA  BORCOL    ; get the border color
C004  8D 21 C0          STA  TEMP      ; save it
C007  AD 3C 03          LDA  MEM       ; get the value
C00A  F0 0E            BEQ  QUIT      ; if the delay is zero, don't do anything
C00C  18              CLC             ; prepare to add
C00D  65 A2            ADC  JIF       ; to the current jifty value
C00F  58              CLI            ; interrupts now on
C010  C5 A2          LOOP  CMP  JIF    ; compare .A to the clock
C012  F0 06          BEQ  QUIT        ; if they're equal, end the delay
C014  EE 20 D0          INC  BORCOL    ; flashing effect for the border
C017  4C 10 C0          JMP  LOOP     ; go back
C01A  AD 21 C0  QUIT  LDA  TEMP      ; restore the border color
C01D  8D 20 D0          STA  BORCOL    ; and end
C020  60              RTS
C021  00          TEMP  .BYTE 0
    
```

See also GOTABL, PASFMV, PASREG, PASUSR.

PASREG

Name

Pass values to an ML program directly through the registers

Description

By POKEing to locations 780-783 (64 only), you can set the values that the registers .A, .X, .Y, and the processor status .P, respectively, will hold at the beginning of a routine called with the BASIC statement SYS. BASIC itself handles the task of transferring the contents of these locations into the proper registers. An equivalent technique for the 128 is simply to include the desired values, separated by commas, following the SYS address.

Prototype

1. Before SYSing to the routine, POKE the desired register values into 780-783.
2. In the routine, handle the values as needed.

Explanation

The example routine saves .A, clears the carry flag, JSRs to the Kernal PLOT routine, and then prints the character in .A. To call it from BASIC, assuming you want to print the letter C at row 20, column 3, use this syntax:

POKE 780,67: POKE 781,19: POKE 782,2: SYS 49152 Commodore 64
SYS 3072,67,19,2 Commodore 128

The 64 routine is at 49152, and the 128 routine is at 3072. After returning from the ML program, you can find the previous values of .A, .X, .Y, and .P by PEEKing locations 780-783 on the 64, or by using RREG, the Read REGISTER statement, on the 128.

Routine

```
C000          CHROUT = $FFD2
C000          PLOT   = $FFF0
;
C000          PASREG = *           ; .A, .X, and .Y should already hold values
C000 48          PHA           ; save .A, because plot might affect it
C001 18          CLC           ; get ready to plot
C002 20 F0 FF    JSR PLOT      ; x and y position are set
C005 68          PLA           ; get .A back
C006 20 D2 FF    JSR CHROUT    ; print it
C009 60          RTS           ; quit
```

See also GOTOBL, PASFMV, PASMEM, PASUSR.

Name

Pass values from BASIC to ML via the USR function

Description

In BASIC, you can include a line such as $X = \text{USR}(G)$, where the value of the variable G is sent (as a floating-point value) to a machine language routine stored in memory. The ML routine can then pass another floating-point value back to the BASIC program, where it will be assigned to the variable X .

Prototype

1. Set up the USR function by POKEing the address of your ML routine into locations 785–786 (locations 4633–4634 on the 128).
2. Calculate, transform, or otherwise use the value in the floating-point accumulator.

Explanation

The example routine takes three values. If the value passed is 1, the screen is cleared. If it's 2, the cursor color is changed to white. If it's 3, the string *HELLO* is printed. The QINT BASIC ROM routine converts the floating-point value to an integer to be handled by the ML program.

After assembling the program to 49152, **POKE 785,0:POKE786,192** to set up the pointer. On the 128, substitute **POKE 4633,0: POKE 4634,12** (these are the low and high bytes of \$0C00). You'll also need to change HI and LO to 102 and 103, and QINT to \$8CC7 on the 128. Use **PASUSR** from BASIC with a statement of the form $Z = \text{USR}(1)$ or $\text{USR}(2)$ or $\text{USR}(3)$.

Routine

C000		HI	=	100		; HI = 102 on the 128—high byte after	
						; QINT	
C000		LO	=	101		; LO = 103 on the 128—low byte	
C000		QINT	=	\$BC9B		; QINT = \$8CC7 on the 128—convert	
						; floating-point number in FAC1 to integer	
C000		CHROUT	=	\$FFD2		; Kernal print routine	
						;	
C000	20	9B	BC	PASUSR	JSR	QINT	; convert FAC1 to an integer
C003	A6	65			LDX	LO	; get the low byte
C005	F0	1B			BEQ	DONE	; if zero, quit
C007	E0	04			CPX	#4	; if it's greater than 3
C009	B0	17			BCS	DONE	; skip ahead and quit
C00B	CA				DEX		; count down 3-2-1
C00C	D0	05			BNE	MORE1	; if it was 2 or 3, keep going
C00E	A9	93	FN1		LDA	#147	; clear screen
C010	4C	D2	FF		JMP	CHROUT	; print it (implied RTS)
						;	
C013	CA			MORE1	DEX		; count down again

PASUSR

```
C014 D0 05          BNE  MORE2    ; if not zero, move ahead
C016 A9 05          LDA  #5        ; code for <white>
C018 4C D2 FF      JMP  CHROUT   ; print it (RTS built in)
C01B A0 00          MORE2 LDY  #0
C01D B9 2A C0      ULOOP LDA  GREET,Y  ; get a character
C020 D0 01          BNE  PRINIT   ; if zero
C022 60            DONE  RTS        ; then quit
                                     ;
C023 20 D2 FF      PRINT JSR  CHROUT   ; else print it
C026 C8            INY        ; loop counts forward
C027 4C 1D C0      JMP  ULOOP   ; and go back for more
                                     ;
C02A 48 45 4C      GREET .ASC  "HELLO"
C02F 0D 00          .BYTE  13,0
```

See also GOTOBL, PASFMV, PASMEN, PASREG.

Name

Set the cursor location

Description

PLOTCR lets you locate characters anywhere on the screen without requiring you to use the cursor characters. It relies on the Kernal routine PLOT to position the cursor for subsequent printing.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the desired cursor position in .X (row) and .Y (column).
2. Clear the carry flag.
3. JSR to the Kernal routine PLOT and RTS (or simply JMP to PLOT).

Explanation

In the example program, the cursor is positioned in the fifth column of the fourth row, and an *E* is printed.

The *X* register should contain the appropriate row number minus one, while *.Y* contains the column number less one. If you are working within a window on the 128, the row and column values are relative to the top and left sides of the window rather than to the screen borders.

Note: Using *.X* for the row and *.Y* for the column is backward from what you might think. In most Cartesian coordinate systems, *x* is the horizontal axis (columns) and *y* is the vertical axis (rows). The Kernal PLOT routine is just the opposite.

Warning: Be sure to clear the carry flag before accessing PLOT. Otherwise, if carry is set, PLOT will return the current cursor position in *.X* and *.Y* (used in FINDCR).

Routine

```

C000      PLOT      =      65520      ; Kernal cursor position routine
C000      CHROUT   =      65490
;
; Print an E at (4,5).
```


PLOTCR

```
C000 A9 93 CLRCHR LDA #147 ; clear the screen
C002 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C005 A2 03 LDX #3 ; fourth row
C007 A0 04 LDY #4 ; fifth column
C009 20 12 C0 JSR PLOTCR ; position the cursor
C00C A9 45 LDA #69 ; print E
C00E 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C011 60 RTS
;
; Position the cursor at (.Y..X).
C012 18 PLOTCR CLC ; clear carry to set position
C013 20 F0 FF JSR PLOT ; position cursor
C016 60 RTS
```

See also FINDCR.

Name

POKE RAM under ROM / PEEK RAM under ROM

Description

When you turn on the 64, the 8K BASIC interpreter ROM at 40960 and the 8K operating system Kernal ROM at 57344 are selected. But under both of these 8K areas is free RAM which you can access by altering the contents of the memory configuration register at location 1.

These areas of free memory can be used in many ways: You can store your ML programs there so that they are invisible to BASIC, or you can use the space as a data storage area for disk copying, word processing, and sorting routines.

With the aid of two routines, **POKRUR** and **PEKRUR**, the example program demonstrates how the area of memory under BASIC ROM can be used as a buffer for storing the first two screen lines.

Prototype

In **POKRUR**:

1. In the subroutine **TXTPTR**, store the address of memory to be transferred (or the origin address) in **ZP**; store the address of the target buffer in RAM under ROM in **ZP+2**.
2. Using the subroutine **NUMMOV**, store the number of bytes to transfer (defined as **NUMBER** at the end of the program) in **BUFCTR**.
3. With the subroutine **MOVEIT**, transfer memory from the origin address in **ZP** to the target address in **ZP+2**.

In **PEKRUR**:

1. Push the current RAM/ROM configuration register in location 1 on the stack.
2. Select in RAM under BASIC ROM at 40960.
3. Using the subroutine **TXTPTR**, store the address of the buffer in RAM under ROM in **ZP**, and the destination address of regular RAM in **ZP+2**.
4. Fetch the number of bytes to move (**NUMBER**) and store this value in **BUFCTR** with **NUMMOV**.
5. With **MOVEIT**, transfer memory from the address in **ZP** to the address in **ZP+2**.
6. Restore the RAM/ROM configuration register in location 1.

Explanation

If you POKE into the 8K of memory at 40960 or at 57444, whatever you POKE is always stored into the underlying RAM. PEEKing these areas of memory, on the other hand, will return either the contents of ROM or of the RAM underneath, depending on the state of the configuration register. These principles are illustrated by **POKRUR** and **PEKRUR** in the program that follows.

The program inserts an IRQ interrupt routine that allows you to save or retrieve the first two screen lines (text only) placed in a buffer area at 40960. The IRQ routine **WEDGE** checks for two keys, F1 and F3.

If the user presses F1, **POKRUR** saves text from the top two screen lines. A border color change indicates a successful save. When F3 is pressed, **PEKRUR** recalls these lines.

POKRUR and **PEKRUR** have three subroutines in common: **TXTPTR**, **NUMMOV**, and **MOVEIT**. Zero-page addressing is used in **MOVEIT** to transfer bytes from the screen to the buffer or vice versa. In this subroutine, memory is always moved from the address in **ZP**, or the origin address, to the address in **ZP+2**, or the destination address.

And this is where **TXTPTR** comes into play. This subroutine sets the zero-page pointers according to the direction of the move. In order to do this, a 0 or a 2 must be in the **X** register. If you're performing a save ($X = 0$), **TXTPTR** initially points **ZP** to **TEXT** at 1024, and **ZP+2** to **BUFFER** at 40960. Conversely, if you're retrieving the buffer ($X = 2$), it points **ZP** to **BUFFER** and **ZP+2** to **TEXT**.

The third subroutine, **NUMMOV**, takes the number of bytes to move—in this case, 80—from **NUMBER** and stores this value in a counter (**BUFCTR**) used by **MOVEIT**.

There's little more to **POKRUR** than these three subroutines. After the text is stored, exit the routine through the normal IRQ interrupt handler.

PEKRUR is slightly more involved. Before fetching the two screen lines in the buffer, save the contents of the configuration register at location 1 so that you can later restore it. Next, select RAM under ROM at 40960 by turning off bit 0 in location 1, and execute the three subroutines (**TXTPTR**, **NUMMOV**, and **MOVEIT**).

To finish the routine, restore the memory configuration register and again exit through the interrupt service routine.

POKRUR/PEKRUR (64 only)

Note: Follow the same procedure in accessing RAM under Kernal ROM. The only difference is that you flip bit 1 rather than bit 0 in location 1. Also, since the interrupt-service routine is handled in the Kernal area, you must turn off interrupts with SEI before you access the RAM under ROM.

Routine

C000		ZP	=	251	
C000		IRQVEC	=	788	; vector to IRQ interrupt routine
C000		IRQNOR	=	59953	; normal IRQ interrupt service routine
C000		LSTX	=	197	; last key pressed
C000		EXTCOL	=	53280	; border color register
C000		TEXT	=	1024	; location of text to be stored
C000		BUFFER	=	40960	; text storage buffer under BASIC ROM
					; Insert IRQ interrupt wedge to store the top
					; two screen lines in RAM
					; under BASIC ROM with F1 key. F3 brings
					; back the two lines in the buffer.
C000	78	SETUP	SEI		; disable IRQ interrupts to change IRQ vector
					; Then store the address of our routine into
					; IRQ vector.
					; low byte first
C001	A9	0D	LDA	#<WEDGE	
C003	8D	14	03	STA	IRQVEC
C006	A9	C0	LDA	#>WEDGE	; then high byte
C008	8D	15	03	STA	IRQVEC+1
C00B	58		CLI		; We've reset the vector. Now reenable IRQ
					; interrupts and
C00C	60		RTS		; exit setup.
					;
C00D	A5	C5	WEDGE	LDA	LSTX
C00F	C9	04		CMP	#4
C011	F0	07		BEQ	POKRUR
C013	C9	05		CMP	#5
C015	F0	14		BEQ	PEKRUR
C017	4C	31	EA	EXIT	JMP
					IRQNOR
					; service the standard IRQ routines
					;
					; POKRUR stores the number of bytes in
					; number to RAM under BASIC ROM.
C01A	EE	20	D0	POKRUR	INC
					EXTCOL
					; change border color to indicate buffer
					; storage
C01D	A2	00		LDX	#0
					; so ZP points to TEXT (origin), ZP+2 to
					; BUFFER (target)
C01F	20	43	C0	JSR	TXTPTR
					; set up zero-page pointers to TEXT and
					; BUFFER
C022	20	5B	C0	JSR	NUMMOV
					; get number of bytes to move
C025	20	68	C0	JSR	MOVEIT
					; store TEXT in BUFFER
C028	4C	17	C0	JMP	EXIT
					; to standard IRQ interrupt routines
					;
					; PEKRUR gets the number of bytes in
					; number from RAM under BASIC ROM.
C02B	A5	01	PEKRUR	LDA	1
					; store the current RAM/ROM
					; configuration on the stack
C02D	48			PHA	
C02E	29	FE		AND	;%11111110
					; select RAM under BASIC ROM by
					; turning off bit 0
C030	85	01		STA	1
C032	A2	02		LDX	#2
					; so two bytes at ZP point to BUFFER
					; (origin), ZP+2 to TEXT (target)
C034	20	43	C0	JSR	TXTPTR
					; set up zero-page pointers to BUFFER and
					; TEXT

POKRUR/PEKRUR (64 only)

C037	20	5B	C0		JSR	NUMMOV		; fetch the number of bytes to move
C03A	20	68	C0		JSR	MOVEIT		; recall TEXT from BUFFER
C03D	68				PLA			; restore RAM/ROM configuration
C03E	85	01			STA	1		
C040	4C	17	C0		JMP	EXIT		; take care of normal IRQ routines
								; Set origin and target pointers. Enter with
								; .X = 0 to point ZP to TEXT,
								; ZP+2 to BUFFER. Enter with .X = 2 to
								; point ZP to BUFFER, ZP+2 to TEXT.
C043	A9	00		TXTPTR	LDA	#<TEXT		; get low byte of TEXT
C045	95	FB			STA	ZP,X		; store to ZP (if .X was 0) or ZP+2 (if .X
								; was 2)
C047	E8				INX			; for high byte
C048	A9	04			LDA	#>TEXT		; get high byte of TEXT
C04A	95	FB			STA	ZP,X		; store to ZP+1 (if .X was 0) or ZP+3 (if .X
								; was 2)
C04C	CA				DEX			; set index back to 0 (if .X was 0) or 2 (if .X
								; was 2)
C04D	8A				TXA			
C04E	49	02			EOR	#2		; change .X from 0 to 2 or vice versa
C050	AA				TAX			
C051	A9	00			LDA	#<BUFFER		; get low byte of BUFFER
C053	95	FB			STA	ZP,X		; store to ZP+2 (if .X was 0) or ZP (if .X
								; was 2)
C055	E8				INX			; for high byte
C056	A9	A0			LDA	#>BUFFER		; get high byte of buffer
C058	95	FB			STA	ZP,X		; store to ZP+3 (if .X was 0) or ZP+1 (if .X
								; was 2)
C05A	60				RTS			
								; Store number of bytes to transfer in
								; BUFCTR.
								; low byte first
C05B	AD	8A	C0	NUMMOV	LDA	NUMBER		
C05E	8D	8C	C0		STA	BUFCTR		
C061	AE	8B	C0		LDX	NUMBER+1		; then high byte
C064	8E	8D	C0		STX	BUFCTR+1		
C067	60				RTS			
								; MOVEIT moves bytes from address in ZP to
								; address in ZP+2.
C068	A0	00		MOVEIT	LDY	#0		
C06A	B1	FB		MOVEIT	LDA	(ZP),Y		; as an index in MOVEIT
C06C	91	FD		MOVEIT	STA	(ZP+2),Y		; get a byte from origin (TEXT or BUFFER)
								; and move it
								; Increment zero-page pointers for both origin
								; and target.
								; Increment the origin ZP pointers first.
C06E	E6	FB			INC	ZP		; increment low byte
C070	D0	02			BNE	INCTAR		; if low byte hasn't turned over, increment
								; target pointers
C072	E6	FC			INC	ZP+1		; increment high byte
C074	E6	FD		INCTAR	INC	ZP+2		; increment the low byte of the target pointer
C076	D0	02			BNE	LENCHK		; if low byte hasn't turned over, skip over
								; high-byte increment

POKRUR/PEKRUR (64 only)

C078	E6	FE	INCZP2	INC	ZP+3	; increment high byte of target pointer
C07A	CE	8C	C0 LENCHK	DEC	BUFCTR	; decrement low byte of buffer counter
C07D	D0	EB		BNE	MOVELP	; if not equal, more of the buffer remains, so
						; continue moving
C07F	CE	8D	C0	DEC	BUFCTR+1	; otherwise, decrement high byte of buffer
						; counter
C082	AD	8D	C0	LDA	BUFCTR+1	; continue moving until last page of buffer
						; has transferred
C085	C9	FF		CMP	#255	; high byte goes from 0 through 255 on last
						; page
C087	D0	E1		BNE	MOVELP	; we've yet to reach last page, so continue
						; moving
C089	60			RTS		;
C08A	50	00	NUMBER	.WORD	80	; number of bytes to transfer
C08C	00	00	BUFCTR	.WORD	0	; two-byte counter for remaining number of
						; bytes to move

POKSCR

Name

POKE to screen and color memory

Description

With **POKSCR**, you can position a series of colored characters beginning at any location on the text screen.

Prototype

1. Define the screen codes of the characters you want to place on the screen (as **SCODE**) and their corresponding color values (as **COLVAL**).
2. Set **SCREEN** equal to the first screen position where the characters will be placed.
3. Load the accumulator with the low byte of **SCREEN** and **.X** with its high byte. Then **JSR** to **LOCATE**.
4. In **LOCATE**, store the starting text position in zero page. Calculate the starting color-RAM position and store it in zero page as well.
5. Using zero-page addressing, store the screen codes in text memory and colors in color RAM.

Explanation

The following program puts the message **LINE 3** at the beginning of line 3 on the text screen. Each character within the message is shown in a different color (except for the space).

The subroutine **LOCATE** puts the initial text position (**SCREEN**) and color-RAM position for the message in zero page. The proper color memory address is determined by performing a two-byte addition of **SCREEN** to **OFFSET**, where **OFFSET** represents the difference between text and color memory.

POKSCR can easily be modified to store screen codes elsewhere in screen memory. Put the list of screen codes for your characters in **SCODE** and the color of each in **COLVAL**. Change **SCREEN** to the desired screen location. Then count the number of screen codes and replace the six within **POKELP** with this number.

For a table of color values, see **COLFIL**.

Routine

C000	OFFSET	=	54272	; offset to color RAM
C000	SCREEN	=	1104	; starting screen position where characters are ; stored
C000	ZP	=	251	;

```

C000 A9 50      POKSCR LDA #<SCREEN ; Store screen codes to memory with color.
C002 A2 04      LDX #>SCREEN ; low byte of screen position
C004 20 19 C0   JSR LOCATE ; and high byte
; put screen position, text and color RAM,
; in zero page
; Now place characters in screen memory in
; color.
C007 A0 00      LDY #0 ; as an index
C009 B9 2E C0   LDA COLVAL,Y
C00C 91 FD      STA (ZP+2),Y ; store the color for character in SCODE
; plus .Y
C00E B9 28 C0   LDA SCODE,Y
C011 91 FB      STA (ZP),Y ; store each screen code
C013 C8         INY ; next screen code
C014 C0 06      CPY #6 ; have we done all six?
C016 D0 F1      BNE POKELP ; if not, continue
C018 60         RTS
;
; Enter with low (.A) and high (.X) bytes of
; screen position.
; Store starting text position in ZP and
; ZP+1, color in ZP+2 and ZP+3.
; store screen first position
C019 85 FB      LOCATE STA ZP
C01B 86 FC      STX ZP+1
; Add in offset for color memory.
C01D 18         CLC
C01E 69 00      ADC #<OFFSET ; low byte first
C020 85 FD      STA ZP+2
C022 8A         TXA
C023 69 D4      ADC #>OFFSET ; then high byte
C025 85 FE      STA ZP+3
C027 60         RTS
;
C028 0C 09 0E SCODE .BYTE 12,9,14,5,32,51
; screen codes for "LINE 3"
C02E 05 02 07 COLVAL .BYTE 5,2,7,4,4,14
; colors—GRN, RED, YEL, PUR, PUR, LT
; BLU

```

See also PRTCHR.

PRTCHR

Name

Print a character on the screen

Description

You'll need this routine anytime you print a character on the text screen. **PRTCHR** relies on the Kernal routine **CHROUT** to locate a character at the current cursor position.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the ASCII value of the character you want to print in **.A** (defined as **CHAR**).
2. **JSR** to the Kernal routine **CHROUT** and **RTS** (or simply **JMP** to **CHROUT**).

Explanation

The example program clears the screen with **CLRCHR** and prints a **J**.

Note: On the 128, **CHROUT** is also referred to as **BSOUT**.

Routine

```
C000          CHROUT = 65490          ; Kernal character output routine
;
; Clear screen and print J.
; clear the screen
C000 A9 93    CLRCHR LDA #147
C002 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C005 AD 10 C0 LDA CHAR          ; get the character
C008 20 0C C0 JSR PRTCHR        ; and print it
C00B 60      RTS
;
; Print the character in .A,
; print it at the current cursor location
C00C 20 D2 FF PRTCHR JSR CHROUT
C00F 60      RTS
C010 4A      CHAR .BYTE 74      ; ASCII value for J
```

See also POKSCR.

Name

Send characters to the printer

Description

Open a channel to the printer and output an ASCII character

Prototype

1. Using **OPENPR**, open the printer channel with the parameters 4,4,0.
2. Load the accumulator with the ASCII character you wish to print.
3. Print it with the Kernal routine **CHROUT**.
4. With the file number in *.A*, **JMP** to **CLOSFL** to close the printer channel and restore output to the screen.

Explanation

The example program opens the printer as channel 4 and prints an uppercase *T*. For a program that prints an entire string, see **PRTSTR**.

Note: For most printers, the logical file number for the output can be any integer in the range 0–255; the device number is usually 4. Some printers can also use 5 as a device number.

The secondary address sends information on Commodore printers about the character set. A value of 0 causes Commodore printers to print in uppercase and graphics. A value of 7 causes them to print in uppercase and lowercase. Some printers require a value of 255 (for no secondary address) here. Consult your printer or interface manual to determine the exact significance these parameters have with your printer or printer interface.

Finally, the last couple of instructions are necessary on certain printers that store output in a buffer before printing it. Printing the carriage return insures that this buffer gets printed.

Routine

C000	SETLFS	=	65466
C000	OPEN	=	65472
C000	CHKOUT	=	65481
C000	CHROUT	=	65490
C000	CLOSE	=	65475
C000	CLRCHN	=	65484

; Open a file to the printer with **OPENPR**,
; print T, and
; close printer channel with **CLOSFL**.
; open the printer
; print T

C000	20	12	C0	PRTOUT	JSR	OPENPR
C003	A9	54			LDA	#84
C005	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHROUT

PRTOUT

```
C008 A9 0D          LDA #13          ; print RETURN to clear printer buffer
C00A 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C00D A9 04          LDA #4           ; file to close
C00F 4C 23 C0      JMP CLOSFL       ; close file to printer, restore
;
; OPEN the printer as 4,4,0.
C012 A9 04          LDA #4           ; logical file 4
C014 A2 04          LDX #4           ; device number (printer is usually device 4,
; sometimes 5)
C016 A0 00          LDY #0           ; secondary address of 0
; A value of 0 here causes Commodore
; printers to print in uppercase/graphics.
; A value of 7 causes Commodore printers to
; print in lowercase/uppercase.
; Some printers require a value of 255
; (meaning no secondary address).
;
C018 20 BA FF      JSR SETLFS       ; set values
C01B 20 C0 FF      JSR OPEN         ; open a file to printer (OPEN 4,4,0)
C01E A2 04          LDX #4
C020 4C C9 FF      JMP CHKOUT       ; direct output to file 4 (that is, CMD 4) and
; RTS
;
; CLOSFL closes the logical file in .A and
; restores default devices.
C023 20 C3 FF      JSR CLOSE        ; close file in .A
C026 4C CC FF      JMP CLRCHN       ; clear all channels, restore default devices
; and RTS
```

See also CLOSFL, OPENPR, PRSTR.

Name

Send a string to the printer

Description

PRTSTR opens a channel to the printer and prints an ASCII string.

Prototype

1. OPEN the printer channel with the parameters 4,4,0 by using **OPENPR**.
2. JSR to a string-printing routine.
3. After printing the string, send a carriage return to clear the printer buffer.
4. With the number of the open file in .A, JMP to **CLOSFL** to close the printer channel and restore output to the screen.

Explanation

The example program opens the printer as channel 4 and prints HELLO.

Notice the custom printing routine **STRCPT**; it works with both the 64 and the 128. You could shorten the program somewhat by substituting **STP64** on the 64 or **STP128** on the 128.

To print individual characters, see **PRTOUT**.

Note: For most printers, the logical file number for the output can be any integer in the range 0–255. The device number is usually 4 (with nearly all Commodore printers). Some printers can also use 5 as a device number.

The secondary address sends information on Commodore printers about the character set. A value of 0 causes Commodore printers to print in uppercase and graphics. A value of 7 causes them to print in uppercase and lowercase. Some printers require a value of 255 (for no secondary address) here. It is best to consult your printer manual to determine the exact significance that these parameters will have with your printer and/or interface.

Routine

C000	SETLES	=	65466
C000	OPEN	=	65472
C000	CHKOUT	=	65481
C000	CHROUT	=	65490
C000	CLOSE	=	65475
C000	CLRCHN	=	65484
C000	ZP	=	251

```

;
; Open a file to the printer with OPENPR.
; print a string with STRCPT, and
; close the channel with CLOSFL.

```

PRTSTR

```

C000 20 10 C0 PRTSTR JSR OPENPR ; open the printer
C003 20 27 C0 JSR STRCPT ; print the string
C006 A9 0D LDA #13 ; print RETURN to clear printer buffer
C008 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C00B A9 04 LDA #4 ; file to close
C00D 4C 21 C0 JMP CLOSFL ; close file to printer; restore default device
; numbers and RTS
;
; OPEN the printer file as 4,4,0.
C010 A9 04 OPENPR LDA #4 ; logical file 4
C012 A2 04 LDX #4 ; device number; printer is usually device 4
; (sometimes 5)
C014 A0 00 LDY #0 ; secondary address
C016 20 BA FF JSR SETLFS ; set values
C019 20 C0 FF JSR OPEN ; open a file to printer
C01C A2 04 LDX #4
C01E 4C C9 FF JMP CHKOUT ; direct output to file 4 and RTS
;
; Closes the logical file specified in .A and
; restores default devices.
C021 20 C3 FF CLOSFL JSR CLOSE ; close file in .A
C024 4C CC FF JMP CLRCHN ; clear all channels; restore default devices
; and RTS
;
; String printing routine
C027 A9 41 STRCPT LDA #<STRING ; low byte of string address
C029 85 FB STA ZP ; store it
C02B A0 C0 LDY #>STRING ; high byte of string address
C02D 84 FC STY ZP+1 ; store it also
C02F A0 00 LDY #0 ; initialize index
C031 B1 FB STRLOP LDA (ZP),Y ; load each character from string
C033 F0 0B BEQ FINISH ; zero byte marks end of string
C035 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT ; print character
C038 C8 INY ; for next character
C039 D0 F6 BNE STRLOP ; if not more than 256 bytes, then get next
; character
C03B E6 FC INC ZP+1 ; otherwise, increment high-byte address
; pointer to the string
C03D 4C 31 C0 JMP STRLOP ; and continue printing
C040 60 FINISH RTS
;
C041 48 45 4C STRING .ASC "HELLO" ; string to print
C046 00 .BYTE 0 ; ending in zero byte

```

See also CLOSFL, OPENPR, PRTOUT.

Name

Print a string from a lookup table of addresses

Description

PTABAD is one of two routines presented in this book that print strings from a table (the other is **PTABCT**). With **PTABAD**, individual entries in a string table are given their own labels. A corresponding table of addresses for these labels is created. So, by indexing the address table, you can find the address of a particular string from the table.

As with **PTABCT**, each entry must end in a zero byte. In this case, the table itself can contain up to 127 separate entries. Strings within the table need not be of equal length since they are individually indexed.

Prototype

1. Enter the routine with **.A** holding the specified entry number. With **ASL**, multiply this number by 2.
2. Transfer the number of the entry requested (times 2) from **.A** to **.X**.
3. Store the address bytes, indexed by **.X**, of the chosen string in zero page.
4. Print the entry with **STRCPT**.

Explanation

The example program, with the aid of **PTABAD**, prints a word corresponding to a number in the range 0-9.

The program accepts only the number keys as input (see **CHRGTR**). The ASCII value of the number you specify is **ANDed** with 15, giving a number in the range 0-9.

After receiving a value, the program calls **PTABAD**, where the proper string is printed, and then waits for you to press another number key. To exit, press **RUN/STOP-RESTORE**.

Note: This method of accessing entries in a string table is faster than the method used in **PTABCT**, especially if there are a large number of entries. However, since each entry requires two additional addressing bytes (in **ADRTAB**), the multi-entry tables add to the length of the program. If you have a lot of short entries in your table, you may prefer to use **PTABCT** instead.

Routine

C000	GETIN	=	65508
C000	CHROUT	=	65490
C000	ZP	=	251

PTABAD

```

C000 20 E4 FF WAIT JSR GETIN ; get character code for key
C003 C9 30 CMP #48 ; compare with ASCII 0
C005 90 F9 BCC WAIT ; too low, so get another keypress
C007 C9 3A CMP #58 ; compare with ASCII 9 plus 1
C009 B0 F5 BCS WAIT ; too high, so get another key
C00B 29 0F AND #15 ; to produce value 0-9
C00D 20 17 C0 JSR PTABAD ; print corresponding string from table
C010 A9 0D LDA #13 ; print RETURN
C012 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT
C015 D0 E9 BNE WAIT ; look for another number
;
; Enter with .A containing the entry number
; to print in the string table.
C017 0A PTABAD ASL ; multiply by 2 for offset into address table
C018 AA TAX ; store number times 2 in .X
C019 BD 35 C0 LDA ADRTAB,X ; load low byte of address for number
C01C 85 FB STA ZP ; store in zero page
C01E BD 36 C0 LDA ADRTAB+1,X ; also store high byte in zero page
C021 85 FC STA ZP+1
; Print out number string.
C023 A0 00 STRCPT LDY #0 ; initialize index
C025 B1 FB STRLOP LDA (ZP),Y ; load each character from entry in string
; table
C027 F0 0B BEQ FINISH ; if zero byte, you're finished
C029 20 D2 FF JSR CHROUT ; print character
C02C C8 INY ; next character
C02D D0 F6 BNE STRLOP ; if .Y is not zero, get another character
C02F E6 FC INC ZP+1 ; otherwise, increment high-byte address
; pointer to entry
C031 4C 25 C0 JMP STRLOP ; and continue printing
C034 60 FINISH RTS
;
; ADRTAB contains two-byte addresses of
; each string entry.
C035 49 C0 4E ADRTAB .WORD N0,N1,N2,N3,N4,N5,N6,N7,N8,N9
; string table
C049 5A 45 52 N0 .ASC "ZERO"
C04D 00 .BYTE0
C04E 4F 4E 45 N1 .ASC "ONE"
C051 00 .BYTE0
C052 54 57 4F N2 .ASC "TWO"
C055 00 .BYTE0
C056 54 48 52 N3 .ASC "THREE"
C05B 00 .BYTE0
C05C 46 4F 55 N4 .ASC "FOUR"
C060 00 .BYTE0
C061 46 49 56 N5 .ASC "FIVE"
C065 00 .BYTE0
C066 53 49 58 N6 .ASC "SIX"
C069 00 .BYTE0
C06A 53 45 56 N7 .ASC "SEVEN"
C06F 00 .BYTE0
C070 45 49 47 N8 .ASC "EIGHT"
C075 00 .BYTE0
C076 4E 49 4E N9 .ASC "NINE"
C07A 00 .BYTE0

```

See also PTABCT, STP128, STP64, STRCPT, STRLEN.

Name

Print a string from a table using a counting method

Description

This is the second of two routines that print string messages from a table (**PTABAD** is the other). **PTABCT** relies on the fact that individual strings in the table end with a zero byte. The table itself can contain up to 255 separate entries.

PTABCT, unlike many routines of this type, does not use an offset to address an individual table entry. Because of this, strings within the table need not be padded with spaces to insure they are equal in length.

Prototype

1. Enter with the address of the string table contained in *.X* (low byte) and *.Y* (high byte). Store the address in a zero page pointer.
2. Transfer the number of the entry requested from *.A* to *.X*.
3. If the specified entry number is zero, go to step 10 to print **ZERO**.
4. Read a byte from the **STRING** table.
5. If a byte is nonzero, branch to step 8.
6. Otherwise, decrement the entry counter in *.X*.
7. If the counter value has reached zero, go to step 9.
8. Update the zero-page pointer so that it points to the next byte and **JMP** to step 4.
9. Increment *.Y* so that it points to the first byte in the specified entry.
10. Print the chosen entry with **STRCPT**.

Explanation

This is a very flexible and useful routine. In a variety of programs, you'll require standard messages such as **ARE YOU SURE?**, **PRESS ANY KEY**, **PLEASE WAIT**, **LOADING FILE**, and so on. If you assign a number to each message, you can print any one of the messages by calling this routine.

In the example program, **PTABCT** is used to print a word corresponding to a number 0-9. Only the number keys (see **CHRGTR**) are acceptable input. The ASCII value of the number you choose is **ANDed** with 15, yielding a number 0-9.

Before **JSRing** to **PTABCT**, the address of the string table must be placed in the *X* and *Y* registers.

Basically, **PTABCT** operates by searching through the string table, character by character, until it comes upon a zero

byte, which indicates the end of another entry. At this point, the counter in .X is decremented. When the counter value reaches zero, the next entry is the chosen string.

After printing this string, the program waits for you to press another number key. To exit, press RUN/STOP-RESTORE.

Note: If your string table contains a considerable number of entries, the method used here—that is, counting through all the entries—may begin to slow down the program. In that case, use **PTABAD** where individual entries are addressed separately.

Routine

C000			GETIN	=	65508	
C000			CHROUT	=	65490	
C000			ZP	=	251	
						; Accept only keys 0-9 and print a string for
						; the number from a table.
C000	20	E4	FF	WAIT	JSR	GETIN
C003	C9	30			CMP	#48
C005	90	F9			BCC	WAIT
C007	C9	3A			CMP	#58
C009	B0	F5			BCS	WAIT
						; too low, so get another keypress
						; compare with ASCII 9 + 1
						; too high, so get another key
						; to produce value 0-9
C00B	29	0F			AND	#15
C00D	A2	46			LDX	#<STRTAB
C00F	A0	C0			LDY	#>STRTAB
C011	20	1C	C0		JSR	PTABCT
C014	A9	0D			LDA	#13
C016	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHROUT
C019	4C	00	C0		JMP	WAIT
						; print string number corresponding to .A
						; print RETURN
						; get another number key
						; Enter with entry number in .A, string table
						; address in .X and .Y.
						; store low and high byte of string table
						; address in zero page
C01C	66	FB		PTABCT	STX	ZP
C01E	84	FC			STY	ZP+1
C020	A0	00			LDY	#0
C022	AA				TAX	
C023	F0	11			BEQ	STRLOP
C025	B1	FB		LOOP	LDA	(ZP),Y
C027	D0	03			BNE	INCZP
C029	CA				DEX	
C02A	F0	09			BEQ	STRCPT
						; counter is at zero, so print string from the
						; table
						; to point to next character
C02C	E6	FB		INCZP	INC	ZP
C02E	D0	F5			BNE	LOOP
						; if not on a page boundary, get next
						; character
						; otherwise, increment high byte of string
C030	E6	FC			INC	ZP+1
						; address
C032	4C	25	C0		JMP	LOOP
						; and continue to look at characters
						; Print out number string with STRCPT
						; since string begins with next character.
C035	C8			STRCPT	INY	
C036	B1	FB		STRLOP	LDA	(ZP),Y
						; load each character from an entry in string
						; table
C038	F0	0B			BEQ	FINISH
C03A	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHROUT
						; if zero byte, you're finished
						; print character

C03D	C8				INY					; next character
C03E	D0	F6			BNE	STRLOP				; if .Y is not zero, get another character
C040	E6	FC			INC	ZP+1				; otherwise, increment high-byte address
										; pointer to entry
C042	4C	36	C0		JMP	STRLOP				; and continue printing
C045	60			FINISH	RTS					
										; string table
C046	5A	45	52	STRTAB	.ASC	"ZERO"				
C04A	00				.BYTE0					
C04B	4F	4E	45		.ASC	"ONE"				
C04E	00				.BYTE0					
C04F	54	57	4F		.ASC	"TWO"				
C052	00				.BYTE0					
C053	54	48	52		.ASC	"THREE"				
C058	00				.BYTE0					
C059	46	4F	55		.ASC	"FOUR"				
C05D	00				.BYTE0					
C05E	46	49	56		.ASC	"FIVE"				
C062	00				.BYTE0					
C063	53	49	58		.ASC	"SIX"				
C066	00				.BYTE0					
C067	53	45	56		.ASC	"SEVEN"				
C06C	00				.BYTE0					
C06D	45	49	47		.ASC	"EIGHT"				
C072	00				.BYTE0					
C073	4E	49	4E		.ASC	"NINE"				
C077	00				.BYTE0					

See also PTABAD, STP128, STP64, STRCPT, STRLEN.

RAS64 (64 only)

Name

Set up a raster interrupt

Description

This routine seemingly performs magic. Instead of one screen, suddenly there are two half-screens, each with its own background color and eight sprites. Running the sample BASIC program gives you a total of 16 independent sprites (each limited to one half of the screen or the other) which can be displayed at the same time.

Prototype

This is a two-part routine. In the first part, **RAS64**:

1. Disable all CIA #1 IRQ interrupt sources.
2. Redirect the IRQ interrupt vector at 788 to the main raster interrupt routine (MAIN).
3. Clear the ninth bit of the raster compare register (bit 7 of location 53265).
4. Enable the raster compare IRQ interrupt.
5. Create two sets of shadow registers for the VIC-II chip registers (53248-53294) by copying them twice into free memory.
6. Then RTS.

In MAIN:

1. Prevent other interrupts from occurring by clearing the interrupt condition.
2. Determine where the last raster line was drawn by reading the raster compare register at 53266.
3. If it was less than 147, store a 147 into the raster register so the next raster interrupt occurs at this line (the middle of the screen). Otherwise, store a one in this register so the raster interrupt occurs at the top of the screen.
4. Allow the current raster line to finish drawing and then copy the appropriate set of shadow registers into the VIC-II chip (representing either the top or bottom of the screen).
5. Check the interrupt control register (CIAICR) for a Timer A interrupt. If one has occurred, execute the normal IRQ service routine. Otherwise, restore the stack and RTI.

Explanation

On the 64, the normal hardware interrupt happens 60 times a second (50 times per second on European 64s). One of the CIA chips is given the responsibility of counting down and

triggering an interrupt after a certain period of time has elapsed. The hardware interrupt is a maskable interrupt request (IRQ), not a nonmaskable interrupt (NMI). *Maskable* means it can be turned off.

The hardware interrupt is important because it causes the CPU (the brains of the 64) to pause what it's doing and service the interrupt. During the service routine, the cursor blinks, the keyboard is checked for keypresses, and the jiffy clock is updated.

The ML program below first turns off the normal interrupt. It will no longer be triggered by the CIA clock. Instead, we turn on a different interrupt, one caused by the position of the raster on the screen. North American TVs and monitors normally use 525 raster lines per screen, but the 64 draws only half this many, so there are effectively 262.5 lines per screen. Of these, 200 make up the text screen and the additional lines form the top and bottom borders. The raster lines of the visible screen are numbered 50–250. The halfway point on the screen is raster line 150.

The IRQVEC at 788 normally points to the interrupt service routine (which reads the keyboard and handles the other housekeeping chores). The first thing we do after disabling the interrupt is change the vector to point to our routine. Next, the raster interrupt is turned on and we make two copies of the VIC chip registers, one at \$C100 (49408) and the other 47 bytes higher.

Now interrupts are triggered when the raster beam reaches a certain line on the screen. When line 147 appears, suddenly an interrupt occurs. The register RASTER does two things. If you read it, it tells you which line is being drawn. If you write to it, you set the value for a raster interrupt. If the raster is in the middle of the screen, we want to enable a new raster interrupt to happen at line 1. If the raster is at line 1, we change the interrupt to happen at line 147. After each interrupt, the main routine copies one of the two shadows of the VIC chip to the VIC chip.

Since there are two complete copies of the VIC chip, you can treat the two halves of the screen as two separate screens. One could be in multicolor hi-res mode while the other is displaying normal text. You can give each half separate border and background colors. Each halfscreen has its own eight sprites, with which you can do what you please.

C02A	8D	19	D0	STA	VICIRQ	; prevent normal raster—clear interrupt ; condition
C02D	A2	93		LDX	#147	; raster line in the middle of screen
C02F	A0	2E		LDY	#46	; index for VIC registers to copy for top of ; the screen (set 1)
C031	AD	12	D0	LDA	RASTER	; get the current raster line number
C034	C9	93		CMP	#147	; determine if it's on the top half of screen
C036	90	04		BCC	TOP	; if so, skip to TOP
C038	A2	01		LDX	#1	; raster line for top of screen
C03A	A0	5D		LDY	#93	; index for set 2 registers (bottom of screen ; registers)
C03C	8A		TOP	TXA		; raster line becomes 1 (if now on bottom) ; or 147 (if now on top)
C03D	48			PHA		; save it temporarily
C03E	A2	03		LDX	#3	; wait for current raster line to finish ; drawing
C040	CA		DELAY	DEX		
C041	D0	FD		BNE	DELAY	
C043	EA			NOP		; slight adjustment to DELAY
C044	A2	2E		LDX	#46	; index for COPYBK
C046	B9	00	C1	LDA	NEWVIC,Y	; copy from set 1 or 2 VIC shadow registers
C049	9D	00	D0	STA	VIC,X	; to VIC registers
C04C	88			DEY		
C04D	CA			DEX		
C04E	10	F6		BPL	COPYBK	; copy 47 values
C050	68			PLA		; get new raster line (1 or 147)
C051	8D	12	D0	STA	RASTER	; set raster for next interrupt
C054	AD	0D	DC	LDA	CIAICR	; bit 1 set if IRQ interrupt is needed
C057	4A			LSR		
C058	90	03		BCC	NOIRQ	; bit is clear so no IRQ interrupts
C05A	4C	31	EA	JMP	IRQNOR	; otherwise, call normal IRQ interrupt ; routine
C05D	4C	BC	FE	JMP	IRQEND	; clean up stack and RTI

See also IRQINT, NMIINT, RAS128.

RAS128 (128 only)

Name

Set up a raster interrupt

Description

This is the 128 version of RAS64. It splits the screen in two and provides two shadows of the VIC chip, which can be set to any of the video modes (hi res, multicolor hi res, or text). Each half has its own eight sprites as well.

Prototype

This is a two-part routine. In the first part, **RAS128**:

1. Disable all IRQ interrupt sources.
2. Redirect the IRQ interrupt vector at 788 to the main raster interrupt routine (MAIN).
3. Clear the ninth bit of the raster compare register (bit 7 of location 53265).
4. Create two sets of shadow registers for the VIC-II chip registers (53248–53294) by copying them twice into free memory.
5. Reenable IRQ interrupt sources and then RTS.

In MAIN:

1. Clear decimal mode as required by the normal IRQ interrupt handler.
2. Prevent normal raster interrupts from occurring by clearing the interrupt condition.
3. Determine where the last raster line was drawn by reading the raster compare register at 53266.
4. If it was less than 147, store a 147 into the raster register so the next raster interrupt occurs at this line (the middle of the screen). Otherwise, store a one in this register so the raster interrupt occurs at the top of the screen.
5. Allow the current raster line to finish drawing and then copy the appropriate set of shadow registers into the VIC-II chip (for either the top or bottom of the screen).
6. Check a flag to see if the cursor needs blinking (every other time through the routine). If so, execute the normal IRQ interrupt handler routine (except for the any raster-related routines). Otherwise, leave through the common interrupt exit point at 65331.

Explanation

For a more detailed explanation of what interrupts are, see the RAS64 routine. Much of this program is very similar to RAS64. It assembles to \$0C00 on the 128, and the shadows of the VIC chip are at 3328 (\$0D00).

After assembling and SYSing to the ML raster interrupt routine, run this short BASIC program to see the effects of the raster split:

```

10 SCNCLR:POKE 2564,0:REM TURN OFF NORMAL SPRITE
ROUTINES
15 FOR A = 3584 TO 3647:POKE A,255:NEXT:REM DEFINE BLOCK
SPRITE
20 FOR A = 2040 TO 2047:POKE A,56:NEXT:REM SET POINTERS TO
BLOCK SPRITE DATA
30 POKE 3328 + 21,255:POKE 3375 + 21,255: REM ENABLE SPRITES FOR
TOP/BOTTOM
39 REM HORIZONTAL POSITIONS (TOP/BOTTOM)
40 FOR A = 3328 TO 3342 STEP 2:POKE A,B*25 + 50:POKE
A + 47,B*25 + 50:B = B + 1:NEXT
49 REM VERTICAL POSITIONS (TOP/BOTTOM)
50 FOR A = 3329 TO 3343 STEP 2:POKE A,100:POKE A + 47,200:NEXT
    
```

Routine

0C00		VIC	=	53248		; start of VIC chip
0C00		NEWVIC	=	3328		; shadow registers for VIC chip
0C00		VICIRQ	=	53273		; VIC interrupt flag register
0C00		RASTER	=	53266		; read/write raster compare register
0C00		IRQVEC	=	788		; IRQ interrupt vector
0C00		IRQTXT	=	49636		; text-mode portion of IRQ editor routine
0C00		IRQNRP	=	64107		; entry point to IRQ handler just beyond ; raster handler
0C00		CRTI	=	65331		; interrupt exit routine (clean stack and RTI)
0C00		ZP	=	251		
0C00	78	RAS128	SEI			; disable all IRQ interrupts
0C01	A9 1B		LDA	#<MAIN		; redirect IRQ interrupt vector to main, low ; byte first
0C03	8D 14 03		STA	IRQVEC		
0C06	A9 0C		LDA	#>MAIN		; then high byte
0C08	8D 15 03		STA	IRQVEC+1		
0C0B	A0 2E		LDY	#46		; index for COPY
0C0D	B9 00 D0	COPY	LDA	VIC,Y		; copy 47 VIC registers as two sets of ; shadow registers
0C10	99 00 0D		STA	NEWVIC,Y		; initialize shadow registers for top of ; screen (set 1)
0C13	99 2F 0D		STA	NEWVIC+47,Y		; initialize shadow registers for bottom of ; screen (set 2)
0C16	88		DEY			; next lower VIC register
0C17	10 F4		BPL	COPY		; are all copied?
0C19	58		CLI			; reenable IRQ interrupts
0C1A	60		RTS			

Name

Generate a random two-byte integer value using SID voice 3

Description

RNDBYT returns a one-byte random integer using voice 3 of the SID chip. **RD2BYT** also relies on voice 3 to generate a random integer value. This time, two separate bytes are returned. One represents the high byte of the number; the other, the low byte. A random two-byte integer value in the range 0–65535 is produced.

Prototype

In an initialization routine (RDINIT):

1. Set voice 3 to a high frequency
2. Select the noise waveform.
3. Turn off the SID chip volume and disconnect the output of voice 3.

In **RD2BYT** itself:

1. Load a random byte value from voice 3's random number generator (RANDOM) into .X.
2. Cause a delay of two jiffies.
3. Load a second value from RANDOM into .A.

Explanation

In the example program, a random two-byte integer is generated by **RD2BYT** and printed on the screen.

The setup for **RD2BYT** is the same as in **RNDBYT**. Voice 3's random number generator is first initialized by JSRing to RDINIT. For a full explanation of how the random number generator is accessed, refer to **RNDBYT**.

After the random number generator has been initialized, two individual random byte values are taken from RANDOM (54299) within **RD2BYT**. One is returned in the X register, and the other in the accumulator. It really doesn't matter which is which.

Notice that between taking these two bytes, a delay of two jiffies (a total of 2/60 second) is carried out. This insures that the current waveform has had time to change before the next byte is taken. If not for this delay, the two bytes would be very close in value, and we'd lose our randomness.

RD2BYT

Routine

```
C000          GETIN      =      65508
C000          LINPRT     =      48589      ; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
C000          FREHI3     =      54287      ; voice 3 frequency control (high byte)
C000          VCREG3     =      54290      ; voice 3 control register
C000          SIGVOL     =      54296      ; volume and filter select register
C000          RANDOM     =      54299      ; oscillator 3/ random number generator
C000          JIFFY      =      162        ; jiffy clock (jiffies)
;
; Generate a random integer (0-65535) from
; SID chip voice 3.
C000 20 09 C0 MAIN      JSR      RDINIT    ; initialize SID voice 3 for random numbers
C003 20 17 C0 LOOP      JSR      RD2BYT   ; get a random two-byte integer
C006 4C CD BD NUMOUT    JMP      LINPRT   ; two random bytes are in .A and .X
; So print the resulting two-byte integer (see
; NUMOUT).
;
; Routine to initialize SID voice 3 for random
; numbers.
C009 A9 FF          RDINIT  LDA      #$FF    ; set voice 3 frequency (high byte) to
; maximum
C00B 8D 0F D4          STA      FREHI3
C00E A9 80          LDA      #%10000000
C010 8D 12 D4          STA      VCREG3    ; select noise waveform and start release
C013 8D 18 D4          STA      SIGVOL    ; turn off volume and disconnect output of
; voice 3
;
; RD2BYT returns a two-byte integer in .X
; and .A.
C017 AE 1B D4 RD2BYT  LDX      RANDOM   ; get single-byte random number
C01A A5 A2          LDA      JIFFY      ; pseudorandom delay
C01C 69 02          ADC      #2
C01E C5 A2          DELAY  CMP      JIFFY    ; wait till jiffy clock reads the original
; value plus 2
; otherwise, wait
C020 D0 FC          BNE      DELAY
C022 AD 1B D4          LDA      RANDOM   ; get a second random byte
C025 60          RTS
```

See also RDBYRG, RND1VL, RNDBYT.

Name

Open a disk channel, read a sector, copy the disk buffer to memory

Description

This is a fairly low-level routine for reading a given disk sector into a buffer inside the drive. The 256 numbers in the buffer are then read byte by byte into the computer's memory.

Prototype

1. Open the command channel (15,8,15).
2. Open a disk buffer (equivalent to BASIC OPEN 1,8,3,"#").
3. Read the buffer by sending read sector command to channel 15.
4. Perform a Kernal CHKIN to logical file 1.
5. Read the 256 bytes into memory with CHRIN.
6. Close all channels and exit.

Explanation

The example program reads track 18, sector 1 (the first of the directory sectors), into memory. There are several discrete sections of the routine.

First, the disk command channel must be opened (\$C044-\$C05A) using secondary address 15. Next, an internal disk buffer is allocated, with the equivalent of OPEN 1,8,3,"#", at \$C05B-\$C075. The secondary address, 3 in this case, is important. It must be used in commands to the drive.

The string *U1,3,0,18,1* sends five pieces of information to channel 15 (\$C006-\$C01D). *U1* is the sector-read command to the disk drive. The 3 corresponds to the secondary address of the buffer (the 3 in OPEN 1,8,3). The 0 is the drive number (if you have an MSD dual drive, you could use 1). The 18 and 1 are the track and sector numbers, respectively, for the block to be read.

When the 1541 or 1571 receives the *U1* command, it copies the given disk sector into memory inside the disk drive. All that remains is to read the data into the computer's memory. At this point, we CHKIN with a 1 (the 1 in OPEN 1,8,3) to specify logical file 1 as the channel to be read and then loop 256 times with CHRIN to read the bytes and store them.

Finally, logical files 1 and 15 are closed and the routine is done.

RDBUFF

Routine

```

C000          SETLFS  =   $FFBA
C000          SETNAM  =   $FFBD
C000          OPEN    =   $FFC0
C000          CHKOUT  =   $FFC9
C000          CHKIN   =   $FFC6
C000          CHROUT  =   $FFD2
C000          CHRIN   =   $FFCF
C000          CLOSE   =   $FFC3
C000          CLRCHN  =   $FFCC

C000 20 44 C0 RDBUFF JSR  OPEN15
C003 20 5B C0        JSR  OPNBUF
C006 A2 0F          LDX  #15
C008 20 C9 FF        JSR  CHKOUT ; ready to send to logical file 15
C00B 90 03          BCC  OUTOK ; carry clear if no error
C00D 4C 76 C0        JMP  ERROR ; else print error message
C010 A0 00          LDY  #0 ; initialize index
C012 B9 8B C0 LOOP1 LDA  BLKRD,Y ; send the command
C015 F0 07          BEQ  DONEBR ; if 0 we're done setting up the block read
                                     ; command
C017 20 D2 FF        JSR  CHROUT ; else send the next character
C01A C8            INY  ; increment index
C01B 4C 12 C0        JMP  LOOP1 ; and go back for another
C01E 20 CC FF DONEBR JSR  CLRCHN ; back to normal I/O
                                     ;
C021 A2 01          LDX  #1 ; open logical file 1
C023 20 C6 FF        JSR  CHKIN ; for input
C026 90 03          BCC  INPOK ; carry clear if no error
C028 4C 76 C0        JMP  ERROR ; otherwise, print error message
C02B A0 00          LDY  #0 ; start counter at zero
C02D 20 CF FF GETEM JSR  CHRIN ; get a character from the buffer
C030 99 B2 C0        STA  MEMORY,Y ; store (indexed) to memory
C033 C8            INY  ; count 0-255
C034 D0 F7          BNE  GETEM ; wraps around to 0 at end
C036 A9 01          LDA  #1
C038 20 C3 FF FINIS JSR  CLOSE ; close logical file 1
C03B A9 0F          LDA  #15
C03D 20 C3 FF        JSR  CLOSE ; and the command channel
C040 20 CC FF        JSR  CLRCHN ; and clear the channels
C043 60            RTS

C044 A9 0F          OPEN15 LDA  #15 ; Subroutines
C046 A2 08          LDX  #8 ; file number
C048 A0 0F          LDY  #15 ; device number for disk drive
C04A 20 BA FF        JSR  SETLFS ; secondary address for command channel
C04D A9 00          LDA  #0 ; 15,8,15 is set to be opened
C04F 20 BD FF        JSR  SETNAM ; length of name is zero
C052 20 C0 FF        JSR  OPEN ; open logical file
C055 90 03          BCC  OK15 ; check for error
C057 4C 76 C0        JMP  ERROR ; print message if there's a problem
C05A 60            RTS

C05B A9 01          OPNBUF LDA  #1 ; OPNBUF opens a disk buffer for reading,
C05D A2 08          LDX  #8 ; logical file number
C05F A0 03          LDY  #3 ; disk drive
C061 20 BA FF        JSR  SETLFS ; secondary address
C064 A9 01          LDA  #1 ; one character
C066 A2 8A          LDX  #<BUFNAM ; the # specifies a drive buffer
C068 A0 C0          LDY  #>BUFNAM
C06A 20 BD FF        JSR  SETNAM ; set up the name
C06D 20 C0 FF        JSR  OPEN ; now it's ready

```

```

C070 90 03          BCC  OKBUF      ; to OKBUF if no error
C072 4C 76 C0      JMP  ERROR      ; jump to ERROR if there is
C075 60           OKBUF      RTS
;
; ERROR prints a message if a disk error
; occurs
; close down and clear channels
; initialize index
C076 20 CC FF ERROR JSR  CLRCHN
C079 A0 00          LDY  #0
C07B B9 98 C0 MORE LDA  ERRMSG,Y
C07E F0 07          BEQ  MSGEND      ; message ends with zero byte
C080 20 D2 FF          JSR  CHROUT      ; print the character
C083 C8           INY           ; increment the index
C084 4C 7B C0      JMP  MORE       ; and go back
C087 4C 36 C0 MSGEND JMP  FINIS      ; finish closing files
;
; Variables
C08A 23          BUFNAM .ASC  "#"
C08B 55 31 2C BLKRD .ASC  "U1,3,0,18,1"
; U1 is block read
; 3 is secondary address,
; 0 means drive zero
; track 18, sector 1
C096 0D 00          .BYTE 13,0
C098 41 20 44 ERRMSG .ASC  "A DISK ERROR HAS OCCURRED"
C0B1 00          .BYTE 0
C0B2          MEMORY =      *
C1B2          =      * + 256
; Reserve 256 bytes for data from sector read
; from disk.

```

See also WRBUFF.

RDBYRG

Name

Generate a random one-byte integer in a range

Description

A routine for generating a random one-byte value in the range 0–255 has been provided (**RNDBYT**). Frequently, though, a random value must be limited to a particular range.

For example, in a game, you might wish to position a sprite or a character randomly within a certain range of rows or columns. Or in an educational program, you might want to pick two numbers in the range 11–20 (for adding or multiplying, say).

Prototype

In an initialization routine (**RDINIT**):

1. Set voice 3 to a high frequency.
2. Select the noise waveform.
3. Turn off the SID chip volume and disconnect the output of voice 3.

In **RDBYRG** itself:

1. Load a random byte value from voice 3's random number generator (**RANDOM**) into **.A**.
2. Determine whether this value lies within the acceptable range (here, delimited by **LOWLIM** and **UPPLIM-1**).
3. If not, branch to step 1 for another value.
4. Otherwise, return this suitable integer in **.A**.

Explanation

Ten random integers in the range 30–45 are generated by the example program and are printed to the screen.

In **RNDBYT**, a random byte value is generated by using voice 3 of the SID chip. A similar approach is taken here except that we limit the range of the number.

Again, a two-part routine is required. The first part (**RDINIT**) is responsible for initializing the random number generator of voice 3 (**RANDOM**). This is done by selecting the noise waveform and setting it to its maximum frequency. For a more detailed description of how this is accomplished, refer to **RNDBYT**.

Once the random number generator has been initialized at the outset of your main program, random values can be taken from **RANDOM** within **RDBYRG**. If a value falls within the range set by **LOWLIM** and **UPPLIM** (minus 1), it's accepted

and returned in the accumulator. Otherwise, another random number is fetched.

In using **RDBYRG** within your own programs, be sure to define the range delimiters before the routine is entered. For instance, to generate a random integer in the range 1-10, change **LOWLIM** to 1, and **UPPLIM** to 11 (1 plus the actual upper limit).

Routine

C000				CHROUT	=	65490			
C000				LINPRT	=	48589			; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
C000				FREHI3	=	54287			; voice 3 frequency control (high byte)
C000				VCREG3	=	54290			; voice 3 control register
C000				SIGVOL	=	54296			; volume and filter select register
C000				RANDOM	=	54299			; oscillator 3/random number generator
									; Generate ten random byte values using SID
									; chip voice 3 in a range (30-45)
									; and print them.
C000	20	1C	C0	MAIN	JSR	RDINIT			; initialize SID voice 3 for random numbers
C003	A9	0A			LDA	#10			; initialize counter for ten random numbers
C005	8D	38	C0		STA	TEMCNT			; save counter
C008	20	2A	C0	LOOP	JSR	RDBYRG			; get random byte in a range
C00B	AA				TAX				; move value to .X
C00C	A9	00			LDA	#0			; zero for high byte (in .A)
C00E	20	CD	BD		JSR	LINPRT			; print the number
C011	A9	0D			LDA	#13			; print a RETURN
C013	20	D2	FF		JSR	CHROUT			
C016	CE	38	C0		DEC	TEMCNT			; decrement counter
C019	D0	ED			BNE	LOOP			; if not ten values, then loop
C01B	60				RTS				
									; Initialize SID voice 3 for random numbers.
C01C	A9	FF		RDINIT	LDA	#\$FF			; set voice 3 frequency (high byte) to
									; maximum
C01E	8D	0F	D4		STA	FREHI3			
C021	A9	80			LDA	#\$10000000			
C023	8D	12	D4		STA	VCREG3			; select noise waveform and start release
C026	8D	18	D4		STA	SIGVOL			; turn off volume and disconnect output of
									; voice 3
C029	60				RTS				
									; Returns a random byte in a range.
C02A	AD	1B	D4	RDBYRG	LDA	RANDOM			; get single-byte random number
C02D	CD	39	C0		CMP	LOWLIM			; lower limit of range
C030	90	F8			BCC	RDBYRG			
C032	CD	3A	C0		CMP	UPPLIM			; upper limit of range
C035	B0	F3			BCS	RDBYRG			
C037	60				RTS				
									; temporary storage for counter
C038	00			TEMCNT	.BYTE	0			
C039	1E			LOWLIM	.BYTE	30			; lowest possible number
C03A	2E			UPPLIM	.BYTE	46			; highest possible number plus 1

See also RD2BYT, RND1VL, RNDBYT.

RDSTAT

Name

Check the I/O status by using the Kernal READST routine

Description

Although some Kernal routines have their own ways of flagging errors, the READST routine is a general routine that returns an error flag if something has gone wrong with an input or output operation. It's most often used to check the status of the disk drive.

Prototype

1. JSR to the READST routine.
2. If the equal flag is set, everything's okay. Otherwise, an error has occurred.

Explanation

The following program deliberately causes a disk error by trying to open a file with no name. Then it calls READST to see if anything's wrong. If an error has occurred, the letter A prints to the screen. Otherwise, the program ends.

Note that **RDSTAT** is similar to **CHK144**. Both return a zero as long as the situation is in hand. When an error occurs, the result is a nonzero value.

Routine

C000		SETLFS	=	\$FFBA	
C000		SETNAM	=	\$FFBD	
C000		OPEN	=	\$FFC0	
C000		READST	=	\$FFB7	
C000		CHROUT	=	\$FFD2	
C000		CHKOUT	=	\$FFC9	
C000		CLRCHN	=	\$FFCC	
C000		CLOSE	=	\$FFC3	
C000	A9	02	LDA	#2	
CD02	A2	08	LDX	#8	
C004	A0	02	LDY	#2	
C006	20	BA	FF	JSR	SETLFS ; set file parameters
C009	A9	00	LDA	#0	
C00B	20	BD	FF	JSR	SETNAM ; no name
C00E	20	C0	FF	JSR	OPEN ; open it
C011	A2	02	LDX	#2	
C013	20	C9	FF	JSR	CHKOUT ; get ready to print
C016	20	B7	FF	RDSTAT JSR	READST ; check the status
C019	F0	08	BEQ	FINIS	; if equal to zero, OK
C01B	20	CC	FF	JSR	CLRCHN ; clear channels before printing
C01E	A9	41	LDA	#65	
C020	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT ; print a letter A
CD23	20	CC	FF	FINIS JSR	CLRCHN ; clear all channels
C026	A9	02	LDA	#2	
C028	20	C3	FF	JSR	CLOSE ; and close file 2
C02B	60		RTS		

See also **CHK144**, **DERRCK**.

Name

Read and write to the 80-column video chip

Description

These two short routines, **RE80CO** and **WR80CO**, read values from or write values to the VDC chip's internal registers.

Prototype

1. Enter either routine with .X holding the register number.
2. Store it into the first gateway byte \$D600.
3. Wait for bit 7 of the gateway byte to go high.
4. LDA from or STA to the second gateway byte.

Explanation

The 128's VDC chip has 36 internal registers and 16K of private RAM. But the only way to access the chip is through locations 54784 and 54785 (\$D600 and \$D601). You must store into the first gateway byte the number of the register you wish to get to. The second gateway byte can then be PEEKed or POKEd to read or write the value from the register whose number you put in the first byte.

The example program POKEs the values 1-5 to the screen. You should see the letters *A-E* appear on your monitor (if it is set for an 80-column display). First, the internal address of the screen is read from VDC registers 12-13. This value is stored into the memory access registers (18-19). Once the memory access registers know the place to read or write, the values from MESSAGE are sent to the read/write register (31).

Routine

```

0C00          SCRHIR   =    12
0C00          SCRLOr  =    13          ; high and low bytes of the register for screen
                                         ; memory

0C00          MEMHIR  =    18
0C00          MEMLOr  =    19          ; high and low bytes for getting to memory
0C00          GATE    =    31          ; the read/write register
0C00          VDCADR  =    $D600
0C00          VDCDAT  =    $D601
0C00          START   =    *
0C00  A2  0C          LDX  #SCRHIR      ; find the high byte of screen memory from
                                         ; register 12 ($0C)
0C02  20  24  0C          JSR  RE80CO   ; read it from 12
0C05  A2  12          LDX  #MEMHIR     ; now send it to memory write (high) register
0C07  20  30  0C          JSR  WR80CO   ; write .A to the register in .X
0C0A  A2  0D          LDX  #SCRLOr    ; now do the low byte
0C0C  20  24  0C          JSR  RE80CO   ; read it
0C0F  A2  13          LDX  #MEMLOr    ; low byte of memory-write
0C11  20  30  0C          JSR  WR80CO   ; and write it
                                         ;
                                         ; Now the internal registers are set up.

```

RE80CO, WR80CO (128 only)

```
0C14 A0 00          LDY  #0          ; the index
0C16 A2 1F          MORE  LDX  #GATE       ; set up the gateway byte
0C18 B9 3C 0C      LDA  MESSAGE,Y   ; get a screen code
0C1B F0 06          BEQ  ALLDONE     ; if zero, we're finished
0C1D 20 30 0C      JSR  WR80CO     ; write to register 31
0C20 C8            INY
0C21 D0 F3          BNE  MORE       ; keep looping
0C23 60            ALLDONE RTS

;
; Enter RE80CO with the internal register
; in .X.
;
0C24 8E 00 D6 RE80CO STX  VDCADR     ; tell the 8563 we want to access a register
0C27 AE 00 D6 LOOP1  LDX  VDCADR     ; check the door
0C2A 10 FB          BPL  LOOP1     ; if bit 7 is clear, the door is locked
0C2C AD 01 D6      LDA  VDCDAT     ; else, get the byte from the internal
; register
0C2F 60            RTS

; Exit with the value in .A.
;
; Enter WR80CO with the register in .X, the
; value to POKE in .A.
; ask for an audience
; check whether we can get in
; not yet, branch back
; store the character
0C30 8E 00 D6 WR80CO STX  VDCADR
0C33 AE 00 D6 LOOP2  LDX  VDCADR
0C36 10 FB          BPL  LOOP2
0C38 8D 01 D6      STA  VDCDAT
0C3B 60            RTS
0C3C 01 02 03 MESSAGE .BYTE 1,2,3,4,5
0C41 00            .BYTE 0
```

See also CUST80, VDCCOL.

Name

Read bytes from a sequential or program file into a buffer

Description

READBF, with the aid of three routines—**OPENFL**, **READFL**, and **CLOSFL**—reads in either a sequential file or a program file from disk and stores it in a data buffer. The address of this buffer is passed from the calling program in the *X* (low byte) and *Y* (high byte) registers.

Prototype

In the calling program (MAIN below):

1. Define the address of the data buffer (as **BUFFER**) in the equates.
2. On the 128, set the bank to 15. On both machines, load the buffer address in *.X* (low byte) and *.Y* (high byte). Then JSR to **READBF**.

In **READBF** itself:

1. Store the buffer address in *.X* and *.Y* to zero page.
2. Open a sequential or program filename with **OPENFL**.
3. Read in data from the open file into the buffer using **READFL**.
4. Close the open file with **CLOSFL**. Return the ending address of the file in *.X* (low byte) and *.Y* (high byte).

Explanation

The example program reads a sequential file (called **SEQUENTIAL**) from disk into a buffer located at 16384. To read in a program file, change the suffix on the filename from *,S,R* to *,P,R*.

To locate the incoming file data at a location other than 16384, simply change the buffer address (**BUFFER**) in the equates. Alternatively, you could change the **LX** and **LY** at the very start of the framing routine.

READBF itself is a short routine (the various support routines for opening, reading, and closing the file take up most of the space). The *X* and *Y* registers containing the buffer address are first stored to a free location in zero page (**ZP**). The three routines **OPENFL**, **READFL**, and **CLOSFL** are then called to read in the file. Before returning to the main program, the ending address of the file is stored in the *X* (low byte) and *Y* (high byte) registers.

This routine is a good example of modular programming. The main routine calls **READBF**, which in turn calls three in-

READBF

dependent subroutines for opening, reading, and closing a file. If you want to read a file and print it to the screen, add another JSR to the main routine. If you want to alphabetize, just append the appropriate subroutine to the end of the program and stick a JSR in the main routine. By writing the program in small, easy-to-handle modules, you will retain a lot of flexibility.

Note: You can add disk error checking to this program by including **DERRCK** at the places marked in the source code.

Routine

```
C000      SETLFS    =      65466
C000      SETNAM   =      65469
C000      OPEN     =      65472
C000      CHKIN   =      65478
C000      CHRIN   =      65487
C000      CLOSE   =      65475
C000      CLRCHN  =      65484
C000      STATUS  =      144
C000      ZP      =      251
C000      BUFFER  =      16384      ; starting address where incoming data will
                                   ; be stored
C000      ; SETBNK = 65384; Kernal bank number for
                                   ; data and filename (128 only)
C000      ; MMUREG = 65280; MMU configuration
                                   ; register (128 only)
                                   ;
                                   ; READBF uses the following three routines
                                   ; to read characters
                                   ; OPENFL to open the sequential/program
                                   ; file
                                   ; READFL to read in characters from the file
                                   ; CLOSFL to close the file and restore the
                                   ; default input device
                                   ;
C000      MAIN     =      *
                                   ; LDA #0; set bank 15 (128 only)
                                   ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
C000 A2 00          LDX  #<BUFFER      ; low byte of buffer address
C002 A0 40          LDY  #>BUFFER      ; and high byte
C004 20 08 C0      JSR  READBF        ; go read data from file
C007 60            RTS
                                   ;
                                   ; READBF opens a SEQ or PRG file and
                                   ; reads all data into a buffer.
                                   ; Enter with address of storage buffer in .X
                                   ; (low) and .Y (high).
                                   ; Upon return, .X and .Y will hold the end-of-
                                   ; buffer address.
C008 86 FB      READBF STX  ZP          ; store low byte of storage buffer
C00A 84 FC      STY  ZP+1            ; store high byte also
C00C 20 1C C0      JSR  OPENFL       ; open file
C00F 20 32 C0      JSR  READFL       ; read data from open file and store in
                                   ; buffer
C012 A9 01          LDA  #1          ; file 1
C014 20 49 C0      JSR  CLOSFL       ; close file and restore default devices
C017 A6 FB          LDX  ZP          ; low byte of end-of-file address
C019 A4 FC          LDY  ZP+1        ; high byte of address for EOF
C01B 60            RTS              ; return to MAIN
                                   ;
```

```

; OPENFL opens a sequential or program file
; with for reading/writing.

C01C          OPENFL      =      *
;
; Open channel 15 here if you include error
; checking (DERRCK).
;
; logical file 1
; device number for disk drive
; secondary address (2-4 is okay)
; set file to be opened
;
; Include the following three instructions on
; the 128 only.
; LDA BNKNUM; bank number for data
; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing filename.
; JSR SETBNK
; length of filename
; address of filename
;
C01C A9 01          LDA #1
C01E A2 08          LDX #8
C020 A0 02          LDY #2
C022 20 BA FF      JSR SETLFS
;
; set up filename
; open the file for reading
; JSR DERRCK; insert for disk error checking
;
; return to READBF
;
; READFL reads characters from a sequential
; or program file
; and stores them in a buffer whose address
; is in zero page.
;
; take input from file 1
; index into the storage buffer
; get a byte from open file
; put it in the storage buffer
; increment low byte of buffer address
; low byte hasn't rolled over, so skip forward
; otherwise, increase high byte
;
; STATCK checks the I/O status flag for end
; of file.
; check for EOF
; a zero indicates there is more remaining, so
; continue reading
; return to READBF
;
; CLOSFL closes the logical file specified in
; .A and restores default devices.
; close file in .A
; clear all channels, restore default devices,
; and RTS
;
; Insert DERRCK routine here if you're
; including error checking.
;
C04F 30 3A 53 FILENM .ASC "0:SEQUENTIAL,S,R"
; example sequential file to read
; .S,R is optional when reading sequential
; files.
; Change to "0:PROGRAM,P,R" to read a
; program file.

```

READBF

```
C05F      FNLENG  =      * - FILENM      ; length of filename
;
; Include the next two variables on the 128
; only.
; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; data is to be stored
; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; ASCII filename is located
```

See also OPENFL, READFL.

Name

Read characters from a sequential or program file

Description

With **READFL**, you can read characters into memory from either a sequential or a program disk file. The routine stores this incoming data in a buffer named by a zero-page pointer.

Prototype

1. Before accessing **READFL**, call **OPENFL** to open a channel from which to read data.
2. Define the input channel as the one opened with Kernal **CHKIN**.
3. Read bytes one at a time from this channel, storing them in a memory buffer using zero-page addressing.
4. Check the status flag (**STATUS**) for the last byte in the incoming file.
5. If **STATUS** is zero, continue reading bytes. Otherwise, **RTS** to the calling program.

Explanation

The subroutine below is not a complete program; it's designed to be used in conjunction with several other subroutines. (See the complete program under **READBF**, which reads a file into a buffer.) Before coming into **READFL**, you must do two things—open an input channel with **OPENFL** and store the address of the memory buffer into zero page.

Once in **READFL**, data is continuously read until the **STATUS** flag at location 144 contains a nonzero value. When this occurs, the routine returns to the calling program.

Note: The routine as written takes input from logical file 1. To read in data from another channel, load the appropriate channel number into the **X** register at **\$C000-\$C001**.

Routine

```

C000          CHKIN    =    65478
C000          CHRIN    =    65487
C000          STATUS   =    144
C000          ZP       =    251
;
; READFL reads characters from a sequential
; or program file and
; stores them to a buffer whose address is in
; zero page.
C000 A2 01      READFL  LDX   #1
C002 20 C6 FF          JSR   CHKIN ; take input from file 1
C005 A0 00          LDY   #0      ; index into the storage buffer
C007 20 CF FF  RDLOOP JSR   CHRIN ; get a byte from open file
    
```


READFL

C00A	91	FB		STA	(ZP),Y				; put it in the storage buffer using zero-
C00C	E6	FB		INC	ZP				; page addressing
C00E	D0	02		BNE	STATCK				; increment low byte of buffer address
									; low byte hasn't rolled over, so skip
C010	E6	FC		INC	ZP+1				; forward
									; otherwise, increase high byte
									;
									; STATCK checks the I/O status flag for
									; end-of-file.
C012	A5	90	STATCK	LDA	STATUS				; check for EOF
C014	F0	F1		BEQ	RDLOOP				; a zero indicates there is more remaining,
									; so continue reading
C016	60			RTS					; return to main program

See also OPENFL, READBF.

Name

Rename a disk file

Description

This routine renames a file by opening channel 15 and sending the command "R0:newname=0:oldname". You may note that it's very similar in structure to the other DOS commands.

Prototype

1. Open the disk command channel (SETLFS, SETNAM, OPEN).
2. Provide the rename command as the filename in SETNAM.
3. Close things up.

Explanation

The rename command is provided in the data area at the end of the routine. If you were to use this example program yourself, you'd probably want build the command from an old name and new name requested from the user.

Routine

```

C000          SETLFS  =   $FFBA
C000          SETNAM =   $FFBD
C000          OPEN   =   $FFC0
C000          CLOSE  =   $FFC3
C000          CLRCHN =   $FFCC

C000 A9 01      RENAME LDA  #1          ; logical file number
C002 A2 08      LDX  #8              ; device number for disk drive
C004 A0 0F      LDY  #15             ; secondary address for drive command
                                           ; channel
C006 20 BA FF      JSR  SETLFS        ; prepare to open it
C009 A9 15      LDA  #BUFLen        ; length of buffer
C00B A2 1E      LDX  #<BUFFER        ; .X and .Y hold the
C00D A0 C0      LDY  #>BUFFER        ; address of the buffer
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR  SETNAM        ; set up command as name
C012 20 C0 FF      JSR  OPEN          ; open it
C015 A9 01      LDA  #1              ; and immediately
C017 20 C3 FF      JSR  CLOSE         ; close the command channel
C01A 20 CC FF      JSR  CLRCHN        ; clear the channels
C01D 60          RTS                 ; all done
                                           ; Data area
                                           .ASC  "R0:NEWNAME=0:OLDNAME"
                                           ; substitute your own filenames here
C032 0D          .BYTE 13            ; RETURN character
C033          BUFLen =   * - BUFFER

```

See also CONCAT, COPYFL, FORMAT, INITLZ, SCRATCH, VALIDT.

RENUM1

Name

Simple renumber routine (line numbers only)

Description

Changing the line numbers of a BASIC program is relatively easy. What's difficult is revising the GOTOs, GOSUBs, and other references within the various lines. This routine changes only the actual line numbers; the other references remain as they were.

Prototype

1. Using two zero-page locations, set up a pointer to the beginning of the BASIC line.
2. Load the line link, which points to the next line in memory. If the line link contains two zeros, exit the routine.
3. Copy the desired line number into the current line.
4. Update the line number, adding the STEP value.
5. Copy the line link to the first zero-page location and loop back to step 2.

Explanation

Before the text of a BASIC line in memory, there are four bytes—two 2-byte pointers. The first is the line link that points to the beginning of the next line (which, in turn, points the next line link, and so on, to the end of the program). The next two bytes provide the line number in low-byte/high-byte format.

A pointer at location 43 (location 45 on the 128) contains the address of the beginning of the BASIC program. The end of the BASIC program is marked by a line link of \$0000.

To renumber, get the TXTTAB pointer and copy it to a zero-page location (Z2, in the example). The main loop starts by copying the contents of Z2 to Z1. Then, .Y is loaded with a 0 and a 1, and the next line link is copied indirectly from Z1 to Z2. Finally, .Y is increased to 2 and then to 3 (to point to the line number in memory), and the desired line number is stored in memory.

The line number is incremented by the STEP value, and the process repeats. As soon as a line link of \$0000 is discovered, the program ends and the renumbering is complete.

Note: To ensure that this routine works properly on the 128, enter the BASIC line **BANK 0** before you SYS to the program. Unlike most other programs, which have to be in bank

15 to be able to call Kernal routines, this routine needs to be in bank 0.

Routine

```

C000          TXTTAB = 43          ; TXTTAB = 45 on the 128
C000          Z1     = $FB
C000          Z2     = $FD
;
C000 4C 09 C0          JMP  RENUM1      ; jump around the table
;
C003 14 00          FIRST .BYTE 20,0    ; first line number
C005 0A 00          STEP  .BYTE 10,0    ; renumber by tens
C007 00 00          CURRENT .BYTE 0,0   ; current line number
;
C009 A2 01          RENUM1 LDX  #1       ; do some copying
C00B B5 2B          COPY   LDA  TXTTAB,X ; the start of BASIC text
C00D 95 FD          STA  Z2,X           ; goes into Z2
C00F BD 03 C0      LDA  FIRST,X        ; and the line number
C012 9D 07 C0      STA  CURRENT,X      ; goes into CURRENT
C015 CA             DEX
C016 10 F3          BPL  COPY           ; loop back
;
C018 20 2B C0      BEGIN JSR  CPZ2Z1    ; copy the pointer from Z2 to Z1
C01B 20 34 C0      JSR  LLINK          ; and set up the line link for the next line
; in Z2
C01E A5 FB          LDA  Z1            ; two zeros
C020 05 FC          ORA  Z1+1          ; in Z1
C022 D0 01          BNE  AHEAD         ; mean that
C024 60             RTS               ; we're done and can quit
;
C025 20 41 C0      AHEAD JSR  RENLIN    ; else renumber the line
C028 4C 18 C0      JMP  BEGIN          ; and go back for another
;
C02B A5 FD          CPZ2Z1 LDA  Z2       ; copy Z2
C02D 85 FB          STA  Z1            ; to Z1
C02F A5 FE          LDA  Z2+1          ; high byte, too
C031 85 FC          STA  Z1+1          ; and
C033 60             RTS               ; that's all
;
C034 A0 00          LLINK LDY  #0       ; get Z2 ready
C036 B1 FB          LDA  (Z1),Y        ; low byte
C038 85 FD          STA  Z2            ; into Z2
C03A C8             INY
C03B B1 FB          LDA  (Z1),Y        ; high byte
C03D 85 FE          STA  Z2+1          ; into Z2+1; now Z2 is ready for the next
; line
C03F C8             INY one more time, so it's 2
C040 60             RTS               ; go back
;
C041          RENLIN = *              ; remember, .Y is now 2, from LLINK above
C041 AD 07 C0      LDA  CURRENT        ; low byte of CURRENT
C044 91 FB          STA  (Z1),Y        ; into the program
C046 AD 08 C0      LDA  CURRENT+1      ; high byte
C049 C8             INY
C04A 91 FB          STA  (Z1),Y        ; also
;

```

RENUM1

```
C04C 18
C04D AD 05 C0
C050 6D 07 C0
C053 8D 07 C0
C056 AD 06 C0
C059 6D 08 C0
C05C 8D 08 C0
C05F 60

CLC ; now add the STEP to CURRENT
LDA STEP
ADC CURRENT ; add it
STA CURRENT ; store it
LDA STEP+1 ; high byte
ADC CURRENT+1 ; add
STA CURRENT+1 ; save
RTS ; and that's that
```

See also DATAMK.

Name

Generate a random floating-point number using BASIC's RND(1) function

Description

Random integer values can be generated with **RNDBYT** (one-byte) or **RDBYRG** (two-byte). At times, though, you may wish to generate a random floating-point number.

RNDIVL uses BASIC's own RND function to produce a random floating-point number in the range 0–0.999999999. You can place this number in any numeric range, just as if you were in BASIC, by multiplying it and adding some base value. For instance, if you needed floating-point numbers from 5.0 through 15.0, you would multiply the number returned by **RNDIVL** by 10 and add 5.

Prototype

JMP into BASIC's RND function to cause a random value from 0 through 0.999... to be placed in floating-point accumulator 1 (FAC1).

Explanation

Ten random floating-point numbers in the range 0–0.999... are generated by the example program and printed to the screen.

A random number is first placed in floating-point accumulator 1 by **RNDIVL**. Using **FOUT**, the contents of **FAC1** are converted to an ASCII string and are stored in the workspace area at the top of the stack (beginning at \$100). Finally, with **FACPRT**, the string within the workspace is printed to the screen. This process is repeated for each of the ten values.

RNDIVL itself is very short. In it, we jump midway into BASIC's RND function routine at 57534 on the 64 (33877 on the 128). This causes a random floating-point number to be transferred from the seed value in **RNDX** (location 139 on the 64 or location 4635 on the 128) to **FAC1**.

Routine

C000	CHROUT	=	65490	
C000	FAC1	=	97	; FAC1 = 99 on the 128
C000	FOUT	=	48605	; FOUT = 36418 on the 128—converts FAC1 ; to ASCII
C000	STWORK	=	256	; workspace at top of the stack

RNDIVL

```
C000          RND1      =      57534      ; RND1 = 33877 on the 128; RND(1)
; function
;
; Generate ten numbers (0-0.999...) using the
; RND(1) function and print them.
; initialize counter .X to give ten random
; numbers
C000 A2 0A          LDX      #10          ; save .X
C002 8E 2D C0      STX      TEMPX        ; get random number using RND(1)
C005 20 1C C0      JSR      RNDIVL       ; convert contents of FAC1 to ASCII string
C008 20 DD BD      JSR      FOUT         ; string is in stack area
; print the FAC1
C00B 20 1F C0      JSR      FACPRT       ; print RETURN
C00E A9 0D          LDA      #13
C010 20 D2 FF      JSR      CHROUT       ; decrement counter
C013 CE 2D C0      DEC      TEMPX        ; and put in .X for branch
C016 AE 2D C0      LDX      TEMPX        ; if we haven't done all ten, continue
C019 D0 EA          BNE      LOOP
C01B 60            RTS

;
; RNDIVL fetches a random number using
; RND(1) and places it in FAC1.
; get random number
C01C 4C BE E0      RNDIVL   JMP      RND1

; FACPRT prints the number in floating-
; point accumulator 1.
; as an index
; load each ASCII byte of string
; if zero byte, we're finished
; print it
; next byte
; branch always
C01F A0 00          FACPRT   LDY      #0
C021 B9 00 01      MORE     LDA      STWORK,Y
C024 F0 06          BEQ      OUT
C026 20 D2 FF      JSR      CHROUT
C029 C8            INY
C02A D0 F5          BNE      MORE
C02C 60            OUT      RTS

;
; temporary storage for .X
C02D 00            TEMPX   .BYTE 0
```

See also RD2BYT, RDBYRG, RNDBYT.

Name

Generate a random one-byte integer value (0–255)

Description

Many programs, especially games and educational programs, require randomness. Often, what is called for is a one-byte random integer in the range 0–255. This routine lets you generate such a number from the random oscillations of the noise waveform.

Prototype

In an initialization routine (RDINIT):

1. Set voice 3 to a high frequency.
2. Select the noise waveform.
3. Turn off the SID chip volume and disconnect the output of voice 3.

In **RNDBYT** itself:

4. Take a random byte value from voice 3's random number generator (RANDOM) and return it in .A.

Explanation

In the example program, an interesting visual effect is created by repeatedly placing a random color value somewhere in the first 256 bytes of screen color RAM. Pressing any key exits the routine.

RNDBYT is actually a two-part routine. In the first part, labeled RDINIT, voice 3 of the SID chip is initialized so as to generate random numbers in RANDOM (location 54299). This is done by setting the high byte of the frequency register for voice 3 (FREHI3) to 255 and selecting the noise waveform by setting bit 7 of voice 3's control register (VCREG3). Since we don't want to actually hear the noise, we turn off the SID chip volume and disconnect the audio output of voice 3 by storing a 128 to SIGVOL, the volume and filter select register. Selecting a frequency value high byte of 255 insures that the values in RANDOM change very rapidly.

RDINIT need be accessed only once early in your main program. After that, you can take random values as needed from RANDOM. This is exactly what **RNDBYT** does, returning the random byte in the accumulator.

RNDBYT

Routine

```
C000          GETIN    =    65508
C000          COLRAM  =    55296      ; start of screen color memory
C000          FREHI3  =    54287      ; voice 3 frequency control register (high
                                   ; byte)
C000          VCREG3  =    54290      ; voice 3 control register
C000          SIGVOL  =    54296      ; volume and filter select register
C000          RANDOM  =    54299      ; oscillator 3/random number generator
                                   ;
                                   ; Generate a random byte value from SID
                                   ; chip voice 3.
                                   ; Put a random color anywhere in first 256
                                   ; bytes of screen.
                                   ; Quit when any key is pressed.
C000 20 13 C0 MAIN   JSR    RDINIT   ; initialize SID voice 3 for random numbers
C003 20 21 C0 LOOP   JSR    RNDBYT   ; get a random byte for screen offset
C006 A8          TAY    ; store offset in ,Y
C007 20 21 C0      JSR    RNDBYT   ; get random number for color byte
C00A 99 00 D8      STA    COLRAM,Y  ; store color byte randomly in first quarter
C00D 20 E4 FF      JSR    GETIN    ; check for a keypress
C010 F0 F1        BEQ    LOOP      ; no keypress, so continue
C012 60          RTS    ; else, quit
                                   ;
                                   ; Routine to initialize SID voice 3 for random
                                   ; numbers
C013 A9 FF          RDINIT LDA    #$FF  ; set voice 3 frequency (high byte) to
                                   ; maximum
C015 8D 0F D4      STA    FREHI3
C018 A9 80          LDA    #%10000000
C01A 8D 12 D4      STA    VCREG3    ; select noise waveform and start release for
                                   ; voice 3
C01D 8D 18 D4      STA    SIGVOL    ; turn off volume and disconnect output of
                                   ; voice 3
C020 60          RTS
                                   ;
                                   ; RNDBYT returns a random byte value
                                   ; in ,A.
C021 AD 1B D4 RNDBYT LDA    RANDOM   ; get single-byte random number
C024 60          RTS
```

See also RD2BYT, RDBYRG, RND1VL.

Name

Set the repeat key flag

Description

In certain applications, such as a word processor or a game featuring keyboard control, you'll need to let the keys repeat. But at other times you'll want to fetch only one keypress at a time.

For instance, suppose you need to ask the user a series of questions. If keypresses can repeat, and if the user lets a finger tarry on the RETURN key, several questions can easily be skipped before the user realizes what is happening. By storing a 64 in the repeat flag (RPTFLG), you can prevent this situation.

Prototype

1. Define RPSTAT as 0, 64, or 128.
2. Load and store RPSTAT in the repeat flag.

Explanation

The accompanying program makes all keypresses nonrepeating.

Note: The repeat flag (RPTFLG) is located at 650 on the 64 and at 2594 on the 128. It can contain either a 0, a 64, or a 128. A value of 0 causes only certain keys to repeat (specifically the cursor keys, the INST/DEL key, and the space bar). As illustrated, a value of 64 prevents all keys from repeating, while 128 allows all keys to repeat.

The default value for this location is different on the 64 and the 128. On the 64, it's 0; on the 128, the default value is 128.

Routine

```

C000          RPTFLG = 650          ; RPTFLG = 2594 on the 128—repeat key
; flag
;
; Disable all repeats.

C000 AD 07 C0 RPTKEY LDA RPSTAT
C003 8D 8A 02 STA RPTFLG
C006 60 RTS

C007 40 RPSTAT .BYTE 64
;
; disable all repeats
; 0 allows certain cursor keys to repeat.
; 128 enables all repeats

```

RSREGM

Name

Restore registers from memory

Description

After using **SVREGM** to save the registers to memory, you can get them back with **RSREGM**.

Prototype

1. Load the processor status (.P) and push it onto the stack.
2. Load the A, X, and Y registers from memory.
3. Pull .P (PLP) from the stack.

Explanation

Operations such as loading from memory (LDA, LDX, and LDY) affect both the zero and the minus flags in the processor status .P, so .P must be the last register restored. Since there's no direct way to load .P from memory, the previously saved register must be pushed onto the stack by .A and then pulled with the PLP instruction. Apart from this one little shuffling step, the rest of the routine is short and straightforward.

Routine

```
C000 AD 12 C0 RSREGM LDA TEMPP ; first get the .P status register
C003 48 PHA ; push it temporarily
C004 AD 0F C0 LDA TEMPA ; get .A
C007 AE 10 C0 LDX TEMPX ; get .X
C00A AC 11 C0 LDY TEMPY ; get .Y
C00D 28 PLP ; get .P from the stack (where it was
; pushed from .A)
C00E 60 RTS ; we're done
;
; variables
C00F 00 TEMPA .BYTE 00 ; note—these were
C010 00 TEMPX .BYTE 00 ; put in place by the
C011 00 TEMPY .BYTE 00 ; SVREGM routine
C012 00 TEMPP .BYTE 00
```

See also SVREGM, SVREGS.

Name

Restore all Kernal indirect vectors

Description

RSTVEC reinitializes the 16 Kernal vectors in RAM beginning at location 788 to their default warm-start values. This routine is useful in situations where you have altered these vectors—so that they point to your own RAM-based routines—and later want to change them back en masse.

Prototype

1. Disable IRQ interrupts with an SEI.
2. JSR to the Kernal RESTOR routine, reenable IRQ interrupts with a CLI, and RTS to your calling program.

Explanation

RSTVEC relies on the Kernal routine RESTOR to reset the interrupt and Kernal I/O (Input/Output) vectors at locations 788–819. Since the IRQ interrupt vector is among those being restored, it's best to prevent any IRQ interrupts from being serviced while you're changing these vectors. This is accomplished here with an SEI prior to calling RESTOR.

For an example of how to use **RSTVEC** in your own programs, take a look at **ALARM2**. This routine sets the alarm for the second time-of-day clock. When the alarm goes off, an NMI interrupt occurs. At this point, we completely disable the alarm function with **RSTVEC**.

You might note that the RESTOR routine is normally accessed when either a cold or a warm start is carried out (see **COLDST** and **WARMST**). In both instances, the Kernal indirect vectors are reset.

The same cannot be said of the BASIC indirect vectors. This series of vectors, occupying locations 768–779 on the 64 (768–785 on the 128), are reinitialized only during the cold-start procedure. You can reset the BASIC vectors yourself by JSR'ing to location 58451 in Kernal ROM on the 64 or to 16977 in BASIC ROM on the 128.

RSTVEC

Routine

```
C000          RESTOR  = 65418          ; Kernal routine to restore I/O RAM vectors
; to default values
;
C000 78          RSTVEC SEI           ; disable IRQ interrupts while resetting
; IRQ vector
C001 20 8A FF    JSR   RESTOR        ; reset page 3 RAM vectors to ROM table
; values
C004 58          CLI                 ; reenale IRQ interrupts
C005 60          RTS                 ; we're done
```

See also DISRSR, DISTOP, ERRRDT.

Name

Save a BASIC program

Description

SAVEBS saves a BASIC program to disk, regardless of where the BASIC workspace is located at the time of the save.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. Set up the parameters as 1,8,0 for a save (SETLFS, SETNAM).
3. On the 128, call SETBNK to specify the bank containing the program you intend to save and the bank containing its filename.
4. Load .A with the address of TXTTAB (the location of the zero-page pointer to the start of BASIC text).
5. Load .X and .Y with the values in end-of-BASIC text pointer.
6. JSR to SAVE.

Explanation

SAVEBS, relying on several Kernal routines, saves a copy of the contents of the BASIC program text area to disk. As with all saves, a secondary address of zero is required.

Before executing SAVE, we set the zero-page pointer to the start of BASIC text (TXTTAB) in the accumulator. The X and Y registers are loaded with the two-byte ending address of the BASIC program at VARTAB. On the 128, replace VARTAB with TEXTTP.

To use this routine to save your own BASIC programs, substitute for "BASIC PROGRAM" the name of the program you wish to save.

Note: **SAVEBS** currently lacks disk error checking. You can add this feature if you like by incorporating the subroutine **DERRCK** into the code. Place **DERRCK** just before FILENM as noted in the source listing. Jump to **DERRCK** immediately after the JSR SAVE instruction. Furthermore, be sure to open the error channel (15) at the beginning of the program (also noted in the source listing).

On the 128, include BNKNUM and BNKFNM at the end of your program.

Routine

C000	SETLFS	=	65466
C000	SETNAM	=	65469
C000	SAVE	=	65496

SAVEBS

```

C000          TXTTAB  =   43          ; TXTTAB = 45 on the 128—start of BASIC
; pointer
C000          VARTAB  =   45          ; end-of-BASIC pointer—substitute
; TEXTTP = 4624 for the 128
C000          ; SETBNK = 65384; Kernal bank number for
; data and filename (128 only)
C000          ; MMUREG = 65280; MMU configuration
; register (128 only)
;
; Save a BASIC program to disk.
;
; Open channel 15 here if you include disk
; error checking (DERRCK).
;
C000          SAVEBS  =   *          ; LDA #0; set bank 15 (128 only)
; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
C000 A9 01          LDA  #1          ; logical file 1
C002 A2 08          LDX  #8          ; device number for disk drive
C004 A0 00          LDY  #0          ; for all saves
C006 20 BA FF      JSR  SETLFS      ; set for a save
; include the following three instructions
; on the 128 only.
; LDA BNKNUM; bank number in which
; program text is located
; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing the
; filename
; JSR SETBNK
C009 A9 0F          LDA  #FNLENG    ; length of filename
C00B A2 1C          LDX  #<FILENM   ; address of filename
C00D A0 C0          LDY  #>FILENM
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR  SETNAM      ; set up filename
C012 A9 2B          LDA  #TXTTAB    ; address of zero-page pointer to the start of
; the program
; Change VARTAB in the next two
; instructions to TEXTTP on the 128.
C014 A6 2D          LDX  VARTAB     ; low byte for end of BASIC program
; address
C016 A4 2E          LDY  VARTAB+1   ; high byte for end of BASIC program
; address
C018 20 D8 FF      JSR  SAVE        ; save the BASIC file to disk
;
; JSR DERRCK; insert for disk error
; checking
;
C01B 60            RTS
;
; Insert DERRCK here if you're including
; error checking.
;
C01C 30 3A 42 FILENM .ASC "0:BASIC PROGRAM"
; substitute your filename here (<=16
; characters)
C02B          FNLENG  =   *-FILENM  ; length of filename
; Include the next two variables on the
; 128 only.
; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; program to be saved is located
; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; program's filename is located

```

See also SAVEML, VERIFY.

Name

Save an ML program

Description

SAVEML is quite versatile. With it, you can save to disk an ML program or any block of binary data such as sprite patterns, custom characters, hi-res screens, and so on, from any memory location specified.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. Store the starting address of the ML program (STPROG) in zero page.
3. Set up the parameters for a save (SETLFS, SETNAM).
4. On the 128, prior to SETNAM, load .A with the number of the bank containing the program to be saved and .X with number of the bank containing its filename. Then JSR to SETBNK.
5. Load immediately the zero-page pointer to STPROG.
6. Load .X and .Y with the ending address of the ML program (ENDPRG).
7. JSR to SAVE.

Explanation

The example routine is set up to save an ML program named "ML PROGRAM", which runs from location 49152 (STPROG) through location 50000 (ENDPRG - 1), or alternatively, on a 128, to save an ML program residing in memory from 3072 through 3920 (when STPROG and ENDPRG are set in the source listing accordingly). Notice that whether you're on the 64 or 128, you must always add one to the value of the last byte in your code. The SAVE routine saves up to (but not including) the last byte specified.

To save your own ML program, just substitute its filename for "ML PROGRAM" and specify its starting and ending address (plus 1) as STPROG and ENDPRG, respectively, in the equates. Furthermore, the secondary address, when the file parameters are set up, must contain a zero for all saves.

Note: **SAVEML** currently lacks disk error checking. You can add this feature if you like by incorporating the subroutine **DERRCK** into the code. Place **DERRCK** just before FILENM, as noted in the source listing. Jump to **DERRCK** immediately after the JSR SAVE instruction. Be sure to open the error chan-

SAVEML

nel (15) at the beginning of the program (also noted in the source listing).

On the 128, you must define and include BNKNUM and BNKFNM at the end of the program.

Routine

```

C000      SETLFS      =      65466
C000      SETNAM     =      65469
C000      SAVE       =      65496
C000      ZP         =      251
C000      STPROG    =      49152      ; starting address of ML program (perhaps
                                      ; 3072 on 128)
C000      ENDPRG    =      50001      ; ending address of ML program plus 1
                                      ; perhaps 3921 on 128)
C000      SETBNK    =      65384      ; Kernal bank number for SAVE and filename
                                      ; (128 only)
C000      MMUREG    =      65280      ; MMU configuration register (128 only)
                                      ;
                                      ; Save an ML program from 49152 through
                                      ; 50000 (3072-3920 on the 128).
                                      ; Open channel 15 here if you include disk
                                      ; error checking (DERRCK).
                                      ;
C000      SAVEML    =      *
                                      ; LDA #0; set the 128 to bank 15 (128 only)
                                      ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
C000 A2 00          LDX  #<STPROG    ; low byte of program address
C002 86 FB          STX  ZP          ; store in zero-page
C004 A0 C0          LDY  #>STPROG    ; high byte of program address
C006 84 FC          STY  ZP+1        ; also store in zero-page
C008 A9 01          LDA  #1          ; logical file number (value doesn't matter)
C00A A2 08          LDX  #8          ; device number for disk drive
C00C A0 00          LDY  #0          ; secondary address for all saves
C00E 20 BA FF      JSR  SETLFS      ; set parameters for save
                                      ; Include the following three instructions
                                      ; for the 128 only.
                                      ; LDA BNKNUM; bank containing the
                                      ; program
                                      ; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing the
                                      ; ASCII filename
                                      ; JSR SETBNK
C011 A9 0C          LDA  #FNLENG    ; length of filename
C013 A2 24          LDX  #<FILENM    ; address of filename
C015 A0 C0          LDY  #>FILENM
C017 20 BD FF      JSR  SETNAM      ; set up filename
C01A A9 FB          LDA  #ZP         ; zero-page pointer to start of ML program
C01C A2 51          LDX  #<ENDPRG    ; low-byte address for end of ML program
C01E A0 C3          LDY  #>ENDPRG    ; high-byte address for end of ML program
C020 20 D8 FF      JSR  SAVE         ; save the ML file
                                      ;
                                      ; JSR DERRCK; Insert here for disk error
                                      ; checking
                                      ;

```

```

C023 60          RTS
;
; Insert DERRCK here if you're including
; error checking.
;
C024 30 3A 4D FILENM .ASC "0:ML PROGRAM"
; Substitute your own filename here (<=16
; characters)
C030          FNLENG = * - FILENM ; length of filename
; Include the next two variables on the 128.
; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; data to be saved is located
; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; ASCII filename is located

```

See also SAVEBS, VERIFY.

Name

Convert screen codes to Commodore ASCII characters

Description

Commodore computers, including the 64 and the 128, represent characters in different ways. When characters are printed (with CHROUT), they are represented by Commodore ASCII codes. When they are stored directly to screen memory (with STA), so-called screen codes are used. Fortunately, there are some patterns between the two sets of codes. As a result, the actual conversion routine can be relatively short.

You'll probably find a number of uses for **SCRCAS**. Many word processing programs (COMPUTE!'s *SpeedScript* and Pro-Line's *WordPro*, among others) store characters in their files in the form of screen codes. At some point, you may wish to examine the contents of a file that's in screen-coded format by printing it to the screen. Or you may simply want to print portions of screen memory elsewhere on the screen. In either case, a routine like **SCRCAS** is ideal.

Prototype

1. CMP the screen code in .A with zero, setting the N flag if the code is greater than 127.
2. Store the processor status register on the stack.
3. AND with 127, giving a screen code from 0 through 127.
4. Determine in which range of values the screen code lies (0-31, 32-63, 64-95, or 96-127) and flip the necessary bit(s).
5. Restore the N flag with PLP and RTS.

Explanation

The example program converts characters within a file that's been saved in screen-coded format to Commodore ASCII and prints them to the screen.

This is really a two-step process. First, the file (entitled SCREEN CODES) is loaded into a buffer (LOADAD) on an even-page boundary by using **LOADRL**. Each code within the buffer is then converted to a Commodore ASCII character with **SCRCAS** and is printed.

In order to see the program in action, you'll need to initially create a file containing screen codes. As we've suggested, you can do this with *SpeedScript* or with any other program that saves in this format. Change the ASCII string in FILENM

to match the filename you've chosen. Then run the program, changing LOADAD if you wish.

SCRCAS performs the conversion based on the particular range in which the screen code resides. The second half of the screen code set is identical to the first. The only difference is that characters above 127 are in reverse. If the screen code passed in .A exceeds 127, **SCRCAS** sets the N flag to indicate that the character is in reverse. So, upon returning from the routine, you can print the {RVS ON} character—CHR\$(18)—if you wish, before printing the actual converted character.

All codes coming to the routine are ANDed with 127 and are handled as if they were in the lower half of the set. Once this has been done, **SCRCAS** determines in which range the screen code lies, with the aid of the table UPPLIM. There are four ranges—0–31, 32–63, 64–95, and 96–127—each sharing similarities in their bit patterns. These similarities make conversion possible.

This setup is best represented in a table where the bit patterns of characters in each range are shown before and after the conversion:

Range	Before: Bit Pattern	Range	After: Bit Pattern
0–31	%000x xxxx	64–95	%010x xxxx
32–63	%001x xxxx	32–63	%001x xxxx (the same)
64–95	%010x xxxx	96–127	%011x xxxx
96–127	%011x xxxx	160–191	%101x xxxx

Within each bit pattern, a 0 designates bits that are always off, and a 1, bits that are always on. The x represents bits that may be on or off.

Converting a screen code in the range 0–31 to the range 64–95 requires that you flip bit 6. The second range stays the same. To go from the range 64–95 to the range 96–127, you turn on bit 5. Screen codes within the final range require that both bits 6 and 7 be flipped.

This is exactly what occurs within **SCRCAS**. A lookup table of values (FLIPTB) is used with EOR to convert a particular screen code. So, the routine returns an equivalent Commodore ASCII value in .A with the N flag set for reverse characters.

Note: Since **SCRCAS** corrupts .Y, you should save it to some temporary location (as is done in the example program) before entering **SCRCAS**.

Also, if you're using a 128 with this program, be sure to replace the instruction at PRTLOP with the three instructions following it. This enables the 128 to access the incoming screen codes stored in bank 0. The Kernal routine INDFET is used for this task. INDFET performs an LDA (zero page),Y from within the bank indicated by the X register.

Routine

```

C000          CHROUT  =    65490
C000          SETLFS  =    65466
C000          SETNAM  =    65469
C000          LOAD    =    65493
C000          LOADAD  =    16384          ; buffer for incoming file, positioned on even
                                          ; page boundary

C000          ZP      =    251
C000          SETBNK  =    65384          ; Kernal bank number for LOAD and
                                          ; filename (128 only)
C000          INDFET  =    65396          ; Kernal routine to fetch a byte from any
                                          ; bank (128 only)
                                          ;
                                          ; LOAD a file containing screen codes,
                                          ; convert them to Commodore ASCII
                                          ; characters, and print them.
                                          ;
C000 A9 00          LDA  #<LOADAD          ; store buffer address in zero page
C002 85 FB          STA  ZP
C004 A0 40          LDY  #>LOADAD
C006 84 FC          STY  ZP+1
C008 20 61 C0      JSR  LOADRL          ; LOAD in the file at 16384
C00B 8E 8B C0      STX  EOF          ; LOADRL returns end-of-file address in X
                                          ; and .Y
C00E 8C 8C C0      STY  EOF+1          ; store these in temporary locations
C011 A9 0D          LDA  #13          ; print a RETURN
C013 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
                                          ;
C016 A0 00          LDY  #0          ; as an index in PRTLOP
C018 8C 8D C0      STY  MAXIMY          ; save .Y
C01B F0 02          BEQ  CHKLOP          ; first check whether buffer is less than 256
                                          ; bytes in length
C01D E6 FC          OUTLOP INC  ZP+1          ; increment high byte of buffer address
C01F A5 FC          CHKLOP LDA  ZP+1          ; see if we're on the last page of buffer
C021 CD 8C C0      CMP  EOF+1
C024 90 0A          BCC  PRTLOP          ; if not, print a full page
C026 D0 1E          BNE  EXIT          ; exit if we're one page beyond the end of the
                                          ; buffer
                                          ; We're on the last page of the buffer,
C028 AD 8B C0      LDA  EOF          ; check the low byte in case buffer ends on
                                          ; an even-page boundary
C02B F0 19          BEQ  EXIT          ; if so, exit
C02D 8D 8D C0      STA  MAXIMY          ; otherwise, store last page counter in
                                          ; MAXIMY
C030 B1 FB          PRTLOP LDA  (ZP),Y          ; get a character from the buffer
                                          ;
                                          ; Replace prior line with next three
                                          ; instructions on the 128.
                                          ; PRTLOP LDX #0; store .X and .A
                                          ; beforehand
                                          ; LDA #ZP
                                          ; JSR INDFET; load (.A),.Y from bank .X
                                          ;

```

```

C032 8C 8E C0      STY  TEMPY      ; since SCRCAS corrupts .Y
C035 20 47 C0      JSR  SCRCAS     ; convert it from screen code to Commodore
                                ; ASCII (both in .A)
C038 AC 8E C0      LDY  TEMPY     ; restore .Y
C03B 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT    ; print it
C03E C8             INY  ; for next character
C03F CC 8D C0      CPY  MAXIMY    ; have we reached the last byte in the current
                                ; page (.Y = 0) or
                                ; the final byte in the last page?
C042 D0 EC         BNE  PRTLOP ; if not, continue
C044 F0 D7         BEQ  OUTLOP ; otherwise, check page number
C046 60           EXIT  RTS

                                ;
                                ; SCRCAS converts screen codes in .A to
                                ; Commodore ASCII characters in .A.
                                ; The N flag is set if character was in reverse
                                ; video prior to conversion.
                                ; sets N flag if result is >=128 (if .A
                                ; >=128)
C047 C9 00        SCRCAS CMP  #0          ; save N flag status
C049 08           PHP  ; 0-127 and 128-255 are the same, except
C04A 29 7F        AND  #127 ; 128-255 is in reverse video
                                ; index goes 3-2-1-0
C04C A0 04        LDY  #4
C04E 88           DEY
C04F D9 59 C0     LOOP  CMP  UPPLIM,Y ; is character greater than upper limit
                                ; value?
C052 B0 FA        BCS  LOOP ; yes, so check next limit
C054 59 5D C0     EOR  FLIPTB,Y ; flip corresponding bit(s)
C057 28           PLP  ; restore N flag (as normal/reverse
                                ; indicator)
C058 60           RTS

                                ;
                                ; Upper limit plus one of each range and
                                ; appropriate value to exclusive-OR.
C059 80 60 40     UPPLIM .BYTE 128,96,64,32
C05D C0 20 00     FLIPTB .BYTE 192,32,0,64
C061             LOADRL = * ; LOAD a binary file from disk
                                ;
                                ; OPEN channel 15 here if you include disk
                                ; error checking (DERRCK).
                                ;
C061 A9 01        LDA  #1 ; logical file 1
C063 A2 08        LDX  #8 ; device number of disk drive
C065 A0 00        LDY  #0 ; secondary address of zero causes relative
                                ; LOAD
C067 20 BA FF     JSR  SETLFS ; 1,8,0 is set for relative LOAD
                                ; Include the following three instructions on
                                ; the 128.
                                ; LDA BNKNUM; bank number for data
                                ; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing the ASCII
                                ; filename
                                ; JSR SETBNK
C06A A9 0E        LDA  #FNLENG ; length of filename
C06C A2 7D        LDX  #<FILENM ; address of filename
C06E A0 C0        LDY  #>FILENM
C070 20 BD FF     JSR  SETNAM ; set up filename
C073 A9 00        LDA  #0 ; flag for load
C075 A2 00        LDX  #<LOADAD ; set the load address
C077 A0 40        LDY  #>LOADAD
C079 20 D5 FF     JSR  LOAD ; load the file at LOADAD
                                ;
                                ; JSR DERRCK: Insert here for disk error
                                ; checking
                                ;

```

SCRCAS

```
C07C 60          RTS
;
; Insert DERRCK here if you're including
; error checking.
;
C07D 30 3A 53 FILENM .ASC "0:SCREEN CODES"
; name of file stored in form of screen codes
C08B          ENLENG = * - FILENM
; length of filename
; Include the next two variables on the 128.
; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; program is to be loaded
; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
; ASCII filename is located
;
C08B 00 00      EOF      .WORD0
; two-byte end-of-buffer pointer
C08D 00          MAXIMY  .BYTE0
; low byte counter for buffer.
C08E 00          TEMPY   .BYTE0
; temporary storage for .Y
```

See also CASSCR, CASTAS, CNVERT, TASCAS.

Name

Scroll down a line with INST character

Description

This is the first of several scroll-down routines. The technique of scrolling lines from top to bottom is most often used in games where you need to have bombs dropping from the sky (action in space), trees falling toward you (skiing/dodging action), or road signs/highways moving toward you (automobile action). The basic idea is that the player resides at the bottom of the screen, and things are scrolling toward the hapless hero.

Prototype

1. Unlink the first and second screen lines.
2. Get to the top left corner by printing a {HOME} character.
3. Print {DOWN} to move the cursor to line 2.
4. Back up with {LEFT}.
5. Print the {INST} character, which opens up a line.

Explanation

On the 64, the width of a *physical* screen line is 40 characters. A *logical* line, on the other hand, can contain up to 80 characters. A logical line may thus consist of one or two physical lines. A table that starts at location 217 indicates whether a specific physical line is linked to the previous line as part of a single logical line. If the high bit of a line's entry in the table is zero, the line in question is connected to the previous line.

This program puts the cursor in the top left corner, moves down to the second line, backs up, and inserts a character. If the top logical line is fewer than 40 characters long, the technique works; it opens up a second physical line. If the logical line at the top of the screen consists of two physical lines, the technique won't work. So we make sure the the top two lines are unlinked by ORing location 218 with 128 at the start of the routine. The rest is just loading ASCII characters and printing them.

Routine

C000	LDTB1	=	217
C000	CHROUT	=	\$FFD2

SCRDN1 (64 only)

```
C000 A5 DA   SCRDN1 LDA LDTB1+1 ; entry for second screen line
C002 09 80   ORA  #%10000000 ; undo the line link
C004 85 DA   STA  LDTB1+1
C006 A9 13   LDA  #19 ; HOME character
C008 20 D2 FF JSR  CHROUT
C00B A9 11   LDA  #17 ; CURSOR DOWN character
C00D 20 D2 FF JSR  CHROUT
C010 A9 9D   LDA  #157 ; CURSOR LEFT—to end of first line
C012 20 D2 FF JSR  CHROUT
C015 A9 94   LDA  #148 ; INSERT character
C017 20 D2 FF JSR  CHROUT ; Now lines 2-25 have scrolled down.

C01A 60     RTS
```

See also BIGMAP, SCRDN2, SCRDN3.

Name

Scroll the screen down a line with the ROM insert routine

Description

A built-in BASIC ROM routine (on the 64) inserts a line and, at the same time, scrolls the lines below it down one notch. By calling this routine, you can cause the whole screen (except the top line) to scroll down.

Prototype

1. Unlink the top line from the second line.
2. Print the {HOME} character to get to the top left corner.
3. Call the ROM routine that inserts a line.

Explanation

BASIC needs the INSLINE routine when a programmer happens to type beyond the fortieth character on a line (see **SCRDN1** for a fuller explanation of physical lines and logical lines). So, if we can unlink the two lines and put the cursor in place, it's quite easy to call the ROM routine that opens up a line.

Note: For the same effect on the 128, you may use the ESC-I sequence to insert a blank line or the ESC-W sequence to scroll the whole screen down by one line.

Routine

```

C000          LDTB1    =    217
C000          CHROUT  =    $FFD2
C000          INSLIN  =    $E965          ; ROM routine to insert a line
;
C000 A5 DA      SCRDN2 LDA  LDTB1+1      ; entry for second screen line
C002 09 80          ORA  #%10000000    ; undo the line link
C004 85 DA          STA  LDTB1+1
C006 A9 13          LDA  #19           ; HOME character
C008 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C00B 20 65 E9      JSR  INSLIN
C00E 60              RTS

```

See also BIGMAP, SCRDN1, SCRDN3.

Name

Scroll down a line of the screen by copying screen and color memory

Description

This is one of three scroll-down routines, and it's by far the longest. The other two routines depend on built-in ROM routines, while this is a stand-alone program that by itself copies characters (and color memory) byte by byte.

Prototype

1. Set up a zero-page pointer to the second-to-the-last screen line.
2. Set up a pointer to the last screen line.
3. Copy 40 characters (and 40 color bytes) from one line to the next.
4. Subtract 40 from each pointer.
5. Continue the loop until 24 lines have been copied.
6. Clear the first line with spaces.

Explanation

The key to this routine is using zero-page pointers. The FROM and the TO pointers tell the subroutines where to copy from and where to put the result. The most important subroutine is COPYFT (\$C040), which does four things: It copies 40 characters of screen memory (FROM to TO), changes the pointers so they point to screen memory, copies 40 bytes of color memory (FROM to TO again), and changes the pointers so they point back to the screen.

The FRTOTO subroutine is very general. It copies 40 bytes from the pointer at FROM to the pointer at TO. Because it's generic, it can be used for copying both screen memory and color memory.

The main program initially sets up the pointer at FROM (\$C000-\$C013) and then calls FROMTO, which creates the second pointer at TO. The X register starts at 24 and counts down to zero because 24 lines must be copied.

You'll see the heart of the program at BIGLOP (\$C01A-\$C022). JSR to the copy routine (COPYFT), which copies a line down. Next, JSR to MINUS40, which backs up the pointers to the previous line. Then, DEX and BNE to complete the loop.

The final task is to fill the top line with blank spaces (screen code 32) by storing directly to screen memory.

Routine

C000			FROM	=	\$FB		; pointer to copy from
C000			TO	=	\$FD		; copy to this area
C000			SCREEN	=	1024		; screen memory base address
C000			COLOR	=	55296		; color memory base address
C000			OFFSET	=	COLOR-SCREEN		; the difference
							; ;
C000	A9	00	SCRDN3	LDA	#<SCREEN		; low byte of screen address
C002	85	FB		STA	FROM		
C004	A9	04		LDA	#>SCREEN		; high byte of screen address
C006	85	FC		STA	FROM+1		
							; FROM now points to the screen,
							; but we're scrolling down, so we have to
							; adjust by adding 23 lines of 40.
							; 23 times 40
C008	A9	98		LDA	#<920		
C00A	18			CLC			
C00B	65	FB		ADC	FROM		
C00D	85	FB		STA	FROM		
C00F	A9	03		LDA	#>920		
C011	65	FC		ADC	FROM+1		
C013	85	FC		STA	FROM+1		
							; FROM is set up—points to second-to-the-
							; last line.
C015	20	2E	C0	JSR	FROMTO		; subroutine to add 40 to FROM
C018	A2	18		LDX	#24		; number of lines to copy
							; ;
C01A	20	4D	C0	JSR	COPYFT	BIGLOP	; copy a line (screen and color)
C01D	20	3C	C0	JSR	MINUS40		; back up a line
C020	CA			DEX			
C021	D0	F7		BNE	BIGLOP		
							; ;
							; The lines are copied.
							; Now clear the first line.
C023	A0	27		LDY	#39		
C025	A9	20		LDA	#32		
C027	99	00	04	STA	SCREEN,Y	CLLN	
C02A	88			DEY			
C02B	10	FA		BPL	CLLN		
C02D	60			RTS			
							; Subroutines
C02E	A5	FB	FROMTO	LDA	FROM		; add 40 to FROM pointer
C030	18			CLC			
C031	69	28		ADC	#40		
C033	85	FD		STA	TO		
C035	A5	FC		LDA	FROM+1		
C037	69	00		ADC	#0		; add zero in case of a carry
C039	85	FE		STA	TO+1		
C03B	60			RTS			
							; ;
C03C	A5	FB	MINUS40	LDA	FROM		; this subroutine subtracts 40
C03E	38			SEC			
C03F	E9	28		SBC	#40		; down by 40
C041	85	FB		STA	FROM		
C043	A5	FC		LDA	FROM+1		
C045	E9	00		SBC	#0		; subtract zero to adjust for wraparound
C047	85	FC		STA	FROM+1		
C049	20	2E	C0	JSR	FROMTO		; now adjust TO pointer
C04C	60			RTS			
							; ;
C04D	20	5A	C0	JSR	FRTOTO	COPYFT	; Now copy screen and color memory.
C050	20	64	C0	JSR	FIXCLR		; copy from FROM to TO
							; change to color memory

SCRDN3

```

C053 20 5A C0      JSR  FRTOTO      ; copy color memory from FROM to TO
C056 20 75 C0      JSR  FIXSCN      ; change back to screen
C059 60

C05A A0 27          FRTOTO  LDY  #39          ; get ready to copy 40 bytes (0-39)
C05C B1 FB          FTTLOP  LDA  (FROM),Y
C05E 91 FD          STA  (TO),Y
C060 88            DEY
C061 10 F9          BPL  FTTLOP      ; count down
C063 60            RTS          ; branch on plus because we want #0

C064 A5 FB          FIXCLR  LDA  FROM
C066 18            CLC          ; add offset to FROM and TO
C067 69 00          ADC  #<OFFSET
C069 85 FB          STA  FROM
C06B A5 FC          LDA  FROM+1
C06D 69 D4          ADC  #>OFFSET
C06F 85 FC          STA  FROM+1
C071 20 2E C0      JSR  FROMTO      ; add 40 to adjust TO
C074 60            RTS

C075 A5 FB          FIXSCN  LDA  FROM
C077 38            SEC          ; fix color back to screen memory
C078 E9 00          SBC  #<OFFSET
C07A 85 FB          STA  FROM
C07C A5 FC          LDA  FROM+1
C07E E9 D4          SBC  #>OFFSET
C080 85 FC          STA  FROM+1
C082 20 2E C0      JSR  FROMTO      ; not really necessary
C085 60            RTS

```

See also BIGMAP, SCRDN1, SCRDN2.

Name

Scratch (erase) a disk file

Description

This routine erases a disk file using the DOS scratch command.

Prototype

1. Open the command channel to the drive (SETLFS, SETNAM, OPEN).
2. As part of the SETNAM routine, send the scratch command.
3. Close the file.

Explanation

The first three lines set up the A, X, and Y registers for the call to SETLFS. Before calling SETNAM, we have to put the length of the filename into .A and a pointer to the filename into .X and .Y. But when the command channel (15) is being opened, the filename is really a DOS command. When the Kernal OPEN routine is called, the scratch information is sent to the disk drive. All that remains is the channel closing.

Routine

```

C000          SETLFS  =   $FFBA
C000          SETNAM  =   $FFBD
C000          OPEN    =   $FFC0
C000          CLOSE  =   $FFC3
C000          CLRCHN  =   $FFCC

C000 A9 01      SCRATCH LDA #1           ; logical file number
C002 A2 08      LDX #8             ; device number for disk drive
C004 A0 0F      LDY #15            ; command channel 15
C006 20 BA FF   JSR SETLFS         ; prepare to open it
C009 A9 0C      LDA #BUFLEN        ; length of buffer
C00B A2 1E      LDX #<BUFFER      ; .X and .Y hold the
C00D A0 C0      LDY #>BUFFER       ; address of the buffer
C00F 20 BD FF   JSR SETNAM         ; set name
C012 20 C0 FF   JSR OPEN           ; open it
C015 A9 01      LDA #1             ; and immediately
C017 20 C3 FF   JSR CLOSE          ; close the command channel
C01A 20 CC FF   JSR CLRCHN        ; clear the channels
C01D 60         RTS                ; all done
                                   ; data area

C01E 53 30 3A BUFFER .ASC "S0:FILENAME"
                                   ; replace FILENAME with the name of the
                                   ; file to be scratched
C029 0D         .BYTE 13           ; return character
C02A          BUFLN  =   * - BUFFER
    
```

See also CONCAT, COPYFL, FORMAT, INITLZ, RENAME, VALIDT.

SHFCHK

Name

Check the status of the shift keys

Description

The shift key flag (SHFLAG) at location 653 (location 211 on the 128) can be checked to see whether the SHIFT, Commodore, or CTRL keys are being pressed. On the 128, SHFLAG can also tell you whether the ALT or CAPS LOCK keys are being pressed.

Pressing SHIFT returns a value of 1 in SHFLAG; pressing the Commodore key returns a 2; and pressing CTRL, a 4. On the 128, ALT returns an 8; CAPS LOCK, a 16. If two or more of these keys are pressed simultaneously, SHFLAG returns the sum of these values. For example, pressing CTRL and SHIFT together result in a value of 5 in SHFLAG.

Prototype

Return the contents of the SHIFT flag in .A.

Explanation

In the example routine, the current contents of SHFLAG are continually printed on the screen. Press the SHIFT, Commodore, and CTRL keys (also the ALT and CAPS LOCK keys on the 128), either alone or together, to see the effect on SHFLAG. Press Q to exit (quit) the routine.

Routine

```
C000          SHFLAG  =    653          ; SHFLAG = 211 on the 128—shift key flag
C000          CHROUT  =    65490
C000          GETIN   =    65508
C000          CLRHOM  =    58692        ; CLRHOM = 49474 on the 128
C000          LINPRT  =    48589        ; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
;
; Check shift flag. Print result. Quit when Q
; is pressed.
C000 20 44 E5 CLRROM JSR CLRHOM        ; clear screen
C003 20 19 C0 LOOP JSR SHFCHK         ; check shift flag
C006 AA          TAX          ; use flag value as low byte
C007 A9 00          LDA #0          ; zero in the high byte
C009 20 CD BD          JSR LINPRT    ; print a two-byte integer to screen (see
; NUMOUT)
C00C A9 0D          LDA #13        ; print RETURN
C00E 20 D2 FF          JSR CHROUT
C011 20 E4 EF          JSR GETIN    ; get a key
C014 C9 51          CMP #81        ; is it Q?
C016 D0 EB          BNE LOOP        ; no, so LOOP
C018 60          RTS              ; yes, so return
;
; Return SHFLAG in .A.
C019 AD 8D 02 SHFCHK LDA SHFLAG
C01C 60          RTS
```

See also STPFLG, STPKER.

Name

Clear the SID chip

Description

SIDCLR stores a zero in each of the SID chip's 25 write-only registers, thereby cancelling all sound output.

Prototype

In a loop, store zeros in memory in the range 54272–54296 and RTS.

Explanation

Generally, the first step you take in writing any sound routine is to clear the SID chip so that parameters remaining from a previous use of the chip won't affect the current sound.

A minor problem with the SID chip is that it sometimes continues to echo the last frequency output even after the intended sound has finished. This effect, though barely audible, may annoy the user. If it does, you can silence the chip altogether by JSR'ing to **SIDCLR** at the end of your sound routines.

Note: The SID chip is addressed at locations 54272–54300, a total of 29 registers. The first 25, cleared in **SIDCLR**, are *write-only registers*, meaning they can't be read. In contrast, the remaining 4 are *read-only registers*; writing to them has no effect.

Routine

```

C000          FRELO1  =    54272          ; starting address of the SID chip
;
C000 A9 00      SIDCLR LDA #0            ; fill with zeros
C002 A0 18      LDY #24                ; as the offset from FRELO1
C004 99 00 D4 SIDLOP STA FRELO1,Y      ; store zero in each SID register
C007 88        DEY                    ; for next lower address
C008 10 FA      BPL SIDLOP            ; fill 25 bytes
C00A 60        RTS                    ; we're done

```

See also BEEPER, BELLRG, EXPLOD, INTMUS, MELODY, NOTETB, SIDVOL, SIRENS.

SIDVOL

Name

Set the SID chip volume register

Description

SIDCLR sets the SID chip volume register to the level (0–15) specified in the accumulator.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the chosen volume level in the accumulator.
2. Store this value into the volume and filter-select register at 54296 (SIGVOL) and return to the calling program.

Explanation

SIGVOL (location 54296) is a multifaceted, write-only register for the SID chip. With it, you can choose the volume of the sound that's output (bits 0–3), select filtering (bits 4–6), or disconnect the output of voice 3. In this routine, the register's sole purpose is to determine the volume level for the chip. The range of the volume level is 0 (minimum) through 15 (maximum).

SIDVOL is easy to use. Just load a number representing the volume into the accumulator and JSR to the routine. In the example, we set the chip to its maximum volume level of 15.

Note: Some programmers attempt to silence the SID chip by storing a zero in 54296, but this is not always effective. A better approach is to store a zero in the frequency registers or turn the chip off completely with **SIDCLR**.

Routine

```
C000          SIGVOL = 54296          ; volume and filter-select register
;
; Set the volume to 15.
C000 A9 0F     MAIN    LDA #15        ; load .A with the volume, 0 (minimum)
; through 15 (maximum)
C002 4C 05 C0          JMP  SIDVOL    ; set the volume to .A
;
; Enter with the volume in .A.
C005 8D 18 D4 SIDVOL  STA  SIGVOL    ; store the volume value in .A into the
; volume register
C008 60          RTS
```

See also BEEPER, BELLRG, EXPLOD, INTMUS, MELODY, NOTETB, SIDCLR, SIRENS.

Name

Produce a siren sound

Description

SIRENS causes the SID chip to emit an extended sirenlike sound. At certain intervals in a game, you could use it to signal to the user that he's reached a higher level or achieved bonus points. Or you could use it as fanfare at the conclusion of the game.

Prototype

1. Clear the SID chip with **SIDCLR**.
2. Set up the necessary SID chip parameters for voice 1. Set sustain/release to \$F0, select a sawtooth waveform, and gate the sound.
3. Assign a low frequency and a triangle waveform to voice 3.
4. Disconnect output from voice 3. At the same time, select band-pass filtering and the volume.
5. Store %00000001 in the filter/resonance control register to filter voice 1 without resonance.
6. Select a band-pass filter cutoff frequency.
7. In **SIRLOP**, multiply the output of voice 3 by 32 and add in a base frequency of 15000. Store the low and high bytes of the resulting frequency in voice 1.
8. Pause four jiffies before getting another frequency value for voice 3.
9. Repeat **SIRLOP** 256 times. Then clear the chip and **RTS**.

Explanation

In this routine, the output from voice 3 modulates the frequency of voice 1. In the process, voice 3 is not actually heard. As a result, no SID attack/decay or sustain/release parameters are required for this voice. Its only use is in providing a frequency value for voice 1.

After disconnecting the audio output of voice 3, the waveform (high byte only) for this voice is read from **RANDOM**. Since a triangle waveform is selected for voice 3, the numbers returned by **RANDOM** increase gradually from 0 to 255, and then work down to 0 again. In order to get a suitable frequency range for voice 1, these values are multiplied by 32 and then added to a base frequency of 15000.

Another feature of **SIRENS** is its use of band-pass filtering. With the band-pass filter implemented, frequencies on either side of a cutoff frequency are diminished in volume.

SIRENS

Since only 11 bits on the two-byte cutoff register are addressed, the cutoff filter value can range from 0-2047. Although the number stored in this register is proportional to the cutoff frequency (in this case, 616), the value itself does not represent an actual frequency. Probably the best way to achieve the effect you're looking for with this register is through experimentation.

Routine

```

C000          ZP          =    251
C000          JIFFLO     =    162          ; low byte of jiffy clock
C000          FRELO1    =   54272          ; voice 1 frequency control (low byte)
C000          FREHI1    =   54273          ; voice 1 frequency control (high byte)
C000          VCREG1     =   54276          ; voice 1 control register
C000          SUREL1     =   54278          ; voice 1 sustain/release register
C000          FRELO3    =   54286          ; voice 3 frequency control (low byte)
C000          VCREG3     =   54290          ; voice 3 control register
C000          CUTLO     =   54293          ; lower three bits of filter cutoff frequency
C000          CUTHI     =   54294          ; filter cutoff frequency (high byte)
C000          RESON      =   54295          ; filter/resonance control register
C000          SIGVOL     =   54296          ; volume and filter select register
C000          RANDOM     =   54299          ; reads high byte of voice 3
C000          BASFRE     =   15000         ; base frequency to add to voice 3
;
C000 20 64 C0 SIRENS JSR SIDCLR          ; go clear the SID chip
C003 A9 F0          LDA #$F0            ; set full sustain/fastest release
C005 8D 06 D4          STA SUREL1
C008 A9 21          LDA #%00100001      ; select sawtooth waveform (voice 1) and
; gate sound
C00A 8D 04 D4          STA VCREG1
C00D A9 02          LDA #2              ; give voice 3 a frequency
C00F 8D 0E D4          STA FRELO3
C012 A9 10          LDA #%00010000      ; select triangle waveform (voice 3)
C014 8D 12 D4          STA VCREG3
C017 A9 AF          LDA #%10101111      ; disconnect voice 3 output/select band-
; pass/max. volume
C019 8D 18 D4          STA SIGVOL
C01C A9 01          LDA #%00000001      ; no resonance and filter voice 1
C01E 8D 17 D4          STA RESON
C021 A9 00          LDA #0              ; select band-pass cutoff frequency of 616
C023 8D 15 D4          STA CUTLO
C026 A9 4D          LDA #77
C028 8D 16 D4          STA CUTHI
C02B A2 00          LDX #0
; as an index in SIRLOP
; Calculate voice 1 frequency from voice 3
; frequency (high byte).
; initialize voice 1 frequency (high byte)
C02D A9 00          SIRLOP LDA #0
C02F 85 FC          STA ZP+1
C031 AD 1B D4          LDA RANDOM          ; get voice 3 frequency (high byte)
C034 85 FB          STA ZP              ; store in zero page as low byte
C036 06 FB          ASL ZP              ; multiply it by 32, double low byte
C038 26 FC          ROL ZP+1            ; then high byte
C03A 06 FB          ASL ZP              ; double four more times
C03C 26 FC          ROL ZP+1
C03E 06 FB          ASL ZP
C040 26 FC          ROL ZP+1
C042 06 FB          ASL ZP
C044 26 FC          ROL ZP+1
C046 06 FB          ASL ZP

```

C048	26	FC		ROL	ZP+1	
C04A	A5	FB		LDA	ZP	; Add a base frequency of 15000 to this.
C04C	18			CLC		; low byte first
C04D	69	98		ADC	#<BASFRE	; for addition
C04F	8D	00	D4	STA	FRELO1	; add low byte of base frequency
						; and store in voice 1 frequency register
						; (low byte)
C052	A5	FC		LDA	ZP+1	; then high byte
C054	69	3A		ADC	#>BASFRE	; add high byte of base frequency
C056	8D	01	D4	STA	FREHI1	; and store in voice 1 frequency register
						; Delay four jiffies.
C059	A9	04		LDA	#4	; add four jiffies to jiffy clock reading
C05B	65	A2		ADC	JIFFLO	
C05D	C5	A2	DELAY	CMP	JIFFLO	; and wait for four jiffies to elapse
C05F	D0	FC		BNE	DELAY	
C061	CA			DEX		; for next note
C062	D0	C9		BNE	SIRLOP	; repeat SIRLOP 256 times
						; Fall through to SIDCLR to stop sound and
						; RTS.
						; Clear the SID chip.
C064	A9	00	SIDCLR	LDA	#0	; fill with zeros
C066	A0	18		LDY	#24	; as the offset from FRELO1
C068	99	00	D4 SIDLOP	STA	FRELO1,Y	; store 0 in each SID chip address
C06B	88			DEY		; for next lower address
C06C	10	FA		BPL	SIDLOP	; fill 25 bytes
C06E	60			RTS		; we're done

See also BEEPER, BELLRG, EXPLOD, INTMUS, MELODY, NOTETB, SIDCLR, SIDVOL.

SPRINT

Name

Sprite interrupt routine—automatic sprite movement

Description

In a situation where you need sprites to travel automatically from one spot to another, this routine may be helpful. It makes a sprite operate like a battery-powered toy car. Turn it on, and it moves forward without any further attention from you. The sprite position is updated 60 times a second, regardless of what the main program is doing.

Prototype

First, install the routine:

1. Create the sprite shape and set up the necessary pointers.
2. Set the interrupt-disable flag (SEI).
3. Change the interrupt vector to point to the **SPRINT** routine.
4. Clear the interrupt flag (CLI) and return.

Within the routine:

5. Slow down the movement by checking a flag (if necessary).
6. Change the sprite shape (optional).
7. Update the *x* and *y* positions, and store them in registers.
8. Jump to the normal interrupt-handling routine.

Explanation

In machine language, sprite movement can be something of a headache. One problem is that ML is very fast; a sprite-mover routine can easily move a single sprite from one edge of the screen to another in the blink of an eye. A delay loop is an unsatisfactory solution—you want the sprites to slow down, not the whole program. A second problem is that updating sprite positions can take a large number of instructions that clutter up the main loop within a program.

Putting the sprites on the interrupt is a workable answer to both difficulties. Every 1/60 second, the wedge takes over and handles automatic sprite movement.

The code at locations \$C000-\$C00A copies two sprite shapes from the program down to the cassette buffer (to put them in the realm of the VIC chip's default 16K video memory bank). Then the code at locations \$C00B-\$C026 sets up the initial *x* and *y* positions, sets the sprite color to white, turns on the sprite, and sets the sprite pointer.

Next, the wedge is installed. It's necessary to use the SEI instruction to disable interrupts while the installation is in the

works. Otherwise, an interrupt may occur during the change, and the 6510/8502 may jump to an unusual location in memory. The IRQ vector at locations 788–779 is changed to point to **SPRINT**. Henceforth, all IRQ interrupts will move to our own routine before continuing to the normal interrupt-handling routine. When the wedge is complete, CLI clears the flag, and RTS returns the program to BASIC (or to the ML routine that called it).

The **SPRINT** routine is now called 60 times a second. Only one time in four does it actually do something (15 times a second is plenty fast). This portion of the program could be eliminated or modified.

First, at \$C03A, **SPRINT** checks the current shape of the sprite. If it's S1, the shape is changed to S2 and vice versa. You're not required to change the shapes; this section could also be eliminated. Next, at \$C04E, the *x* and *y* positions are updated. In this example, the *x* position is increased by two, and one is added to the *y* position (this could be changed, depending on the program). The *x* and *y* positions are variables stored in memory. After they're changed, they must be copied to the appropriate sprite registers (at \$C068–\$C079).

The routine finishes up, not with an RTS, but with a JMP to the normal IRQ handler (NORIRQ, \$EA31 on the 64). This routine scans the keyboard and generally keeps things running.

Note: The XHI variable is copied directly to SPXM because only sprite 0 is being moved. If you use sprites 1–7, it will be necessary to shift the bits to the left to put the high bit in the correct position.

On the 128, you must disable the sprite control commands of BASIC. Before SYSing to this routine, enter POKE 4861,1 (or use any other non-zero value). Alternately, you could LDA and STA at the start of the program.

Warning: It's important not to overload the interrupt routine with too many instructions. The interrupt handler is called every 1/60 second, which seems very fast to us. But to the computer, which works in millionths of a second, it's a long time. If you write an extremely long interrupt wedge, it may possibly require more than 1/60 second to run. If this happens, the interrupt routine will run in the background, and, by the time it's done, another interrupt will have occurred. The main program will never have a chance to execute.

SPRINT

Routine

```

C000          JIF          =      $A2          ; lowest byte of the jiffy clock
C000          SPR1        =      $0340        ; SPR1 = $0E00 on the 128
C000          SPR2        =      $0380        ; SPR2 = $0E40 on the 128
C000          S1          =      13          ; S1 = 56 on the 128—pointer 1 to $0340
C000          S2          =      14          ; S2 = 57 on the 128—pointer 2 to $0380
C000          SPCOLR     =      53287        ; sprite 0 color
C000          SPX         =      53248        ; x position
C000          SPY         =      53249        ; y position
C000          SPXM        =      53264        ; MSB bit of x position
C000          SPE         =      53269        ; sprite enable
C000          SPP         =      2040        ; pointer to sprite 0
C000          IRQVEC     =      788          ;
C000          NORIRQ     =      $EA31        ; NORIRQ = $FA65 on the 128—normal IRQ
C000          ; handling routine
C000          ;
C000 A2 80          LDX     #128             ; two sprites = 128 bytes
C002 BD 80 C0 COPY LDA     SHAPE1,X          ; copy from the program
C005 9D 40 03 STA     SPR1,X          ; to available memory
C008 CA           DEX
C009 10 F7        BPL     COPY             ; cutting it thin (127 is plus, 128 is minus)
C000          ;
C00B A9 64          LDA     #100
C00D 8D 7D C0 STA     XLO             ; put it in x-position shadow
C010 8D 7F C0 STA     YLO             ; and y-position shadow
C013 A9 01          LDA     #1             ; the color white
C015 8D 27 D0 STA     SPCOLR          ; into the color register
C018 A9 00          LDA     #0             ; no MSB
C01A 8D 7E C0 STA     XHI             ; into the shadow register
C01D A9 01          LDA     #1             ; enable sprite 0
C01F 8D 15 D0 STA     SPE
C022 A9 0D          LDA     #51            ; sprite shape 1 pointer
C024 8D F8 07 STA     SPP             ; into 2040
C000          ;
C027 78           SEI     ; change the IRQ vector now
C028 A9 34          LDA     #<SPRINT      ; first stop interrupts
C02A 8D 14 03 STA     IRQVEC          ; change the vector
C02D A9 C0          LDA     #>SPRINT
C02F 8D 15 03 STA     IRQVEC+1
C032 58           CLI     ; clear the interrupts
C033 60           RTS     ; and we're done with setup
C000          ;
C034          SPRINT    =      *             ; this is the interrupt routine
C034 A5 A2          LDA     JIF             ; every fourth interrupt
C036 29 03          AND     #%00000011    ; AND it with 3
C038 D0 40          BNE     ENSPRIN       ; if a bit's on, quit
C03A AD F8 07          LDA     SPP             ; get the pointer
C03D C9 0D          CMP     #S1            ; is it shape 1?
C03F D0 08          BNE     DO1            ; no, do shape 1
C041 A9 0E          LDA     #S2            ; load shape 2
C043 8D F8 07          STA     SPP             ; and store it
C046 4C 4E C0          JMP     XY             ; go ahead to x and y
C049 A9 0D          LDA     #S1            ; get shape 1
C04B 8D F8 07          STA     SPP             ; and store the pointer
C04E AD 7D C0 XY     LDA     XLO          ; find the low byte (XLO)
C051 18           CLC
C052 69 02          ADC     #2             ; add two
C054 8D 7D C0 STA     XLO             ; and store it back
C057 AD 7E C0 LDA     XHI             ; check the high byte
C05A 69 00          ADC     #0             ; add zero or one
C05C C9 02          CMP     #2             ; if it's not two

```

C05E	D0	02		BNE	STHI		; branch ahead
C060	A9	00		LDA	#0		; otherwise, make it zero
C062	8D	7E	C0	STHI	STA	XHI	
C065	EE	7F	C0		INC	YLO	; add one to the y position ; Now change the positions.
C068	AD	7E	C0	LDA	XHI		
C06B	8D	10	D0	STA	SPXM		
C06E	AD	7D	C0	LDA	XLO		
C071	8D	00	D0	STA	SPX		
C074	AD	7F	C0	LDA	YLO		
C077	8D	01	D0	STA	SPY		
C07A	4C	31	EA	ENSPRIN	JMP	NORIRQ	; do the normal IRQ stuff
C07D	00			XLO	.BYTE	0	
C07E	00			XHI	.BYTE	0	
C07F	00			YLO	.BYTE	0	
C080				SHAPE1	=	*	
C080	35	00	00		.BYTE	%00110101,%00000000,%00000000	
C083	1A	7C	00		.BYTE	%00011010,%11111100,%00000000	
C086	0D	66	00		.BYTE	%00001101,%1100110,%00000000	
C089	46	42	06		.BYTE	%01000110,%1000010,%00000110	
C08C	21	42	1E		.BYTE	%00100001,%1000010,%00011110	
C08F	08	24	70		.BYTE	%00001000,%0100100,%01110000	
C092	07	5B	C0		.BYTE	%00000111,%1011011,%11000000	
C095	06	3F	00		.BYTE	%00000110,%01111111,%00000000	
C098	0E	3C	00		.BYTE	%00001110,%01111100,%00000000	
C09B	06	3C	00		.BYTE	%00000110,%01111100,%00000000	
C09E	01	7C	00		.BYTE	%00000001,%11111100,%00000000	
C0A1	01	7C	00		.BYTE	%00000001,%11111100,%00000000	
C0A4	00	7C	00		.BYTE	%00000000,%11111100,%00000000	
C0A7	E1	7F	00		.BYTE	%11100001,%11111111,%00000000	
C0AA	E1	78	80		.BYTE	%11100001,%11110000,%10000000	
C0AD	62	20	C0		.BYTE	%01100010,%01000000,%11000000	
C0B0	2E	40	60		.BYTE	%00101110,%10000000,%01100000	
C0B3	1D	40	70		.BYTE	%00011101,%10000000,%01110000	
C0B6	00	03	C0		.BYTE	%00000000,%0000011,%11000000	
C0B9	00	07	80		.BYTE	%00000000,%0000111,%10000000	
C0BC	00	02	C0		.BYTE	%00000000,%0000010,%11000000	
C0BF	00				.BYTE	0	; zero to make it even
C0C0				SHAPE2	=	*	
C0C0	00	00	00		.BYTE	%00000000,%00000000,%00000000	
C0C3	3B	78	00		.BYTE	%00111011,%11110000,%00000000	
C0C6	2B	4C	00		.BYTE	%00101011,%10011000,%00000000	
C0C9	46	44	00		.BYTE	%01000110,%10001000,%00000000	
C0CC	21	42	00		.BYTE	%00100001,%1000010,%00000000	
C0CF	00	24	70		.BYTE	%00000000,%01001000,%01110000	
C0D2	01	5B	F8		.BYTE	%00000001,%1011011,%11111100	
C0D5	02	3F	B0		.BYTE	%00000010,%01111111,%10110000	
C0D8	06	38	00		.BYTE	%00000110,%01110000,%00000000	
C0DB	02	3C	C0		.BYTE	%00000010,%01111100,%11000000	
C0DE	01	7D	E0		.BYTE	%00000001,%11111101,%11100000	
C0E1	01	7C	00		.BYTE	%00000001,%11111100,%00000000	
C0E4	00	7C	00		.BYTE	%00000000,%11111100,%00000000	
C0E7	01	7F	00		.BYTE	%00000001,%11111111,%00000000	
C0EA	01	78	80		.BYTE	%00000001,%11110000,%10000000	
C0ED	00	23	C0		.BYTE	%00000000,%0100011,%11000000	
C0F0	03	73	80		.BYTE	%00000011,%1110011,%10000000	
C0F3	18	7B	C0		.BYTE	%00011000,%1111011,%11000000	
C0F6	70	3F	80		.BYTE	%01110000,%01111111,%10000000	
C0F9	00	3D	80		.BYTE	%00000000,%0111101,%10000000	
C0FC	0C	02	C0		.BYTE	%00001100,%0000010,%11000000	

See also MOVSA.B.

SQROOT

Name

Calculate the integer square root of an integer value

Description

Because squares follow a definite pattern, it's fairly easy to find the integer square root of a given number. Note that this routine doesn't handle the fractional part of a square root. For example, it will return 3 as the square root for all the numbers in the range 9–15 and ignore the fractional component.

Prototype

1. Store the value of which you want to find the square root in VAL.
2. Initialize ADDBT and SQUARE to one, and ROOT to negative one.
3. Increment ROOT (so it starts as zero).
4. Compare SQUARE to VAL.
5. If SQUARE is equal or larger, exit the routine. The result is in ROOT.
6. If SQUARE is smaller, add 2 to ADDBT.
7. Add ADDBT to SQUARE and loop back to step 3.

Explanation

Normally, finding the square root of a number is a fairly involved process. But if you're working with integers, you may not care about the fractional part of the result. In that case, we can use a mathematical property of squares to find the integer portion of the square root.

Write down the first six squares and underneath write down the first six odd numbers; then add up the columns:

0	1	4	9	16	25
1	3	5	7	9	11
1	4	9	16	25	36

Note the pattern of squares is exactly echoed in the sums underneath. It can be proven mathematically that this sequence continues to infinity. To calculate squares, then it becomes a matter of keeping a counter (ADDBT in the program below) that starts at 1 and increments by 2 during each loop. SQUARE also starts at 1 and has ADDBT added, to yield 4, 9, 16, and so on. The answer, held in ROOT, lags one number behind the actual square root because we want to find a square that's larger than VAL, the number from which we're extracting a root.

The example program prints a bad facsimile of the square-root symbol, and then the number from VAL and an equal sign. The answer is calculated and printed.

Routine

```

C000          LINPRT = $BDCD      ; LINPRT = $E32 on the 128
C000          CHROUT = $FFD2
;
C000 A9 CD          LDA #205      ; backslash character
C002 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT    ; print it
C005 A9 CF          LDA #207      ; upper-left-corner character
C007 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT    ; print it (to make a square-root symbol)
C00A AE 81 C0      LDX VAL        ; print the value
C00D AD 82 C0      LDA VAL+1     ; high byte
C010 20 CD BD      JSR LINPRT
C013 A9 3D          LDA #61      ; equal sign character
C015 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT    ; print it
C018 20 25 C0      JSR SQROOT    ; calculate the square root
C01B AE 87 C0      LDX ROOT      ; print the square value
C01E AD 88 C0      LDA ROOT+1
C021 20 CD BD      JSR LINPRT
C024 60
;
C025          SQROOT = *
C025 A2 01          LDX #1        ; start with 1 in ADDBT and SQUARE
C027 8E 85 C0      STX ADDBT
C02A 8E 83 C0      STX SQUARE
C02D CA            DEX            ; X = 0, the high byte
C02E 8E 86 C0      STX ADDBT+1
C031 8E 84 C0      STX SQUARE+1
C034 CA            DEX
C035 8E 87 C0      STX ROOT      ; net result of -1 in ROOT
C038 8E 88 C0      STX ROOT+1    ; also a 255 into the high byte of ROOT
;
; Start by incrementing ROOT.
C03B EE 87 C0      LOOP INC ROOT
C03E D0 03          BNE NOHI
C040 EE 88 C0      INC ROOT+1
;
C043          NOHI = *
C043 AD 82 C0      LDA VAL+1     ; Now compare VAL to SQUARE.
C046 CD 84 C0      CMP SQUARE+1 ; high byte first
C049 F0 03          BEQ MAYBE    ; if equal, check low byte
C04B B0 09          BCS MORE     ; if VAL is bigger, do another round
C04D 60            RTS          ; else RTS with the result in ROOT
C04E AD 81 C0      MAYBE LDA VAL ; look at VAL again (low byte)
C051 CD 83 C0      CMP SQUARE   ; compare it
C054 90 F7          BCC QUIT     ; quit if smaller
C056 20 72 C0      MORE JSR ADD2
C059 18            CLC
C05A AD 83 C0      LDA SQUARE    ; double add
C05D 6D 85 C0      ADC ADDBT
C060 8D 83 C0      STA SQUARE
C063 AD 84 C0      LDA SQUARE+1
C066 6D 86 C0      ADC ADDBT+1
C069 8D 84 C0      STA SQUARE+1
C06C B0 03          BCS ENDIT
C06E 4C 3B C0      JMP LOOP

```

SQROOT

```
C071 60          ENDIT   RTS
                                     ;
                                     ; Add 2 to ADDBT.
C072 AD 85  C0  ADD2    LDA  ADDBT
C075 18                CLC
C076 69 02                ADC  #2
C078 8D 85  C0                STA  ADDBT
C07B 90 03                BCC  NOMO
C07D EE 86  C0                INC  ADDBT+1
C080 60          NOMO    RTS

C081 C4 32  VAL        .WORD 12996
C083 00 00  SQUARE    .BYTE 0,0
C085 00 00  ADDBT     .BYTE 0,0
C087 00 00  ROOT      .BYTE 0,0
                                     ;
                                     ; the square of 114
```

Name

Binary search of a sorted list

Description

The good news about a binary search like **SRCBIN** is that it's by far the fastest way to find an item in a list. The bad news is that for it to work correctly, the list must already be in alphabetic order. For a static list that doesn't change much—like a dictionary—a binary search is ideal. For a volatile list that changes often, you'll have to spend a significant amount of time keeping it in order.

Prototype

1. Start by setting up pointers to the beginning, the end, and the midpoint of the list.
2. Compare the midpoint to the search string.
3. If it's equal, skip forward to step 5.
4. If the midpoint value is higher than the search string, set the end of the list to the midpoint and calculate a new midpoint. Branch back to step 2.
5. If the midpoint is lower than the sought-for string, set the beginning to the current midpoint and fix the new midpoint. Return to step 2.
6. When the search string is found, step backward on the list until the first occurrence is discovered.

Explanation

The *binary* part of a binary search means that the list is divided into two parts. To illustrate how it works, let's first look at how it doesn't work. Imagine that you live in a city that has a phone directory containing 100,000 names, listed in alphabetic order. To find the number for someone named Milt Young, it would be madness for you to start searching at the beginning of the phone book (this is a *sequential* search). You'd have to look at many thousands of names before you found the one you wanted.

For a binary search, you'd open the phone book halfway and check the name there. Let's say it's Meeks. Immediately, you know that the search string (Young) is in the second half of the phone book. With one comparison, you've eliminated half the names on the list. Next, you split the remaining pages in two and check the name. Again, half the names are discarded. Each pass through the loop cuts in half the number of names to be checked. For a list of 256 items, you'd need at

SRCBIN

most 8 comparisons to find the target name. For 64K items, you'd need a maximum of 16 comparisons.

The dark side of the binary search is that maintaining the list requires a good deal of effort since it must be in alphabetic or numeric order.

The **SRCBIN** routine is long, but relatively simple to understand. There are three possibilities: The search string is on the list, it's on the list several times, or it's not on the list. If the target is found, the binary search is successful, but just in case there are others, **SRCBIN** moves backward in memory to find the first occurrence. If it's not found, a value of zero is stored into MID. If it is found, a pointer to the first matching string is stored in MID.

The example program first reads an ASCII file into memory (in READFILE) and then alphabetizes it (ALPHA). For a database application, it shouldn't be necessary to alphabetize before the search routine is called. You should keep the list in alphabetic order.

Routine

```
C000          STATUS    =    144
C000          P1        =    $F9
C000          ZP        =    $FB
C000          Z2        =    $FD
C000          LINPRT    =    $BDCD    ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128
C000          CHROUT    =    $FFD2
C000          BUFFER    =    $6000    ; where the words are
C000          POINTR    =    $5000    ; where the pointers to the words are
;
C000  20  29  C1          JSR    READFILE    ; get the words into memory and set up the
; pointers
C003  20  E4  C1          JSR    ALPHA      ; alphabetize the list
C006  A0  00          GLOOP  LDY    #0
C008  20  CF  FF  NLOOP  JSR    CHRIN    ; get a string
C00B  C9  0D          CMP    #13    ; return
C00D  F0  06          BEQ    FINDIT    ; done, so look for it
C00F  99  76  C2          STA    SEARCH,Y  ; save it
C012  C8              INY              ; and count forward
C013  D0  E3          BNE    NLOOP
C015  A9  00          LDA    #0      ; end it with a zero.
C017  99  76  C2          STA    SEARCH,Y
C01A  C0  00          CPY    #0      ; was there anything (or too much)?
C01C  F0  EA          BEQ    NLOOP    ; go back
;
; Now find the word.
C01E  20  2D  C0          JSR    SRCBIN
C021  AE  E2  C1          LDX    MID
C024  AD  E3  C1          LDA    MID+1
C027  20  CD  BD          JSR    LINPRT    ; print the address of the string
C02A  4C  06  C0          JMP    GLOOP
;
C02D  20  51  C0  SRCBIN  JSR    SETUP    ; set up the TOP, BOT, and MID pointers to
; the pointers
C030  20  BC  C0  SBLOOP  JSR    CHKMID    ; look at MID
```

```

C033 F0 10          BEQ  MOVEDN      ; found it, now back up a little
C035 30 02          BMI  HALF0       ; in the first half
C037 10 06          BPL  HALF1       ; in the second half
;
C039 20 F0 C0 HALF0 JSR  MIDTOP      ; MID is the new TOP
C03C 4C 30 C0      JMP  SBLOOP      ; go back
C03F 20 F4 C0 HALF1 JSR  MIDBOT      ; MID is the new BOT
C042 4C 30 C0      JMP  SBLOOP      ; and loop
;
C045 20 05 C1 MOVEDN JSR  MIDMIN      ; MID minus two
C048 20 BC C0      JSR  CHKMID      ; check it
C04B F0 F8          BEQ  MOVEDN      ; move down one more
C04D 20 17 C1      JSR  MIDPLS      ; mid plus two
C050 60            RTS
;
C051 A2 03          SETUP LDX  #3
C053 BD DA C1 SET01 LDA  SB,X      ; copy SB and EB
C056 9D DE C1      STA  BOT,X      ; to BOT and TOP
C059 CA            DEX
C05A 10 F7          BPL  SET01      ; loop
;
C05C AD E0 C1 MIDSET LDA  TOP        ; find midpoint
C05F 38            SEC
C060 ED DE C1      SBC  BOT        ; subtract BOT
C063 29 FC          AND  #%11111100    ; make sure it will be even after the rotate
C065 8D E2 C1      STA  MID        ; store in MID temporarily
C068 AD E1 C1      LDA  TOP+1      ; high byte, too
C06B ED DF C1      SBC  BOT+1      ; subtracts
C06E 8D E3 C1      STA  MID+1      ; into MID
C071 4E E3 C1      LSR  MID+1      ; cut in half the high
C074 6E E2 C1      ROR  MID        ; and low bytes of MID
;
C077 AD E2 C1      LDA  MID        ; The halfway point is ready,
C07A 0D E3 C1      ORA  MID+1      ; better check it
C07D F0 13          BEQ  PANIC      ; are any bits on?
C07F AD E2 C1      LDA  MID        ; no, and we haven't found it
C082 6D DE C1      ADC  BOT        ; carry is always clear
C085 8D E2 C1      STA  MID        ; add to BOT
C088 AD E3 C1      LDA  MID+1      ; high byte, too
C08B 6D DF C1      ADC  BOT+1
C08E 8D E3 C1      STA  MID+1      ; MID is ready
C091 60            RTS          ; so we can go back
;
; Maybe it's not on the list.
C092 AD DE C1 PANIC LDA  BOT
C095 8D E2 C1      STA  MID
C098 AD DF C1      LDA  BOT+1
C09B 8D E3 C1      STA  MID+1
C09E 20 BC C0      JSR  CHKMID      ; check it
C0A1 F0 18          BEQ  NOPROB      ; found the string
C0A3 AD E0 C1      LDA  TOP        ; check top
C0A6 8D E2 C1      STA  MID
C0A9 AD E1 C1      LDA  TOP+1
C0AC 8D E3 C1      STA  MID+1
C0AF F0 0A          BEQ  NOPROB      ; found it
C0B1 68            PLA          ; get rid of the address
C0B2 68            PLA          ; from the JSR
C0B3 A9 00          LDA  #0        ; zero out MID
C0B5 8D E2 C1      STA  MID
C0B8 8D E3 C1      STA  MID+1
C0BB 60            NOPROB RTS
;
C0BC AD E2 C1 CHKMID LDA  MID      ; get the pointer
C0BF 85 FB          STA  ZP        ; to the string

```

```

C0C1 AD E3 C1      LDA  MID+1      ; and store in
C0C4 85 FC        STA  ZP+1      ; ZP
C0C6 A0 01        LDY  #1      ; next,
C0C8 B1 FB        LDA  (ZP),Y    ; the string address
C0CA 85 FE        STA  Z2+1      ; goes into Z2
C0CC 88           DEY           ; Y is zero
C0CD B1 FB        LDA  (ZP),Y
C0CF 85 FD        STA  Z2

;
; Compare them.
C0D1 B9 76 C2 CMTHEM LDA  SEARCH,Y  ; get a character
C0D4 D0 05        BNE  CKM1      ; if not zero, check more
C0D6 11 FD        ORA  (Z2),Y    ; is the string also a zero?
C0D8 D0 10        BNE  TOOHI     ; no, the string is too high
C0DA 60           RTS           ; else, RTS with the equal flag set
C0DB AA          CKM1  TAX           ; save it
C0DC B1 FD        LDA  (Z2),Y
C0DE F0 0D        BEQ  TOOLOW    ; if Z2 is zero, mid is too low
C0E0 8A          TXA           ; get A back
C0E1 D1 FD        CMP  (Z2),Y    ; compare search to Z2, which is MID
C0E3 90 05        BCC  TOOHI     ; MID is too high
C0E5 D0 06        BNE  TOOLOW    ; MID is too low
C0E7 C8           INY           ; they're equal, so
C0E8 D0 E7        BNE  CMTHEM    ; go back for another
;
C0EA A9 FF        TOOHI  LDA  #255  ; make sure the minus flag is on
C0EC 60           RTS           ; return
C0ED A9 01        TOOLOW LDA  #1    ; plus flag
C0EF 60           RTS

;
C0F0 A2 03        MIDTOP LDX  #3      ; copy from MID to TOP
C0F2 D0 02        BNE  ALWAYS    ; go forward
C0F4 A2 01        MIDBOT LDX  #1      ; else copy from MID to BOT
C0F6 A0 01        ALWAYS LDY  #1
C0F8 B9 E2 C1    ALWLOP LDA  MID,Y
C0FB 9D DE C1    STA  BOT,X      ; X is either 3 or 1 to start
C0FE CA          DEX           ; count down
C0FF 88           DEY
C100 10 F6        BPL  ALWLOP    ; go back
C102 4C 5C C0    JMP  MIDSET    ; set a new MID and (maybe) return

;
C105 AD E2 C1    MIDMIN LDA  MID      ; subtract 2 from MID
C108 38          SEC
C109 E9 02        SBC  #2
C10B 8D E2 C1    STA  MID
C10E AD E3 C1    LDA  MID+1
C111 E9 00        SBC  #0
C113 8D E3 C1    STA  MID+1
C116 60          RTS

;
C117 AD E2 C1    MIDPLS LDA  MID      ; add 2 to MID
C11A 18          CLC
C11B 69 02        ADC  #2
C11D 8D E2 C1    STA  MID
C120 AD E3 C1    LDA  MID+1
C123 69 00        ADC  #0
C125 8D E3 C1    STA  MID+1
C128 60          RTS

;
C129             READFILE =      *
C129             SETLFS  =      65466
C129             SETNAM  =      65469
C129             OPEN    =      65472
C129             CHKIN   =      65478

```

```

C129          CHRIN      =    65487
C129          CLOSE     =    65475
C129          CLRCHN    =    65484
;
C129 A9 01          LDA    #1          ; logical file number
C12B A2 08          LDX    #8          ; device number for disk drive
C12D A0 02          LDY    #2          ; secondary address (2-14 are OK)
C12F 20 BA FF      JSR    SETLFS
C132 A9 08          LDA    #FNLEN     ; length of filename
C134 A2 D2          LDX    #<FNAME    ; address of filename
C136 A0 C1          LDY    #>FNAME
C138 20 BD FF      JSR    SETNAM
C13B 20 C0 FF      JSR    OPEN
C13E A2 01          LDX    #1          ; logical file number
C140 20 C6 FF      JSR    CHKIN      ; set for input
;
C143 A9 00          LDA    #<BUFFER   ; set up a pointer
C145 85 FB          STA    ZP          ; in ZP
C147 8D 00 50      STA    POINTR    ; and in the pointer table
C14A A9 60          LDA    #>BUFFER   ; high byte
C14C 85 FC          STA    ZP+1
C14E 8D 01 50      STA    POINTR+1
;
C151 A9 00          LDA    #<POINTR   ; POINTR points to the buffer
C153 8D DA C1      STA    SB          ; put it in the starting byte SB
C156 18            CLC
C157 69 02          ADC    #2          ; add 2
C159 85 FD          STA    Z2          ; and store in Z2
C15B A9 50          LDA    #>POINTR   ; high byte
C15D 8D DB C1      STA    SB+1        ; into SB
C160 69 00          ADC    #0          ; handle the carry
C162 85 FE          STA    Z2+1
C164 A0 00          LDY    #0
C166 20 CF FF      JSR    GETCHR    ; get a character
C169 C9 0D          CMP    #13         ; check for <RETURN>
C16B F0 35          BEQ    DELIMIT
C16D C9 20          CMP    #32         ; look for a space
C16F 90 09          BCC    CHKEND    ; eliminate characters 0-31
C171 F0 2F          BEQ    DELIMIT    ; spaces are delimiters
C173 91 FB          STA    (ZP),Y
C175 C8            INY
C176 D0 02          BNE    CHKEND    ; check for the end
C178 E6 FC          INC    ZP+1        ; increment the pointer
C17A A6 90          LDX    STATUS    ;
C17C F0 E8          BEQ    GETCHR    ; if equal, get more characters
C17E A9 00          LDA    #0          ; close it up with three zeros
C180 91 FB          STA    (ZP),Y    ; store it
C182 20 B0 C1      JSR    ADDYZP    ; reset ZP
C185 91 FB          STA    (ZP),Y
C187 C8            INY
C188 91 FB          STA    (ZP),Y
C18A A9 01          LDA    #1
C18C 20 C3 FF      JSR    CLOSE     ; close the file
C18F 20 CC FF      JSR    CLRCHN    ; clear channels
C192 A5 FD          LDA    Z2          ; save the end of the buffer
C194 38            SEC
C195 E9 06          SBC    #6          ; which is six bytes too high
C197 8D DC C1      STA    EB          ; in end buffer EB
C19A A5 FE          LDA    Z2+1
C19C E9 00          SBC    #0
C19E 8D DD C1      STA    EB+1
C1A1 60            RTS          ; the end of the routine
;
C1A2 C0 00          DELIMIT  CPY    #0          ; is this the first character?

```


SRCBIN

```

C1A4 F0 D4          BEQ  CHKEND      ; yes, go back
;
; Enter this routine if a space or carriage
; return is found after a word.
C1A6 A9 00          LDA  #0         ; zero marks the division
C1A8 91 FB          STA  (ZP),Y      ; put a zero in memory
C1AA 20 B0 C1       JSR  ADDYZP     ; add .Y to ZP (plus one)
C1AD 4C 7A C1       JMP  CHKEND     ; and check for end of file
;
C1B0 38            ADDYZP SEC        ; add one to .Y
C1B1 98            TYA                ; put it in .A
C1B2 65 FB          ADC  ZP          ; add to ZP
C1B4 85 FB          STA  ZP          ; fix ZP
C1B6 A9 00          LDA  #0         ; handle the high byte
C1B8 A8            TAY                ; put zero back into .Y
C1B9 65 FC          ADC  ZP+1        ; add
C1BB 85 FC          STA  ZP+1        ; and store
C1BD C8            INY                ; store the high byte of ZP
C1BE 91 FD          STA  (Z2),Y      ; into the POINTR table
C1C0 88            DEY                ; and the low byte
C1C1 A5 FB          LDA  ZP          ;
C1C3 91 FD          STA  (Z2),Y      ;
C1C5 A5 FD          LDA  Z2          ; now add 2
C1C7 18            CLC                ;
C1C8 69 02          ADC  #2          ;
C1CA 85 FD          STA  Z2          ; to Z2, the pointer to POINTR
C1CC 90 02          BCC  BYEBYE      ; if carry set
C1CE E6 FE          INC  Z2+1        ; increment the high byte
C1D0 98            TYA                ; exit with zero in .A
C1D1 60            RTS                ;
;
C1D2 46 49 4C FNAME ASC  "FILE.S,R" ; name of ASCII text file to be sorted and
; searched
C1DA            FNLEN  =  *.FNAME
C1DA 00 00          SB      .BYTE 0,0
C1DC 00 00          EB      .BYTE 0,0
C1DE 00 00          BOT      .BYTE 0,0
C1E0 00 00          TOP      .BYTE 0,0
C1E2 00 00          MID      .BYTE 0,0
;
C1E4            ALPHA  =  *
C1E4 AD DC C1       LDA  EB          ; this routine alphabetizes the list of pointers
C1E7 8D 74 C2       STA  ENDBUB      ; set up the top of the bubble sort
C1EA AD DD C1       LDA  EB+1        ; save it
C1ED 8D 75 C2       STA  ENDBUB+1    ; high byte
C1F0 AD DA C1       LDA  SB          ; too
C1F3 85 F9          STA  P1          ;
; set up a zero-page pointer to the pointer
; table
C1F5 AD DB C1       LDA  SB+1        ;
C1F8 85 FA          STA  P1+1        ; P1 is the pointer to pointers
C1FA A9 2A          LDA  #"*"
C1FC 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT     ; print an asterisk
C1FF A0 03          LDY  #3          ; get two two-byte pointers (0-3)
C201 B1 F9          LDA  (P1),Y      ; get a pointer
C203 AA            TAX                ; can't store zero page, Y from .A, but .X
; works
; not indirect
C204 96 FB          STX  ZP,Y        ;
C206 88            DEY                ; loop
C207 10 F8          BPL  ZLOOPY      ; go back for more
; Now ZP and Z2 point to words.
; .Y was 255; make it 0
C209 C8            INY                ;
C20A B1 FB          LDA  (ZP),Y      ; compare the words
C20C D1 FD          CMP  (Z2),Y

```

```

C20E D0 04      BNE CHECKM      ; if not equal, check whether they should
                  ; swap
C210 C8          INY          ; otherwise, INC the Y register
C211 D0 F7      BNE BUBLP3   ; and go back for more (should branch
                  ; always)
C213 18          CLC          ; just in case
C214 90 15      CHECKM BCC OKRITE ; if carry is clear, they're OK
C216 A0 00      LDY          #0   ; else, switch them
C218 A5 FD      LDA          Z2   ; put pointer in Z2
C21A 91 F9      STA          (P1),Y ; into the pointer table
C21C C8          INY          ; Y is 1
C21D A5 FE      LDA          Z2+1 ; high byte, too
C21F 91 F9      STA          (P1),Y
C221 C8          INY          ; Y is 2
C222 A5 FB      LDA          ZP   ; and move ZP up two bytes
C224 91 F9      STA          (P1),Y
C226 C8          INY          ; Y is 3
C227 A5 FC      LDA          ZP+1 ; high byte
C229 91 F9      STA          (P1),Y
                  ;
                  ; P1 has to move up a couple of notches.
C22B A5 F9      OKRITE LDA P1
C22D 18          CLC
C22E 69 02      ADC          #2
C230 85 F9      STA          P1
C232 A5 FA      LDA          P1+1
C234 69 00      ADC          #0
C236 85 FA      STA          P1+1
C238 CD 75 C2   CMP          ENDBUB+1 ; are we at the end?
C23B 90 C2      BCC          BUBLP2 ; no
C23D D0 09      BNE          ENDPASS ; yes, move ahead
C23F A5 F9      LDA          P1   ; maybe, check the low byte
C241 CD 74 C2   CMP          ENDBUB ; are they the same?
C244 F0 02      BEQ          ENDPASS ; yes, quit
C246 90 B7      BCC          BUBLP2 ; no, it's smaller
                  ;
                  ; End of a pass. Move ENDBUB down by
                  ; two.
C248 AD 74 C2   ENDPASS LDA ENDBUB
C24B 38          SEC
C24C E9 02      SBC          #2   ; subtract 2 (low byte)
C24E 8D 74 C2   STA          ENDBUB ; save it
C251 AD 75 C2   LDA          ENDBUB+1 ; adjust high byte
C254 E9 00      SBC          #0   ; subtract 0 (or 1)
C256 8D 75 C2   STA          ENDBUB+1
C259 CD DB C1   CMP          SB+1   ; are we down to the start?
C25C F0 05      BEQ          MAYBE ; maybe
C25E 90 0E      BCC          OUTBUB ; yes, gone too far
C260 4C F0 C1   JMP          BUBLP1 ; no, jump back
C263 AD 74 C2   MAYBE LDA ENDBUB ; check low
C266 CD DA C1   CMP          SB   ; against SB
C269 F0 03      BEQ          OUTBUB ; equal, we're done
C26B 4C F0 C1   JMP          BUBLP1 ; no, keep going
C26E A9 93      OUTBUB LDA #147 ; clear
C270 20 D2 FF   JSR          CHROUT ; the screen
C273 60          RTS          ; and quit
                  ;
C274 00 00      ENDBUB .BYTE 0,0
C276          SEARCH = *      ; leave 256 bytes for this buffer

```

See also ALPNTR, ALSWAP, SRCLIN.

Name

Linear search for a string or other value

Description

Word processors often feature a *find* or a *search-and-replace* option. **SRCLIN** looks for a matching string by starting at the beginning and searching forward until the target string is discovered. A second entry point for the routine provides a *find-next-occurrence* function.

Prototype

1. Before calling the subroutine, store the start and end of text in the variables **TEXSTA** and **TEXEND**.
2. Store a search string in memory (at **STRING**), terminated by a zero byte.
3. Begin **SRCLIN** by setting **WHERE** to the start of text (**TEXSTA**). Skip this step if you're searching for the next occurrence.
4. Copy the pointer from **WHERE** to zero page (**Z1**).
5. Set **.Y** to zero.
6. Compare the character from **STRING** to the character pointed to by **Z1** (both indexed by **.Y**).
7. If they're not equal, increment **Z1**, make sure it doesn't go past **TEXEND**, and loop back to step 5.
8. If **Z1** exceeds **TEXEND**, the string hasn't been found. Store zeros into **WHERE** and quit.
9. If the first (or second or third) character matches, increment **.Y** and go back to step 6 until the zero-terminator appears.

Explanation

Compared with **SRCBIN**, this is a slow and inefficient way to look for a string in memory. But that's not necessarily a disadvantage.

In a data-oriented application such as a database program, you expect certain fields to be alphabetized. If you need a search routine, **SRCBIN** is much faster than **SRCLIN** as long as the data has already been sorted.

But in text-oriented software such as a word processor, the words in memory will be arranged grammatically instead of alphabetically. A binary search is faster than a sequential/linear search, but you'd have to waste time and memory alphabetizing the words in the text file before the binary routine could even begin. A linear search can start searching immediately.

The **SRCLIN** routine has two entry points. If you want to search from the beginning of the text area, JSR **SRCLIN**. But if you've found the first occurrence of the string and you want to find the second, third, fourth, and so on, JSR **SRCNEX**. When the **SRCLIN** and/or **SRCNEX** routines are finished, you can find the address of the string in **WHERE**, in **Z1**, and in the **A** and **X** registers.

Warning: The **SRCLIN** routine, as it's written, is sensitive to the case of characters. For example, if you're looking for *elephant* and the word *Elephant* appears as the first word in a sentence, **SRCLIN** won't consider them a match. A capital *E* isn't the same as a lowercase *e*. To ameliorate this problem, you can insert one of the conversion routines such as **MIXUPP** to convert strings to uppercase or lowercase.

Routine

```

C000          Z1      =      $FB
C000          CHROUT  =      $FFD2
C000          LINPRT  =      $BDCD          ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the I28
;
C000 20 2B C0          JSR  SRCLIN          ; search for the string
C003 20 CD BD BIGLOP   JSR  LINPRT          ; print the address
C006 A9 20            LDA  #32            ; and a space
C008 20 D2 FF          JSR  CHROUT          ; after the number
C00B AD 8F C0          LDA  WHERE          ; now check if not found
C00E 0D 8F C0          ORA  WHERE          ; if either is nonzero
C011 D0 01            BNE  ITSOK          ; continue
C013 60              RTS                  ; else, we're finished
C014 A0 00            LDY  #0
C016 B1 FB            PRLOOP LDA  (Z1),Y
C018 20 D2 FF          JSR  CHROUT
C01B C8              INY
C01C C0 0A            CPY  #10          ; print ten characters
C01E D0 F6            BNE  PRLOOP
C020 A9 0D            LDA  #13          ; print RETURN
C022 20 D2 FF          JSR  CHROUT
C025 20 3E C0          JSR  SRCNEX          ; search for the next one
C028 4C 03 C0          JMP  BIGLOP

C02B          SRCLIN  =      *
C02B AD 8B C0          LDA  TEXTSTA        ; beginning of the routine
C02E 8D 8F C0          STA  WHERE          ; starting address of text
C031 85 FB            STA  Z1            ; into the WHERE pointer
C033 AD 8C C0          LDA  TEXTSTA+1      ; and Z1
C036 8D 90 C0          STA  WHERE+1      ; high byte
C039 85 FC            STA  Z1+1          ; also
C03B 4C 4B C0          JMP  SRCLOP          ; skip over the next part
;
C03E          SRCNEX  =      *
; entry for SRCNEX—search for the next
; occurrence
C03E AD 8F C0          LDA  WHERE          ; take the WHERE pointer
C041 85 FB            STA  Z1            ; and store in Z1
C043 AD 90 C0          LDA  WHERE+1      ; high byte, too
C046 85 FC            STA  Z1+1
C048 20 6B C0          JSR  ZIINC          ; and count forward one to avoid repeating
C04B A0 00            SRCLOP LDY  #0          ; come back here for more

```

SRCLIN

```

C04D B9 91 C0 MOCHA LDA STRING,Y ; get a character
C050 F0 0E BEQ FOUNDIR ; if zero, it's the end of the string and it
; matches
C052 D1 FB CMP (Z1),Y ; compare it to the text
C054 F0 06 BEQ MORECM: ; if they're equal, continue
C056 20 6B C0 JSR ZIINC ; otherwise, increment the Z1 pointer
C059 4C 4B C0 JMP SRCLOP ; and check the next character
;
C05C C8 MORECM INY ; .Y increases by one
C05D D0 EE BNE MOCHA ; and go back for the next character
C05F 60 RTS ; this should never happen if the string is
; fewer than 255 characters
;
C060 A6 FB FOUNDIR LDX Z1 ; Z1 points to the string
C062 8E 8F C0 STX WHERE ; copy the address to WHERE
C065 A5 FC LDA Z1+1
C067 8D 90 C0 STA WHERE+1
C06A 60 RTS
C06B E6 FB ZIINC INC Z1 ; this just increments the Z1 pointer
C06D D0 02 BNE DONINC ; do the high byte if Z1 has counted up to
; zero
C06F E6 FC INC Z1+1 ; high byte
C071 A5 FB DONINC LDA Z1 ; see if we're done
C073 CD 8D C0 CMP TEXEND ; is it the same as the end address?
C076 D0 12 BNE OUTINC ; no, keep going
C078 A5 FC LDA Z1+1 ; the low byte matches
C07A CD 8E C0 CMP TEXEND+1 ; compare the high
C07D D0 0B BNE OUTINC ; if not equal, keep going
C07F 68 NOTFOUND PLA ; trash the calling address
C080 68 PLA ; pull the other byte
C081 A9 00 LDA #0
C083 8D 8F C0 STA WHERE ; zeros mean no match
C086 8D 90 C0 STA WHERE+1 ; in WHERE
C089 AA TAX
C08A 60 OUTINC RTS ; return (two different ways)
;
C08B 00 CC TEXSTA .WORD$CC00 ; starting address of the text
C08D FF CF TEXEND .WORD$CFFF ; last character
C08F 00 CC WHERE .WORD$CC00 ; pointer to the middle of the file
C091 46 49 4C STRING .ASC "FILE" ; name of text file to be searched
C095 00 BYTE 0

```

See also SRCBIN.

Name

Store system memory to expansion RAM

Description

STASH (in conjunction with **FETCH**) provides a simple RAMdisk for the 128. On a 128, with this routine and a RAM Expansion Module (either model 1700 or 1750), you can store the contents of a block of system memory into expansion RAM.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the REC registers set with the appropriate system-memory base address, expansion-RAM base address, and number of bytes to transfer. The X register should contain the system bank number.
2. Load Y with the value required in the command register (location 57089) to perform a stash operation.
3. JMP to the Kernal routine DMACALL.

Explanation

When a model 1700 or 1750 RAM Expansion Module is plugged into the 128, the RAM Expansion Controller chip (REC) in the unit appears at locations 57088–57098 in the 128's address space. This chip performs four different memory management operations. One of these—storing system memory to expansion RAM, or *stashing*—is carried out by this routine. (A discussion of the REC registers can be found in *Mapping the Commodore 128* from COMPUTE! Publications).

The program below relies on **STASH** to store the BASIC program currently in memory to one of four 32K blocks, or partitions, within the RAM expansion module. In order to insure later retrieval of the BASIC program (see the program provided with **FETCH**), certain pointers—specifically to the start and end of the program—are saved before the program itself.

To use the program listed here, assemble it and SYS to its starting address from BASIC. Following the SYS address, specify the partition where the current BASIC program is to be saved. For instance, assuming you assemble the program at 3072 as shown, you would enter **SYS3072,1** to store a BASIC program in partition 1.

When the SYS executes, BASIC stores the partition number you've specified in the accumulator. At this point, the machine language program takes over.

STASH (128 only)

First, it checks to see that the partition number provided is in the range 1-4. If it isn't, an error message to this effect is printed and the program terminates. Otherwise, the program continues by setting up the REC registers. The first one considered is the expansion bank register.

The two memory expansion modules currently available are partitioned into 64K blocks, or banks, of free RAM. The model 1700 has two banks (banks 0 and 1), for a total of 128K while the 1750 has eight banks (banks 0-7), for a total of 512K. Since the program here requires four separate 32K blocks of memory, banks 0 and 1 are used in the RAM expansion module, with partitions 1 and 2 assigned to bank 0, and partitions 3 and 4 to bank 1.

After the proper expansion bank number has been stored, the base address for the expansion-RAM module is set to either 0K or 32K. Following this, the system base address (ZP) to the BASIC pointers, number of bytes to stash (4), and the system bank number (0) are stored in the appropriate REC registers. **STASH** is then called.

STASH, in turn, accesses **DMACALL**, a Kernal routine that is generally called when performing operations involving expansion RAM. The requested REC command—the value ordinarily placed in 57089—is passed to **DMACALL** in the Y register.

Once the start- and end-of-BASIC pointers have been stashed, the BASIC program itself is stored in the same partition with a similar procedure. During the stash operation, the expansion-RAM base address increments automatically as each byte is transferred (bits 6 and 7 in 57098 are 00 by default). As a result, once the BASIC pointers have been stored, the expansion base address is ready for a second stash operation and requires no updating.

Note: A swap or verify routine would closely resemble the setup shown in this program. If you attempt to write one, be sure to change the contents of the command register (in .Y) for the proper operation (stash, fetch, swap, or verify) before calling **DMACALL**.

Routine

0C00	CHROUT	=	65490	
0C00	DMACALL	=	65360	; Kernal routine which passes command in .X ; to DMA controller
0C00	DMASYA	=	57090	; DMA system memory base address register
0C00	DMAEXA	=	57092	; DMA expansion memory base address ; register

STASH (128 only)

```

0C00          DMABNK = 57094 ; DMA expansion memory bank register
0C00          DMADAT = 57095 ; DMA number of bytes to transfer
0C00          TXTTAB = 45 ; start-of-BASIC pointer
0C00          TEXTTP = 4624 ; end-of-BASIC program pointer
0C00          ZP = 251

;
; Store BASIC program into RAM expansion
; bank 0 or 1 on 32K boundaries.
; Use this program along with the program
; under FETCH entry.
; make sure .A is in range 1-4
0C00 C9 01      CMP #1
0C02 90 5D      BCC PRMSG ; .A is less than 1, so print an error message
; and leave

0C04 C9 05      CMP #5
0C06 B0 59      BCS PRMSG ; .A is 5 or greater, so print error message
; and leave
; now subtract 1 to put it in range 0-3

0C08 38        SEC
0C09 E9 01      SBC #1
0C0B 4A        LSR ; determine RAM expansion bank
0C0C 8D 06 DF   STA DMABNK ; store it into DMA bank register
0C0F A9 00      LDA #0 ; determine 32K offset in each bank (high
; byte)

0C11 8D 04 DF   STA DMAEXA ; also store zero into base address for
; expansion memory (low byte)

0C14 90 02      BCC EXPOFF ; if partition number is 1 or 3, carry is clear,
; so 0K offset

0C16 A9 20      LDA #32 ; offset by 32K if partition number is 2 or 4
0C18 8D 05 DF EXPOFF STA DMAEXA+1 ; store in base address for expansion memory
; (high byte)

0C1B A5 2D      LDA TXTTAB ; save start-of-BASIC address pointer in zero
; page

0C1D 85 FB      STA ZP
0C1F A5 2E      LDA TXTTAB+1
0C21 85 FC      STA ZP+1
0C23 AD 10 12   LDA TEXTTP ; save end-of-BASIC address pointer in zero
; page

0C26 85 FD      STA ZP+2
0C28 AD 11 12   LDA TEXTTP+1
0C2B 85 FE      STA ZP+3
0C2D A9 FB      LDA #ZP ; store starting address of two pointers in
; system memory address register
; low byte

0C2F 8D 02 DF   STA DMASYA ; store number of bytes to transfer in DMA
; register (low byte)

0C32 A9 04      LDA #4

0C34 8D 07 DF   STA DMADAT
0C37 A9 00      LDA #0 ; store zero to high byte
0C39 8D 08 DF   STA DMADAT+1
0C3C 8D 03 DF   STA DMASYA+1 ; also store zero to high byte of system
; memory address
; put system memory bank number in .X
0C3F AA        TAX ; store BASIC pointers
0C40 20 6F 0C   JSR STASH ; Now store BASIC program directly after the
; pointers.
; determine number of bytes in BASIC
; program
0C43 38        SEC ; get end-of-BASIC low byte
0C44 AD 10 12   LDA TEXTTP ; subtract start-of-BASIC low byte
0C47 E5 2D      SBC TXTTAB ; store result into DMA register for number of
; bytes to transfer
0C49 8D 07 DF   STA DMADAT ; get end-of-BASIC high byte
; subtract start-of-BASIC high byte
0C4C AD 11 12   LDA TEXTTP+1 ; store to high byte of register
0C4F E5 2E      SBC TXTTAB+1 ; store starting address of BASIC as system
; base address
0C51 8D 08 DF   STA DMADAT+1
0C54 A5 2D      LDA TXTTAB

```


STASH (128 only)

```

0C56 8D 02 DF      STA  DMASYA
0C59 A5 2E         LDA  TXTTAB+1
0C5B 8D 03 DF      STA  DMASYA+1
                                ; System bank number is in X, DMAEXA
                                ; updates automatically (see 57098).
                                ; store BASIC program and RTS
                                ;
0C5E 4C 6F 0C      JMP  STASH
                                ;
0C61 A0 00         LDY  #0
                                ; index for PRTLOP
0C63 B9 74 0C     PRTMSG LDA  ERRMSG,Y
                                ; get a character for the error message
0C66 F0 06         BEQ  PRTEND
                                ; end on a zero byte
0C68 20 D2 FF     PRTLOP JSR  CHROUT
                                ; print the character if not zero
0C6B C8           INY
                                ; next character
0C6C D0 F5         BNE  PRTLOP
                                ; branch always
0C6E 60           RTS
                                ; leave the program
                                ;
                                ; Enter this routine with DMA registers set
                                ; up, and system bank number in X
                                ; command register (57089) value for stash
                                ; call DMA Kernal routine and RTS
                                ;
0C6F A0 80         STASH LDY  #%10000000
0C71 4C 50 FF     JMP  DMACALL
                                ;
0C74 4E 4F 54     ERRMSG .ASC "NOT A VALID PARTITION NUMBER"
                                ; error message
0C90 00           .BYTE 0
                                ; terminator byte

```

See also FETCH.

Name

Print a string on the 64 with STROUT

Description

STP64 relies on the BASIC routine STROUT to print a string to the current output device.

Prototype

1. Load the address of the string into .A (low byte) and .Y (high byte).
2. JSR to the STROUT routine in BASIC ROM to print the string (ending in a zero byte).

Explanation

Due to the limits of STROUT, **STP64** can print strings that are no longer than 255 bytes. Use **STRCPT** if you wish to print longer strings.

In the example, **STP64** sends the string to the screen (the default device). Output can be directed to other peripherals, such as printers, by changing the current output device number (location 154) or by calling the Kernal CHKOUT routine after opening a file to another device.

Warning: Be sure to place the string you intend to print outside your working code. If you place the string immediately after the JSR STROUT instruction, the 64 will interpret the characters of the string as if they were ML instructions.

Routine

```

C000          STROUT  =    43806
;
C000 A9 08      STP64  LDA  #<STRING ; Print string "HELLO".
C002 A0 C0      LDY  #>STRING ; low byte of string
C004 20 1E AB   JSR  STROUT ; high byte of string
C007 60         RTS      ; print the string
C008 48 45 4C STRING .ASC "HELLO" ; message to print
C00D 00         .BYTE 0 ; ending in a zero byte

```

See also PTABAD, PTABCT, STP128, STRCPT, STRLEN.

STP128 (128 only)

Name

Print a string on the 128 with PRIMM

Description

STP128 relies on the Kernal routine PRIMM to print a string to the current output device.

Prototype

1. JSR to PRIMM.
2. The ASCII string (ending in a zero byte) immediately follows in the code.

Explanation

Because it relies on PRIMM, **STP128** can only print strings that are no longer than 255 bytes. To print longer strings, use **STRCPT**.

In the example, **STP128** sends output to the screen (the default device). Output can be directed to other peripherals, such as printers, by changing the current output device number in location 154 or by opening a channel and performing a Kernal CHKOUT.

Warning: Always JSR to PRIMM rather than JMPing to it, since PRIMM uses the return address of the JSR to locate the string.

Routine

```
0C00          PRIMM      =      65405
;
0C00 20 7D FF STP128    JSR  PRIMM      ; Print HELLO.
0C03 48 45 4C STRING   .ASC  "HELLO"   ; print the string that follows
0C08 00                .BYTE 0        ; ASCII message to print
0C09 60                RTS             ; and ends in a zero byte
```

See also PTABAD, PTABCT, STP64, STRCPT, STRLEN.

Name

Check for STOP key by using the system STOP flag

Description

The flag at location 145 is used to detect when the STOP key has been pressed. A value of 127 in this location indicates that STOP has been pressed.

Prototype

1. Compare the contents of the STOP flag with 127.
2. Return with the status register Z flag set if STOP is pressed.

Explanation

Similar to the example routine for **STPKER**, this routine prints B's until STOP is pressed. Comparing the contents of STKEY with 127 sets or clears the Z flag just as if we had executed the Kernal STOP routine. That is, only if STOP is detected will $Z = 1$.

Note: The flag at 145 is updated only during normal IRQ interrupts. So if you write your own interrupt routine, use **STPKER** instead. One advantage of using **STPFLG**, however, is that only .A is affected, whereas **STPKER** affects both .A and .X.

Routine

```

C000          STKEY   =    145          ; STOP key flag
C000          CHROUT =   65490
;
; Print B's until stop is pressed,
; print B
C000 A9 42      LOOP   LDA   #66
C002 20 D2 FF   JSR   CHROUT
C005 20 0B C0   JSR   STPFLG ; check STOP key
C008 D0 F6     BNE   LOOP ; STOP key not pressed, so LOOP
C00A 60                RTS
;
; Check STOP key flag. If pressed, set Z flag
; in status register.
; check STOP key flag
; STOP key pressed?
; Z flag set accordingly
C00B A5 91      STPFLG LDA   STKEY
C00D C9 7F     CMP   #127
C00F 60                RTS

```

See also SHFCHK, STPKER.

STPKER

Name

Check for STOP key using Kernal STOP routine

Description

The Kernal STOP routine allows you to determine when the STOP key has been pressed. The zero flag is set if the STOP key, either alone or in combination with certain other keys, has been pressed. Otherwise, the Z flag is clear.

Prototype

1. JSR to the Kernal STOP routine and RTS (or simply JMP to STOP).
2. Upon return, the Z flag will be set if STOP is pressed.

Explanation :

To demonstrate this routine, we print A's while Z = 0. When STOP is pressed, Z = 1, and we clear the screen.

Note: Unlike STPFLG, STPKER is not IRQ-dependent. However, STPKER affects both .A and .X, whereas STPFLG only affects the accumulator.

Routine

```
C000          STOP      =    65505      ; Kernal STOP routine
C000          CHROUT   =    65490
;
; Print A's. When STOP key pressed, clear
; screen.
; print A
C000 A9 41      LOOP    LDA    #65
C002 20 D2 FF          JSR    CHROUT
C005 20 10 C0          JSR    STPKER      ; check STOP key
C008 D0 F6          BNE    LOOP          ; if zero is clear, then LOOP
C00A A9 93      CLRCHR  LDA    #147      ; clear screen
C00C 20 D2 FF          JSR    CHROUT
C00F 60          RTS
;
; Check STOP key. Z flag set if pressed.
; Kernal STOP key check
C010 20 E1 FF STPKER  JSR    STOP
C013 60          RTS
```

See also SHFCHK, STPFLG.

Name

Print a string with a custom printing routine

Description

This routine prints a zero-terminated ASCII string of any length. It's similar to the STROUT routine in Commodore 64 ROM.

Prototype

1. Load .A with the low byte of the address of the string and store it in zero page.
2. Do the same with the high byte of the address of the string.
3. Set an index (.Y) to zero to initialize the main loop (STRLOP).
4. Execute STRLOP until the zero byte is reached or until .Y reaches zero.
5. If the index rolls over, increment the high byte value in the zero-page pointer to the string address and continue STRLOP.

Explanation

You may find the built-in routines for printing strings (BASIC STROUT on the 64 and Kernal PRIMM on the 128) limiting in certain situations. Suppose, for instance, that while programming on your 64, you need to switch out BASIC ROM. It may not be convenient to switch BASIC back in during your program just to print a string with STROUT. Instead, you can simply incorporate **STRCPT** into your code.

Furthermore, there will be times when you'll need to print strings longer than 255 characters. Neither STROUT nor PRIMM can handle this chore. But **STRCPT**, designed to print longer strings, would be ideal.

Also, **STRCPT** is not specific to the 64 or the 128. For this reason you'll see **STRCPT** in many programs in this book.

Much like **STP64** and **STP128**, the important point to remember in using **STRCPT** is to place the string outside your working code. If you place the string in the working portion of **STRCPT**, your computer will attempt to execute the characters of the string as if they were ML instructions.

In the example, **STRCPT** sends the string to the screen (the default device). Output can be directed to other peripherals, such as printers, by opening a channel to the device and executing **CHKOUT**.

STRCPT

Routine

```

C000          CHROUT = 65490
C000          ZP      = 251
;
; Print HELLO with custom print routine
; (allows >255 characters).
C000 A9 1A      STRCPT LDA #<STRING ; low byte of string
C002 85 FB      STA ZP ; store it
C004 A0 C0      LDY #>STRING ; high byte of string
C006 84 FC      STY ZP+1 ; store it also
C008 A0 00      LDY #0 ; initialize index
C00A B1 FB      STRLOP LDA (ZP),Y ; load each character from string
C00C F0 0B      BEQ FINISH ; if zero byte, then finished
C00E 20 D2 FF   JSR CHROUT ; print character
C011 C8         INY ; for next character
C012 D0 F6      BNE STRLOP ; if not more than 256 bytes, then get next
; character
C014 E6 FC      INC ZP+1 ; otherwise, increment high byte of the
; pointer
C016 4C 0A C0   JMP STRLOP ; and continue printing
C019 60         FINISH RTS
;
C01A 48 45 4C  STRING .ASC "HELLO" ; message to print
C01F 00         .BYTE 0 ; ending in zero byte

```

See also PTABAD, PTABCT, STP128, STP64, STRLEN.

Name

Determine the length of a string

Description

From time to time, you'll want to find out how many characters are in a particular string. Perhaps a string-handling operation or a screen-positioning routine requires this information. **STRLEN** provides you with the length of any zero-terminated string containing fewer than 256 characters.

Prototype

1. Initialize .Y to 255 to serve as a character counter .
2. Begin counting characters in the string by incrementing .Y.
3. Check each character in the string for a zero byte.
4. If the character byte is not zero, go to step 2.
5. Otherwise, transfer the length of the string (in the Y register) to .A and RTS.

Explanation

In the example below, a line of text is entered into the text input buffer by using the BASIC routine INLIN. The address of this string data is stored in zero page. **STRLEN** then returns the length of the string in the accumulator. The framing routine prints the length with **NUMOUT** prior to returning to BASIC.

Note: An RTS cannot be used to return to BASIC here because the text in the input buffer would be interpreted by BASIC as a direct command. See **TXTINP** for a discussion of this problem.

Warning: The loop that searches for a string (\$C01B-\$C01F) will never end if there are no zero bytes within the 256 locations after the starting address of the buffer. The INLIN ROM routine always ends a string with the number 0, so this is not a concern within this example program. However, if you use this subroutine within your own programs, be sure the string you're examining is fewer than 256 characters long and that it ends with a zero byte.

Routine

C000	CHROUT	=	65490	
C000	BUF	=	512	
C000	ZP	=	251	
C000	INLIN	=	42336	; INLIN = 22176 on the 128
C000	LINPRT	=	48589	; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
				; Input a line of text until RETURN and
				; determine its length.

STRLEN

```
C000 20 60 A5      JSR  INLIN      ; input a line of text with the BASIC routine
                  ; INLIN
                  ;
                  ; Store the resulting text string address in
                  ; zero page.
C003 A9 00          LDA  #<BUF      ; low byte of input buffer
C005 85 FB          STA  ZP        ; store in zero page
C007 A0 02          LDY  #>BUF      ; high byte of input buffer
C009 84 FC          STY  ZP+1      ; also store in zero page
                  ;
C00B 20 19 C0      JSR  STRLEN     ; get string length
                  ;
                  ; Print length with NUMOUT.
C00E AA           NUMOUT TAX        ; place low byte of number in .X
C00F A9 00          LDA  #0        ; high byte is zero
C011 20 CD BD      JSR  LINPRT     ; print the length
C014 A2 80          LDX  #128      ; error handler code for READY message
C016 6C 00 03      JMP  (768)     ; return to BASIC and print READY prompt
                  ;
                  ; Return the length of the string (<256
                  ; characters) in .A.
                  ; String's address is in zero page.
C019 A0 FF          STRLEN LDY  #255
C01B C8           LENLOP  INY
C01C B1 FB          LDA  (ZP),Y    ; index into string
C01E D0 FB          BNE  LENLOP    ; load the next character
C020 98           TYA             ; check for zero byte
                  ; you've reached the end of the string, so
                  ; return length in .A
C021 60           RTS
```

See also PTABAD, PTABCT, STP128, STP64, STRCPT.

Name

Subtract one byte value from another

Description

The SBC (SuBtract with Carry) instruction subtracts a value from the number currently in the accumulator. The example program illustrates the basic technique for subtracting one number from another.

Prototype

1. Set the carry flag with SEC.
2. Load the accumulator (LDA) with the first number.
3. Subtract the second number (SBC) and handle the result as you wish.

Explanation

The example program waits for the user to press two keys. If C (ASCII 67) is pressed first, followed by A (ASCII 65), the number 65 is subtracted from 67 and the result (2) prints to the screen.

If you switch the two letters, the calculation of 65 - 67, (which should be -2) gives a result of 254 instead. It's important to remember that byte values are limited to the range 0-255 and that if you add or subtract two numbers that result in a number outside of that range, the values wrap around at 256. When such an overflow occurs, the carry flag will be set (after addition) or clear (after subtraction).

An interesting side effect of this fact is that the compare instructions—CMP, CPX, and CPY—which compare two numbers, act like SBC. If you subtract a smaller (or equal) number, carry is set. If you subtract a larger number, carry is clear. Thus, after a compare instruction, carry is clear if the number in .A, .X, or .Y is smaller than the second number.

Routine

```

C000          GETIN   =   $FFE4
C000          LINPRT =   $BD0D      ; LINPRT = $8E32 on the 128
C000          CHROUT =   $FFD2
;
C000 20 37 C0          JSR   GETKEY   ; get a key (ASCII value)
C003 8D 3D C0          STA   NUMBER1 ; store it
C006 20 37 C0          JSR   GETKEY   ; get a second key
C009 8D 3E C0          STA   NUMBER2 ; store it, too
C00C AE 3D C0          LDX   NUMBER1 ; now print it
C00F A9 00             LDA   #0
C011 20 CD BD          JSR   LINPRT
C014 A9 0D             LDA   #13
C016 20 D2 FF          JSR   CHROUT   ; print RETURN
C019 AE 3E C0          LDX   NUMBER2 ; second number

```

SUBBYT

```
C01C A9 00          LDA #0
C01E 20 CD BD      JSR LINPRT      ; print it
C021 A9 0D          LDA #13
C023 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT      ; RETURN again
;
C026 AD 3D C0 SUBBYT LDA NUMBER1      ; the first number
C029 38             SEC                ; set the carry flag
C02A ED 3E C0      SBC NUMBER2      ; subtract the second
C02D 8D 3F C0      STA TOTAL        ; store it
C030 AA             TAX
C031 A9 00          LDA #0
C033 20 CD BD      JSR LINPRT      ; and print it
C036 60             RTS
;
C037 20 E4 FF GETKEY JSR GETIN
C03A F0 FB          BEQ GETKEY
C03C 60             RTS
;
C03D 00             NUMBER1 .BYTE 0
C03E 00             NUMBER2 .BYTE 0
C03F 00             TOTAL   .BYTE 0
```

See also SUBFP, SUBINT.

Name

Subtract one floating-point number from another

Description

Given a number in the second floating-point accumulator (FAC2) and another number in FAC1, this routine subtracts (FAC2 minus FAC1) and puts the result in FAC1.

Prototype

1. Store a number in FAC2.
2. Store another number in FAC1.
3. Call the ROM routine FSUBT.

Explanation

The example routine subtracts 300 from 258. The result is -42, which is converted to ASCII numbers and is printed to the screen. Note the abundance of ROM routine calls, which generally make it easy to handle floating-point values.

Routine

C000		ZP	=	\$FB	
C000		CHROUT	=	\$FFD2	
C000		FSUBT	=	\$B853	; FSUBT = \$8831 on the 128—subtract FAC1
					; from FAC2; result in FAC1
C000		MOVEF	=	\$BC0F	; MOVEF = \$8C3B on the 128—moves FAC1
					; to FAC2
C000		GIVAYF	=	\$B391	; GIVAYF = \$AF03 on the 128—converts
					; integer to floating point
C000		FOUT	=	\$BDDD	; FOUT = \$8E42 on the 128—converts FAC1
					; to ASCII string
					;
					; Convert the numbers 258 and 300 to
					; floating point and subtract.
C000	A9	01	LDA	#>258	; high byte of 258
C002	A0	02	LDY	#<258	; low byte
C004	20	91	B3	JSR	GIVAYF
					; convert it; now it's in FAC1
C007	20	0F	BC	JSR	MOVEF
					; move FAC1 to FAC2
C00A	A9	01	LDA	#>300	; high byte of 300
C00C	A0	2C	LDY	#<300	; low byte
C00E	20	91	B3	JSR	GIVAYF
					; convert it
					; FAC1 now holds 300, and FAC2 holds 258.
C011	20	29	C0	JSR	SUBFP
					; subtract (258 - 300); the result (-42) is left
					; in FAC1
C014	20	DD	BD	JSR	FOUT
					; convert to ASCII
C017	85	FB	STA	ZP	; pointer
C019	84	FC	STY	ZP+1	; to the string

SUBFP

C01B	A0	00		LDY	#0	
C01D	B1	FB	PRTLOP	LDA	(ZP),Y	
C01F	D0	01		BNE	PRNIT	
C021	60			RTS		
C022	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	
C025	C8			INY		
C026	D0	F5		BNE	PRTLOP	
C028	60			RTS		
C029	20	53	B8	JSR	FSUBT	;
C02C	60			RTS		; subtract FAC1 from FAC2
						; the result is in FAC1

See also SUBBYT, SUBINT.

Name

Subtract one 2-byte integer from another

Description

A single opcode (SBC) handles subtraction, but you have to set the carry flag first. This routine illustrates how to do multiple-byte subtraction.

Prototype

1. Set the carry flag (SEC).
2. Load the low byte into .A (LDA).
3. Subtract with carry (SBC) the second byte.
4. Store the result (STA).
5. Repeat the LDA, SBC, STA sequence for higher bytes.

Explanation

The rule to remember for both adding and subtracting is always to clear the carry flag before adding and always to set carry before subtracting. Start with the low byte and work toward the higher bytes. The SEC (SEt Carry) instruction is needed only once at the beginning of the multiple-byte subtraction. After the first byte is subtracted, carry takes care of itself.

The example program takes the value in the pointer from VARTAB (the end of the BASIC text area) and subtracts the address of the beginning of the BASIC text area. It then prints a number that represents the number of bytes used by the BASIC program in memory. Since BASIC puts two zeros at the end of a program, the number 2 will print if you have no program in memory.

Note: If the number subtracted is larger than the other number (500 - 1120, for example), the carry flag will be clear when the routine finishes, and the result will wrap around from \$0000 to \$FFFF or below.

Routine

C000			TXTTAB	=	43		; TXTTAB = 45 on the 128—beginning of
							; BASIC program text
C000			VARTAB	=	45		; end of the text for BASIC (substitute
							; TXTP = 4624 for the 128)
C000			LINPRT	=	\$BDCD		; LINPRT = \$8E32 on the 128
							;
C000	A5	2D	LDA		VARTAB		; the end of BASIC (substitute TXTP for the
							; 128)
C002	8D	35	CO		STA	NUM1	
C005	A5	2E	LDA		VARTAB+1		; high byte (substitute TXTP+1 for the 128)
C007	8D	36	CO		STA	NUM1+1	
C00A	A5	2B	LDA		TXTTAB		; the start of BASIC

SUBINT

```
C00C 8D 37 C0      STA  NUM2
C00F A5 2C          LDA  TXTTAB+1 ; high byte
C011 8D 38 C0      STA  NUM2+1
;
; The two numbers have been prepared.
C014 20 21 C0      JSR  SUBINT ; subtract the second number from the first
;
; low byte of the result
C017 AE 39 C0      LDX  MINUS
C01A AD 3A C0      LDA  MINUS+1 ; high byte
C01D 20 CD BD      JSR  LINPRT ; print it
C020 60            RTS
;
; always set carry before subtracting
C021 38            SUBINT SEC
C022 AD 35 C0      LDA  NUM1 ; low byte first
C025 ED 37 C0      SBC  NUM2 ; subtract
C028 8D 39 C0      STA  MINUS ; and store the result
C02B AD 36 C0      LDA  NUM1+1 ; high byte
C02E ED 38 C0      SBC  NUM2+1 ; subtract (don't SEC)
C031 8D 3A C0      STA  MINUS+1
C034 60            RTS ; finished
;
C035 00 00 NUM1 .BYTE 0,0
C037 00 00 NUM2 .BYTE 0,0
C039 00 00 MINUS .BYTE 0,0
```

See also SUBBYT, SUBFP.

Name

Save processor registers in memory

Description

At times you'll face a situation where you'll need to go to a subroutine that might change the contents of the processor registers .A, .X, .Y, and .P—but you want to remember the current state of the registers when the subroutine ends. This routine saves the registers in memory, so you can find them again when you return.

Prototype :

1. Push .P onto the stack temporarily.
2. Store .A, .X, and .Y in memory.
3. Pull .P from the stack, but into .A (PLA, not PLP).
4. Store .A into memory.

Explanation

The processor status register contains the various flags—zero, negative, overflow, carry, and so on—and the flags can change very quickly. (A single LDA will often change several flags.) Because it's so fragile, it must be handled first. After we have pushed it temporarily onto the stack, the rest of the subroutine is fairly simple. Just store the registers into memory: TEMPA, TEMPX, and TEMPY. Finally, the P register is pulled off the stack (into the accumulator this time), and it's stashed in TEMPP.

Note: This routine is slower and takes more memory than the routine that saves the registers onto the stack. It does have one advantage, though: This one can exist as a subroutine. You can JSR SVREGM before calling the routine that changes the registers. The other routine must be in-line code. If you have several areas where the registers must be remembered, this subroutine will save memory in the long run. On the other hand, if you find yourself constantly saving and restoring the registers, your program design may be flawed; this sort of routine can be replaced by various other techniques.

Routine

```

C000 08          SVREGM  PHP          ; first push the .P status to retrieve later
C001 8D 0F C0   STA  TEMPA        ; save .A
C004 8E 10 C0   STX  TEMPX        ; save .X
C007 8C 11 C0   STY  TEMPY        ; save .Y
C00A 68          PLA             ; get .P from the stack (into .A this time)
C00B 8D 12 C0   STA  TEMPP        ;

```


SVREGM

```
CODE 60                                RTS                                ; we're done
                                           ;
C00F 00                                TEMPX .BYTE 00                    ; Variables
C010 00                                TEMPY .BYTE 00
C011 00                                TEMPA .BYTE 00
C012 00                                TEMPP .BYTE 00
```

See also RSREGM, SVREGS.

Name

Save and restore registers on the stack within a routine (in-line code)

Description

Occasionally, you'll have a situation where the *A*, *X*, and *Y* registers hold important information, but you'll need to call a subroutine that may leave them in an indeterminate state. The solution is to save them as you enter the routine and then restore them before exiting. The fastest way to store registers is to push them onto the stack.

Prototype

1. Push *.P* (processor status) onto the stack.
2. Push *.A* and then transfer *.X* and *.Y* to *.A* for pushing.
3. Execute the routine.
4. Restore the registers by pulling them off the stack (in reverse order).

Explanation

The processor status contains the various flags (*.N*, *.Z*, *.C*, and so forth) and can change with a single LDA, so we have to push it first (PHP). Next, we have to save the accumulator, because it's not possible to push *.X* and *.Y* directly. After *.P* and *.A* have been saved, *.X* is transferred to *.A* (TXA) and pushed (PHA), and then *.Y* is transferred and pushed.

The four important registers are now on the stack. The routine at \$C006-\$C01E is unimportant (it prints the letters A-Z), but it does mess up the contents of all registers. So, when it's finished, we get back the registers by pulling the values back. Since they went on the stack in the order *.P*, *.A*, *.X*, and *.Y*, it's necessary to pull them off in the reverse order (*.Y*, *.X*, *.A*, and *.P*). When that's done, the RTS sends us back to the calling routine.

Warning: You must do the pushing and pulling within the same routine. The **SVREGS** routine cannot be used as a separate subroutine because JSR needs the stack to preserve the program counter. If you were to use **SVREGS** as a subroutine, the JSR would put two bytes onto the stack; then **SVREGS** would push *.P*, *.A*, *.X*, and *.Y* onto the stack. The RTS would cause two bytes to be pulled off (the return address), but they would be the former contents of *.X* and *.Y*, and the program would return to some unknown location.

SVREGS

In general, if you push a certain number of bytes onto the stack within a subroutine, you must pull the same number off before you RTS.

Routine

```
C000          CHROUT = $FFD2
C000 08      SVREGS  PHF          ; push the processor status, which is most
C001 48          PHA          ; fragile
C002 8A          TXA          ; push the accumulator, because we need it
C003 48          PHA          ; for the next two pushes
C004 98          TYA          ; X into .A
C005 48          PHA          ; push it
                          ; Y into .A
                          ; push it
                          ; .P, .A, .X, and .Y have been pushed onto
                          ; the stack
                          ; in that order.
                          ; now a dummy routine, just to change the
                          ; registers
C006 A2 02      LDX #2          ; X is changed
C008 A9 41      LDA #65         ; A is changed
C00A A0 0D      OUTLOP  LDY #13  ; Y is changed
C00C 20 D2 FF  INLOOP  JSR CHROUT ; print it
C00F 18          CLC          ; P is changed
C010 69 01      ADC #1          ; increase the accumulator
C012 88          DEY          ; count down 13 to 1
C013 D0 F7      BNE INLOOP      ; print 13 characters
C015 48          PHA          ; save .A (a save within a save)
C016 A9 0D      LDA #13         ; carriage return
C018 20 D2 FF  JSR CHROUT      ; new line
C01B 68          PLA          ; get back .A
C01C CA          DEX
C01D D0 EB      BNE OUTLOP      ; go back for the second 13 letters
                          ;
                          ; By now the registers have been
                          ; changed, so we restore them in
                          ; reverse order (.Y, .X, .A, .P).
C01F 68          PLA          ; pull
C020 A6          TAY          ; put it in .Y
C021 68          PLA          ; pull
C022 AA          TAX          ; into .X
C023 68          PLA          ; pull .A
C024 28          PLP          ; pull .P
C025 60          RTS          ; return, with all registers intact
```

See also RSREGM, SVREGM.

Name

Memory swap

Description

Whenever you need to swap two blocks of memory, use this routine. On the 128, **SWAPIT** can even exchange memory from one bank to another.

Prototype

This is a two-part routine. In an initialization routine (here, either **SWAPCO** or **SWAPSC**):

1. Store the starting address of the lower memory block to be swapped in **ZP** and the address of the higher memory block in **ZP+2**.
2. The subroutine **ONELES**, called from **SWAPCO** and **SWAPSC**, insures that the memory block pointed to by **ZP** has the lower address of the two blocks to be swapped. (If the address of the memory block in **ZP** is higher, a second subroutine called **FLIPZP** switches the addresses in **ZP** and **ZP+2**.)

In **SWAPIT** itself:

1. Jump to the subroutine **OVLAP** to determine whether the two memory blocks overlap. In the process, store the number of bytes to be swapped in a counter (**COUNTR**).
2. If the two memory blocks overlap, return from **OVLAP** with the carry flag set to indicate that an error has occurred.
3. Continue with **SWAPIT** if the carry is clear (meaning there is no overlap). Otherwise, return to the main calling program with the carry set.
4. Load a byte from the first block. Store it in **.X** temporarily while a byte is read from the second memory block.
5. Store the byte from the second block into the first. Recall the byte in **.X** and store it into the second memory block.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 until the bytes counter (**COUNTR**) reaches zero.
7. Clear the carry flag before returning from **SWAPIT**.

Explanation

In the example program, blocks of memory representing the screen are exchanged—first color and then text memory. You could use a routine like this one in setting up a help screen. Whenever the user pressed a certain key, the help screen

would be swapped with the current screen. Later, the normal screen would be reenabled.

Enter any key within the main loop (MAINLP) of this program, and the corresponding character prints to the screen. The exceptions are the F1, F7, and left-arrow (←) key. Left arrow exits the program, while F1 and F7 cause screen swaps. F1 saves the current screen as a help screen (as long as `HELPFL = 0`) and F7 retrieves it. Once the help screen is displayed, any key you press restores the normal text screen.

On the 128, since the function keys are predefined as BASIC commands, you'll need to enter the following line before running the program:

```
KEY1,CHR$(133): KEY7,CHR$(136)
```

A number of subroutines are called in preparation for **SWAPIT**. The first one (either **SWAPCO** or **SWAPSC**, depending on whether you're swapping color or text memory) stores the addresses of the two memory blocks to swap in zero page. Before exiting this routine, a second subroutine, **ONELES**, is accessed. **ONELES** (calling the subroutine **FLIPZP** if it's needed) insures that the address pointed to by the first zero-page pointer (**ZP**) is lower in memory than that in the second zero-page pointer (**ZP + 2**).

Once the pointers are created, **SWAPIT** is called. The first thing **SWAPIT** does is check for overlap between the two blocks of memory that are going to be swapped. This is handled by the subroutine **OVLAP**.

OVLAP initially stores the number of bytes you want to swap—previously defined as **NUMBER**—in a two-byte counter (**COUNTR**). At the same time, it adds this number to the block that's lower in memory (in **ZP**). If the resulting number is higher than the start of the second memory block, the carry flag is set to indicate overlap. So, upon returning to **SWAPIT**, if carry is set, an error message is printed, and the program terminates.

If there's no overlap, **SWAPIT** continues, exchanging bytes one at a time from the two memory blocks until **COUNTR** decrements to zero.

On the 128, memory can be swapped from bank to bank. Two Kernal routines specific to the 128 are required: **INDFET**, in place of the **LDA (ZP),Y at \$C095**, and **INDSTA**, for the

STA (ZP),Y at \$C09A. In each case, you must substitute either three or four instructions. Look at MVU128 or MOVEDN for details on how to set this up.

Routine

```

C000          ZP      =    251
C000          CHROUT =   65490
C000          GETIN  =   65508
C000          BLOCK1 =    1024 ; memory block 1
C000          COLBL1 =   55296 ; color block 1
C000          BLOCK2 =   14384 ; memory block 2
C000          COLBL2 =   15384 ; color block 1
;
; Save the current screen as a help screen on
; F1. Recall it on F7.
; Quit on left-arrow key.
; initialize HELPFL
;
C000 A9 00          LDA #0
C002 8D 21 C1      STA  HELPFL
C005 A9 93          LDA #147 ; clear the screen
C007 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C00A 20 E4 FF      JSR  GETIN ; get a keypress
C00D F0 FB          BEQ  MAINLP ; if no keypress
C00F C9 5F          CMP  #95 ; is it the left-arrow key?
C011 F0 0D          BEQ  EXIT ; if so, leave the program
C013 C9 85          CMP  #133 ; is it F1?
C015 F9 0A          BEQ  SAVEHS ; if so, save a help screen
C017 C9 88          CMP  #136 ; is it F7?
C019 F0 1D          BEQ  HELP ; if so, recall a help screen
C01B 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT ; otherwise, print the character
C01E D0 EA          BNE  MAINLP ; branch always
C020 60            EXIT     RTS ; exit the program
;
; SAVEHS saves a help screen.
C021 20 65 C0      JSR  SWAPCO ; set zero-page pointers to color memory
; for two screens
C024 20 8D C0      JSR  SWAPIT ; swap color memory for the two screens
C027 B0 2E          BCS  ERROR ; if color memory overlaps, print error
; message
C029 20 79 C0      JSR  SWAPSC ; set zero-page pointers to text for two
; screens
C02C 20 8D C0      JSR  SWAPIT ; swap text for the two screens
C02F B0 26          BCS  ERROR ; if screen memory overlaps, print error
; message and leave
; to indicate help screen has been saved
C031 A9 01          LDA #1
C033 8D 21 C1      STA  HELPFL
C036 D0 CD          BNE  CLRCHR ; and continue by clearing screen
;
; HELP recalls a help screen.
C038 AD 21 C1      LDA  HELPFL ; determine whether a help screen has
; previously been saved
C03B F0 CD          BEQ  MAINLP ; no help screen has been saved
C03D 20 4B C0      JSR  SWAP2 ; swap in the help screen
C040 20 E4 FF      JSR  GETIN ; wait for keypress to swap in normal screen
C043 F0 FB          BEQ  HELPLP ; if no keypress
C045 20 4B C0      JSR  SWAP2 ; swap in the normal screen
C048 4C 0A C0      JMP  MAINLP ; and continue
;
; Swap primary and help screens.
C04B 20 65 C0      JSR  SWAPCO ; set zero-page pointers to color memory for
; two screens
C04E 20 8D C0      JSR  SWAPIT ; swap color memory for two screens

```

SWAPIT

```

C051 20 79 C0      JSR  SWAPSC      ; set zero-page pointers to text for two
                                ; screens
C054 4C 8D C0      JMP  SWAPIT      ; swap text for two screens and RTS
                                ;
                                ; Error message for overlap of two memory
                                ; blocks.
C057 A0 00          ERROR LDY  #0           ; as an index
C059 B9 04 C1 ERRLP LDA  ERRMSG,Y      ; print the message character by character
C05C F0 06          BEQ  EREXIT      ; exit on a zero byte
C05E 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT      ; print a character
C061 C8            INY           ; for next character
C062 D0 F5          BNE  ERRLP      ; branch always
C064 60            EREXIT RTS
                                ;
                                ; SWAPCO initializes ZP to screen 1 color
                                ; and ZP+2 to screen 2 color.
C065 A9 00          SWAPCO LDA  #<COLBL1 ; store low and high bytes of screen 1 color
                                ; to ZP
C067 85 FB          STA  ZP
C069 A0 D8          LDY  #>COLBL1
C06B 84 FC          STY  ZP+1
C06D A9 18          LDA  #<COLBL2      ; store low and high bytes of screen 2 color to
                                ; zero page also
C06F 85 FD          STA  ZP+2
C071 A0 3C          LDY  #>COLBL2
C073 84 FE          STY  ZP+3
C075 20 BC C0      JSR  ONELES      ; make sure screen at ZP is lower in memory
                                ; than the one at ZP+2
C078 60            RTS
                                ;
                                ; SWAPSC initializes ZP to screen 1 text and
                                ; ZP+2 to screen 2 text.
C079 A9 00          SWAPSC LDA  #<BLOCK1 ; store low and high bytes of screen 1 text
                                ; to ZP
C07B 85 FB          STA  ZP
C07D A0 04          LDY  #>BLOCK1
C07F 84 FC          STY  ZP+1
C081 A9 30          LDA  #<BLOCK2      ; store low and high bytes of screen 2 text to
                                ; zero page also
C083 85 FD          STA  ZP+2
C085 A0 38          LDY  #>BLOCK2
C087 84 FE          STY  ZP+3
C089 20 BC C0      JSR  ONELES      ; make sure screen at ZP is lower in memory
                                ; than the one at ZP+2
C08C 60            RTS
                                ;
                                ; SWAPIT swaps NUMBER bytes at the
                                ; addresses pointed to by ZP and ZP+2.
C08D 20 E1 C0      SWAPIT JSR  OVLAP      ; check for overlapping blocks and store
                                ; number in COUNTR
C090 90 01          BCC  INITSP      ; memory blocks don't overlap, so continue
C092 60            RTS             ; memory blocks overlap, so return and
                                ; print error message
                                ;
C093 A0 00          INITSP LDY  #0           ; as an index in SWAPLP
C095 B1 FB          SWAPLP LDA  (ZP),Y      ; read a byte from first block
                                ; On the 128, use INDFET in place of the
                                ; previous instruction
                                ; to swap memory from bank to bank
                                ; see MVU128 and MOVEDN for details
                                ; store it in .X
C097 AA            TAX
C098 B1 FD          LDA  (ZP+2),Y      ; read a byte from second block (if needed,
                                ; use INDFET on 128)

```

C09A	91	FB		STA	(ZP),Y	; store byte from BLOCK2 into BLOCK1 ; On the 128, use INDSTA in place of the ; previous instruction
C09C	8A			TXA		; to swap memory from bank to bank ; see MVU128 and MOVEDN for details
C09D	91	FD		STA	(ZP+2),Y	; put byte from BLOCK1 in .A ; store byte from BLOCK1 into BLOCK2 (if ; needed, INDSTA on 128)
C09F	E6	FB		INC	ZP	; increment low byte of BLOCK1 and ; BLOCK2
C0A1	D0	02		BNE	INCBL2	; increment BLOCK2 by 1
C0A3	E6	FC		INC	ZP+1	; increment high byte of BLOCK1
C0A5	E6	FD	INCBL2	INC	ZP+2	; increment low byte of BLOCK2
C0A7	D0	02		BNE	LENCHK	; low byte has yet to turn over, so skip ; forward
C0A9	E6	FE		INC	ZP+3	; increment high byte of BLOCK2
C0AB	CE	1D	CI	DEC	COUNTR	; decrement low byte of counter
C0AE	D0	E5		BNE	SWAPLP	; if not equal, more remains, so continue ; swapping bytes
C0B0	CE	1E	CI	DEC	COUNTR+1	; otherwise, decrement high byte of counter
C0B3	AD	1E	CI	LDA	COUNTR+1	; keep swapping until last page of buffer ; has been swapped
C0B6	C9	FF		CMP	#255	; high byte goes from 0 to 255 on last page
C0B8	D0	DB		BNE	SWAPLP	; we've yet to reach the last page, so ; continue switching bytes
C0BA	18			CLC		
C0BB	60			RTS		
						; Make address pointed to by ZP less than ; address pointed to by ZP+2.
C0BC	A5	FE	ONELES	LDA	ZP+3	; high byte of screen 2 (text or color)
C0BE	C5	FC		CMP	ZP+1	; compare with high byte of screen 1 (text ; or color)
C0C0	F0	03		BEQ	LOWCMP	; if equal, compare low bytes
C0C2	90	08		BCC	FLIPZP	; screen at ZP is higher in memory, so flip ; them
C0C4	60			RTS		; no flip necessary based on high bytes ; alone
C0C5	A5	FD	LOWCMP	LDA	ZP+2	; low byte of screen 2 (text or color)
C0C7	C5	FB		CMP	ZP	; compare with low byte of screen 2 (text or ; color)
C0C9	90	01		BCC	FLIPZP	; screen at ZP is higher, so flip zero-page ; pointers
C0CB	60			RTS		; no flip necessary
						; Switch ZP pointers, low bytes first.
C0CC	A5	FB	FLIPZP	LDA	ZP	; get low byte for first screen (text or color)
C0CE	48			PHA		; store it on the stack
C0CF	A5	FD		LDA	ZP+2	; get low byte for second screen (text or ; color)
C0D1	85	FB		STA	ZP	; store as low byte for first screen
C0D3	68			PLA		; restore low byte for first screen
C0D4	85	FD		STA	ZP+2	; store as low byte for second screen
C0D6	A5	FC		LDA	ZP+1	; now do the same for the high bytes
C0D8	48			PHA		
C0D9	A5	FE		LDA	ZP+3	
C0DB	85	FC		STA	ZP+1	
C0DD	68			PLA		
C0DE	85	FE		STA	ZP+3	
C0E0	60			RTS		
						; Determine whether memory blocks ; overlap and store number of bytes ; in COUNTR.

SWAPIT

```

C0E1 AD 1B C1 OVRLAP LDA NUMBER ; store low byte of number of bytes to swap
C0E4 8D 1D C1 STA COUNTR
C0E7 18 CLC ; add this to the low byte of the lower
; block

C0E8 65 FB ADC ZP
C0EA 8D 1F C1 STA SUM ; and store low byte result in SUM
C0ED AA TAX ; save low byte result in .X
C0EE AD 1C C1 LDA NUMBER+1 ; store high byte also
C0F1 8D 1E C1 STA COUNTR+1
C0F4 65 FC ADC ZP+1 ; add this to the high byte of lower block
C0F6 8D 20 C1 STA SUM+1 ; and again store high-byte result
C0F9 C5 FE CMP ZP+3 ; compare high-byte result with high byte
; of second block

C0FB 90 06 BCC NOTOVR ; if second-block high byte is greater,
; there's no overlap
C0FD 8A TXA ; otherwise, check the low bytes; get low
; byte of addition from .X
C0FE C5 FD CMP ZP+2 ; compare with low byte of second block
C100 90 01 BCC NOTOVR ; if second-block low byte is greater, there's
; no overlap
C102 38 SEC ; set the carry flag to indicate overlapping
; memory blocks
C103 60 NOTOVR RTS

C104 42 4C 4F ERRMSG .ASC "BLOCK 1 AND 2 OVERLAP!"
C11A 00 .BYTE 0 ; terminator byte
C11B E8 03 NUMBER .WORD 1000 ; number of bytes to swap
C11D 00 00 COUNTR .WORD 0 ; counter for the remaining number of bytes
; to swap
C11F 00 00 SUM .WORD 0 ; two bytes for sum of BLOCK1 and
; NUMBER
C121 00 HELPF .BYTE 0 ; help screen flag (1 = help screen in
; memory)

```

See also MOVEDN, MVU128, MVU64.

Name

Switch uppercase to lowercase and vice versa

Description

SWITCH converts the character value in the accumulator to lowercase if it was uppercase, or to uppercase if it was lowercase. One application for such a routine is in a word processor program.

Prototype

1. Check the character value to see whether it lies within one of the three valid ranges for alphabetic characters: decimal 193–218, 97–122, or 65–90.
2. If it doesn't, exit the routine, leaving `.A` intact.
3. If the character in `.A` is within one of the three ranges, shift left with `ASL`, moving bit 7 into the carry flag.
4. If carry is clear, the character is either in the range 97–122 or 65–90. In this situation, flip bit 6, changing the case. (Bit 6 will later shift right to become bit 5.) Otherwise, go to step 5 because the character is in the range 193–218.
5. Perform an `LSR` and then end the routine with `RTS`.

Explanation

In the example program, a character is fetched from the keyboard. If it's a letter, its case is changed with the subroutine **SWITCH**. The character is then printed and another keypress accepted. To exit the program, press `RETURN`.

Once it has been established that the accumulator contains a letter between `A` and `Z`, **SWITCH** uses the character's bit pattern to carry out the actual case switching. Take a look at the bit patterns of characters within the three ASCII ranges before and after case switching:

	Before:		After:	
	Range	Bit Pattern	Range	Bit Pattern
Lowercase	65–90	%010x xxxx	97–122	%011x xxxx
Uppercase 1	97–122	%011x xxxx	65–90	%010x xxxx
Uppercase 2	192–218	%110x xxxx	65–90	%010x xxxx

Within the bit pattern, a 0 designates bits that are always off, and a 1, bits that are always on. An `x` represents bits that can be on or off.

Converting a character in the range 65–90 to the range 97–122, or vice versa, requires that you flip bit 5. To go from the range 192–218 to 65–90, turn off bit 7.

SWITCH

This is exactly what occurs within FLIPIT. The bits of the letter character are shifted one position to the left with ASL. If the carry flag is set, the character is in the range 192–218. At this point, it's simply a matter of restoring it to its original bit pattern, but with bit 7 off. This is accomplished with LSR, which always shifts a zero into bit 7.

If carry is clear, the character must be in the range 65–90 or 97–122. In this case, bit 6 is flipped (it was previously bit 5), and an LSR is performed, moving bit 6 back to its proper position.

Note: **SWITCH** can easily be modified to narrow the range of characters converted. For instance, to convert only *a*, *b*, and *c* from the lowercase set to uppercase, change RANGE2 to

RANGE2 .BYTE 219,123,68

Also, notice that **SWITCH** uses the Y register. If you access this routine from within a loop indexed by .Y, be sure to save this register to a temporary location first and restore it upon returning.

Routine

```
C000          CHROUT  = 65490
C000          GETIN   = 65508
C000          DSFTCM  = 8      ; DSFTCM = 11 on the 128
C000          ESFTCM  = 9      ; ESFTCM = 12 on the 128
;
; Switch case of input, quit on RETURN.
; set for lowercase mode
C000 A9 0E          LDA #14
C002 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C005 A9 08          LDA #DSFTCM ; disable SHIFT/Commodore key
C007 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C00A 20 E4 FF WAIT  JSR GETIN ; get a character
C00D F0 FB          BEQ WAIT ; if no character, then wait
C00F 20 1F C0      JSR SWITCH ; switch case of input
C012 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT ; print it
C015 C9 0D          CMP #13 ; is it RETURN?
C017 D0 F1          BNE WAIT ; no, so get another character
C019 A9 09          LDA #ESFTCM ; enable SHIFT/Commodore key
C01B 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C01E 60
;
; Switch case of ASCII character in .A.
; index to table
; index goes 2-1-0
; if finished checking ranges
C01F A0 03          SWITCH LDY #3
C021 88            LOOP   DEY
C022 30 10          BMI EXIT ; if finished checking ranges
C024 D9 35 C0      CMP RANGE1,Y
C027 90 0B          BCC EXIT ; character is less than RANGE1, so exit
C029 D9 38 C0      CMP RANGE2,Y
C02C B0 F3          BCS LOOP ; character is higher than RANGE2, so try
; next range
C02E 0A            FLIPIT ASL ; character is in a range, shift bit 7 into
; carry
```

```

C02F B0 02          BCS  FIXIT      ; character is >=128
C031 49 40          EOR  #64       ; flip bit 6
C033 4A             FIXIT      LSR       ; restore it (bit 7 becomes 0, so 193-218
C034 60             EXIT      RTS       ; converts to 65-90)
;
C035 C1 61 41 RANGE1 .BYTE 193,97,65 ;
; lower delimiter of each range
C038 DB 7B 5B RANGE2 .BYTE 219,123,91 ;
; upper delimiter+1 of each range

```

See also CNVERT, MIXLOW, MIXUPP.

Name

Convert characters from true ASCII to Commodore ASCII

Description

When you're using a modem to telecommunicate, the characters received over the telephone line will generally be true, or standard, ASCII. Commodore computers use a slightly different character code standard called *Commodore ASCII*. So, any terminal program you write on the 64 or 128 should include a routine like **TASCAS** for converting character codes from true ASCII to Commodore ASCII. Often it will be necessary to perform this character conversion from within a loop indexed by either the X or Y register. Because of this, **TASCAS** was designed to leave both these registers untouched.

Prototype

1. AND the character code value in .A with 127 to insure that it's in the range 0-127.
2. Check the value to see whether it lies within true ASCII uppercase range (65-90).
3. If it's less than 65, then RTS, leaving .A intact.
4. If the value in .A is within the range 65-90, go to step 7.
5. Otherwise, check the character value to see whether it falls within true ASCII lowercase range (97-122).
6. If it's more or less than the range, then RTS, again leaving .A intact.
7. Flip bit 5 and RTS.

Explanation

In the example program, individual bytes representing true ASCII characters are fetched from BUFFER and are then printed; the conversion is done with **TASCAS**, and the resulting Commodore ASCII value is printed. This process continues until a zero byte is read in.

TASCAS takes a true ASCII value in .A and returns an equivalent Commodore ASCII value (also in .A).

Conversion from true ASCII to Commodore ASCII by the routine is a fairly simple matter because of the similarities among the two character sets. True ASCII values lie in a range 0-127. None of the graphics characters present in the upper half of the Commodore set are available in true ASCII.

Both sets are identical in the range 0-127, except for one thing: Uppercase and lowercase letters are reversed. This difference is easily handled within **TASCAS** by flipping bit 5 of

the character value using the EOR command. If you EOR with the number 32, you effectively add (or subtract) 32, depending on whether bit 5 is clear or set.

Routine

```

C000          CHROUT = 65490
C000          LINPRT = 48589          ; LINPRT = 36402 on the 128
;
; Get a number representing a true ASCII
; character from buffer, and print
; the number. Convert the character to
; Commodore ASCII, and print its value.

C000 A0 00          LDY #0
C002 B9 45 C0 LOOP LDA BUFFER,Y          ; get a true ASCII character
C005 F0 22          BEQ QUIT
C007 8D 4D C0      STA TEMPA          ; save .A
C00A 8C 4E C0      STY TEMPY          ; save .Y (since LINPRT corrupts .Y)
C00D 20 2A C0      JSR NUMOUT          ; print the true ASCII value
C010 A9 20          LDA #32          ; print SPACE
C012 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C015 AD 4D C0      LDA TEMPA          ; restore .A
C018 20 30 C0      JSR TASCAS          ; convert .A from true ASCII to Commodore
; ASCII
; print the Commodore ASCII value
C01B 20 2A C0      JSR NUMOUT          ; print the Commodore ASCII value
C01E A9 0D          LDA #13          ; print RETURN
C020 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C023 AC 4E C0      LDY TEMPY          ; restore .Y
C026 C8            INY          ; for next value
C027 D0 D9          BNE LOOP          ; and get another character
C029 60            QUIT          RTS

C02A AA          NUMOUT TAX          ;
; low byte of true ASCII value (see
; NUMOUT)
C02B A9 00          LDA #0          ; high byte
C02D 4C CD BD      JMP LINPRT          ; print the ASCII value
;
; Convert true ASCII in .A to Commodore
; ASCII in .A.
; value must be 0-127
C030 29 7F          TASCAS AND #127
C032 C9 41          CMP #65          ; is it less than uppercase A?
C034 90 0E          BCC EXIT          ; yes, so leave as is
C036 C9 5B          CMP #91          ; is it greater than uppercase Z?
C038 90 08          BCC FLIPIT          ; no, so in range 65-90, switch to lowercase.
; Otherwise, character is in range 91-127.
; First check for lowercase.
; is it less than lowercase a?
C03A C9 61          LOWCAS CMP #97
C03C 90 06          BCC EXIT          ; yes, so leave it as is
C03E C9 7B          CMP #123          ; is it greater than lowercase z?
C040 B0 02          BCS EXIT          ; yes, so leave as is
; Character is in lowercase range 97-122, so
; switch it to uppercase.
; change uppercase to lowercase or vice
; versa
C042 49 20          FLIPIT EOR #32
C044 60            EXIT          RTS
;
; Buffer of true ASCII character bytes.
C045 42 5F 60      BUFFER .BYTE 66,95,96,33,97,122,90,0
C04D 00            TEMPA .BYTE0 ; .A storage
C04E 00            TEMPY .BYTE0 ; .Y storage

```

See also CASSCR, CASTAS, CNVERT, SCRCAS.

TOD1DL

Name

Time-of-day (TOD) clock 1 delay

Description

This timer routine is based on the first time-of-day (TOD) clock. **TOD1DL** causes delays within the full range of this clock, from 1/10 second up to 24 hours.

Prototype

1. Before entering this routine, define the delay time in BCD (binary-coded decimal) format as DELAYT in the variables at the end of the program.
2. Using **TOD1ST**, set TOD clock 1 to zero (00:00:00.0 a.m.).
3. Compare the TOD clock 1 reading with the delay specified. Begin with the hours byte, to stop the clock from updating, and work down through the tenths-of-seconds byte.
4. If, before comparing the entire reading, a byte in the clock reading is lower than the corresponding byte in the delay time, read the tenths-of-seconds place to restart the clock and jump to step 3.
5. When a byte from the TOD clock reading exceeds the respective delay-time byte, return from the routine.

Explanation

The example program demonstrates how this routine might be incorporated into your own programs. It prints a message to the screen and allows the user 12 seconds to read it—as timed by **TOD1DL**—before clearing the screen.

One way to achieve the specified delay here would be to add the delay time to the current clock time and then wait for the clock to reach this total. But since the TOD clock keeps time in BCD format, and digits within the clock turn over on different values, this approach would become quite involved. BCD arithmetic counts from 0 through 99, while clocks count from 00 through 59, except the hours (01–12). For example, adding three minutes to 3:58 should result in 4:01, not 3:61.

An easier way to go about this is to start the clock at midnight and then directly compare the delay time with the current TOD time. This is the method used here.

At the outset of **TOD1DL**, each byte within TOD clock 1 is set to zero, beginning with the hours byte. Because of its latching mechanism, the clock doesn't actually start updating until you write to the tenths-of-seconds byte (see **TOD2ST**).

Once all bytes within the clock are set to zero, a byte-by-

byte comparison loop is undertaken. The routine concludes when the clock time exceeds the delay time.

The delay time, DELAYT, is formatted exactly like TIMSET. This allows you to cause delays of up to 24 hours, although we're not sure why you'd ever need such a long delay. But if you do a delay longer than 11 hours, 59 minutes, set the high bit in the hours place when you define DELAYT, just as you would if you were setting a TOD clock (again, see TOD2ST for details).

Note: Although based on the first TOD clock, the routine could be modified with little effort to use the second TOD clock. Just replace TODTN1 with TODTN2, and TOD1ST with TOD2ST, throughout the routine.

Routine

```

C000      TODTN1  =   56328      ; time-of-day clock 1—tenths-of-seconds
C000      TODTN2  =   56584      ; register
C000      CHROUT  =   65490      ; time-of-day clock 2—tenths-of-seconds
                                   ; register
                                   ;
                                   ; Allow 12 seconds to read a message using
                                   ; TOD clock 1 delay.
C000 A0 00      LDY  #0          ; first print a message
C002 B9 4D C0   PRTLOP LDA  MESSAG,Y ; get a character from the message string
C005 F0 06      BEQ  PRTEND     ; quit printing on a zero byte
C007 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT     ; print the character
C00A C8        INY             ; for next character
C00B D0 F5      BNE  PRTLOP     ; branch always
C00D 20 13 C0   PRTEND JSR  TODIDL ; cause a TOD clock delay
C010 4C 31 C0   JMP  CLRCHR     ; clear the screen and RTS
                                   ;
C013 20 36 C0   TOD1DL JSR  TOD1ST ; Set up a TOD clock 1 delay.
                                   ; set TOD clock 1 to all zeros
                                   ; Now wait for current reading to agree
                                   ; with DELAYT.
C016 A0 00      COMPAR LDY  #0   ; as an index for DELAYT
C018 A2 03      LDX  #3       ; as an index for hrs., mins., secs., tenths in
                                   ; TOD clock
C01A BD 08 DC   CMPLOP LDA  TODTN1,X ; read TOD clock 1—hrs., mins., secs.,
                                   ; tenths
C01D D9 49 C0   CMP  DELAYT,Y ; compare with delay
C020 F0 08      BEQ  NEXTPL     ; if equal, check the next byte
C022 B0 0C      BCS  FINIS     ; if TOD byte is greater, time's expired, so
                                   ; return
C024 AD 08 DC   LDA  TODTN1     ; read tenths place to update clock
C027 4C 16 C0   JMP  COMPAR     ; if DELAYT is greater, carry is clear, so
                                   ; continue comparing
C02A C8        NEXTPL INY       ; for next DELAYT position
C02B CA        DEX             ; for next clock position (mins., secs.,
                                   ; tenths)
C02C 10 EC      BPL  CMPLOP     ; do all four bytes
C02E 30 E6      BMI  COMPAR     ; do it all again if time hasn't expired
C030 60        FINIS  RTS      ; we're finished
                                   ;

```


TOD1DL

```

C031 A9 93 CLRCHR LDA #147 ; time's up, so clear the screen
C033 4C D2 FF JMP CHROUT ; and RTS
;
; Set TOD clock 1 (or 2).
; Replace TODTN1 with TODTN2 to set
; TOD clock 2.
C036 A0 00 TOD1ST LDY #0 ; as an index in TIMSET
C038 A2 03 LDX #3 ; as an index for hrs., mins., secs., tenths in
; TODTN1
C03A B9 45 C0 SETLOP LDA TIMSET,Y ; read in the time to set
C03D 9D 08 DC STA TODTN1,X ; store to clock—hrs. first
C040 C8 INY ; for next byte in TIMSET
C041 CA DEX ; for next clock byte (mins., secs., tenths)
C042 10 F6 BPL SETLOP ; set all four bytes in clock
C044 60 RTS
;
C045 00 00 00 TIMSET .BYTE 0,0,0,0 ; hrs., mins., secs., tenths to set clock
; (00.00.00.0 a.m.)
C049 00 00 12 DELAYT .BYTE $0,$0,$12,$0 ; delay in BCD hrs., mins., secs., and tenths
C04D 93 59 4F MESSAG .ASC "{CLR}YOU HAVE 12 SECONDS TO READ THIS."
C06F 00 .BYTE 0 ; string terminator

```

See also ALARM2, INTCLK, TOD1RD, TOD2PR, TOD2ST, BYT1DL, BYT2DL, INTDEL, JIFDEL, KEYDEL.

Name

Read a time-of-day (TOD) clock

Description

This routine allows you to read either time-of-day clock. It's currently set up to read the first TOD clock, the one in CIA 1. But by substituting TODTN2 for TODTN1 in the routine, the second TOD clock (in CIA 2) can be read. In such instances, **TOD2RD** would be a more appropriate name for the routine.

Prototype

1. Set the Y register, which serves as an index into the buffer holding the current clock reading (BUFFER), to 0. The X register should be initialized to 3 so that the hours place is read first.
2. In RDLOOP, read each byte—either hours, minutes, seconds, or tenths of seconds—from one of the TOD clocks and store it into BUFFER.

Explanation

The TOD clocks have a latching function which prevents them from updating anytime you read or write to them, provided you begin with the hours place and end with the tenths-of-seconds place. This mechanism is described more thoroughly under entry **TOD2ST**, where a TOD clock is set to a specified time.

At any rate, the important point for this routine is that you must read the TOD clock from the hours place to the tenths-of-seconds place. Reading the hours place first stops the clock from updating. Only when you read (or write to) the tenths-of-seconds place will the clock continue updating.

The time read in from a TOD clock, whether it's clock 1 or 2, is in a binary-coded decimal format. This reading is stored here in BUFFER as a four-byte number, just as it appears in the clock. Each half-byte, or hexadecimal digit, actually represents a decimal digit in the clock reading.

For example, if the clock reading in BUFFER were \$91,\$49,\$32,\$04, the time would be 11:49:32.4 p.m. (The high bit in the hours byte serves as an a.m./p.m. flag.)

TOD1RD

Routine

```
C000          TODTN1  =    56328      ; time-of-day clock 1—tenths-of-seconds
C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; register
C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; time-of-day clock 2—tenths-of-seconds
C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; register
C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ;
C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; Read TOD clock 1 (or 2) and store the
C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; reading to a memory buffer.
C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; Replace TODTN1 with TODTN2 to read in
C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; TOD clock 2.
C000 A0 00      TOD1RD LDY  #0          ; as an index for buffer position
C002 A2 03      TOD1RD LDX  #3          ; as an index for hrs., mins., secs., tenths
C004 BD 08 DC RDLOOP LDA  TODTN1,X    ; read the TOD clock—hrs., mins., secs.,
C004 BD 08 DC RDLOOP LDA  TODTN1,X    ; tenths
C007 99 0F C0      TOD1RD STA  BUFFER,Y ; store to buffer
C00A C8          TOD1RD INY           ; for next buffer position
C00B CA          TOD1RD DEX           ; for next clock position (mins., secs.,
C00B CA          TOD1RD DEX           ; tenths)
C00C 10 F6      TOD1RD BPL  RDLOOP    ; read four bytes
C00E 60          TOD1RD RTS           ;
C00F 00 00 00 BUFFER .BYTE 0,0,0,0  ; Storage for clock reading. Stored in BCD
C00F 00 00 00 BUFFER .BYTE 0,0,0,0  ; format as
C00F 00 00 00 BUFFER .BYTE 0,0,0,0  ; hrs., mins., secs., and tenths.
```

See also ALARM2, INTCLK, TOD1DL, TOD2PR, TOD2ST.

Name

Print the time-of-day (TOD) time

Description

TOD2PR prints the current reading for time-of-day clock 2 in the upper left corner of the screen. As with the other TOD clock routines presented in the book, the remaining TOD clock can be used instead. In this case, simply replace **TODTN2** in the routine with **TODTN1**. If you like, you can also change the name of the routine to **TOD1PR** to indicate that TOD clock 1 is being printed.

Prototype

1. Set the Y register, which serves to index the screen position, to zero. The X register is initialized to 3 so that the hours byte is read first.
2. In **PRTL0P**, read a byte—either hours, minutes, seconds, or tenths of seconds—from one of the two TOD clocks.
3. Shift the high nybble of this byte into its low nybble, convert this to a numeric screen code, and store it in screen memory.
4. Mask out the high nybble of the byte taken in Step 2. Convert the remaining low nybble to a screen code and store it to the screen.
5. For the tenths-of-seconds byte, only the low nybble is displayed.
6. After each half-byte from the TOD clock has been positioned on the screen in Steps 3, 4, and 5, store the screen code for a colon (or for a decimal following the seconds place).
7. When **PRTL0P** finishes, skip a space on the screen and store either the screen code for P (representing p.m.) or A (for a.m.) in screen memory depending on the setting of bit 7 of the hours byte. Then return from the routine.

Explanation

The program below clears the screen, then jumps to **TOD2PR** to display the current time setting in the second TOD clock.

Each TOD clock, whether it's clock 1 or 2, ceases to update as soon as the hours byte is read (or written to). It continues updating only when the tenths-of-seconds byte is accessed. (See **TOD2ST** for details on this latching function.) For this reason, you should always read these clocks from the hours place down, as we've done here.

TOD2PR

The TOD clocks keep time in binary-coded format, making conversion of the clocks' registers to screen codes relatively easy. In **TOD2PR**, bytes from TOD clock 2's registers are separated into half-bytes, which are in turn converted to screen codes and displayed.

To make the display more readable, a colon is placed between the digit pairs representing the hours, minutes, and seconds place. A decimal point follows the seconds place. After all digits from the TOD readout are displayed on the screen, either *A* or *P* (for a.m. or p.m.) is printed.

Routine

```

C000          TODTN2  =    56584      ; time-of-day clock 2—tenths-of-seconds
          ; register
C000          TODTN1  =    56328      ; time-of-day clock 1—tenths-of-seconds
          ; register
C000          CHROUT  =    65490
C000          SCREEN  =    1024      ; first text-screen position
          ;
          ; Clear the screen, read and print TOD clock
          ; 2 (or 1).
          ; Replace TODTN2 with TODTN1 to read
          ; and print TOD clock 1.
          ; clear the screen
C000 A9 93      CLRCHR  LDA  #147
C002 20 D2 FF   JSR  CHROUT
C005 4C 08 C0   JMP  TOD2PR      ; print TOD clock 2 and RTS
          ;
          ; Read and print TOD clock 2.
          ; initialize index to screen position
C008 A0 00      TOD2PR  LDY  #0
C00A A2 03      LDY  #3      ; initialize index for hrs., mins., secs., and
          ; tenths
C00C BD 08 DD   PRTLOP  LDA  TODTN2,X      ; read the TOD clock—hrs., min., sec.,
          ; tenths
C00F E0 00      CPX  #0      ; skip tenths high nybble
C011 F0 10      BEQ  LOWNIB
C013 48         PHA
          ; store it temporarily
C014 29 70      AND  #%01110000 ; mask out low nybble and bit 7
C016 4A         LSR
          ; shift high nybble into low nybble
C017 4A         LSR
C018 4A         LSR
C019 4A         LSR
C01A 09 30      ORA  #48      ; effectively add 48 to put in numeric range
C01C 99 00 04   STA  SCREEN,Y ; POKE it to the screen
C01F C8         INY      ; next screen position
C020 68         PLA      ; restore the byte and get second digit from
          ; low nybble
C021 29 0F      AND  #$0F      ; mask out high nybble
C023 09 30      ORA  #48      ; add 48
C025 99 00 04   STA  SCREEN,Y ; POKE low nybble's digit to the screen
C028 C8         INY      ; next screen position
C029 E0 01      CPX  #1      ; we want to put a decimal between
          ; seconds and tenths
C02B F0 04      BEQ  POINT      ; POKE a decimal point
C02D 90 0F      BCC  NEXTPL    ; don't print the last colon
C02F D0 07      BNE  COLON      ; we're not between seconds and tenths
C031 A9 2E      LDA  #46      ; screen code for decimal point
C033 99 00 04   STA  SCREEN,Y ; POKE a decimal point
C036 D0 05      BNE  CONTLP    ; branch always

```


TOD2ST (TOD1ST)

Name

Set a time-of-day (TOD) clock

Description

Each of the two CIA (complex interface adapter) chips in the 64 and 128 has a built-in time-of-day (TOD) clock. Unlike the jiffy clock, which is maintained via software (the IRQ interrupt service routine), the TOD clocks are updated automatically by CIA hardware. The TOD clocks aren't used at all by the operating system, and neither the 64 or 128 provide any facilities in ROM for reading or setting the TOD clocks.

With this routine, you can set either time-of-day clock. As it's currently written, the routine sets the second TOD clock (the clock in CIA #2). But you can just as easily have it set the clock in CIA #1 by replacing TODTN2 with TODTN1 within the routine. In fact, this has been done elsewhere in the book. See entries **INTCLK** and **TOD1DL**. In those instances, this routine is referred to as **TOD1ST**.

Prototype

1. Initialize `.Y` to 0 and `.X` to 3. (The `Y` register indexes the buffer containing the actual time to be set, or `TIMSET`, at the end of the routine. The offset into the TOD clock is `.X`.)
2. In a loop, read the four bytes containing the time setting and store them to a TOD clock.

Explanation

When you set either TOD clock, you must begin with the hours place. This is because the TOD clocks have a built-in latching function. Each clock stops updating as soon as you read or write to the hours place and doesn't start again until you write to the tenths-of-seconds place. (The internal registers for either clock, where the actual time is kept, are maintained during this process.) This approach prevents the TOD clock from advancing while you're in the middle of reading or setting it.

The TOD clocks keep time in a binary-coded decimal format. Each hexadecimal digit, or half byte, in the clocks' registers is interpreted as a decimal digit. So, the example time listed in `TIMSET` as `$06,$59,$59,$0` is 59 minutes and 59 seconds after six o'clock. In this case, the time is a.m. The high bit in the hours byte serves as an a.m./p.m. flag. To set the clock to a p.m. time, simply add `$80` to the hours byte.

In this routine, writing to the TOD registers sets the cur-

rent time. But these registers can also be used to store an alarm time if the TOD clock is used as an alarm clock. Bit 7 of CIA control register B is the key (CI2CRB at 56591 for TOD clock 2 or CIACRB at 56335 for TOD clock 1). Normally, this bit is zero. But, if you set it to one, the time assigned to the TOD registers is taken as an alarm time. Routine **ALARM2** demonstrates this technique.

Note: The TOD clocks have a bug in the a.m./p.m. function. The normal way to count time is to consider noon to be 12:00 p.m. and midnight to be 12:00 a.m. Thus, the p.m. hours count from 12 to 1 to 2 to 3, and so on, up to 11. But the CIA chip counts p.m. hours from 1 to 12 (which seems more logical, although it's not how things are done in the real world).

If you set the TOD hours byte to 12, on the next hour, the a.m./p.m. flag bit will reverse state. For example, if you set the clock to noon (12:00 p.m.), it will read 1:00 a.m. when the clock reaches 1:00 in the afternoon (1:00 p.m.).

You can get around this problem, though. If the hours place is to be set to 12, just flip the a.m./p.m. flag bit before setting the clock. So, 12:15:16.0 a.m. would be entered in **TIMSET** as **.BYTE \$82,\$15,\$16,\$0**.

Routine

```

C000          TODTN2  =    56584          ; time-of-day clock 2—tenths-of-seconds
                                           ; register
C000          TODTN1  =    56328          ; time-of-day clock 1—tenths-of-seconds
                                           ; register
                                           ;
                                           ; Set TOD clock 2 (or 1).
                                           ; Replace TODTN2 with TODTN1 to set TOD
                                           ; clock 1.
C000 A0 00          TOD2ST  LDY  #0          ; as an index in TIMSET
C002 A2 03          LDX  #3          ; as an index for hrs., mins., secs., tenths of
                                           ; secs. in TODTN2
C004 B9 0F C0 SETLOP  LDA  TIMSET,Y      ; read in the time to set
C007 9D 08 DD       STA  TODTN2,X      ; store to clock—hrs. first
C00A C8             INY                ; for next TIMSET byte
C00B CA             DEX                ; for next clock byte (min., sec., tenths of
                                           ; secs.)
C00C 10 F6          BPL  SETLOP        ; set all four bytes of clock
C00E 60             RTS
                                           ;
C00F 06 59 59 TIMSET .BYTE $06,$59,$59,$0
                                           ; hr., min., sec., tenths to set clock
                                           ; (06.59.59.0 a.m.)
                                           ; For p.m., add in $80 to hour setting.

```

See also **ALARM2**, **INTCLK**, **TOD1DL**, **TOD1RD**, **TOD2PR**.

TXTCCH

Name

Set the text color using CHR\$

Description

TXTCCH outputs the appropriate ASCII color value with **CHROUT**. This approach is often more convenient than storing a color value in the text color register. Text colors can easily be switched from within an ASCII string definition, as the example illustrates.

Prototype

1. Set up a string containing certain ASCII color codes at the end of your program.
2. JSR to a string printing routine and RTS (or simply JMP to it).

Explanation

Each character of the message HELLO is printed in a different color using **STRCPT**.

Routine

```
C000          CHROUT = 65490
C000          ZP      = 251

; Print each character of the string HELLO in
; a different color.
; print the string

C000 20 04 C0 TXTCCH JSR  STRCPT
C003 60          RTS

;
; Custom string printing routine
; low byte of string
; store it
; high byte of string
; store it also
; as an index
; load each character from string
; if zero byte, then finished
; print character
; for next character
; if not more than 256 bytes, then get the
; next character
; otherwise, increment high byte address
; pointer to the string
; and continue printing

C004 A9 1E      STRCPT LDA #<STRING
C006 85 FB          STA ZP
C008 A9 C0          LDA #>STRING
C00A 85 FC          STA ZP+1
C00C A0 00          LDY #0
C00E B1 FB          STRLOP LDA (ZP),Y
C010 F0 0B          BEQ FINISH
C012 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT
C015 C8          INY
C016 D0 F6          BNE  STRLOP

C018 E6 FC          INC  ZP+1

C01A 4C 0E C0      JMP  STRLOP
C01D 60          FINISH RTS

;
; "HELLO" in colors
; ending in a zero byte

C01E 05 48 9C STRING .ASC "{WHT}H{PUR}E{YEL}L{BLK}L{LT BLU}O"
C028 00          .BYTE 0
```

See also BCKCOL, BORCOL, COLFIL, TXTCOL.

Name

Input a line of text using a custom routine

Description

TXTCIN simulates the BASIC ROM routine INLIN for accepting a line of input from the keyboard, blinking cursor and all. But unlike INLIN, which takes an entire line of input at once, TXTCIN screens each character individually before adding it to the input line. By building the input line in this manner, the many documented problems associated with INLIN (or INPUT) can be avoided. Thus, commas and characters like the cursor keys, CLEAR, HOME, and so on, can be handled appropriately by the input routine.

Prototype

1. Enable the cursor.
2. Get a character with GETIN.
3. Compare the input character with a table of unwanted characters (BADKEY).
4. If the character is found in the table of unacceptable characters, go to step 2.
5. If the character is DELETE, see whether we're at the start of the buffer. If so, go to step 2. Otherwise, decrement the buffer index (.Y) by 2.
6. If the character is RETURN, print it while the cursor is off, add a zero byte to the buffer, and RTS.
7. If the input character is not RETURN, see whether the input line has reached its maximum length (MAXLEN). If it has, wait for a RETURN.
8. Otherwise, add the character to the input buffer, increment the buffer index .Y, print the character (again, while the cursor is off), and go to step 2 for another character.

Explanation

The main routine in the example is exactly like the one shown for TXTINP. A line of input is first retrieved, in this case by TXTCIN, and the resulting string data in the input buffer printed with a modified STRCPT. (STRCPT is shortened since the string is fewer than 256 bytes long.) As with TXTINP, we return to BASIC by jumping through the error handler vector at 768.

With a few changes, the input routine TXTCIN can be customized for each input required in your program. First, POKE MAXLEN with the maximum number of characters al-

TXTCIN

lowed in the current input line. Then, update the table of unwanted keys (BADKEY) and total the number of these keys. POKE this number, less 1, into the location corresponding to NUMBAD (\$C026, in this example).

Notice how the cursor is dealt with within the routine. IRQ interrupts must be disabled before each input character is printed and reenabled afterward. Otherwise, the cursor may flash during normal interrupt handling. If this happens, the character will appear on the screen in reverse video.

Cursor handling within TXTCIN is certainly tedious and adds a number of bytes to the routine. If a cursor is not required in your program, you can eliminate all instructions necessary to set it up and shorten the routine considerably.

Note: The use of the vector at 768 to exit the routine is required here to prevent BASIC from taking your input as a direct command. See TXTINP for more discussion of this.

Routine

```

C000      CHROUT  =    65490
C000      GETIN   =    65508
C000      BUF     =     512
C000      ZP      =     251
C000      YSAVE   =     253
C000      BLNSW   =     204      ; BLNSW = 2599 on the 128
C000      BLNCT   =     205      ; BLNCT = 2600 on the 128
C000      BLNON   =     207      ; BLNON = 2598 on the 128
;
; Input a line of text with a custom routine
; and print it.
C000  20  1C  C0      JSR   TXTCIN
; get the input line
; Print it with shortened STRCPT and return.
C003  A9  00      STRCPT LDA  #<BUF
C005  85  FB      STA   ZP
; low byte of input buffer
; store it
C007  A0  02      LDY   #>BUF
; high byte of input buffer
C009  84  FC      STY   ZP+1
; store it also
C00B  A0  00      LDY   #0
; as an index
C00D  B1  FB      STRLOP LDA  (ZP),Y
; load each character from input buffer.
C00F  F0  06      BEQ   FINISH
; if zero byte, then finished
C011  20  D2  FF      JSR   CHROUT
; print character
C014  C8          INY
; next character
C015  D0  F6      BNE   STRLOP
; go get next character
C017  A2  80      FINISH LDX  #128
; code for READY error message
C019  6C  00  03      JMP   (768)
; return to BASIC and print READY prompt
;
; Custom input subroutine using GETIN and
; flashing cursor
; initialize index into input buffer
C01C  A0  00      TXTCIN LDY  #0
C01E  84  CC      STY   BLNSW
; turn on cursor
C020  84  FD      GETKEY STY  YSAVE
; GETIN corrupts .Y, so save it
C022  20  E4  FF  WAIT JSR  GETIN
; get a character in .A
C025  A2  07      LDX  #NUMBAD
C027  DD  6B  C0  CKLOOP CMP  BADKEY,X
; compare character to each value in
; BADKEY table
C02A  F0  F6      BEQ   WAIT
; if response is illegal, get another key
C02C  CA          DEX

```

C02D	10	F8		BPL	CKLOOP	; check next bad key
C02F	A4	FD		LDY	YSAVE	; input is okay, so restore .Y
C031	C9	14		CMP	#20	; is it DELeTe?
C033	D0	06		BNE	NOTDEL	; not DELeTe
C035	C0	00		CPY	#0	; are we at the start of the buffer?
C037	F0	E7		BEQ	GETKEY	; if so, go get a character
C039	88			DEY		; if DELeTe, back up index into input buffer
C03A	88			DEY		
C03B	C9	0D	NOTDEL	CMP	#13	; is it RETURN?
C03D	F0	09		BEQ	PRTIT	; yes, so print it
C03F	CC	73	C0	CPY	MAXLEN	; check maximum input length
C042	F0	DC		BEQ	GETKEY	; if yes, wait for RETURN
C044	99	00	02	STA	BUF,Y	; store character in buffer
C047	C8			INY		; increment input buffer index
C048	A2	01	PRTIT	LDX	#1	; routine to print each character
C04A	86	CD		STX	BLNCT	; set cursor timer
C04C	A6	CF	WAITPR	LDX	BLNON	
C04E	D0	FC		BNE	WAITPR	; wait till flash is off
C050	78			SEI		; turn off all IRQ interrupts so cursor won't flash
C051	20	D2	FF	JSR	CHROUT	; print the character
C054	58			CLI		; turn on IRQ interrupts
C055	C9	0D		CMP	#13	; is it RETURN?
C057	D0	C7		BNE	GETKEY	; get another key if not RETURN
C059	A9	00		LDA	#0	
C05B	99	00	02	STA	BUF,Y	; if RETURN, add terminator byte of zero to the string
C05E	A9	01		LDA	#1	
C060	85	CD		STA	BLNCT	; make cursor flash
C062	A5	CF	WAITBL	LDA	BLNON	
C064	D0	FC		BNE	WAITBL	; wait until cursor not flashed
C066	A9	01		LDA	#1	
C068	85	CC		STA	BLNSW	; turn off cursor
C06A	60			RTS		
C06B	00		BADKEY	.BYT	0	; if no key, then wait
C06C	91	11	9D	.ASC	"{UP}{DOWN}{LEFT}{RIGHT}"	; cursor keys
C070	94			.ASC	"{INST}"	; INST key
C071	13	93		.ASC	"{HOME}{CLR}"	; HOME and CLR
073			NUMBAD	=	*-BADKEY-1	
C073	0A		MAXLEN	.BYTE	10	; maximum length of the input line

See also TXTINP.

TXTCOL

Name

Set the text color

Description

TXTCOL sets the text color by storing the appropriate color value in the text color flag at location 646 (location 241 on the 128).

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with the selected color value in *.A*.
2. Store this value in the foreground color register for text (**COLOR**).

Explanation

The example program makes the text that follows green in color. See **COLFIL** for a table of color values.

Routine

```
C000          COLOR    =    646          ; COLOR = 241 on the 128—foreground
                                           ; color for text
                                           ;
                                           ; Set text color to green.
C000 AD 0B C0          LDA    COLVAL      ; get the color value
C003 20 07 C0          JSR    TXTCOL     ; and set it
C006 60              RTS
                                           ;
                                           ; Set text color. Enter with .A containing color
                                           ; value.
C007 8D 86 02 TXTCOL  STA    COLOR      ; set text color
C00A 60              RTS
                                           ;
                                           COLVAL .BYTE 5          ; color green
```

See also BCKCOL, BORCOL, COLFIL, TXTCCH.

Name

Input a line of text using the ROM routine INLIN

Description

You'll find this short routine practical in many programs. **TXTINP** accepts a line of input from the keyboard and stores it as a zero-terminated string in the input buffer beginning at location 512.

Prototype

Jump to the BASIC ROM subroutine INLIN.

Explanation

TXTINP relies on the built-in BASIC Kernal routine, INLIN, to perform an INPUT in ML. INLIN, located at 42336 on the 64 or 22176 on the 128, accepts characters from the current input device until a carriage return is received or until the length of the current logical line is exceeded (80 characters on the 64; 160 on the 128). If the input carries you to the next logical line, that line will become the input line, just as in BASIC. Once you have entered RETURN, INLIN tags a zero byte onto the end of the input line in the buffer.

In the example, **TXTINP** fetches characters from the keyboard, placing them in the text input buffer at 512 until RETURN is pressed. A shortened **STRCPT** is used to print this string data (shortened because the string will never be longer than 255 bytes). After this, you're returned to BASIC.

Notice that instead of using RTS to return to BASIC, we jump through the vector at 768 to BASIC's error message handler routine. (A value of 128 in the X register indexes the READY prompt from a table of error messages.) This is necessary here since BASIC's input buffer has been corrupted with input from INLIN. You'll see what we mean if you substitute an RTS for LDX #128:JMP (768). BASIC will attempt to execute whatever input follows on the current line as if it were a direct command.

Note: Since **TXTINP** uses BASIC's own INPUT routine, it suffers from all the problems inherent to this statement. Punctuation characters like commas and colons cannot be entered within the input line; control characters like the cursor keys,

TXTINP

CLEAR, and HOME allow the user to leave the input line; and so on. Such input can have disastrous effects upon your program. In many instances, especially where the user is likely to be a novice, you should use a custom routine like **TXTCIN**, which screens individual characters within the input line.

Routine

```
C000          CHROUT = 65490
C000          BUF    = 512
C000          ZP     = 251
C000          INLIN  = 42336          ; INLIN = 22176 on the 128
;
; Input a line of text until RETURN and
; print it.
C000 20 1C C0          JSR  TXTINP  ; input a line of text into keyboard buffer
;
; Now print it with a shortened version of
; STRCPT (buffer is <256 bytes).
C003 A9 00          STRCPT LDA  #<BUF  ; low byte of input buffer
C005 85 FB          STA  ZP      ; store it
C007 A0 02          LDY  #>BUF  ; high byte of input buffer
C009 84 FC          STY  ZP+1    ; store it also
C00B A0 00          LDY  #0      ; as an index
C00D B1 FB          STRLOP LDA  (ZP),Y ; load each character from input buffer
C00F F0 06          BEQ  FINISH  ; if zero byte, then finished
C011 20 D2 FF       JSR  CHROUT  ; print character
C014 C8             INY         ; for next character
C015 D0 F6          BNE  STRLOP  ; go get the next character
C017 A2 80          FINISH LDX  #128 ; code for READY error message
C019 6C 00 03       JMP  (768)  ; return to BASIC and print READY prompt
;
; Input a line of text into the keyboard buffer
; with the BASIC ROM routine INLIN.
C01C 20 60 A5 TXTINP JSR  INLIN
C01F 60             RTS
```

See also TXTCIN.

Name

Validate a disk

Description

This is the equivalent of the BASIC statement `OPEN 1,8,15,"V0":CLOSE 1`, which reads through the directory and checks the allocation of disk sectors. There's no need to validate very often, though if you accidentally leave a disk file open when you turn off the computer, the result is a *poison*, or *splat*, file, which may cause significant problems in the future. You should not scratch a splat file, which is marked in the directory with an asterisk (*) next to the file type; you should validate the disk that contains the poison file.

Prototype

1. Open the command channel (Kernal SETLFS, SETNAM, OPEN).
2. Provide "V0" as the name of the file being opened.
3. Close the channel.

Explanation

At the start of the routine, SETLFS sets a logical file number 1, on device 8 (the disk drive) and channel 15. SETNAM sets the name to "V0", which means *Validate on drive 0*. The Kernal OPEN routine is sufficient to send this command to the disk drive. To finish up, close the channel.

The validate normally takes some time to finish. This is because it reads through the directory to find every legitimate file, then traces through the sectors each program or file uses. Each valid sector is then marked as already used in the block allocation map (BAM).

Warning: Do *not* use the validate routine if you have a double-sided 1571 disk in the drive, and the 1571 is in single-sided 1541 mode. You'll lose the second half of the disk. To be safe, send the double-sided (1571 mode) command "U0>M1" to the disk drive on channel 15 before you validate the disk.

You should also avoid using this routine to validate disks formatted for use with the new GEOS operating system for the 64. GEOS provides its own Validate program. Performing a standard validation on a GEOS disk will result in the loss of vital information.

VALIDT

Routine

C000			SETLFS	=	\$FFBA	
C000			SETNAM	=	\$FFBD	
C000			OPEN	=	\$FFC0	
C000			CLOSE	=	\$FFC3	
C000			CLRCHN	=	\$FFCC	
C000	A9	01	VALIDT	LDA	#1	; logical file number
C002	A2	08		LDX	#8	; device number for disk drive
C004	A0	0F		LDY	#15	; secondary address for drive command
C006	20	BA	FF	JSR	SETLFS	; channel
C009	A9	03		LDA	#BUFLEN	; prepare to open it
C00B	A2	1E		LDX	#<BUFFER	; length of buffer
C00D	A0	C0		LDY	#>BUFFER	; X and Y hold the
C00F	20	BD	FF	JSR	SETNAM	; address of the buffer
C012	20	C0	FF	JSR	OPEN	; set name
C015	A9	01		LDA	#1	; open it
C017	20	C3	FF	JSR	CLOSE	; and immediately
C01A	20	CC	FF	JSR	CLRCHN	; close the command channel
C01D	60			RTS		; clear the channels
						; all done
						; Data area
C01E	56	30	BUFFER	.ASC	"V0"	
C020	0D			.BYTE	13	; RETURN character
C021			BUFLEN	=	*-BUFFER	

See also CONCAT, COPYFL, FORMAT, INITLZ, RENAME, SCRTCH.

Name

Write to 80-column attribute memory

Description

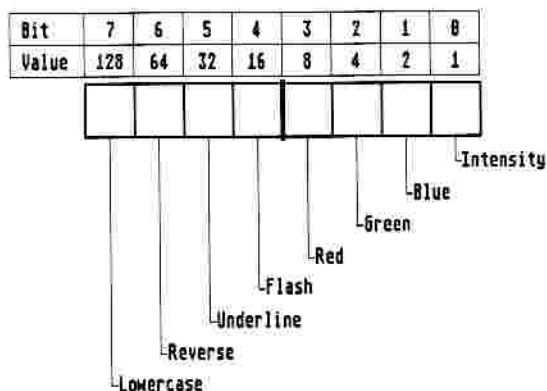
If you've worked with the 40-column screen of the 64 or 128, you're probably used to color memory that can hold 16 different values. The 128's 80-column screen has attribute memory that not only controls colors, but also controls flash mode, underline mode, reverse mode, lowercase/uppercase or uppercase/graphics mode, and so forth. This routine changes the attributes of a chunk of the screen.

Prototype

1. Enter the routine with the attribute value in `.A` and the screen position in `.X` and `.Y`.
2. Save the attribute temporarily.
3. Calculate the color address from `.X` and `.Y`.
4. Send the corresponding address for attribute memory to the VDC chip.
5. Store the attribute into attribute memory.

Explanation

The 128's 80-column screen has 80 columns and 25 rows, a total of 2000 locations. Within its private 16K of memory, there are 2000 bytes devoted to screen memory, plus 2000 bytes for attribute memory. The figure shows how an individual byte of attribute memory controls the functions.

Attribute Memory Byte

VDCCOL (128 only)

The low nybble (bits 0–3) controls the color, with various combinations of red, green, blue, and intensity. The high nybble (bits 4–7) controls the additional attributes such as flash, underline, reverse, and lowercase. For example, if the underline bit is a 1, the character is underlined. If the lowercase bit is 1, the letter *A* appears as lowercase *a*. (If it's 0, an *A* appears as an uppercase *A*, and uppercase letters print as graphics characters.)

The example program stores a %10111101 into attribute memory at *x* position 9, *y* position 4—column 10, row 5, because the upper left corner is (0,0). It stores the value into ten bytes. The upper nybble of %1011 turns on lowercase, underline, and flash. The lower nybble of %1101 turns the color to bright yellow (green + red + intensity).

For more about how the internal VDC registers work, see **RE80CO** and **WR80CO**.

Routine

```

0C00          CHROUT    =    $FFD2      ; Kernal print routine
0C00          VDCADR    =    54784      ; gateway byte 1—the register address
0C00          VDCDAT    =    54785      ; gateway byte 2—the data to be written
0C00          VRMH1     =    18         ; register for memory address to access (high
                                ; byte)
0C00          VRMLO     =    19         ; register for memory address (low byte)
0C00          VRDAT     =    31         ; register for number to be sent
0C00          COLMEM    =    $0800      ; address of color memory in the VDC's
                                ; private memory
                                ;
0C00  A9  93          LDA    #147        ; clear screen
0C02  20  D2  FF      JSR    CHROUT
0C05  A2  07          LDX    #>1999
0C07  A0  CF          LDY    #<1999
0C09  A9  45          LDA    #69        ; the letter E
0C0B  20  D2  FF  LP01 JSR    CHROUT    ; print it
0C0E  88             DEY
0C0F  D0  FA          BNE    LP01
0C11  CA             DEX
0C12  D0  F7          BNE    LP01        ; 1999 times
0C14  A9  BD          LDA    #%10111101 ; lowercase, underline, flash, bright yellow
0C16  A2  09          LDX    #9        ; x position 9
0C18  A0  04          LDY    #4        ; y position 4
0C1A  20  28  0C      JSR    VDCCOL    ; store it
0C1D  A0  0A          LDY    #10       ; ten more times
0C1F  A2  1F          LDX    #31       ; register 31
0C21  20  99  0C      JSR    STRVDC    ; store it
0C24  88             DEY
0C25  D0  F8          BNE    SVCLP    ; and branch back ten times
0C27  60             RTS
                                ;
                                ; Enter VDCCOL with the number to be
                                ; POKEd to color/attribute memory in .A,
                                ; and the x and y locations in .X and .Y.
                                ; save .A
0C28  8D  96  0C  VDCCOL STA    TEMPA
0C2B  A9  00          LDA    #0        ; clear the address
0C2D  8D  97  0C      STA    COLADR    ; of color memory low

```

0C30	8D	98	0C	STA	COLADR+1	; and high byte
0C33	98			TYA		; move .Y to .A
0C34	0A			ASL		; times 2
0C35	8D	97	0C	STA	COLADR	; save it
0C38	0E	97	0C	ASL	COLADR	; times 4 (low)
0C3B	2E	98	0C	ROL	COLADR+1	; (high)
0C3E	0E	97	0C	ASL	COLADR	; times 9 (low)
0C41	2E	98	0C	ROL	COLADR+1	; (high)
0C44	18			CLC		; now add in .A
0C45	6D	97	0C	ADC	COLADR	; times 8 plus times 2 is times 10 (net)
0C48	8D	97	0C	STA	COLADR	; store it
0C4B	A9	00		LDA	#0	;
0C4D	6D	98	0C	ADC	COLADR+1	; fix the high byte
0C50	8D	98	0C	STA	COLADR+1	; and store it
0C53	A0	03		LDY	#3	; times 10 times 8 (again) is times 80
0C55	0E	97	0C	ASL	COLADR	
0C58	2E	98	0C	ROL	COLADR+1	
0C5B	88			DEY		
0C5C	D0	F7		BNE	LOOP80	
						;
						; Now COLADR holds 0, 80, 160, and so
						; forth.
						; put X in .A and
0C5E	8A			TXA		
0C5F	6D	97	0C	ADC	COLADR	; add it (carry is always clear)
0C62	8D	97	0C	STA	COLADR	; store it
0C65	A9	00		LDA	#0	; high byte, too
0C67	6D	98	0C	ADC	COLADR+1	
0C6A	8D	98	0C	STA	COLADR+1	
						; Now COLADR holds a number 0-1999,
						; for the screen/color memory location.
						; add in the beginning of color memory
						; (\$0800 inside the VDC)
0C6D	A9	00		LDA	#<COLMEM	
0C6F	6D	97	0C	ADC	COLADR	
0C72	8D	97	0C	STA	COLADR	
0C75	A9	08		LDA	#>COLMEM	
0C77	6D	98	0C	ADC	COLADR+1	
0C7A	8D	98	0C	STA	COLADR+1	
0C7D	A2	12		LDX	#VRMHI	; set the high byte
0C7E	AD	98	0C	LDA	COLADR+1	; to point to color memory
0C82	20	99	0C	JSR	STRVDC	; store it
0C85	A2	13		LDX	#VRMLO	; now the low byte
0C87	AD	97	0C	LDA	COLADR	
0C8A	20	99	0C	JSR	STRVDC	
0C8D	A2	1F		LDX	#VRDAT	; the data to write
0C8F	AD	96	0C	LDA	TEMPA	; retrieve the value from .A
0C92	20	99	0C	JSR	STRVDC	
0C95	60			RTS		; and it's done
						;
0C96	00			TEMPA	.BYTE	0
0C97	00	00		COLADR	.BYTE	0,0
0C99				STRVDC	=	*
						; .X is the register; .A is the information
0C99	8E	00	D6	STX	VDCADR	; store the register address
0C9C	AE	00	D6	LDX	VDCADR	; now wait
0C9F	10	FB		BPL	SVLOOP	; until bit 7 is set
0CA1	8D	01	D6	STA	VDCDAT	; and store the data
0CA4	60			RTS		

See also CUST80, RE80CO, WR80CO.

VERIFY

Name

Verify a disk file

Description

VERIFY checks a copy of your BASIC or ML program on disk to insure that it is the same as the one currently in memory. If there are any differences between the program in memory and the corresponding one on disk, this routine prints NOT OK.

Prototype

1. On the 128, set the bank to 15.
2. Set the parameters as 1,8,1 to verify "PROGRAM" (SETLFS, SETNAM).
3. On the 128, prior to SETNAM, load .A with the bank containing the program you wish to verify and .X with the bank containing its filename. Then JSR to SETBNK.
4. Store a 1 in .A for to indicate a verify operation.
5. JSR to the Kernal routine LOAD.
6. Check the carry flag for a disk error (carry is set after a LOAD error).
7. Check bit 4 of the I/O status flag at 144 to see if the error was a verify error.
8. If bit 4 is set, print NOT OK.
9. Otherwise, print OK.

Explanation

This routine is very straightforward. To use it, simply substitute for PROGRAM the name of the program you wish to verify.

Notice that **VERIFY** is similar in many ways to the load routines (**LOADAB**, **LOADBS**, **LOADRL**). A key difference in the setup is the value placed in the accumulator prior to JSR to LOAD. A value of zero in .A indicates that a load operation is to be performed. A nonzero value signifies a verify operation.

There are probably several ways to see whether the program in memory has verified properly. A direct way, employed here, is to check bit 4 of the status flag at 144. If this bit is set, a verify error has occurred and the full error message NOT OK is printed. If bit 4 is cleared, meaning no verify error has occurred, the index pointer to the error message, .Y, is offset in MSGNOK, so only OK gets printed. This trick prevents us from having to include a routine to print the second message.

Note: **VERIFY** currently lacks complete disk error check-

ing (except for checking the carry flag after JSR LOAD). You can add this feature if you like by incorporating the subroutine **DERRCK** into the code. Place **DERRCK** just before **FILENM**, as noted in the source listing. Jump to **DERRCK** immediately after the **JSR LOAD** instruction. Also, be sure to open the error channel (15) at the beginning of the program (noted in the source listing).

On the 128, you must define and include **BNKNUM** and **BNKFNM** at the end of the program.

Routine

```

C000      SETLFS      =      65466
C000      SETNAM     =      65469
C000      LOAD       =      65493
C000      CHROUT    =      65490
C000      STATUS    =      144
C000      SETBNK    =      65384      ; Kernal bank number for verify and filename
                                       ; (128 only)
C000      MMUREG     =      65280      ; MMU configuration register (128 only)
                                       ;
                                       ; Verify the file (BASIC or ML) on disk.
                                       ;
                                       ; Open channel 15 here if you include disk
                                       ; error checking (DERRCK).
                                       ;
C000      VERIFY     -      *
                                       ; LDA #0; set the 128 to bank 15 (128 only)
                                       ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
C000 A9 01          LDA #1          ; logical file number (value doesn't matter)
C002 A2 08          LDX #8          ; device number for disk drive
C004 A0 01          LDY #1          ; secondary address of 1 for absolute load
C006 20 BA FF      JSR SETLFS      ; set parameters for verify
                                       ; Include the following three instructions
                                       ; on the 128 only.
                                       ; LDA BNKNUM; bank containing the
                                       ; program
                                       ; LDX BNKFNM; bank containing the
                                       ; ASCII filename
                                       ; JSR SETBNK
                                       ; length of filename
C009 A9 09          LDA #FNLENG    ;
C00B A2 38          LDX #<FILENM  ; address of filename
C00D A0 C0          LDY #>FILENM
C00F 20 BD FF      JSR SETNAM     ; set up filename
C012 A9 01          LDA #1          ; flag for verify
C014 20 D5 FF      JSR LOAD       ; verify the file
                                       ;
                                       ; JSR DERRCK; Insert here for error
                                       ; checking.
                                       ;
                                       ; store the carry flag setting
C017 08            PHP            ;
C018 A9 0D          LDA #13        ; print OK or NOT OK on next line
C01A 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C01D 28            PLP            ; restore carry flag setting
C01E B0 0A          BCS NOTOK      ; if disk error occurs, carry is normally set
                                       ; after load
C020 A5 90          LDA STATUS     ; check the I/O status flag
C022 29 10          AND #16        ; test bit 4 for verify error
C024 D0 04          BNE NOTOK      ; Bit 4 is 1, so verify error occurred. Print
                                       ; "NOT OK".

```

VERIFY

```

C026 A0 04          LDY #4          ; No verify error. Offset into message to
                                ; OK.
C028 D0 02          BNE LOOP        ; print it
C02A A0 00          LDY #0
C02C B9 41 C0      C0 LOOP        ; print NOT OK or OK
                                ; exit on zero byte
C02F F0 06          BEQ FINISH
C031 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT
C034 C8            INY
C035 D0 F5          BNE LOOP        ; continue printing message
C037 60            FINISH          RTS

                                ;
                                ; Insert DERRCK here if you're including
                                ; disk error checking.
                                ;
C038 30 3A 50      FILENM .ASC "0:PROGRAM" ; Substitute the name of your program here
                                ; (<= 16 characters)
C041            ENLENG = * - FILENM ; length of filename
                                ; Include the next two variables for the 128
                                ; only.
C041 4E 4F 54      MSGNOK .ASC "NOT OK" ; message for NOT OK/OK
C047 00            .BYTE 0
                                ; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number where
                                ; program to verify is located
                                ; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
                                ; ASCII filename is located

```

See also SAVEBS, SAVEML.

Name

Change the text screen location

Description

This routine lets you change the text screen location within the current video bank. The text screen must be placed on an even 1K boundary within the video bank. The high nybble, bits 4–7, of the VIC-II chip memory control register (53272) determines the actual offset of the text screen within the chosen video bank. This offset can have values from 0 through 15.

Prototype

1. Enter this routine with `.A` containing the 1K offset for the text screen.
2. Multiply `.A` by 16, shifting the low nybble to the high nybble.
3. Store the result into bits 4–7 of the VIC-II memory control register.

Explanation

The example routine locates the text screen at 8192, or at the 8K boundary, within the current video bank. Here, `SCROFF` contains the offset (in 1K increments) to the start of text screen memory. For instance, change the routine to start the text screen at an offset of 4K, store a 4 in `SCROFF`.

On the 128, the value in location 2604 (`VM1`) is copied into 53272 during each IRQ interrupt as long as you're working in a portion of the screen containing text. (If you're in bit-map mode, location 2605, or `VM2`, is copied into 53272.) So, on the 128, define `VMCSB` as 2604. (Although it's not necessary, you can also change the label to `VM1`. If you do this, be sure to change it everywhere it's referenced in the program.)

Note: This routine currently uses a zero-page location (251) for temporary storage. Unfortunately, this and other available zero-page locations are heavily used by many other ML routines. If your program requires you to keep this location free, just reserve a labeled byte at the end of your program for storage (for example, `TEMPA .BYTE 0`) and substitute the chosen label (here, `TEMPA`) everywhere `ZP` occurs in the source code.

VICADR

Routine

```
C000          VMCSB  =    53272      ; 2604 on the 128—VIC-II chip memory
          ; control register
C000          ZP      =    251
          ;
          ; Offset text screen by 8K in current video
          ; bank.
C000 AD 18 C0          LDA SCROFF
C003 20 07 C0          JSR VICADR    ; A contains screen offset
C006 60                RTS         ; offset text screen
          ;
          ; Offset text screen by 1K times .A in current
          ; video bank
          ; multiply by 16 to position in high nybble
C007 0A          VICADR ASL
C008 0A          ASL
C009 0A          ASL
C00A 0A          ASL
C00B 85 FB          STA ZP          ; store temporarily
C00D AD 18 D0          LDA VMCSB    ; retain current bits 0-3 of VMCSB
C010 29 0F          AND #15
C012 05 FB          ORA ZP          ; OR in bits 4-7
C014 8D 18 D0          STA VMCSB    ; and store result in control register
C017 60                RTS
          ;
C018 08          SCROFF .BYTE 8    ; text screen offset by 8K within video bank
```

See also CHOUTP, VIDBNK.

Name

Change the VIC chip video bank

Description

VIDBNK lets you choose the current 16K VIC chip video bank from four possible choices:

- Bank 0** (0-16383)
- Bank 1** (16384-32767)
- Bank 2** (32768-49151)
- Bank 3** (49152-65535)

Prototype

1. Enter the routine with .A containing the chosen video bank number (0-3).
2. Set the CIA #2 port A data direction register for output.
3. Store the result of 3 minus the bank number into bits 0-1 of the CIA #2 port A data register.

Explanation

The VIC chip, which is in charge of all video output on the 64 and all 40-column output on the 128, can access only 16K of memory at any one time. This 16K area is called the *video bank*. Within the selected 16K must reside all video-oriented information: sprite shapes, text screen memory, hi-res screen memory, and character shapes. Bank 0 is the default video bank. Because locations 0-16384 are often used for other purposes, it's sometimes useful to use a different video bank.

Routine

```

C000          CI2PRA    =    56576          ; CIA #2 data port register A
C000          C2DDRA   =    56578          ; CIA #2 data direction register A
C000          ZP       =    251           ;
;
; Select video bank 2.
C000 AD 22 C0          LDA   BNKNUM       ; bank number (0-3)
C003 20 07 C0          JSR   VIDBNK     ; select bank
C006 60                RTS
;
; Select a video bank. Enter with .A
; containing the chosen bank number.
; effectively, (3 - bank number)
C007 49 03          VIDBNK EOR   #3      ; store it temporarily
C009 85 FB          STA   ZP           ; set data direction register for output
C00B AD 02 DD          LDA   C2DDRA
C00E 09 03          ORA   #3
C010 8D 02 DD          STA   C2DDRA
;
C013 AD 00 DD          LDA   CI2PRA     ; take current CI2PRA value

```

VIDBNK

C016	29	FC	AND	#252	; and keep bits 2-7.
C018	05	FB	ORA	ZP	; OR with 3 - bank number
C01A	8D	00 DD	STA	CI2PRA	; reset register
C01D	60		RTS		
					:
C01E	02	BNKNUM	.BYTE	2	; bank 2

See also CHOUTP, VICADR.

Name

Warm start

Description

The difference between a *cold start* and *warm start* on a computer is basically one of degree. A warm start always has a less severe effect on the machine.

One way to cause a warm start on the 64 or 128 is to JuMP directly to the warm-start routine. A warm start also occurs anytime a BRK instruction (0) is encountered.

On the 64, the result of a warm start is the same as when you press the RUN/STOP and RESTORE keys simultaneously. On both computers, all page 3 RAM vectors are restored to their initial settings. In addition, the character set and the screen are reset to their original condition.

Following the warm-start routine on the 64, you're returned to BASIC. On the 128, you're placed in the monitor. On both machines, the BASIC program remains intact.

Prototype

JuMP to a location containing a zero.

Explanation

To demonstrate the effect of a warm start, the example program initially changes the screen and text colors. When you press B, **WARMST** is executed, causing the screen and text colors to be restored to their default settings. As we've indicated, on the 64, you're left in BASIC. On the 128, you're left in the monitor.

WARMST is the same for both computers. In either case, you JuMP to a location in memory that you know contains a zero. Here, a zero has been placed in memory (in zero page) from within the main program.

Routine

C000	ZP	=	251	
C000	GETIN	=	65508	
C000	CHROUT	=	65490	
C000	BGCOL0	=	53281	; screen background color register 0
C000	COLOR	=	646	; COLOR = 241 on the 128—foreground
				; color register for text
C000	EXTCOL	=	53280	; border-color register
C000	LTGREN	=	13	
C000	GREEN	=	5	
C000	WHITE	=	1	

WARMST

```
C000 A9 00          LDA #0          ; Perform a warm start with B key.
C002 85 FB          STA ZP          ; store a zero byte in zero page
C004 A9 0D          BCKCOL LDA #LTGREN ; set screen background color to light green
C006 8D 21 D0      STA BGCOLOR
C009 A9 05          BORCOL LDA #GREEN   ; set border color to green
C00B 8D 20 D0      STA EXTCOL
C00E A9 01          TXTCOL LDA #WHITE   ; set text color to white
C010 8D 86 02      STA COLOR
C013 20 E4 FF      LOOP JSR GETIN    ; get a character
C016 F0 FB          BEQ LOOP      ; if no input
C018 20 D2 FF      JSR CHROUT   ; print it
C01B C9 42          CMP #66       ; is it B?
C01D D0 F4          BNE LOOP      ; if not, get another key
C01F 4C 22 C0      JMP WARMST   ; execute warm start
;
;
; WARMST clears the screen and resets
; default colors.
; warm start caused by zero byte and RTS
C022 4C FB 00      WARMST JMP ZP
```

See also COLDST.

Name

Sets windows boundaries using escape codes

Description

A very useful feature of the 128 is its built-in windowing capability. As your programs become more sophisticated, you'll find any number of uses for windows—menus, prompts (Y/N), messages, and so forth. This routine shows how to set up a text window on the 128 by using escape codes.

Prototype

1. Enter with the appropriate window dimensions defined by the variables `TOPROW`, `LEFTCL`, `BTROWO`, and `RGTOFF` at the end of the program. (Note that `BTROWO` and `RGTOFF` are offsets from `TOPROW` and `LEFTCL`, respectively.)
2. Position the cursor at the top left corner of the window with `PLOT`.
3. Print an `ESC-T` for top.
4. Likewise, position the cursor at the bottom right position with `PLOT`.
5. Print an `ESC-B` for bottom.

Explanation

To use `PLOT` to set up the window boundaries, load the `X` and `Y` registers with the row and column number of the window border. With `PLOT`, the rows and columns are numbered, beginning with zero. Possible row values are 0–24; columns can run from 0 through 39 (or 0–79 on the 80-column screen).

After the top corner position has been fixed with `PLOT`, we load `A` with 84 (for ASCII `T`) and print it in the form of an `ESC` code using the subroutine `ESCPRT`. In `ESCPRT`, the character to be printed is stored on the stack while an `ESC` code—`CHR$(27)`—is printed. Following this, we pull the character back off the stack and print it as well.

A similar process is followed in establishing the bottom border of the window. This time an `ESC-B`, which sets the bottom of the window, is printed. It should be noted that the previous action (printing `ESC-T`) has put the top of the window at a given location and that the Kernal `PLOT` routine operates relative to the current window. Thus, the values for the bottom of the window are the width and height of the window, *not* the absolute screen coordinates of the bottom corner.

Finally, to clearly show the limits of the window, a continuous stream of `W`'s is printed.

WINDOW (128 only)

Routine

```

0C00          PLOT      =    65520
0C00          CHROUT   =    65490
;
; Position window and print W's.
0C00 20 0B 0C          JSR    WINDOW
; set up the window
0C03 A9 57          LDA    #87
; print W
0C05 20 D2 FF LOOP    JSR    CHROUT
0C08 4C 05 0C          JMP    LOOP
; again and again and again...
;
; Set up a window on the 128 screen.
; top left position
0C0B AE 30 0C WINDOW  LDX    TOPROW
0C0E AC 31 0C          LDY    LEFTCL
0C11 18              CLC
; clear carry to set position
0C12 20 F0 FF          JSR    PLOT
; set cursor at .Y,.X
0C15 A9 54          LDA    #84
; T for top of window
0C17 20 26 0C          JSR    ESCPRT
; print ESC-T
0C1A AE 32 0C          LDX    BTROWO
; bottom right
0C1D AC 33 0C          LDY    RGTOFF
0C20 18              CLC
; set position
0C21 20 F0 FF          JSR    PLOT
; set cursor at .Y,.X
0C24 A9 42          LDA    #66
; now print ESC-B for bottom of window
0C26 48              PHA
; save character to print to the stack
0C27 A9 1B          LDA    #27
; print ESC
0C29 20 D2 FF          JSR    CHROUT
0C2C 68              PLA
; pull character from stack
0C2D 4C D2 FF          JMP    CHROUT
; print it and RTS
;
; window's top left corner is on the ninth row
; and eleventh column
; The following two values are offsets from
; the first two.
0C30 08              TOPROW  .BYTE 8
; window's bottom right corner is on the
; seventeenth row
0C31 0A              LEFTCL  .BYTE 10
; and thirty-first column
0C32 08              BTROWO  .BYTE 8
0C33 14              RGTOFF  .BYTE 20

```

See also BIGMAP.

Name

Open a disk buffer and write a sector to disk

Description

This routine copies a block of 256 bytes from computer memory to a memory buffer inside the disk drive. This is relatively low-level disk output; most of the time you can just read and write program or sequential files. There are times, however, when you will want to write directly to a disk sector (a disk editor must be able to do this and so must a program that "unscratches" a file that's been accidentally scratched).

Prototype

1. OPEN 15,8,15 with no filename (SETLFS, SETNAM, and OPEN).
2. OPEN 1,8,3 with the name # (SETLFS, SETNAM, and OPEN, again). This sets aside a buffer in disk drive memory.
3. Write 256 bytes to logical file 1, the buffer (B-P is optional).
4. Send the U2 (block-write) command to logical file 15 to transfer the buffer to disk.
5. Close open channels.

Explanation

This routine depends heavily on Kernal routines; note the numerous equates at the top of the program. The first JSR goes to the subroutine OPEN15, which opens the command channel to the disk and is the equivalent of the BASIC command OPEN 15,8,15. The usual SETLFS, SETNAM, and OPEN Kernal routines are called. The next subroutine opens logical file 1 (with secondary address of 3) and reserves a buffer by using the special filename #. At address \$C006, CHKOUT sets up the buffer to receive output. Finally, 256 bytes are printed to the disk buffer via CHROUT.

Now that our message is in the disk buffer, we have to write it from disk memory to the disk itself. Again CHKOUT diverts output, but to the command channel 15 this time. The command we send (an ASCII string at the end of the program) is U2 3 0 2 2. The U2 means write a block; 3 is the secondary address of the buffer channel, *not* the logical file number. We opened the file as 1,8,3 and printed to 1, but when the memory is copied, we provide the secondary address (channel 3) instead of 1. The next number (ASCII 0) is always a zero, un-

WRBUFF

less you happen to own a dual drive. The next two numbers are the track and sector (in that order).

Note: If there's a specific byte or two you'd like to change on a specific sector, you should first read the sector into the disk buffer. Then set the buffer pointer with the B-P command, write the character, and copy memory back to the appropriate sector.

Warning: This routine writes directly to a disk sector, regardless of what might already be there. If you're going to experiment with this routine, *don't use a disk that contains important files.* If you write information to disk sectors, they may be overwritten by later disk access, unless you mark the sector as allocated in the BAM.

Routine

```
C000          SETLFS = $FFBA
C000          SETNAM = $FFBD
C000          OPEN  = $FFC0
C000          CHKOUT = $FFC9
C000          CHKIN = $FFC6
C000          CHROUT = $FFD2
C000          CHRIN = $FFCF
C000          CLOSE = $FFC3
C000          CLRCHN = $FFCC

C000 20 47 C0 WRBUFF JSR  OPEN15      ; open command channel
C003 20 5E C0        JSR  OPNBUF      ; open a buffer
C006 A2 01          LDX  #1
C008 20 C9 FF      JSR  CHKOUT      ; ready to send to channel 1 (the buffer)
C00B 90 03          BCC  BUFOK      ; carry clear if no error
C00D 4C 79 C0      JMP  ERROR      ; else print error message
C010 A0 00          LDY  #0          ; index = 0
C012 B9 BB C0 WRWRITE LDA  BLOCK,Y   ; start writing to the buffer
C015 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT      ; send it out
C018 C8            INY          ; increment index
C019 D0 F7          BNE  WRITE      ; and go back for another, until 256 bytes
                                ; are sent
C01B 20 CC FF      JSR  CLRCHN      ; back to normal I/O
                                ;
C01E A2 0F          LDX  #15          ; open the command channel
C020 20 C9 FF      JSR  CHKOUT      ; for output
C023 90 03          BCC  OUTOK      ; carry clear = OK
C025 4C 79 C0      JMP  ERROR      ; otherwise, an error
C028 A0 00          LDY  #0          ; start counter at zero
C02A B9 8E C0 WRWRITE LDA  BLKWR,Y   ; get a character
C02D F0 07          BEQ  QUIT15
C02F 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT      ; and send it
C032 C8            INY          ; count up
C033 4C 2A C0 WRWRITE JMP  SENDIT   ; and continue
C036 20 CC FF      JSR  CLRCHN      ; restore I/O
                                ;
                                ; All done, so close it down.
C039 A9 01          FINIS LDA  #1
C03B 20 C3 FF      JSR  CLOSE      ; close logical file 1
C03E A9 0F          LDA  #15
C040 20 C3 FF      JSR  CLOSE      ; and the command channel
C043 20 CC FF      JSR  CLRCHN      ; and clear the channels
```

```

C046 60                                RTS                                ; done
                                           ; subroutines
C047 A9 0F      OPEN15 LDA #15        ; logical file number
C049 A2 08      LDX #8                ; device number for disk drive
C04B A0 0F      LDY #15               ; secondary address for command channel
C04D 20 BA FF   JSR SETLFS            ; set parameters to be opened
C050 A9 00      LDA #0                ; length is zero (no filename)
C052 20 BD FF   JSR SETNAM            ;
C055 20 C0 FF   JSR OPEN              ; open it
C058 90 03      BCC OK15              ; check for error
C05A 4C 79 C0   JMP ERROR             ; print the message if there's a problem
C05D 60          OK15  RTS             ; and we're done
                                           ;
                                           ; OPNBUF opens a disk buffer for writing.
C05E A9 01      OPNBUF LDA #1         ; logical file number
C060 A2 08      LDX #8                ; device number for disk drive
C062 A0 03      LDY #3                ; secondary address for buffer channel
C064 20 BA FF   JSR SETLFS            ;
C067 A9 01      LDA #1                ; one character
C069 A2 8D      LDX #<BUFNAM         ; the filename is ""
C06B A0 C0      LDY #>BUFNAM         ;
C06D 20 BD FF   JSR SETNAM            ; set up the name
C070 20 C0 FF   JSR OPEN              ; now it's ready
C073 90 03      BCC OKBUF             ; to OKBUF if no error
C075 4C 79 C0   JMP ERROR             ; JMP to error if there is
C078 60          OKBUF RTS            ; and we're done
                                           ;
C079 20 CC FF   ERROR JSR CLRCHN      ; close down and clear channels
C07C A0 00      LDY #0                ; ready to print message
C07E B9 9A C0   MORE  LDA ERRMSG,Y    ;
C081 F0 07      BEQ MSGEND            ; message ends with zero
C083 20 D2 FF   JSR CHRROUT           ; print the character
C086 C8         INY                   ; increment the index
C087 4C 7E C0   JMP MORE              ; and go back
C08A 4C 39 C0   MSGEND JMP FINIS      ; finish closing files
                                           ;
                                           ; variables
C08D 23         .ASC #""
C08E 55 32 20   BLKWR .ASC "U2 3 0 2 2"
                                           ; U2 is block-write command
                                           ; 3 is secondary address
                                           ; 0 is drive number
                                           ; track 2, sector 2.
C098 0D 00     .BYTE 13,0
C09A 53 4F 4D   ERRMSG .ASC "Something is wrong with the disk"
C0BA 00         .BYTE 0
C0BB           = *
C0BB 54 48 49   .ASC "this is a string"
C0CB 20 57 48   .ASC " which we are writing"
C0ED 20 54 4F   .ASC " to the disk at track 2"
C0F7 20 53 45   .ASC " sector 2"
C100 0D         .BYTE 13

```

See also RDBUFF.

WRITBF

Name

Write a buffer to a sequential or program file

Description

WRITBF relies on three file-handling routines—specifically, **OPENFL**, **WRITFL**, and **CLOSFL**—to write a data buffer to disk. This buffer, whose address is in zero page, can be written as either a sequential or a program file.

Prototype

In the calling program (MAIN, below):

1. Define the length of the data buffer to write to disk (as **LENGTH**).
2. On the 128, set the bank to 15. On both machines, store the address of the data buffer in zero page. Then place the buffer length in the **.X** and **.Y** registers (low byte in **.X**, high byte in **.Y**). Finally, JSR to **WRITBF**.

In **WRITBF** itself:

3. Store the buffer length, in **.X** and **.Y** upon entry, into a two-byte address (here, **BUFCTR**).
4. Open a sequential or program filename with **OPENFL**.
5. Write the data buffer to the open file with **WRITFL**.
6. Close the open file with **CLOSFL**.

Explanation

In the example program, we use **WRITBF** to write the buffer containing the message **FILE SEQUENTIAL IS 37 CHARACTERS LONG** to disk as a sequential file. See **WRITFL** for an explanation of how to write a program file.

Although it may look like a long routine, **WRITBF** is very short. The buffer length that is in **.X** (low byte) and **.Y** (high byte) upon entry is immediately stored in **BUFCTR**. From this point on, it's just a matter of accessing the three routines described elsewhere in this book.

Note: You can add disk error checking to this program by including **DERRCK**, as we've done for several other disk-related routines in this book.

Routine

C000	SETLFS	=	65466
C000	SETNAM	=	65469
C000	OPEN	=	65472
C000	CHKOUT	=	65481
C000	CHROUT	=	65490
C000	CLOSE	=	65475

```

C000          CLRCHN  =    65484
C000          ZP      =    251
C000          SETBNK  =    65384      ; Kernal bank number for data and filename
                                       ; (128 only)
C000          MMUREG  =    65280      ; MMU configuration register (128 only)
                                       ;
                                       ; WRITBF uses the following three routines
                                       ; to write characters
                                       ; from a buffer in memory to a sequential or
                                       ; program file:
C000
                                       ; OPENFL to open the sequential/program
                                       ; file,
                                       ; WRITFL to write characters to the file, and
                                       ; CLOSFL to close the file and restore
                                       ; the default output device.
                                       ;
                                       ; Enter WRITBF with buffer address in zero
                                       ; page, length in .X, .Y.
C000          MAIN    =    *
                                       ; LDA #0; set the 128 to bank 15 (128 only)
                                       ; STA MMUREG; (128 only)
C000 A9 71          LDA  #<BUFFER      ; store address of buffer to zero page
C002 85 FB          STA  ZP
C004 A0 C0          LDY  #>BUFFER
C006 84 FC          STY  ZP+1
C008 AE 96 C0      LDX  LENGTH        ; store length of buffer in .X (low) and .Y
                                       ; (high)
C00B AC 97 C0      LDY  LENGTH+1
C00E 20 12 C0      JSR  WRITBF      ; go write data to file
C011 60            RTS
                                       ;
                                       ; WRITBF opens a SEQ or PRG file data
                                       ; from buffer at ZP.
                                       ; Enter the routine with buffer length in .X
                                       ; (low byte) and .Y (high).
C012 8E 98 C0     WRITBF STX  BUFCTR    ; store length of buffer (in .X and .Y) to
                                       ; memory
C015 8C 99 C0      STY  BUFCTR+1
C018 20 23 C0      JSR  OPENFL      ; OPEN the file with parameters 1,8,2
C01B 20 39 C0      JSR  WRITFL      ; write data from buffer to open file
C01E A9 01          LDA  #1           ; file to close
C020 4C 5B C0      JMP  CLOSFL      ; close file 1, restore default devices, and
                                       ; return to MAIN
                                       ;
                                       ; OPENFL opens a sequential or program file
                                       ; with 1,8,2 for reading or writing.
C023          OPENFL =    *
                                       ; Open channel 15 here if you include error
                                       ; checking (DERRCK).
                                       ;
C023 A9 01          LDA  #1           ; logical file 1
C025 A2 08          LDX  #8           ; device number for disk drive
C027 A0 02          LDY  #2           ; secondary address (2-14 are OK)
C029 20 BA FF      JSR  SETLFS       ; file parameters set
                                       ; Include the following three instructions on
                                       ; the 128 only.
                                       ; LDA BNKNUM; bank number for file data
                                       ; LDX BNKFNM; bank number for ASCII
                                       ; filename
                                       ; JSR SETBNK
                                       ;
C02C A9 10          LDA  #FNLENG      ; length of filename
C02E A2 61          LDX  #<FILENM     ; address of filename

```

WRITBF

```

C030 A0 C0          LDY  #>FILENM
C032 20 BD FF      JSR  SETNAM          ; set up filename
;
C035 20 C0 FF      JSR  OPEN           ; open the file for writing
;
; JSR DERRCK; Insert here for disk error
; checking
;
C038 60            RTS                ; return to WRITBF
;
; WRITFL writes characters from a buffer
; whose address is in zero page
; to a sequential or program file.
C039 A2 01        WRITFL LDX  #1
C03B 20 C9 FF      JSR  CHROUT        ; send output to file 1
;
; Include the following four lines to send the
; load address for a program file.
; LDA ZP; output low/high-byte address of
; buffer in zero page to disk
; JSR CHROUT
; LDA ZP+1
; JSR CHROUT
;
C03E A0 00          LDY  #0           ; initialize index into the storage buffer
C040 B1 FB          WRLOOP LDA  (ZP),Y        ; load a character from buffer
C042 20 D2 FF      JSR  CHROUT        ; send it to the open file
C045 E6 FB          INC  ZP           ; increment low byte of buffer address
C047 D0 02          BNE  LENCHK        ; low byte hasn't turned over, so skip forward
C049 E6 FC          INC  ZP+1         ; otherwise, increase high byte
C04B CE 98 C0      LENCHK DEC  BUFCTR      ; decrement low byte of buffer counter
C04E D0 F0          BNE  WRLOOP        ; if not equal, more of the buffer remains, so
; continue writing
C050 CE 99 C0          DEC  BUFCTR+1    ; otherwise, decrement the high byte of
; buffer counter
C053 AD 99 C0          LDA  BUFCTR+1    ; continue writing until last page of buffer
; has been sent
C056 C9 FF          CMP  #255          ; high byte goes from 0 through 255 on last
; page
C058 D0 E6          BNE  WRLOOP        ; we've yet to reach last page, so write on
C05A 60            RTS                ; return to WRITBF
;
; CLOSFL closes the logical file in .A and
; restores default devices.
C05B 20 C3 FF      CLOSFL JSR  CLOSE        ; close file in .A
C05E 4C CC FF      JMP  CLRCHN        ; clear all channels, restore default devices,
; and RTS
;
; Insert DERRCK routine here if you're
; including error checking.
;
C061 30 3A 53      FILENM .ASC  "0:SEQUENTIAL,S,W"
; example sequential file to write
; ,S,W is optional with sequential file writes.
; Change filename to "0:PROGRAM,F,W" to
; write a program file.
C071          FNLENG  =  *-FILENM      ; length of filename
;

```

```

C071 46 49 4C BUFFER .ASC "FILE SEQUENTIAL IS 37 CHARACTERS LONG"
C096 25 00     LENGTH .WORD37 ; two bytes for storing buffer length
C098 00 00     BUFCTR .WORD0  ; two-byte counter for remaining number of
                                ; bytes to write
                                ;
                                ; Include the next two variables on the 128.
                                ; BNKNUM .BYTE 0; bank number for file
                                ; data
                                ; BNKFNM .BYTE 0; bank number where
                                ; ASCII filename is located

```

See also CLOSFL, WRITFL.

WRITFL

Name

Send characters to a sequential or program file

Description

This routine transfers data from a buffer whose address is in zero page to an open file. It's intended to be used in a program where sequential or program data is written to disk, such as **WRITBF**.

Prototype

1. Before accessing **WRITFL**, call **OPENFL** to open a channel where the data will be written. Also, store the address of the data buffer to be written to disk in zero page.
2. Define the output channel as the one opened with **CHKOUT**.
3. If you're outputting a program file and wish to include a program load address, send the buffer address bytes (low byte first, then high byte) stored in zero page.
4. Write a given number of bytes (the number is stored in the counter **BUFCTR**) from the buffer to the open channel. Then return to the calling program.

Explanation

WRITFL takes data from a buffer and outputs it to an open disk file until **BUFCTR** bytes have been sent. The routine assumes the data buffer's address is in zero page (in **\$FB**, labeled **ZP**). Be sure to set up this pointer before accessing **WRITFL**.

In the example below, the logical file used for the transfer is 1. This file number should have been assigned previously by a routine that opened the data channel. If you need to output data through some other channel, such as the printer or tape drive, load the **X** register with the appropriate value in **\$C000**.

Routine

```
C000          CHKOUT  = 65481
C000          CHROUT  = 65490
C000          ZP      = 251
```

```
C000 A2 01      WRITFL  LDX  #1
C002 20 C9 FF   JSR    CHKOUT
```

```

; WRITFL writes characters from a buffer
; whose address is in zero page
; to a sequential or program file.
; send output to file 1
;
; Include the following four lines to send
; the load address.
; LDA ZP; output low/high byte address of
; buffer in zero page to disk
```

```

; JSR CHROUT
; LDA ZP+1
; JSR CHROUT
;
C005 A0 00          LDY #0          ; initialize index into the storage buffer
C007 B1 FB          WRLOOP LDA (ZP),Y      ; load a character from buffer whose
;                               ; address is in ZP
C009 20 D2 FF          JSR CHROUT      ; send it to the open file
C00C E6 FB          INC ZP          ; increment low byte of buffer address
C00E D0 02          BNE LENCHK      ; low byte hasn't rolled over, so skip
;                               ; forward
C010 E6 FC          INC ZP+1        ; otherwise, increase high byte
C012 CE 22 C0 LENCHK DEC BUFCTR      ; decrement low byte of buffer counter
C015 D0 F0          BNE WRLOOP      ; if not equal, more of the buffer remains,
;                               ; so continue writing
C017 CE 23 C0          DEC BUFCTR+1  ; otherwise, decrement the high byte of
;                               ; buffer counter
C01A AD 23 C0          LDA BUFCTR+1  ; continue writing until last page of buffer
;                               ; has been sent
C01D C9 FF          CMP #255        ; high byte goes from 0 to 255 on last page
C01F D0 E6          BNE WRLOOP      ; we've yet to reach last page, so write on
C021 60             RTS            ; return to main program
;
C022 00 00          BUFCTR .WORD0    ; two-byte counter for remaining number of
;                               ; bytes to write

```

See also CLOSFL, WRITBF.

XBCCOL

Name

Set colors for extended background color mode

Description

Extended background color mode reduces the size of the available character set from 256 characters to only 64. But at the same time, you have a choice of four different background colors, with no loss of horizontal resolution. This routine sets the four background colors.

Prototype

Read the four color values from EXBCOL and store them beginning at location 53281 (BGCOLOR).

Explanation

To set the background colors, assign the color values for the four groups of characters (0–63, 64–127, 128–191, and 192–255) in EXBCOL at the end of the program.

The program fragment below illustrates how the four colors are set. For a complete example of extended background color mode, see **XBCMOD**.

Routine

```
C000          BGCOLOR = 53281          ; text background color register 0
;
C000 A2 03    XBCCOL LDX #3           ; as an index
C002 BD 0C C0 COLOOP LDA EXBCOL,X    ; get each color value
C005 9D 21 D0          STA BGCOLOR,X  ; assign it to a register
C008 CA          DEX                 ; for next register
C009 10 F7          BPL COLOOP        ; do all four
C00B 60          RTS
;
C00C 03 04 05 EXBCOL .BYTE 3,4,5,2  ; colors—cyan, purple, green, red
```

See also: XBCMOD, MTCCOL, MTCMOD.

Name

Turn extended background color mode on or off

Description

Two closely related routines are demonstrated here in one program. The first routine, **XBCMOD**, turns on (or off) extended background color mode while the second, **XBCCOL**, sets the colors for this mode.

By using these two routines in your programs, some interesting special effects can be achieved.

Prototype

1. Load the contents of the vertical fine-scrolling/control register at 53265 (SCROLY) into the accumulator.
2. ORA with %01000000 to turn on bit 6 and store the result back into the register. (To turn off extended background color mode, AND the contents of SCROLY with %10111111.)

Explanation

Normally, the background color for text characters is taken from the color register at 53281, or BGCOLOR. But by activating extended background color mode (setting bit 6 of SCROLY), each character's background color is instead taken from one of four color registers (53281–53284), depending on the screen code of the character to be displayed.

In this mode, the screen codes are divided into four groups: 0–63, 64–127, 128–191, and 192–255. Only characters from the first group (screen codes 0–63) can be displayed. Fortunately, this group contains most of the characters you ordinarily need (you may wish to define new characters if you'd rather use 64 other characters). Within this group are the letters A–Z, the numbers 0–9, and the punctuation marks. When one of the characters from this group is printed, the background color for the character is taken from BGCOLOR.

Characters with screen codes above 63 will appear the same as the first group (screen codes 0–63), except that their background colors will come from one of the three remaining color registers (53282–53284). To determine what a particular character will look like on the screen if its display code is higher than 63, subtract the initial screen code for the group from the intended display code and locate the corresponding character in the first group of screen codes.

For example, if you placed the spade character (screen code 65) on the screen, and turned on extended background

XBCMOD

color mode, you'd see the letter *A* (screen code $65 - 64 = 1$) in a background color taken from the register at 53282 (BGCOL1).

The fact that each group of screen codes has a different background color in this mode allows you to create some impressive animation and windowing effects. For instance, if you place characters from each of the four screen-code groups on the screen at once, and cycle the color values in each group's color register, a three-dimensional movement effect can be achieved. You can also simulate a window by printing certain messages using characters from just one screen-code group. These effects, of course, take on an added dimension if you use redefined characters.

Take a look at the example program to see how these two routines work together. In SCRLOP, we first display all screen codes (0-255) at the top of the screen. When you press a key, extended background color mode is activated with XBCMOD, and the respective colors for the four groups of screen codes are assigned in XBCCOL. The result is that the first 64 screen codes are now displayed four times. And each group of screen codes is shown in a different background color.

Note: While in extended background color mode, if you need a character not available in the first 64 screen codes, you'll have to define it yourself. You can perform this task with a character-redefinition routine like CHRDEF.

Routine

```
C000          BGCOLD  =    53281      ; text background color register 0
C000          SCROLY  =    53265      ; scroll/control register
C000          SCREEN  =    1024
C000          CHROUT  =    65490
C000          GETIN   =    65508

;
; Display screen codes 0-255. Then turn on
; extended background color mode,
; set extended background colors, and again
; display screen codes 0-255.
C000 20 03 C0 MAIN      JSR   CHRCLR  ; clear screen, display 0-255 screen codes,
; and wait for key
;
; Clear the screen and display 0-255 screen
; codes.
; clear the screen
C003 A9 93          CHRCLR  LDA   #147
C005 20 D2 FF          JSR   CHROUT
C008 A0 00          LDY   #0          ; as an index in SCRLOP
C00A 98          SCRLOP  TYA
C00B 99 00 04          STA   SCREEN,Y      ; display 0-255 screen codes in normal mode
C00E C8          INY
; for next screen code
C00F D0 F9          BNE   SCRLOP      ; and continue
C011 20 E4 FF GETKEY  JSR   GETIN          ; wait for a keypress
C014 F0 FB          BEQ   GETKEY      ; if no keypress, then wait
```

```

C016 20 1C C0      JSR  XBCMOD      ; turn on extended background color mode
C019 4C 25 C0      JMP  XBCCOL      ; assign extended background colors and RTS
;
; Turn on (or off) extended background color
; mode.
C01C AD 11 D0 XBCMOD LDA  SCROLY      ; get current register value
C01F 09 40          ORA  #%01000000    ; turn on bit 6 (turn off with AND
; %10111111 here)
C021 8D 11 D0          STA  SCROLY      ; and set the register
C024 60              RTS
;
; Assign 4 colors to extended background
; color registers 53281-53284.
C025 A2 03          XBCCOL LDX  #3          ; as an index
C027 BD 31 C0 COLOOP LDA  EXBCOL,X      ; get each color value
C02A 9D 21 D0          STA  BGCOLOR,X    ; assign it to a register
C02D CA              DEX                ; for next register
C02E 10 F7          BPL  COLOOP        ; do all four
C030 60              RTS
;
C031 03 04 05 EXBCOL .BYTE 3,4,5,2    ; colors—cyan, purple, green, red

```

See also XBCCOL, MTCCOL, MTCMOD.

Index by Topic

Addition

ADDBYT	Add two byte values and store the result in memory
ADDFP	Add two floating-point numbers, using the ROM routine
ADDINT	Add two 2-byte integer values and store the result in memory
INC2	Increment a two-byte counter

Branching

GOTOCF	GOTO from a character input using sequential compares and branches
GOTOST	GOTO from a character input and execute using the stack

Changing BASIC pointers

MBU64	(64 only) Move BASIC text area above an ML program
MBU128	(128 only) Move BASIC text area above an ML program

Character input

BUFCLR	Clear the keyboard buffer
CHRGTR	Get a character within an ASCII range
CHRGTS	Get a specific character
CHRKER	Get a character
MATGET	Get a character using the keyboard matrix
SHFCHK	Check the status of the shift keys
STPFLG	Check for STOP key by using the system STOP flag
STPKER	Check for the STOP key using the Kernal STOP routine
TXTCIN	Input a line of text using a custom routine
TXTINP	Input a line of text with the ROM routine INLIN

Character output

CHARX4	Print semilarge (4 × 4) characters
CHARX8	Print large (8 × 8) characters
POKSCR	POKE to screen and color memory
PRTCHR	Print a character on the screen
PTABAD	Print a string from a lookup table of addresses
PTABCT	Print a string from a table by using a counting method
STP64	(64 only) Print a string with STROUT
STP128	(128 only) Print a string with PRIMM
STRCPT	Print a string with a custom printing routine
STRLEN	Determine string length

Clearing the screen

CLRCHR	Clear the screen with CHR\$(147)
CLRFIL	Clear the screen with a fill routine
CLRROM	Clear the screen with a ROM routine

Colors

BCKCOL	Set the text-screen background color
BORCOL	Set the text-screen border color
COLFIL	Fill text-screen color memory
MTCCOL	Set colors for multicolor mode

Index by Topic

MTCMOD	Turn multicolor mode on or off
TXTCCH	Set the text color using CHR\$
TXTCOL	Set the text color
XBCCOL	Set colors for extended background color mode
XBCMOD	Turn extended background color mode on or off

Combining ML and BASIC

GOTOBL	Exit machine language and GOTO a BASIC line number
PASFMV	Pass values from BASIC to ML using the FRMEVL routine
PASMEM	Pass values from BASIC to ML by POKEing to free memory
PASREG	Pass values to an ML program directly through the registers
PASUSR	Pass values from BASIC to ML via the USR function

Cursor routines

FINDCR	Find the cursor location
PLOTCR	Set the cursor location
RPTKEY	Set repeat key flag

Custom characters and animation

ANIMAT	Animation by alternating character sets
CHRDEF	Character redefinition
CUST80	(128 only) Custom characters for the 80-column screen

Delay loops

BYT1DL	Cause a one-byte delay
BYT2DL	Cause a two-byte delay
INTDEL	Produce a delay using an IRQ interrupt counter
JIFDEL	Jiffy clock delay
KEYDEL	Wait for a keypress
TOD1DL	Time-of-day (TOD) clock 1 delay

Directory routines

DIRBYT	Read the directory as a stream of bytes
DIRPRG	Load the directory as a program file
FRESEC	Print the number of free sectors remaining on the disk

Disk commands

CONCAT	Concatenate two files
COPYFL	Copy a file to the same disk
FORMAT	Format a disk
INITLZ	Initialize a disk
RENAME	Rename a disk file
SCRATCH	Scratch (erase) a disk file
VALIDT	Validate a disk

Division

DIVBYT	Divide one byte value by another and store the result (and remainder) in memory
DIVFP	Divide one floating-point number by another
DIVINT	Divide one integer value by another

80-column routines (128 only)

CUST80	(128 only) Custom characters for the 80-column screen
RE80CO/ WR80CO	(128 only) Read and write to the 80-column video chip
VDCCOL	(128 only) Write to 80-column video attribute memory

Handling registers

FINDME	Find the address in the program counter (from a subroutine)
FINDPC	Find the address in the program counter (in-line code)
RSREGM	Restore registers from memory
SVREGM	Save processor registers in memory
SVREGS	Save and restore registers on the stack within a routine (in-line code)

Hi-res graphics

BITMAP	Enable/disable the hi-res screen (bitmap mode)
CLRHRF	Clear a hi-res screen using a fill method
CLRHRM	Clear a hi-res screen using self-modifying code
HRCOLF	Fill high-resolution color memory
HRPOLR	Set or clear a point on the hi-res screen based on polar coordinates
HRSETP	Set or clear a point on the hi-res screen
PAINT	Fill an irregular hi-res enclosed outline with a solid color

Interrupt-driven routines

ALARM2	Set up a time-of-day (TOD) alarm
INTCLK	Interrupt-driven clock
INTMUS	Interrupt-driven music
RAS64	Set up a raster interrupt on the 64
RAS128	Set up a raster interrupt on the 128
SPRINT	Sprite interrupt routine—automatic sprite movement

Jiffy clock functions

JIFDEL	Jiffy clock delay
JIFFRD	Read the jiffy clock
JIFPRT	Print the jiffy clock reading
JIFSET	Set the jiffy clock

Joystick routines

FIREBT	Read a joystick fire button
JOY2SE	Read both joysticks separately
JOY2TO	Read the two joysticks together as one stick
JOYSTK	Read a joystick

Loading files

LOADAB	Load a program (ML or BASIC) to the location from which it was saved
LOADBS	Load a BASIC program into the current BASIC text area
LOADRL	Load a BASIC or ML program at a designated memory address

Index by Topic

Lookup tables

HIDBIT	Hide a two-byte instruction with the BIT instruction
NOTETB	Create a table of standard frequencies (eight octaves/12 notes each)
PTABAD	Print a string from a lookup table of addresses
PTABCT	Print a string from a table by using a counting method

Memory management

FETCH	(128 only) Retrieve from expansion RAM memory
FILMEM	General memory fill
MOVEDN	Move block of data downward in memory
MVU64	(64 only) Move block of data upward in memory
MVU128	(128 only) Move block of data upward in memory
POKRUR/ PEKRUR	(64 only) POKE RAM under ROM / PEEK RAM under ROM
STASH	(128 only) Store system memory to expansion RAM
SWAPIT	Memory swap

Modifying BASIC

DATAMK	Create DATA statements from numbers in memory
RENUM1	Simple renumber routine (line numbers only)

Multiplication

MULAD1	Multiply two numbers with successive adds
MULAD2	Multiply two numbers with repeated addition (optimized version)
MULFP	Multiply two floating-point numbers
MULSHF	Multiply two unsigned integer values using bit shifts

Number conversions

B2SNIN	Convert a signed byte value to a signed integer value
B2UNIN	Convert a byte value (8 bits) to an unsigned integer value (16 bits)
BCD2AX	Convert a binary-coded decimal value to ASCII characters
BCD2BY	Convert binary-coded decimal (BCD) to a byte value
CAS2IN	Convert an ASCII number to a binary integer
CB2ASC	Convert a byte value to an ASCII number by using subtraction
CB2BCD	Convert a byte value (0-99) to a BCD number
CB2HEX	Convert a byte value to two hexadecimal digits (ASCII)
CI2FP/ CFP2I	Convert signed integer values to floating point and vice versa
CI2HEX	Convert a two-byte integer value to four hexadecimal (ASCII) digits
CNVBFP	Convert a two-byte value to floating-point, using the ROM routine

Printer routines

CLOSFL	Close a file and restore default devices
OPENPR	Open a printer channel
PRTOUT	Send characters to the printer
PRTSTR	Send a string to the printer

Printing numbers

BYTASC	Print a one-byte integer value
CNUMOT	Print a two-byte integer value
FACPRD	Print value in floating-point accumulator 1 to a specified number of decimal places
FACPRT	Print value in floating-point accumulator 1
NUMOUT	Print two-byte integer values

Random numbers

RD2BYT	Generate a random two-byte integer value using SID voice 3
RDBYRG	Generate a random one-byte integer value in a range
RND1VL	Generate a random floating-point number using BASIC's RND(1) function
RNDBYT	Generate a random one-byte integer value (0-255) using SID voice 3

Reading files

OPENFL	Open a sequential or program file
READBF	Read bytes from a sequential or program file into a buffer
READFL	Read characters from a sequential or program file

Reading the error channel

CHK144	Check peripheral status via location 144
DERRCK	Check the disk status and print a message
RDSTAT	Check the I/O status by using the Kernal READST routine

Read/write disk sector

RDBUFF	Open a disk channel, read a sector, copy the disk buffer to memory
WRBUFF	Open a disk buffer and write a sector to disk

Relocating the screen

CHOUTP	Change the target screen memory address for CHROUT
VICADR	Change the text screen location
VIDBNK	Change the video bank

Reset routines

COLDST	Cold start
WARMST	Warm start

Saving files

SAVEBS	Save a BASIC program
SAVEML	Save an ML program
VERIFY	Verify a disk file

Scrolling

BIGMAP	Display in a virtual window portions of a much larger map
SCRDN1	(64 only) Scroll down a line with INST character
SCRDN2	(64 only) Scroll the screen down a line with the ROM insert routine
SCRDN3	Scroll down a line of the screen by copying screen and color memory

Index by Topic

Searches

SRCBIN	Binary search of a sorted list
SRCLIN	Linear search for a string or other value

Sorting

ALPNTR	Alphabetize by swapping pointers
ALSWAP	Alphabetize a list by swapping strings that are out of order
SRCBIN	Binary search of a sorted list

Sound and music

BEEPER	Emit a beep sound
BELLRG	Emit a bell sound
EXPLOD	Produce an explosion sound
INTMUS	Interrupt-driven music
MELODY	Tune player
NOTETB	Create a table of standard frequencies (eight octaves/12 notes each)
SIDCLR	Clear the SID chip
SIDVOL	Set the SID chip volume register
SIRENS	Produce a siren sound

Sprites

MOVSAB	Move sprite to an absolute (predetermined) screen location
RAS64	(64 only) Set up a raster interrupt
RAS128	(128 only) Set up a raster interrupt
SPRINT	Sprite interrupt routine—automatic sprite movement

Square roots

SQROOT	Calculate the integer square root of an integer
--------	---

String conversions

CASSCR	Convert Commodore ASCII characters into screen codes
CASTAS	Convert Commodore ASCII characters to true ASCII
CNVERT	Character conversion using a lookup table
MIXLOW	Convert mixed-case characters to all lowercase
MIXUPP	Convert mixed-case characters to all uppercase
SCRCAS	Convert screen codes to Commodore ASCII characters
SWITCH	Switch uppercase to lowercase and vice versa
TASCAS	Convert characters from true ASCII to Commodore ASCII

Subtraction

SUBBYT	Subtract one byte value from another
SUBFP	Subtract one floating-point number from another
SUBINT	Subtract one 2-byte integer value from another

Time of day (TOD) clock functions

ALARM2	Set up a time-of-day (TOD) alarm
INTCLK	Interrupt-driven clock
TOD1DL	Time-of-day (TOD) clock 1 delay
TOD1RD	Read a time-of-day (TOD) clock
TOD2PR	Print the time-of-day (TOD) time
TOD2ST/ TOD1ST	Set a time-of-day (TOD) clock

Vectors

DISRSR	Disable RUN/STOP-RESTORE
DISTOP	Disable the STOP key by changing the STOP vector
ERRRDT	Change the ERROR vector
IRQINT	Set up an IRQ interrupt routine
NMIINT	Set up an NMI interrupt routine
RSTVEC	Restore all Kernal indirect vectors

Windows

BIGMAP	Display in a virtual window portions of a much larger map
WINDOW	(128 only) Set window boundaries with escape codes

Writing files

CLOSFL	Close a file and restore default devices
WRITBF	Write a buffer to a sequential or program file
WRITFL	Send characters to a sequential or program file

Index by Label

ADDBYT	Add two byte values and store the result in memory
ADDFP	Add two floating-point numbers, using the ROM routine
ADDINT	Add two 2-byte integer values and store the result in memory
ALARM2	Set up a time-of-day (TOD) alarm
ALPNTR	Alphabetize by swapping pointers
ALSWAP	Alphabetize a list by swapping strings that are out of order
ANIMAT	Animation by alternating character sets
B2SNIN	Convert a signed byte value to a signed integer value
B2UNIN	Convert a byte value (8 bits) to an unsigned integer value (16 bits)
BCD2AX	Convert a binary-coded decimal value to ASCII characters
BCD2BY	Convert binary-coded decimal (BCD) to a byte value
BCKCOL	Set the text-screen background color
BEEPER	Emit a beep sound
BELLRG	Emit a bell sound
BIGMAP	Display in a virtual window portions of a much larger map
BITMAP	Enable/disable the hi-res screen (bitmap mode)
BORCOL	Set the text-screen border color
BUFCLR	Clear the keyboard buffer
BYTIDL	Cause a one-byte delay
BYT2DL	Cause a two-byte delay
BYTASC	Print a one-byte integer
CAS2IN	Convert an ASCII number to a binary integer
CASSCR	Convert Commodore ASCII characters into screen codes
CASTAS	Convert Commodore ASCII characters to true ASCII
CB2ASC	Convert a byte value to an ASCII number by using subtraction
CB2BCD	Convert a byte value (0-99) to a BCD number
CB2HEX	Convert a byte value to two hexadecimal digits (ASCII)
CFP2I	See CI2FP
CHARX4	Print semilarge (4 × 4) characters
CHARX8	Print large (8 × 8) characters
CHK144	Check peripheral status via location 144
CHOUTP	Change the target screen memory address for CHROUT
CHRDEF	Character redefinition
CHRGTR	Get a character within an ASCII range
CHRGTS	Get a specific character
CHRKER	Get a character
CI2FP/ CFP2I	Convert signed integer values to floating point and vice versa
CI2HEX	Convert a two-byte integer value to four hexadecimal (ASCII) digits
CLOSFL	Close a file and restore default devices
CLRCHR	Clear the screen with CHR\$(147)
CLRFIL	Clear the screen with a fill routine
CLRHFR	Clear a hi-res screen using a fill method
CLRHRS	Clear a hi-res screen using self-modifying code
CLRRROM	Clear the screen with a ROM routine

Index by Label

CNUMOT	Print a two-byte integer value
CNVBFP	Convert a two-byte value to a floating-point number, using a ROM routine
CNVERT	Character conversion using a lookup table
COLDST	Cold start
COLFIL	Fill text-screen color memory
CONCAT	Concatenate two files
COPYFL	Copy a file to the same disk
CUST80	(128 only) Custom characters for the 80-column screen
DATAMK	Create DATA statements from numbers in memory
DERRCK	Check the disk status and print a message
DIRBYT	Read the directory as a stream of bytes
DIRPRG	Load the directory as a program file
DISRSR	Disable RUN/STOP-RESTORE
DISTOP	Disable the STOP key by changing the STOP vector
DIVBYT	Divide one byte value by another and store the result (and remainder) in memory
DIVFP	Divide one floating-point number by another
DIVINT	Divide one integer value into another
ERRRDT	Change the ERROR vector
EXPLOD	Produce an explosion sound
FACPRD	Print the value in floating-point accumulator 1 to a specified number of decimal places
FACPRT	Print the value in floating-point accumulator 1
FETCH	(128 only) Retrieve from expansion RAM memory
FILMEM	General memory fill
FINDCR	Find the cursor location
FINDME	Find the program counter (from a subroutine)
FINDPC	Find the program counter (in-line code)
FIREBT	Read a joystick fire button
FORMAT	Format a disk
FRESEC	Print the number of free sectors remaining on the disk
GOTOBL	Exit machine language and GOTO a BASIC line number
GOTOCP	GOTO from a character input using sequential compares and branches
GOTOST	GOTO from a character input and execute using the stack
HIDBIT	Hide a two-byte instruction with the BIT instruction
HRCOLF	Fill high-resolution color memory
HRPOLR	Set or clear a point on the hi-res screen based on polar coordinates
HRSETP	Set or clear a point on the hi-res screen
INC2	Increment a two-byte counter
INITLZ	Initialize a disk
INTCLK	Interrupt-driven clock
INTDEL	Produce a delay using an IRQ interrupt counter
INTMUS	Interrupt-driven music
IRQINT	Set up an IRQ interrupt routine
JIFDEL	Jiffy clock delay
JIFFRD	Read the jiffy clock
JIFPRT	Print the jiffy clock reading
JIFSET	Set the jiffy clock

JOY2SE	Read both joysticks separately
JOY2TO	Read the two joysticks together as one stick
JOYSTK	Read a joystick
KEYDEL	Wait for a keypress
LOADAB	Load a program (ML or BASIC) to the location from which it was saved
LOADBS	Load a BASIC program into the current BASIC text area
LOADRL	Load a BASIC or ML program at a designated memory address
MATGET	Get a character using the keyboard matrix
MBU64	(64 only) Move BASIC text area above an ML program on the 64
MBU128	(128 only) Move BASIC text area above an ML program on the 128
MELODY	Tune player
MIXLOW	Convert mixed-case characters to all lowercase
MIXUPP	Convert mixed-case characters to all uppercase
MOVEDN	Move a block of data downward in memory
MOVSAB	Move sprite to an absolute (predetermined) screen location
MTCCOL	Set the colors for multicolor mode
MTCMOD	Turn multicolor mode on or off
MULAD1	Multiply two numbers with successive adds
MULAD2	Multiply two numbers with repeated addition (optimized version)
MULFP	Multiply two floating-point numbers
MULSHF	Multiply two unsigned integer values using bit shifts
MVU64	(64 only) Move a block of data upward in memory
MVU128	(128 only) Move a block of data upward in memory
NMIINT	Set up an NMI interrupt routine
NOTETB	Create a table of standard frequencies (eight octaves/12 notes each)
NUMOUT	Print two-byte integer values
OPENFL	Open a sequential or program file
OPENPR	Open a printer channel
PAINT	Fill an irregular hi-res enclosed outline with a solid color
PASFMV	(64 only) Pass values from BASIC to ML using the FRMEVL routine
PASMEM	Pass values from BASIC to ML by POKEing to free memory
PASREG	Pass values to an ML program directly through the registers
PASUSR	Pass values from BASIC to ML via the USR function
PLOTCR	Set the cursor location
POKRUR/	
PEKRUR	(64 only) POKE RAM under ROM / PEEK RAM under ROM
POKSCR	POKE to screen and color memory
PRTCHR	Print a character on the screen
PRTOUT	Send characters to the printer
PRTSTR	Send a string to the printer
PTABAD	Print a string from a lookup table of addresses
PTABCT	Print a string from a table by using a counting method
RAS64	(64 only) Set up a raster interrupt
RAS128	(128 only) Set up a raster interrupt
RD2BYT	Generate a random two-byte integer value using SID voice 3

Index by Label

RDBUFF	Open a disk channel, read a sector, copy the disk buffer to memory
RDBYRG	Generate a random one-byte integer in a range
RDSTAT	Check the I/O status by using the Kernal READST routine
RE80CO/ WR80CO	(128 only) Read and write to the 80-column video chip
READBF	Read bytes from a sequential or program file into a buffer
READFL	Read characters from a sequential or program file
RENAME	Rename a disk file
RENUM1	Simple renumber routine (line numbers only)
RND1VL	Generate a random floating-point number using BASIC's RND(1) function
RNDBYT	Generate a random one-byte integer value (0-255) using SID voice 3
RPTKEY	Set repeat key flag
RSREGM	Restore registers from memory
RSTVEC	Restore all Kernal indirect vectors
SAVEBS	Save a BASIC program
SAVEML	Save an ML program
SCRNAS	Convert screen codes to Commodore ASCII characters
SCRDN1	(64 only) Scroll down a line with the INST character
SCRDN2	(64 only) Scroll the screen down a line with the ROM insert routine
SCRDN3	Scroll down a line of the screen by copying screen and color memory
SCRTEH	Scratch (erase) a disk file
SHFCHK	Check the status of the shift keys
SIDCLR	Clear the SID chip
SIDVOL	Set the SID chip volume register
SIRENS	Produce a siren sound
SPRINT	Sprite interrupt routine—automatic sprite movement
SQROOT	Calculate the integer square root of an integer value
SRCBIN	Binary search of a sorted list
SRCLIN	Linear search for a string or other value
STASH	(128 only) Store system memory to expansion RAM
STP64	(64 only) Print a string with STROUT
STP128	(128 only) Print a string with PRIMM
STPFLG	Check for STOP key by using the system STOP flag
STPKER	Check for the STOP key using the Kernal STOP routine
STRCPT	Print a string with a custom printing routine
STRLEN	Determine string length
SUBBYT	Subtract one byte value from another
SUBFP	Subtract one floating-point number from another
SUBINT	Subtract one 2-byte integer value from another
SVREGM	Save processor registers in memory
SVREGS	Save and restore registers on the stack within a routine (in-line code)
SWAPIT	Memory swap
SWITCH	Switch uppercase to lowercase and vice versa
TASCAS	Convert characters from true ASCII to Commodore ASCII

TOD1DL	Time-of-day (TOD) clock 1 delay
TOD1RD	Read a time-of-day (TOD) clock
TOD2PR	Print the time-of-day (TOD) time
TOD2ST/ TOD1ST	Set a time-of-day (TOD) clock
TXTCCH	Set the text color using CHR\$
TXTCIN	Input a line of text using a custom routine
TXTCOL	Set the text color
TXTINP	Input a line of text with the ROM routine INLIN
VALIDT	Validate a disk
VDCCOL	(128 only) Write to 80-column video attribute memory
VERIFY	Verify a disk file
VICADR	Change the text screen location
VIDBNK	Change the video bank
WARMST	Warm start
WINDOW	(128 only) Set window boundaries with escape codes
WR80CO	See RE80CO
WRBUFF	Open a disk buffer and write a sector to disk
WRITBF	Write a buffer to a sequential or program file
WRITFL	Send characters to a sequential or program file
XBCCOL	Set colors for extended background color mode
XBCMOD	Turn extended background color mode on or off

To order your copy of *COMPUTE!'s Machine Language Routines for the Commodore 64 and 128 Disk*, call our toll-free US order line: 1-800-346-6767 (in NY 212-887-8525) or send your prepaid order to:

COMPUTE!'s Machine Language Routines for the Commodore 64 and 128 Disk

COMPUTE! Publications

P.O. Box 5038

F.D.R. Station

New York, NY 10150

All orders must be prepaid (check, charge, or money order). NC residents add 5% sales tax. NY residents add 8.25% sales tax.

Send _____ copies of *COMPUTE!'s Machine Language Routines for the Commodore 64 and 128 Disk* at \$12.95 per copy. (858BDSK)

Subtotal \$ _____

Shipping and Handling: \$2.00/disk \$ _____

Sales tax (if applicable) \$ _____

Total payment enclosed \$ _____

Payment enclosed

Charge Visa MasterCard American Express

Acct. No. _____ Exp. Date _____
(Required)

Name _____

Address _____

City _____ State _____ Zip _____

Please allow 4-5 weeks for delivery.

The Machine Language Library

If you're interested in machine language programming on the Commodore 64 or 128, this book is a necessity. *Machine Language Routines for the Commodore 64 and 128* gives programmers a library of ML routines for the 64 and 128 personal computers. In an easy-to-use dictionary arrangement, it puts over 200 indispensable routines at your fingertips. Each routine is fully described and is accompanied by an example program that demonstrates its use. As a bonus, the routines are ready to be plugged into your own programs. Cross-references direct you to other routines that perform similar or related functions.

Here's a sample of what you'll find inside for the beginner:

- Numerous short routines that perform mathematical functions.
- Routines that explain how to read, write, and manipulate disk files.
- Programs to convert strings and numbers.
- Easy-to-use techniques for reading joysticks and for adding sound effects and music to your programs.

And for the more advanced programmer:

- Interrupt-driven programs for playing music.
- Routines to move sprites automatically.
- Programs to display 16 sprites at the same time.
- Examples of how to pass values between ML and BASIC.
- And much more.

Authors Todd Heimarck and Patrick Parrish have combined a wealth of knowledge and experience to create this information-packed sourcebook. With clear explanations and useful examples, *Machine Language Routines for the Commodore 64 and 128* is a handy reference guide as well as an exceptional tutorial.

The source code for each of the routines in this book is also available on a companion disk. See the coupon in the back of the book for details.